



# **MOKSHA MARG PRAKASHAK**

(THE ILLUMINATOR OF THE PATH OF LIBERATION)

ENGLISH VAERSION OF HINDI BOOK

Author :

**Acharyakalp Pt. Todarmalji**

Translated by :

**Br. Hem Chand Jain**

D.M.E., D.T.Ed.

Manager, Materials Management Deptt.

Thermal & Nuclear Section

Bharat Heavy Electrical Ltd.,

BHOPAL

Review and Editing by :

**Let. Prof. Jamnalal Jain**

M.Com., L.L.B., Sahitya Ratna

Visiting Professor

Institute of Management, Devi Ahilya University

INDORE

Published by :

**SHRI KUNDKUND KAHAN DIGAMBER**

**JAIN TIRTH SURAKSHA TRUST**

173-175, Mumbadevi Road, Mumbai-400002



## ENGLISH

Ist Edition : 1000

2nd August, 1992

IInd Edition : 1000

(Veershashan Jayanti,  
22 July 2005)

**Total : 2000**

Price : Rs. 40/-

*Available at :*

**1. Pandit Todarmal Smarak Trust**

A-4, Babu Nagar, Jaipur 302015

Ph. 0141-2707458, 2705581 Email : ptstjaipur@yahoo.com

**2. Shri Kund Kund Kahan Digamber Jain Tirth Suraksha Trust**

173-175, Mumbadevi Road Mumbai - 400 002

Ph. 022-23425241, 23446099

**3. Niranjan Bhai Shah**

804 Seers Drive, Cicago IL 60173-6195 (U.S.A.)

Ph. (847) 330-1088

**4. Bhimji Bhai Shah**

26, Dene Road, North wood, Middlesapha 62 BT London (UK)

Ph. 0044-208-566-7100 (O), 0044-192-3840833 (R)

**5. Prakash Chhabra C\o Nirav Shah**

9616 Melanie Thompson Ln, Charlotte NC 28213 (U.S.A.)

Ph. 425-881-6143, Email : pjain24@msn.com

**6. Mr. C S. Sathish (Senior Project Constultant)**

Standard Chartered Bank, # 15-263 Block 263,

Street 22, Bishan, Singapore 437147 Tel : 0065-65303332

**7. Mr. C S. Mahesh Jain**

B.M. International Co. Ltd., 507 K.B.S. Bldg, BO-B 8,

Mahesak BRD, Bangrak Bangkok, Thailand 10500

Tel. : 00-662-2351718-19

*Printed at :*

**Print 'o' Land**

22 Godam, Jaipur

## Thanks & Our Request

This shastra has been donated, in memory of Pujya Shree Lalchandbhai Amarchand Modi, by Rajesh & Jyoti Shah who have paid for it to be "electronised" and made available on the internet.

Our request to you:

1) Great care has been taken to ensure this electronic version of [Moksh Marg Prakshak \(English\)](#) is a faithful copy of the paper version. However if you find any errors please inform us on [rajesh@AtmaDharma.com](mailto:rajesh@AtmaDharma.com) so that we can make this beautiful work even more accurate.

2) Keep checking the version number of the on-line shastra so that if corrections have been made you can replace your copy with the corrected one.

## Version History

Version Number	Date	Changes
002	17 March 2012	Second electronic version. Corrigenda page added.
001	23 June 2007	First electronic version

## Corrigenda

Please note that as this is the scanned version of Moksh Marg Prakashak, we can not make changes to individual pages – hence the corrections are listed below:

<b>Location</b>	<b>Current Text – Mistake highlighted in red</b>	<b>Correction – highlighted in red</b>
Ch 3 (III), page 71, paragraph 6, line 7	unconscious, He was making the efforts for ascertaining the <b>ture</b> nature	unconscious, He was making the efforts for ascertaining the <b>true</b> nature
Ch 3 (III), page 76, paragraph 3, line 6	passions be not there, then he himself <b>creates</b> the causes, e.g.	passions be not there, then he himself <b>creates</b> the causes, e.g.
Ch 3 (III), page 76, paragraph 4, line 2	occurred gets accomplished then <b>my this</b> misery may end and I may	occurred gets accomplished then <b>by this my</b> misery may end and I may
Ch 4 (IV), page 109, paragraph 6, line 2	but until “those are <b>axactly</b> so only” – such sort of crystal clear	but until “those are <b>exactly</b> so only” – such sort of crystal clear
Ch 4 (IV), page 126, 3rd line from the bottom of the page	destroyers of that state. And further he develops attachment <b>is</b>	destroyers of that state. And further he develops attachment <b>in</b>
Ch 4 (IV), page 126, last line of page	objects and feels aversion <b>in</b> their destroyers. And further develops	objects and feels aversion <b>in</b> their destroyers. And further develops
Ch 5 (V), page 215, paragraph 3, line 5	on keeping a <b>lion</b> cloth only the votary or observer of the eleventh	on keeping a <b>loin</b> cloth only the votary or observer of the eleventh
Ch 5 (V), page 223, paragraph 3, line 5, paragraph 3, last line	the vows, etc and <b>sitill</b> they are treated by all to be saints.	the vows, etc and <b>still</b> they are treated by all to be saints

<b>Location</b>	<b>Current Text – Mistake highlighted in red</b>	<b>Correction – highlighted in red</b>
Ch 5 (V), page 227, paragraph 3, line 5, paragraph 3, 4 lines from the bottom of the paragraph	due to disrespect, <b>m__ess</b> , etc. Thus, the practices they stress, too,	due to disrespect, <b>madness</b> etc. Thus, the practices they stress, too,
Ch 5 (V), page 233, last line of page	activities where injury is <b>envolved</b> .	activities where injury is <b>involved</b> .
Ch 5 (V), page 235, paragraph 2, last line	vicious deeds are <b>fahsified</b> ; hence, reciting alone is not efficacious.	vicious deeds are <b>falsified</b> ; hence, reciting alone is not efficacious.

## CONTENTS

(i) From Publisher's Desk	iv
(ii) Translator's Prelude	xiii
(iii) Introduction	xvi
(iv) List of Donors	xxx
(v) Samarpan to beloved mother	xxxix
1. Chapter 1	
Prologue	1
2. Chapter 2	
Nature of Mundane Existence	29
3. Chapter 3	
Miseries of Mundane Existence and Bliss of Liberation	63
4. Chapter 4	
Exposition of False Belief, Knowledge and conduct	105
5. Chapter 5	
Analytical Study of Different Religions	133
6. Chapter 6	
Refutation of False Deity, Preceptor and Religion	237
7. Chapter 7	
X-ray of Jains-Misbelievers	273
8. Chapter 8	
Nature of Sermons	381
9. Chapter 9	
Nature of Liberation Path	435
10. Appendix I	
Nature of Noble Peaceful Death	487
11. Appendix II	
Rahasyapoorna Chitthi (Spiritual Letter)	489
12. Glossary	503

## FROM PUBLISHER'S DESK

Well known, it is, that we are all in the era of Baghavan Mahavir and during the last millennium for 12 months during 1974-1975 the 2500<sup>th</sup> "Nirvaan Mahotsav" of the venerable World Teacher was celebrated with abiding faith and abounding enthusiasm through out the length and breadth of the globe. Mention worthy it is that the occasion was marked by the historic Panch Kalyaanak Prathishta Mahotsav of Baghavaan Simandar Swamy in the magnificent Jinaalya named after the Five Vitraag Sacred Scriptures – Paramagam Mandir, Songadh, and more eventful for consecration of the Jina Bimb was in the immediate presence and guidance of reverential Guru Dev Shri Kanji Swamy.

Occasion was most conducive and promising to fulfill the long felt desire and avowed wish of tens of thousands of the blessed devotees present to establish a permanent institution to safe guard the Digamber Jain Holy Pilgirm Centres - Thritha Kshetras and SHRI KUND KUND KAHAN DIGAMBER JAIN THIRTH SUSRAKSHA TRUST was born and resolved to safe guard the Digamber Jain Tirthakshetras and Jinavaani as the main objective of the trust. This monumental institution was the dream child of Late Dharmaratna Shri Babubhai Chunnilal Mehta, Fatehpur whose relentless and untiring efforts for the maintenance and renovation of Digamber Jain Temples and preservation and publication of Passionless Sacred Scriptures saw the dawn of a promising institution on that day.

On the memorable occasion of the 87<sup>th</sup> Birthday celebration of reverential Guru Dev Shri Kanji Swamy Late Shri Shanti Prasad Jain Delhi, Industrialist and Philanthropist inaugurated the Trust.

Three decades have passed since then and the contribution of the trust in the cause of the protection, maintenance and renovation

(IV)

of Digamber Jain Temples - Jinalayas - and Passionless Digamber Jain Sacred Scriptures all over India is unprecedented in the history of the last century. Late Shri Babubhai Chunnilal Mehta's captaincy and foresight in keeping with the goal of the Trust, is second to none in precision and execution of the various projects that were undertaken. His dream is a reality today and it is the joy and satisfaction that fills every Digamber Jain in and out of India.

### **On activities of Your Trust :**

#### **In the cause and service of Digamber Jain Tirthakshetras:**

Known fact, it is, to all of us that Tirtha are one of the sources to inspire and induce spiritual awareness and uplift in general and no less for Digamber Jains. Digamber Jain Temples - Jin Mandirs, worship worthy Jinas' idols - Jina Bimbs, Sacred Footprints of Tirthankaras and Acharyas and religious centers viz., Tirthakshetras, Siddhakshetras, Atishaykshetras are exposed to the natural decay due to the passage of time and change of climate. Periodical maintenance and renovation is no less important than worshipping the Omniscient. Besides protection from the onslaught more from man than from nature has become a necessity. You will all agree that if staying is comfortable, devotees would spend more time in tirthakshetras and be blessed with peace and serenity. Thus the cause of the holy centers is best served.

### **Tirth Survey :**

In keeping with the ideal of the Trust, a master plan to conduct survey of the Digamber Jain Temples, Tirthakshetras, and Jinavaani in India has been successfully conducted and relative documents are collected, documents perfected, catlogued, and kept ready for any reference and use. It is note worthy that such a survey is unheard of in the annals of Digamber Jain History of Tirthkshetras and in this connection the unstinting and selfless service of Pandit Shri Gynaanchandji, Vidhisha is worthy of remembrance and serve as a model in the service of the Digamber Jain Community for the progeny.

(V)



## **Siddha Kshetra Sammed Shikharji :**

### **Civil Work :**

During the last decade renovation and cleaning of all the Tonks - Sacred Footprints and hilltop were completed and a distance of 6 km of cement road on the hilltop was also laid.

### **Awareness and involvement :**

In bringing awareness to the Digamber Jain Community of the various differences of views and opinions between the two sects which ended in chain of disputes resting in Courts of Justice, your Trust has done no less a job in keeping with the objective of the Trust and of the many efforts that are mention worthy, the establishment and protection of the rights and duties of Digamber Jains at the Atishaykshetra Shri Antriksha Parswanath Temple, Shirpur is a singular, monumental and bold effort of Bal Brahmachari Pandit Shri Dhanyakumarji Belokar, learned trustee of your Trust whose foresight, guidance and leadership is exemplary.

In this connection, it is no less mention worthy here that in the past about 15 years there has been a wave of active movement from our side to defend and secure back for Digamber Jains' share of rights in worshiping and maintenance of Tonks. We are happy and inclined to be modestly proud for having accomplished a remarkable success.

Our rally of Digamber Jains numbering a lakh and a half at the capital of India – Delhi has made a magical but a powerful impact on the society which resulted in making several in roads into the administration, maintenance and renovation at the top hill-Magnificent Sammed Shikharji. Construction and laying of cement road, managing of Guest house on the top hill, providing increased facilities to the Digamber Jain pilgrims viz., stay, food, etc., renovation of 'Bhata Ghar' (refreshment room) en route to top hill are few notable.

Your Trust has made yet another history by bring together and forging a partnership with sister institution BHARATVARSHIYA DIGAMBER JAIN TIRTHAKSHETRA COMMITTEE by which

(VI)



the strength of Digamber Jain Community has increased manifold and by this move the Digamber Jain Community is becoming more solid and larger. You will be glad to know that I having been appointed as Secretary of this main committee I gain more strength to serve the noble and pious cause of protecting, maintaining and renovating Digamber Jain sacred monuments. Services of influential and dedicated Digamber Jain late Shri Ashok Kumarji Jain, son of Sahuji, was very much useful and helpful and he is remembered at this moment. Rare unity amongst Digamber Jains is visualized and it is the best atmosphere to further the interest of our Community and consolidate our position.

### **Education and Propagation :**

You all know that Dharmic education is a must for fostering the faith in a community. Having felt the dearth of Digamber Jain scholars and pundits as a fact of life in the middle fifties of the last century, your Trust started a college – Shri Todarmal Digambar Jain Siddhant Mahavidhyalaya, in Pandit Shri Todarmal Smarak Trust, Jaipur with the only object of producing pandits to spread the sacred message of the Vitraag Vaani – dispassionate message of World Teacher. This center of education through its accomplished scholars is passing the message of Adhyaathma – message of soul with resounding success.

### **Curriculum :**

"Shastri" equivalent of pass course degree (B.A.) of any college in India, is the one that is awarded to the successful student coached and readied through Shri Digambar Jain Acharya Sanskrit College, from the Rajasthan Sanskrit Vishvavidhyaalaya, Jaipur. Concurrently, the students are to equip themselves to appear for the examination conducted by Shri Vitrag Vigyan Vidyapeeth Pariksha Board, Jaipur where in students are imparted lessons in Digamber Jain four Anuyogas. It is a matter of pride to mention that till now all our students who are trained here have secured the top ranks in the examinations of both University or College and V.V.P. Board.

(VII)

## **Academic Results :**

It is matter of immense satisfaction to record here that your Trust has produced 400 "Shastri" Degree holders and 44 "Jain Darshanacharyas" postgraduates. Presently 175 students are undergoing the training in your Trust run college.

Unique is the outcome of this noble institution/Mahavidhyalaya as it specifically trains the young minds of the inmates in Vitraag Digambar Jain Sacred Scriptures, Dhyana and study of the self - soul (Atman). Well, the entire credit goes to the revered spiritual leader Guru Dev Shri Kanji Swami whose powerful, simple and complete sermons consistently and continuously made several millions of mundane souls to come into the fold of this great Dharma-Vitraag Digambar Jain Dharma and all of them are harnessing the fruits of peace and amity by their regular involved study of soul-Swadhyaya.

You will not be surprised to know that the studies made in these noble institutions have made citizens of high quality and maintain high level of morality, ethics and civility in their daily life.

My privilege and gratitude to record here that many a philanthropists have generously came forward to support this effort of your Trust by their unstinting cooperation and munificence continuously. But for which such a unique performance is no easy task.

Notably 01) Shri Maganlal Patni Trust, Mumbai 02) Shri Veetraag Vigyanaan Swadhyay mandir Trust. Ajmer and 03) Pujya Shri Kanji Swami Smarak Trust, Deolali are few whose unflinching interest in your Trust is no less a measure to remember here. Pandit Todarmal Smarak Trust shoulders the responsibility of housing and supervising the students, an uncommon place in supporting the efforts of your Trust. Of course many more are in the line of charitable disposition towards your Trust and for fear of space it is restricted.

Adhyaathmic world-renowned Dr. Shri Hukamchandji Bharilla's guidance and direction is immeasurable and is a must. His lectures make a mark in the young minds of the students and remembered for all the times to come.

(VIII)

Pandit Shri Ratanchandji Bharill, Principal is the king pin of all the activities of the Vidhyalaya and his services are no less a measure in shaping the character, knowledge and conduct of the students who come under his influence.

Contributions of versatile knowledge made available to the students from learned scholars viz., Bal Brahmachari Shri Jatishchandji Shastri, Pandit Poonamchandji Chhabada, Pandit Shantikumarji Patil and Pandit Sanjiv Kumarji Godha are laudable and mention worthy.

Incomplete it would be as the philanthropic and dedicated services of late Shri Nemichandji Patni was a corner stone of this institution as it was his life long cooperation and elderly guidance from the inception of the institution that could make this dream of many come true and real. His absence today is irreparable and remembered.

### **Publication of Sacred books and Literature :**

#### **Original works :**

After revered Guru Dev Shri Kanji Swami's departure to his heavenly abode, your institution prepared itself to provide voluminous original published and unpublished works of venerable Digamber Jain Acharyas to the Jain Community in particular and to all humanity in general. Under your Trust banner another branch named as "Sat Sahitya Prakashan evam Prachar Vibhag" in Jaipur was commissioned to undertake this responsibility. Millions of books were published to meet the increasing demand from the community.

#### **Other languages :**

This branch commenced producing books in English translations of the Digambar Jain Sacred works as demand came from various sections of communities and especially western countries.

"Moksha Marg Prakashak" and "Panch Paramagamas" are the most notable ones besides many others. Many editions of these works have been reprinted and published.

(IX)

Another Indian language, Gujarati "Atmaanushaasan", "Yogasaara" and "Ratnakarand Shrivakaachar" have also been published which is mention worthy.

### **Propagation :**

Tattvagynaan lectures are arranged with the help of the learned Scholars and Pundits periodically at places on request. We hold training camps since last 30 years.

Financial assistance for the study of Vitraag Jina Dharma is also provided for the deserving students.

Swadhyaaya Bhavans are constructed in several parts of the country and 35 of such Bhavans are completed. Pleased to inform that presently a sum of Rs. 1-5 lakh is granted for one such Swadhyaaya Bhavan.

### **Sources of Fund :**

To familiarise the schemes and activities of your Trust and also to augment the funds position and build up permanent fund (Dhruv nidhi) for your Trust, under the guidance of Brahmachari Pundit Shri Jatish Chandji, a delegation is on tour of the country. Glad to inform that community is generously helping the cause.

### **Social Benefit Scheme :**

Weaker section of our community does require financial help at the hour of crisis such as hospitalization due to illness and higher education for the children. Having realized this need of our community, a new scheme named "Shri Kahan Raj Sarvodaya Sahayata Yojana" under a Trust styled "Sarvodaya Trust" was started and is functioning. Needy community members may avail the assistance of this help by applying to the Sarvodaya Trust, which also housed in Trust office.

### **Our heartfelt thanks are due to :**

Guidance and cooperation has been spontaneously flowing from the inception of this institution – Trust-from Late Pandit Shri Baubhaiji C Mehta, Late Shri Murabbi Ramji Bhai Doshi, Late Pandit Shri

(X)



Khemchand Bhai J. Shah, Late Pandit Shri Lalchand Bhai Mody and Late Shri Maneklal R. Gandhi.

And continues so currently from our President Babu Shri Jugal Kishorji - "Yugal", Vice President Pandit Bal Br. Shri Dhanyakumarji Belokar, Vice President Shri Suman Bhai Doshi, Shri Shanti Bhai Jhaveri. Our institution has grown with such a phenomenal success and this is possible by their valued counsel and support.

Our trustees Shri Poonam Chandji Luhadiya, Pandit Shri Uttamchandji Jain Seoni, Samajratana Shri Amrut Bhai Maheta Fatepur, Shri Alokumar Jain Kanpur are though far off their contribution is no less for the growth of our institution.

### **On earlier Publications;**

"Samadhitantra" and "Ishtopadesha" were published last year and "Swaroop Sambodhan" of Bhatta Akalanka Dev and several books by Pandit Deepchandji Kasliwal have been published this year and is in your hands.

### **Proposed Publications :**

#### **"Pundit Deepchand Granthawali"**

Among many scholars of our community Pandit Shri Deepchandji Kasliwal was mention worthy one and was fortunate enough that many a times Revered Guru Dev Shri Kanji Swamy had recalled his name and quoted his compositions in his discourses.

This series will be of 4 volumes and the first 2 being published, which carries the following works :

Volume 01) All available small and big compositions of Pandit Deepchandji Kasliwal.

Volume 02) "Anubhavaanand" Parmatma Puran and Sawiya - Tika"

It is proposed in Volume 03 to carry "Swaroopanand" and "Upadesh Siddhant Ratna" and volume 04 to carry "Bhava Deepika" and others and will shortly be in your hands.

On this second edition of "Mosksha Marg Prakashak".

Your institution and I are indeed very happy to bring out the second edition in English of this excellent work of Acharyakalp Pandit. Shri Todarmalji. Sincere and heartfelt thanks to Brahmachari Pundit Shri Hemchandji Jain, Bhopal who had translated in to English from Hindi. Our thanks are no less to Prof. Jamnalalji Jain, Indore who had been kind enough to review and edit. The Trust is grateful and thankful again to these two learned scholars for having spared their valuable time and energy which only enabled us to place in the hands of English knowing public and helped propagation of Vitraag Digambar Jain Dharma far beyond the frontiers of our beloved nation Bharat.

Wish and desire is mine and that of your Trust, that those who are in search of lasting bliss of their soul will well be served by reading and understanding this valuable edition.

With this sacred thinking – bhaavana – this note ends.

Mumbai  
20-07-05

**Vasantlal Moolchand Doshi** (Sudasana)  
*General Secretary*  
Shri Kund Kund Kahan Digmabar  
Jain Tirtha Suraksha Trust

## TRANSLATOR'S PRELUDE

In this 20th century this Moksha Marg Prakashak has turned the eyes of thousands of people all over India and abroad towards the right path of salvation. Whosoever curiously reads this book, surrenders his false belief before its author Acharyakalp Pt. Todarmalji and accepts his treatise to be the gist of omniscient's preachings and compendium of Jaina Philosophy; and feels indebted to him. I too knew the importance of this book in 1966 AD through Pujya Shri Kanji Swami of Songad (Saurashtra, India) and read it several times concentratedly. I am highly indebted to both of them and pay my hearty tributes to them.

In fact, the whole of Jain Society is indebted to Pt. Todarmalji for his unique gift of 'Moksha Marg Prakashak' and 'Smayagnan Chandrika' because all this he wrote in the spoken language of his time. Although he could not complete the work of 'Moksha Marg Prakashak' in which he wanted to elaborate various other related topics; however in his short span of life, he contributed significantly to Jaina Philosophy and enriched Jaina Literature with an enduring stamp of authenticity. He re-established the faith in *Tattvas* in their true perspective sense through logically approved facts. His vast knowledge and philosophical ability is reflected in this book, which in fact embraces the entire range of Jaina Canon and philosophical intricacies. It is because of this book that he was conferred the title of 'Acharyakalp' (a highly knowledgeable person like an Acharya monk).

The prime object of this book is to point out the true practical and scientific method of self-realisation as laid down by the Jaina Trithankaras who rose to the highest height of perfection with its aid. No effort has been spared by Todarmalji to make this book a self-contained and complete in its subject. The subject matter is presented in a very effective manner through question-answer style which explains Jainism both to a lay reader and to a learned scholar.

His philosophy is not a mere encyclopedia of logically approved facts but it is creative and synthetic too. It is this trait which distinguishes him from mere religious leadership. His genius was so critical and subtle that he fused an enormous amount of knowledge into a unified whole and exerted immeasurable influence on scholars, philosophers, religious leaders then around him. His illustrated teachings through question-answer style of description had a wider and more popular appeal than any other India scholar or saint. His teachings are based upon the belief that moral questions could not find satisfactory answers without an integrated knowledge of seven *Tattvas*, The central theme of his preachings is to realise the self-soul by giving up false belief, knowledge and conduct and this is possible through right understanding of seven Tattavas only because there are deeper stamps and impressions of misconceptions and distorted understandings upon our minds about these Tattvas.

With the view to keep myself engaged in the study of Jaina scriptures and attain self-realisation, I dared to translate this great work of Pt. Todarmaji into English which took about three years (1984-86) to complete.

My sincere thanks are due to my friend Professor Jammalal Jain (Devi Ahilya University of Indore), himself a keen student of Jain Philosophy, for taking great pains in thoroughly checking and correcting the translation by rearranging the sentences for maintaining true sense of original book and giving fluency to language. I very sincerely acknowledge and feel gratitude towards him for his whole-hearted co-operation without which this rendition would have not been possible.

I am also thankful to Late Shri S. Gajapathi Jain of Tiruppanamoor (Madras) for his valuable suggestions regarding translation of this book, when I met him personally at his residence in may 1986. I also thank my friend Shri N.C. Mavani, M. Tech., Sion, Bombay for providing photostat copies of my English manuscript for getting the translation checked. My thanks are also



due to my friends Dr. U.C. Jain, M.A., Ph.D., Seoni; Dr. D.K. Jain, M.A., Ph.D. (Professor, Govt. College, Neemuch); Pt. Rajmal Jain, B.Com., Bhopal; Shri Suresh Jain, IAS, Bhopal; Shri V.C. Shripalan, Madras and Shri Raj Mal Jain, Jaipur for giving useful suggestions in this venture.

Although I have tried my level best not to deviate from the original text and enough care has been taken to maintain the true meaning and sense, however to convey accurately the original sense by translation in English language is not easy, especially of longer sentences written by Panditji. I therefore, request the learned readers to forgive me for the errors still left and which may be entirely due to my own limitation and negligence, Readers are earnestly requested to send their valuable suggestions which may be utilised in the next edition. Ignoring my errors in translation, even if a single soul is inspired by this book to seek the truth in right direction, I shall consider my efforts amply rewarded.

In the end I take this opportunity to express my sincere thanks to Shri Kund-Kund Kahan Digamber Jain Tirtha Suraksha Trust, Bombay particularly Br. Shri Dhanya Kumarji Belokar, Devlali and Shri Vasant Bhai Doshi, Bombay for their decision to publish this book in English and for keeping the price below actual cost. My thanks are also due to Shri Nemichandji Patni and Dr. Hukamchandji Bharill both of Pt. Todarmal Smarak Trust, Jaipur for their keen interest and whole-hearted co-operation in the early publication of this book and to Shri Sohanlalji Jain, Jaipur Printers Pvt. Ltd., Jaipur for this nice publication.

Om Namō Arhantanam !

Bhopal  
15 May, 1992

*An humble disciple of*  
**Acharya Kund-Kund & Pt. Todarmalji**  
**HEMCHAND JAIN "HEM"**

## INTRODUCTION

It is a matter of great satisfaction that the English version of Moksha Marg Prakashak is being published by Shri Kund-Kund Kahan Digamber Jain Tirtha Suraksha Trust, Bombay.

The real credit for this English Translation belongs to my friend Hemchandji Jain who on his own initiative worked hard day and night selflessly for more than three years to complete this stupendous task of preparing a workable literal translation of this famous book of Pandit Todarmalji, bearing in mind the great need for maintaining the sense and spirit of the author all throughout. I sincerely thank him for providing me this opportunity of associating myself with the review and editing work. We have together spent scores of hours in giving it the present shape.

The basis of this English version is the Hindi Edition, edited by the renowned Jain scholar and author of several books on Jain philosophy and who has been awarded the title of Jain Ratna by the Jaina of USA in 1984, Ph.D. on pandit Todarmal - life & work by University of indore in the year 1973, Dr Hukamchand Bharilla, (Shastri, Nyayatirtha, Sahitya-Ratna, M.A., Ph.D.), and published by Pandit Todarmal Smarak Trust, Jaipur.

### LIFE AND WORKS

In the true tradition of ancient Jain Saints and scholars, Pandit Todarmalji, too, did not pay any attention towards writing anything about his life history. Therefore, nothing definite can be said on the dates of his birth, death and life span. However, on the basis of the available circumstantial and other evidence Dr. Hukamchand Bharilla in his research treatise "Pandit Todarmal - life and work" established his year of birth to be 1719-20 A.D. and the year of his passing away 1766 A.D. with a lifespan of only 47 years. He was borne in Jaipur (India). His father was Shri Jogidasji Khandelwal of Godika Gotra (Jain subcaste) and Rambha Bai his mother. He was married and had two sons. Harishchandra and Gumaniram. Shri Gumaniram was a great revolutionary genius.

He received ordinary education in the spiritual Tera Panthi Style of Jaipur, but his deep scholarship was mainly due to hard work and genius. He was a great intellectual having sharpness of understanding and a studious nature. He was well-versed in Parkrit, Sanskrit, Hindi and Kannad languages.

About his scholarship Pandit Raimalji wrote in his letter of invitation for the Indra-Dhwaj Vidhana (Ritual), in the year 1764, "It is very difficult to find a man of his intellect these days. All the doubts about religious matters are removed after meeting him."

About his knowledge and studies, he himself writes in Moksha Marg Prakashak. "I have studied Samayasara Panchastikaya, Pravachanasara, Niyamsara, Gomattasara, Labdhisara, Triloksara, Tattvarthasutra, with commentaries; Kshapanasara. Purushartha Siddhyupaya, Asthapahud, Atmanushasana and many other scriptures describing the conduct of monks and householders, and Puranas containing stories of great personalities according to my own understanding and knowledge."

In his short lifespan, he wrote, in all, twelve books, big and small which is about a lac verses in measure and about five thousand pages.

Some of these are commentaries of popular sacred books while others are independent works of his own. These are found both in prose and poetry. They are as follows :

1. Rahasyapurna Chitthi (Spiritual letter)
2. Gomattasara Jivakanda-Hindi commentary
3. Gomattasara Karmakand-Hindi commentary
4. Arthasandrashthi-Adhikar.
5. Labdhisara-Hindi commentary
6. Kshapanasara-Hindi commentary
7. Gomattasara Puja
8. Triloksara-Hindi commentary
9. Samosharana Rachna Varnan

10. Moksha Marg Prakashak (Incomplete)
11. Atmanushasan-Hindi commentary
12. Purusharthasiddhyupaya-Hindi commentary (incomplete.)

The last book was completed by Pandit Daulatram Kasliwal in 1770. His prose style is pure, fully developed and comprehensible. The most beautiful form of his style can be seen in his original work Moksha Marg Prakashak. His language originally Brij, has the stiffness of Khari-Boli and also local tinge. It is strong and fine enough to express forcefully his ideas and feelings. Though books numbers 2 to 6 were written by the author separately, yet looking to their complementary nature the author gave them a collective name "Samayginana Chandrika".

### **MOKSHA MARG PRAKASHAK**

Moksha Marg Prakashak is one of the most important original works of Pandit Todarmalji. The basis of this treatise is not anyone Jain spiritual shastra but the whole of the available Jain literature. This was to be, in reality, a meaningful effort of engrossing all the fundamentals of Jain philosophy and rituals; but it is regretted that this profoundly learned treatise could not be completed due to the untimely passing away of the author. In spite of being incomplete, it is acknowledged all everywhere as a unique contribution to available Jain literature. This is one of the most popular books whose several editions have been published not, only in Hindi but in several other Indian languages like Marathi, Gujarati, Urdu, etc. Till today, in all 1,50,000 copies have been published in various languages. Besides, hundreds of hand written copies of this book are found in the libraries of Digamber Jain Temples throughout India. In the whole of Digamber Jain Society this is the most popular Shastra for community collective reading and as a basis of sermons in regular religious congregations. The original handwritten copy in the hand of Pandit Todarmalji is also available in the famous temple at Jaipur. "Shri Deewanji Ka Mandir" - where Pandit Todarmalji used to lecture everyday to a gathering of more than a thousand persons.



This book, written in simple spoken language, is the result of the inner inspiration and pious desire of the author to enlighten those curious fellow-citizens who could not understand and get the real message of Jain philosophy and fundamentals available in intricate works written in Sanskrit and Prakrit by Jain Acharyas. No other worldly ambition has been the inspiring force behind writing this book.

In the present available form the book Moksha Marg Prakashak has nine chapters. The first eight chapters are complete but the ninth chapter is incomplete. By the manner the ninth chapter was started, it clearly seems that the subject of Right Belief was to be propounded and clarified in all its details. But alas, much could not be written. Only the nomenclatures of the eight qualities of Right Belief and twenty-five blemishes to be avoided could be listed. Their characteristics could not be described as desired.

In the original manuscript, indications are available to show that the author wanted to give a second thought even to the sequence and chapter headings of various chapters. At the end of the incomplete ninth chapter Panditji had a plan to write many more chapters. At twelve places in the available nine chapters clear indication are found to show his inner desire to throw light on various issues at appropriate places. This means that had this book been completed as per the author's hidden plan, it would have run into about five thousand handwritten pages throwing detailed light on Right-Belief, Right Knowledge and Right Conduct, the basic fundamentals of the path of liberation.

This book has been written in the analytical prose-style; through the medium of question-answer the subject matter has been deeply clarified. The subject matter of this book is highly philosophical, but whatever topic has been chosen for discussion, it has been successfully clarified fully, keeping in view all the possible supplementaries relating to it. While studying the book whatever question is likely to crop up in the mind of the reader, the same is found raised in the next line

along with its explanation, and therefore, the curiosity of the reader is very well maintained throughout.

The construction of sentences is brief and the style of clarification, logical and analytical. Though unnecessary expansion is avoided, yet no topic is left incomplete due to brevity of style. Whatever topics are touched by the author, no aspect of the same is left unclarified. The style is so charming and unique that even the totally unknown topic has become easily graspable.

For clarifying the subject matter, sufficient use of popular examples is found. The example of the patient and physician has been profusely used in the second, third, fourth and fifth chapters. To carry home to the reader the message of the topic under discussion and to substantiate his point of view. Panditji has largely drawn quotations and examples from innumerable Jain and non-Jain philosophical and religious books.

From the view point of the subject matter, the contribution of the author is no less important. Although each sentence of the book reflects true Jain religion and philosophy, yet a lot of such new thought is available in the book which is not found in that very lucid form in earlier Jain literature. From this angle chapters seventh and eighth need special mention. Some such examples are as under :-

1. Classification of Nishchyaabhasi, Vyavaharabhasi, Ubhayaabhasi etc. in the form of Jain misbelievers.
2. True traits of Panchparameshthis
3. Misconceptions about seven Tattvas
4. Real conventional viewpoint
5. The correct method of understanding the true meaning of Jain Shastras
6. The purpose of all the four Anuyogas, the constitution of discourses, style of description, imagination about existence of blemishes and their clarifications etc.

Not only has Panditji provided new knowledge but he has also x-rayed and given valuable comments and suggestions upon the prevalent religious rituals and practices of the society of his times. This clearly shows that besides self-realisation and profound knowledge of scriptures, he possessed a keen sense of understanding and analysing the intricacies of social behaviour (Chapter seventh). As an example, the following graphic description relating to the so called religious practices and rituals followed by the Jain society 230 years ago is truly applicable even in the present era :

"Many Jivas follow religion (rituals) either because of family tradition or by observing others or under the influence of greed passion. Such persons in no way possess the religious viewpoint. While they are worshipping, their mind gets engrossed in other thoughts, their eyes are engaged in seeing others, chanting of sermons continues through mouth, All this is not purposeful, because they do not know as to who they are, whose adoration is being done and for what purpose, What is the meaning of the words they are chanting etc.

Sometimes they are found worshipping even the fallacious and imaginary gods, etc. because of the want of discriminatory knowledge between fallacious gods and true gods, etc."

For drawing attention of learned scholars and pious readers, innumerable revolutionary statements are found at several places in Moksha Marg Prakashak. A few of them are quoted hereunder :

- (1) If one's belief becomes as per the true nature of the substances then all his miseries come to an end.
- (2) In Tattvarthsutra, while defining Influx Tattva, Great and Small Vows also are included under influx. How could then these be worth adopting?
- (3) But Adoration is a form of attachment and attachment causes bondage, therefore, it is not the cause of liberation.
- (4) One does not make effort for renouncing attachment-aversion passions which cause Influx and merely makes efforts for avoiding

related external activities or other instrumental causes. But by their avoidance Influx cannot be avoided.

- (5) No other substance defiles forcibly. When our own thoughts and feelings get defiled then only it is an instrumental cause. Moreover, one's thoughts get defiled even without an instrumental cause; therefore, it is not a regulatory instrumental cause. Thus, finding faults in others, is a fallacy.
- (6) And in not ascertaining the real nature of Tattvas there is no fault of any Karma, it is your own fault. But you want to remain an ostentatious person and lay your fault on Karmas. So, for one who obeys Jina's commands, such malversation is not possible.
- (7) Behold the magnanimity of deliberation on Tattvas! A person devoid of deliberation on Tattvas may have faith on deva etc., may study many shastras, may practice vows, may observe penances, etc. even then he is not entitled to evolve right belief, and one who engrosses himself in deliberation on Tattvas is privileged to evolve right belief even without these practices.
- (8) Vyavahara-Naya describes the self and nonself substances, their modifications and cause and effect relationship, etc. by intermingling one with the other, misbelief is caused by having such faith; therefore, one should abandon it. And Nishchay-Naya describes the substances, etc. exactly as they are; it does not intermingle one with the other. So right belief is evolved by such faith, Therefore, one should possess its faith.
- (9) Therefore, so long as such state (passionless disposition) is not evolved, one should indulge in virtuous activities but his belief should be such that these activities too are causes of bondage and worth giving up. If in belief these are taken to be the path of liberation then he is assuredly a Misbeliever (*Mithya Dristhi*).

Pandit Todarmaji has given prime importance to the practice of passionless conduct in the path of liberation. While attempting to



define and explain Right Belief, Right Knowledge and Right Conduct, after analysing the traits of these three jewels at length, he concludes in the following words : "What to say more, in whatever way the belief of uprooting passions emerges, the same is right belief; by whatever means the knowledge of exterminating passions, etc. is evolved, the same is right knowledge and by whatever means passions are destroyed, the same is right conduct. Such path alone should be believed to be the true path of liberation."

The greatest contribution of Panditji is this that he unfolded the spiritual knowledge of Tattvas available in Sanskrit and Prakrit languages through the medium of the spoken language of his times and also provided a new insight for interpretation and analysis of spiritual knowledge. He did not view the spiritual knowledge from traditional and scriptural angle only. For him Tattvagyan is a lively process of meditation, which not only contemporary so-called religious prevalent practices. His thesis has been that no spiritual thinking is original till it has been established on the foundation of logic and self-realisation. According to him religion is not a mere tradition but a self-examined system and practice.

Though basically he is a spiritual thinker, yet in his contemplation there lies a wonderful harmony of logic and self-realisation. He pays attention not only on the thought, but also examines the ability or disability of its propagator and follower on the basis of logic. He maintains that certain essential qualities are necessary for understanding and interpretation of Tattvagyan. According to him, the path of liberation is noting separate but it is knowledge of the self-soul only which he calls passionless-knowledge. Whatever practices and dispositions provide impediments in the process of self-realisation, all those are false. He has divided these false traits into two-those which are newly evolved or accepted and those which are found from beginningless times. By newly accepted false belief he means those conjectures and beliefs which we accept in the company of the so-called preceptors who are devoid of spiritual knowledge and which we accept to be true; be these of other sects

or of our own sect. Under these he has logically analysed and x-rayed all those Jain practices and beliefs which are accepted as part and parcel of Jain Tattvagyan from the sixth century up to the eighteenth century and which had no relation, whatsoever, with real spiritual knowledge. He has firmly and logically contradicted these so-called visual Jain practices and rituals full of blemishes propagated by Bhattarakas (so-called preceptors).

His style is unique being composed of questions/answers and befitting examples. One of the chief characteristics of his style is that the question and its answer both are his only. In the answer of the earlier question germinates the latter question. In this way, the earlier question ends only when the subject matter reaches its logical end. The other original and sparking characteristic of his prose style is that he avoids giving sermons to the reader and places before him such a graphic description and analysis of the situation that the reader of his own has to reach at the desired conclusion. The same style and approach which a doctor adopts in the treatment of a disease is visible in the style of Panditji also.

## **A BRIEF SUMMARY OF CONTENTS**

The title of the book is Moksha Marg Prakashak, therefore, a discussion and interpretation of the path of liberation is expected to be found in the contents. But liberation is relative with bondage. Therefore, in the beginning the mundane state of bondage and its causes have been considered. This is mainly the subject matter of the first seven chapters. In the Eighth Chapter a detailed and comprehensive discussion is found about the technique of understanding the essence of the real message of Jain literature. The Ninth Chapter which has remained incomplete, marks the beginning of a detailed consideration of the liberation path.

The First Chapter is the foundation chapter in which first of all in two verses obeisance is offered to the passionless science of knowledge by following which the Panchpameshthis have become adorable. Thereafter, after adoration of Panchpameshthis, their traits,

the objective of adoration, authenticity of the book, and purpose of writing it have been logically and judiciously discussed. This follows characteristics of Shastras worth reading and listening to, traits of discourses and listeners. In the end, the purposefulness of the name of the book and the object of writing it have been established.

The Second Chapter contains description of the mundane existence, Sufficient thought is given to the bonded state of the soul, the existence of the bonded state from beginningless times, separate identity of Karmas from the soul and division of Karmas into obscuring (Ghati) and non-obscuring (Aghati), substantive and psychic, etc. Thereafter, light is thrown on new bondage and its causes. At the end, the partially evolved dependent state of knowledge and the state of the soul in bonded state have been considered in detail.

In the Third Chapter, mundane miseries, basic causes of miseries i.e. perverse faith-knowledge-conduct, dispositions of the soul under the influence of passions and ways and means of freeing oneself from the same are described. Thereafter, the transmigratory states of the soul in the form of one-sensed being, etc. and the miseries suffered in these states along with the means of ending such miseries are discussed. This chapter ends with a description of the Siddha state and it has been logically established that all miseries come to an end in this state and endless total bliss is produced which should be the sole objective of every soul.

The subject matter of the Fourth Chapter is the involvement of the soul from beginningless times in false belief-knowledge and conduct. It also contains a graphic discussion of the need and logic for discriminating between purposeful and purposeless Tattvas. Light is also thrown in detail on the states and dispositions of the soul under influence of delusion and passions.

In the Fifth Chapter the newly developed and accepted false belief has been described at length. Under it all the important non-Jain schools of faith have been x-rayed.



The antiquity and truthfulness of Jaina faith has been logically established on the basis of quotations contained in the oldest shastras and scriptures of other faiths. Panditji considers the Swetamber faction of Jain faith also under other faiths and the falsehood of liberation in the state of womanhood, liberation in the low caste state, liberation in clothal state, etc. has been logically exposed and refuted.

In the Six Chapter also, under the title of newly accepted false belief, the futility of worshipping false deity-preceptor and shastras has been logically established and Jivas are forbidden to worship the same. It also includes an analytical discussion of the futility of adoring Kshetrapal, Padmavati, Sun, Moon, Fire, Beasts, etc.

The subtle form of false belief (delusion) has been described in the Seventh Chapter. Such false belief is found both in the persons who are Jain by mere name and also in Jains who claim that they follow the commandments of Jain-Shastras. This is so because they do not understand the inner message contained in Jain scriptures. Panditji clarifies that although they do not keep company with non Jain preceptors, etc. yet they further foster their already existing wrong belief either due to their own ignorance and mistakes or due to the company of ignorant naked saints and preceptors or by study of scriptures written by them.

Pandit Todarmalji has calssified such misbelievers into the following four categories : .

- (1) Misbelievers having false conception about Real viewpoint (Nischayaabhasi).
- (2) Misbelivers having false conception about Conventional viewpoint (Vyavaharabhasi).
- (3) Misbelievers having false conception about both Real and Conventational viewpoints (Ubhayaabhasi).
- (4) Misbelievers' facing to Right belief (Samyaktva-ke-sanmukh Mithya drishties)

In the discussion of the traits of Nishchayabhasis, their tendencies have been analysed at length and jivas are forbidden to become reckless by treating the soul to be pure without understanding the reality about the purity of the self-soul.

While describing the misconceptions of Vyavaharabhasi misbelievers, Panditji has strongly supported the viewpoint that in adopting religious practices and rituals one should not follow the same because it is traditional or because such is the commandment of shastras. One should examine its essence and purposefulness judiciously before adopting it. Even the adoration of true-deity-preceptor and Shastra blindly with passionate worldly intentions has been forbidden. A detailed analysis about the misconceptions about the seven tattvas harboured by the Vyavaharabhasi misbelievers is worth paying attention. The injudicious practices adopted by such persons for attainment of Right Knowledge and Right Conduct have also been thoroughly x-rayed.

A clearcut and indepth analysis of Vyavahar and Nishchay points of views has been attempted while critically examining the misconceptions and practices of misbelievers having false conceptions about both Nishchay and Vyavhar Nayas.

In the description of Misbelievers facing Right Belief, the steps involved in understanding the true nature of Tattvas for attainment of Right Belief are explained at length and the traits and sequential process of five Labhdis which invariably precede the attainment of Right Belief have been thoroughly discussed.

At the end of this chapter it has been emphatically stressed that the aforesaid various types of blemishes and misconceptions are described here not for searching the same in others and censuring them but for giving up such blemishes and misunderstandings if found existing in one's own self.

The Eighth Chapter considers the nature of sermons. The whole Jain literature is divided into four categories from the view point of

subject matter. These are Mythonomy (Prathamanyoga), Aetiology (Karnanuyoga), philosophy (Dravyanuyoga) and Ethology (Charnanuyoga). Though the style and subject matter of each Anuyoga is different from others, yet the objective of all the four Anuyogas is one and the same and it is to inspire jivas to adopt religion in life. The essence of Jain literature cannot be grasped properly without the knowledge of the style of their descriptions. The subject matter of each and its style of interpretation has been described in detail. Each Anuyoga has its purpose, without understanding which many meaningless misgivings crop up. All these have been very well clarified with suitable examples and comparisons. At the end, great stress is laid on the study of Jain literature with particular emphasis on the study of shastras discussing the true nature of the soul and the seven tattvas, etc., because therein lies the main purpose of the soul.

In the Ninth Chapter starts the discussions of the nature of the path of liberation. After judiciously providing the hollowness of worldly pleasures and pondering over the existence of real bliss in the state of liberation, it has been well established that attainment of liberation is possible only through one's own real efforts. One should, therefore, himself make right efforts in this direction without expecting any help from others. Then starts a detailed discussion of the first step in the path of liberation, viz Right Belief and its various definitions available in the four Anuyogas. The misconceptions about the seeming difference in the approach of the for Anuyogas in defining Right Belief have been clearly removed with the help of suitable examples and a synthesis between the same has been established. The nature of the seven tattvas whose correct knowledge is essential in the attainment of Right Belief has been discussed at length. The concluding lines of this chapter contain an attempt to lay stress on the eight qualities of Right Belief and avoidance of the twenty-five blemishes but this attempt has remained incomplete.

It is a pity that this great personality who was never attracted towards amassing physical comforts and worldly achievements,

became a prey of communal hatred and consequently had to sacrifice his life prematurely.

It is extremely difficult and unbecoming for illustrious persons to tread the trodden path, but fewer are such personalities who find their own path and yet do not go astray. Acharyakalpa pandit Todarmalji was one such person who did not adopt the trodden path and yet did not go astray.

The present work Moksha Marg Prakashak is to be read and digested from beginning to end. Its study and contemplation on issues raised herein are profoundly beneficial for all the seekers of self-realisation. Panditji himself has expressed this earnest desire at the end of each chapter. Keeping in mind those persons who are wasting this precious opportunity of human existence in amassing and enjoying objects of sensual pleasures only and not availing of the opportunity of evolving knowledge of the self-soul Panditji writes :

"As for example - if a miraculous and precious diamond is offered to an extremely pauper person for looking at it but he refuses even to look at it and if a cup of nectar is offered to a leper for drinking but he refuses to drink it, similarly, if a mundane miserable jiva gets an opportunity to listen to an easy discourse on path of liberation (and of studying such simple book written in the spoken language), but he refuses to pay attention to it, then it is not possible for us to describe the glory of his misfortune. When we ponder over his future, a compassionate feeling only arises in us."

There can be no better end to my thoughts beyond the above inspiring words of Pandit Todarmalji.

**J.L. Jain**



## **SPECIALITY OF JAINISM**

Jainism more than any other creed gives absolute religious independence and freedom to man. Nothing can intervene between the actions which we do and the fruits thereof, Once done, they become our masters and must fruitfy. As my independence is great, so my responsibility is coexistensive with it. I can live as I like, but my choice is irrevocable, and I cannot escape the consequences of it. This principle distinguishes Jainism from other religions; e.g. Christianity, Muhammadanism. Hinduism. No God or his prophet or deputy or beloved can interfere with human life. The soul, and it alone is directly and necessarily responsible for that it does.

- Jugmander Lal Jain, Outlines of Jainism, pp.344

### **RIDDLE OF THE CREATION**

The first question, which arises in connection with the idea of Creation is, why should God make the world at all? One system suggests, that he wanted to make the world, because it pleased him to do so; another, that he felt lonely and wanted company; a third, that he wanted to create beings who would praise his glory and worship, a fourth that he does it in sport and so on.

Why should it please the creator to create a world where sorrow and pain are the inevitable lot of the majority of his creatures? Why should he not make happier beings to keep him company?

(It is really a most unchallengeable argument - written by Barrister Champat Rai Jain, Key of knowledge, p. 135)

### **SUPREME JUDGEMENT**

"In conclusion let me assert my conviction that Jainism is an original system, quite distinct and independent from all others and that, therefore, it is of great importance for the study of philosophical thought and religious life in ancient India" - Dr. Harman Jaikobi, read his paper in the 3rd International Congress of the History of Religions.

### **FRUIT OF AHIMSA**

"The complete and flawless practice of Ahimsa raises the man to Godhood. It gives light, provides delight and bestows might to its faithful and honest aspirant."

Gandhiji aspired to practise highest type of Ahimsa by becoming a nude Jain Monk (Muni). When Churvhill had rebuked Gandhiji by calling him A Naked Fakir', he had informed Churchill 'I would love to be a naked fakir, but I am not one yet'.

- The life of M.K. Gandhi, L. Fisher, p. 473





**Obeisance to *Siddhas***  
**(Supreme Liberated Souls)**

# **मोक्षमार्ग प्रकाशक**

## **MOKSHA MARG PRAKASHAK**

**( The Illuminator of the Path of Liberation )**

By  
**Acharyakalp Pt. Todarmalji, Jaipur**

### **CHAPTER 1**

#### **PROLOGUE**

Now, the sacred book titled 'Moksha Marg Prakashak'  
(the illuminator of the path of liberation) is being written.

#### **मंगलाचरण** **(BENEDICTION)**

दोहा : मंगलमय मंगलकरण, वीतराग विज्ञान ।  
नमौं ताहि जातैं भये, अरहंतादि महान ॥ १ ॥  
करि मंगल करिहौं महा, ग्रंथकरन को काज ।  
जातैं मिले समाज सब, पावै निजपद राज ॥ २ ॥

The science of non-attachment (passionlessness) is all blissful and cause of bliss; I bow to that science by virtue of which the *Arhantas and Siddhas* (Omniscient Gods) have attained the supreme

state. Having made obeisance; I (Todarmal) endeavour to write this sacred book which may be instrumental in the manifestation of all spiritual traits and help achieve the state of self rule.

Now begins the sacred book titled *Moksha Marg Prakashak* (illuminator of the path of liberation). The hymn of adoration follows:

णमो अरहंताणं, णमो सिद्धाणं, णमो आयरियाणं ।  
णमो उवज्झायाणं, णमो लोए सव्वसाहूणं ॥

*Namo Arhantanam, Namo Siddhanam, Namo Aairiyanam,  
Namo Uvajjhayanam, Namo Loye Savva Sagoonam.*

This is *Namaskar-mantra* (benedictory incantation) in Prakrit language and is extremely blissful. Its sanskrit version is as follows:

नमोऽर्हद्भ्यः, नमः सिद्धेभ्यः, नमः आचार्येभ्यः, नमः उपाध्यायेभ्यः,  
नमो लोके सर्व साधुभ्यः ।

*Namo Arhadbhyah, Namah Siddhebhyah, Namah  
Acharyebhyah, Namah Upadhyayebhyah, Namo Loke Sarva  
Sadhubhyah*

Its meaning is thus :-Obeisance to *Arhanta* Gods (adorable embodied omniscients), obeisance to *Siddha* Gods (Liberated disembodied omniscients), obeisance to *Aacharyas* (Chief preceptors of congregation of ascetics-monks), obeisance to *Upadhyayas* (teacher monks, preceptors), obeisance to all *Sadhus* (monks) (completely possessionless naked monks) in the universe. Thus in this *mantra* the obeisance (*Namaskar*) is offered, hence it is called *Namaskar Mantra*. Now we ponder over their distinguishing characteristics (differentias) :

### Characteristics of *Arhantas*

First, we ponder over the characteristics of the *Arhantas*. He (the true believer)who having renounced the house-holder's life and accepted monk's conduct (ascetic-life) has destroyed the four *Ghati Karmas* (obscuring *karmas*) through immersion in one's own soul's intrinsic-nature and in him are manifested the highest attributes of four infinities. Through infinite knowledge *Anant-Jnan* (omniscience) he knows directly clearly all substances *Jiva*, etc., simultaneously together with their infinite attributes and modifications;

through infinite perception *Anant-Darshan* (omni-perception) perceives all these substances in general (undifferentiatedly); through infinite energy *Anant Virya* he always holds such potency (of knowing & seeing); through infinite bliss (*Anant Sukha*) he experiences imperturbable supreme bliss of beatitude. Further, who has attained the state of perfect serenity and peace by freeing oneself from all sorts of impure dispositions like attachment-aversion etc. and has achieved the state of supreme God of gods by becoming free from hunger, thirst, etc., (birth, death, etc.) all sorts of physical maladies and whose body has turned into a supernatural *Param-Audarika* body having no weapon or clothing and is devoid of censurable signs and symptoms of sex-feeling, anger, etc. foul dispositions and emotions and by whose sermons the *Dharma-Tirtha* (the conduction of true religious path) prevails in the universe, by means of which the mundane beings attain welfare of the self; and who is found possessing different glories (wonders) and greatnesses which are the cause for worldly people to believe in his supreme lordship and who is adored by the great personages like *Indras* (heaven's gods) and *Ganadharas* (the highest rank of monks' order) etc., for their own spiritual benefit; thus adorable in all respects is *Shri Arhanta Deva* – to Him I (Todarmal) offer my salutation.

### **Characteristics of Siddhas (Liberated Souls)**

Now, we meditate on the characteristics of *Siddhas* (liberated disembodied omniscients). He (the true believer) who having renounced the house-holder's life and by following the monk's conduct has attained the four infinities (infinite knowledge perception, bliss and energy) on destruction of four *Ghati karmas* (*obscuring karmas*), and after lapse of some time, on destruction of the four *Aghati Karmas* (*Non-obscuring Karmas*) also, quitting the supernatural body, he reached at the summit of the universe by virtue of upward-motion nature; there he attained the perfect liberated state by getting release from the association of all foreign substances and whose soul's spatial units retained the shape of human form i.e., a little less than the final body; and whose counter-effect producing *karmas* got destroyed, hence all spiritual attributes like right belief-knowledge-perception, etc., got fully manifested in their natural states and

whose attachment with *Nokarmas*, (body etc.) has ended; hence the immateriality etc., all spiritual traits, got manifested and whose *Bhavakarmas* (psychic impure dispositions like attachment-aversion, etc.) are destroyed, hence the manifestation of imperturbable wholly-blissful form of pure self-nature is continuing incessantly and by whose meditation the capable souls (*Bhavya-Jivas*) attain the discriminative-knowledge of the self-substance and non-self-substances and of alien impure dispositions (evolving due to rise of *Karmas*) and natural pure dispositions (evolved in the absence of *karmas*) and by virtue of which the means of attaining *Siddhahood* is achieved. Therefore, for attaining one's own pure nature which is only worth attaining, they (the *Siddhas*) serve as images for exhibiting it and who have become *kritkritiya* (attained the supreme attainable), hence continue to dwell in such (a perfect blissful) state infinitely; our salutations to such accomplished *Siddhas*.

### **General Characteristics of Jaina Monks : *Acharya, Upadhyaya and Sadhus***

Now, we look into the characteristics of *Acharya, Upadhyaya & Sadhu* (all possessionless naked Jaina monks) :

He (the right believer) who having become dispassionate and indifferent to worldly pleasures, relinquished all kinds of possessions and attachments and accepted *Shuddhopayoga* (pure passionless conduct of self-absorption) form of monk's conduct, experiences internally through that *Shuddhopayoga* his own self to be the self-soul only; never feels I-ness in other objects and believes one's own sentient nature only as one's own, never feels mineness in alien dispositions, and whatever other substances and their characteristics appear in knowledge, he, of course, knows them but does not have attachment-aversion feelings in them by treating them as agreeable or disagreeable; the body undergoes different changes, various instrumental causes get associated externally but (in those situations) he does not feel happy or unhappy at all, and the external (bodily) activity suitable to his (spiritual) status takes place in natural course, he does not involve himself in it forcibly, and he does not allow his *Upayoga*'(active consciousness) to deviate or ramble too



much, he rather holds deviationless (stable) condition by becoming stoical and dispassionate. And, occasionally, due to rise of mild-passion, *Shubhopayoga* (auspicious thought activity) is also caused, owing to which he gets inclined towards the external means of *Shuddhopayoga* but knowing such inclination also to be relinquishable, wishes to uproot it. And due to the absence of rise of intense passions there exists no *Ashubhopayoga* (inauspicious thought activity) of indulging in violence, etc., and having attained such an internal state of self, he has accepted the *Digamber* posture (totally possessionless naked state) of quietude and serenity, has become free from the acts of decorating the body, etc., lives in forest, caves etc., follows unbreachedly 28 *Moolgunas* (basic rites), endures 22 types of *Parishahas* (afflictions), adores 12 kinds of *Tapas* (penances), sometimes becomes motionless like an idol by holding the meditation-posture, sometimes engages himself in external pious activities such as study of scriptures etc, sometimes attentively engages oneself in food-taking and making movement, etc., which activities are fit for him for the sake of maintaining the body, being the associating cause of *Muni Dharma* (monk's religion).

Such is the state of a Jaina-monk and this applies to all Jaina monks

### **Characteristics of Acharya (Chief of Congregation of Monks)**

Among them (in the group of above monks) he, who has become the leader of a congregation of monks by acquiring the chief rank by virtue of the excellence in right belief, right knowledge and right conduct and who chiefly remains engrossed in *Nirvikalpa Swaroopaacharan* (unrambling state of pure, passionless conduct of the self), and when he has compassionate feeling due to rise of slight mild attachment, preaches sermons to only those *Jivas* who pray for and are curious for religion; he administers *Deeksha* (renunciation-vow) to those who want to accept asceticism, and purifies by the process of expiation those who admit their faults.

I bow to such an ascetic chief monk *Acharya* who admonishes such kind of spiritual conduct .

### **Characteristics of *Upadhyaya* (Preceptor Monk)**

And (the Jaina-monk) who having obtained the knowledge of various Jain-*Shastras* (scriptures) has been installed as the authority of teaching and preaching in the congregation of the monks and who by knowing the purposeful meaning of all the *Shastras* (sacred books of Jains) meditates concentratedly upon the nature of the self (soul) and, if sometimes, due to rise of slight mild-passion, his *upayoga* (active-knowledge) does not remain fixed in the self, then he himself reads the *Shastras* and teaches other religious-minded people.

I bow to such an *Upadhyaya monk'* who teaches *Bhavya Jivas* (souls capable of attaining liberation).

### **Characteristics of *Sadhu* (Ascetic Monk)**

Further, excepting the preceding above two types of rank-holders, the rest are all those who hold monk's rank and are engrossed in attaining the nature of the soul and do not ramble their *Upayoga* (active consciousness) in other substances by treating them agreeable or disagreeable, thus they try to tranquillize the *Upayoga* and externally observe religious penances, rituals, etc., as being instrumental cause and sometimes engage themselves in invocation, obeisance and such other activities.

Such are the true Jaina monks who incessantly make efforts for the realisation of the self soul; I bow to all such ascetic monks.

### **Purpose of Adoration**

Thus is the nature of *Arhantas*, etc., it is full of passionlessness with perfect knowledge. By means of that only, the *Arhantas*, etc., are supreme and worthy of invocation and adoration. Because from *Jiva Tattva* (sentient-being) point of view, all *Jivas* (souls) are alike but because of attachment, etc., psychic maladies and feeble knowledge, *Jivas* become censurable and due to lessening of attachment, etc., and increase of knowledge deserve adoration; so in *Arhantas* and *Siddhas* due to complete absence of attachment, etc., and perfectness of knowledge, the manifestation of absolute passionlessness

with perfect knowledge (omniscience) is possible. And in *Acharyas*, *Upadhyayas* and *Sadhus* i.e., in all real *Digamber* Jain monks, due to partial lessening of attachment, etc., and speciality of knowledge, the manifestation of partial passionlessness with discriminative right knowledge is possible. Hence *Arhantas* etc. are to be known as Supreme, worthy of invocation and adoration.

Further, it should be remembered that amongst these *Arhantas* etc., (five ranks) mainly *Tirthankaras* and generally all omniscients are termed *Arhanta* in *Prakrit* and *Arhat* in *Sanskrit*. And just after the last moment of fourteenth *Gunasthana* (stage of spiritual development) the *Arhantas* become *Siddhas*. Further, those monks who have been installed as *Acharyas* irrespective of whether they live in the congregation of monks or solitarily do self-mediation or live solivagantly or might have attained the rank of *Gandhara* by getting principalship among the *Acharyas* also, all of them are called *Acharyas*. Further, reading & teaching work is done by other monks too but those on whom *Upadhyaya* rank of monk is conferred by *Acharyas*, they only, even besides doing the work of self-meditation etc., get the name of *Upadhyaya*. And all those monks who do not possess any rank are called *Sadhus*.

Here, there is no such rule that *Acharya's* rank is attained or termed by observing *Panchaachara* (five types of observances), *Upadhyaya's* rank by doing teaching-preaching and *Sadhu's* rank by practising *Moolgunas* (basic-rites) because these observances, rites, etc., are common to all monks, but from the *Shabda-Naya* (verbalistic standpoint) their literal meaning is derived so. From *Samabhirudha-Naya* (conventional standpoint) the *Acharya* etc. names are to be known by the graduation of ranks only. As for example, by *Shabda Naya*, that which moves is called the 'cow', likewise the human beings, etc., also make the movement but from *Samabhirudha Naya* the names are so given from the *Paryaya* (embodied state) point of view. Similarly, one must understand here also.

**Question:** What is the reason of offering salutation to *Arhantas* prior to *Siddhas*?

**Answer:** Salutation is offered with the object of getting our purpose accomplished and because the purpose of sermons etc.,

chiefly gets accomplished from the *Arhantas*, therefore, the salutation is offered first to them.

Thus, the characteristics of *Arhantas*, etc., have been reflected on, because by reflecting on their characteristics the specific object gets accomplished. Further, these *Arhantas*, etc., are called *Panch-Parmeshtis* (the five utmost beneficial Supreme souls) because that which is utmost beneficial is named as *Parameshta*. The *Panch* (five) who are *Parameshta* are thus collectively named and called *Panch Parmeshtis*.

Further, *Rishabha, Ajita, Sambhava, Abhinandana, Sumati, Padmaprabha, Suparshva, Chandraprabha, Pushpadant, Sheetal, Shreyansa, Vasupujya, Vimal, Ananta, Dharma, Shanti, Kunthu, Ara, Malli, Munisuvrat, Nami, Nemi, Parshva, Wardhamana* – so named 24 *Tirthankaras* – have been the pioneers of the presently existing *Dharma Tirtha* (spiritual voyage) in this *Bharat-Kshetra*; they are specifically adored by *Indras* (heavenly gods), etc., during their attaining auspicious occasions of conception, birth, asceticism, omniscience and salvation, and are now situated in *Siddhalaya* (the abode of liberated souls at the summit of the universe); I bow to them all.

Further, *Seemandhara, Yugamandhara, Bahu, Subahu, Samjataka, Swayamprabh, Vrishabhanana, Ananta-virya, Surprabha, Vishalkirti, Vajradhara, Chandranana, Chandrabahu, Bhujangama, Ishwara, Nemiprabha, Veersena, Mahabhadra, Devayash, Ajitvirya* - so named 20 *Tirthankaras* - who are at present situated with omniscience in *Videhakshetras* of *Panch-merus* (the five highest mounts), I bow to them all.

Although these are included in the *Parameshtis* rank, nevertheless, in the present time, knowing their significance and supremacy, salutation is offered separately.

Further, the naturally existing unartificial idols of *Jinas* (*Arhantas*) that are situated in *Triloka* (three worlds of the universe) and the artificial '*Jinas*' idols that are installed with ritual-ceremony in the middle world, whose *Darshan* (sighting and invocation) etc., only, even without getting any (discernible) sermon from them, the accomplishment of our benediction takes place as is accomplished



by the *Darshan* of *Tirthankara-Kewali* (embodied omniscients); I bow to all these '*Jinas*' idols.

Further, the *Anga-prakeernakas* (the sacred scriptures containing omniscient's commandments) created by *Ganadharas* according to the sermons given in *Divya-dhwani* (omniscient's preachings) and according to those (*Anga-Prakeernakas*) the *Granthas* (sacred books) written by other *Acharyas* etc., all those are *Jina-vachanas* (omniscient's preachings) which are worth recognising through the emblem of *Syadvada* (the theory of relative or conditional predication) and are non-contradictory to path of justice, therefore, are authentic and are the cause of *Tattva-Jnana* (true knowledge of substances) for *Jivas*, therefore, are beneficial; I bow to them.

Further, the *Chaityalaya* (Jina's temple), *Aaryika* (Jaina-nun), *Shravaka* (the right-faithed house-holder) of the highest vows and rank, etc., substances (*Dravyas*), the *Tirthankshetras* i.e., sacred pilgrimatic places, etc., lands (*Kshetras*), the *Kalyanaka-Kalas* (benedictory periods) etc., periods (*Kalas*) and *Ratnatraya* (right faith-knowledge and conduct), etc., pure dispositions (*Bhavas*) which are worth saluting, I bow to all of them. And I pay due respect to them also who deserve some respect. Thus the invocation is done by giving due respect to our benefactors.

Now we discuss as to how these *Arhantas*, etc., are the benefactors. The purpose (objective) is the name of that act or deed due to which happiness is obtained and misery is ended, and that by means of which the accomplishment of the purpose takes place is our benefactor. Presently, obtaining the passionless discriminative-knowledge, is the purpose, because by means of that imperturbable real happiness is attained and all sorrows and miseries, which are full of perplexities are ended.

### **Accomplishment of Purpose from Arhantas, etc.**

Further the accomplishment of this purpose takes place by the invocation, etc., of *Arhantas*, etc.; how does it take place? This is being discussed :-

The dispositions of the soul are of three types:- cruel (inauspicious), ingenuous (auspicious) and pure (passionless). The instincts

in the form of intense passion are cruel, in the form of mild-passion are ingenuous and passionless are pure. The destroyer of our natural-character of the form of passionless discriminative-knowledge are the *Jnanavarana*, etc., *Ghati Karmas* (knowledge, etc., obscuring karmas); their intense bondage occurs by cruel instincts and feeble-bondage by ingenuous instincts and if the ingenuous instincts are strong then the intense-bondage that had occurred in the past also gets feebled. No bondage is caused by pure (passionless) dispositions; rather only dissociation (*Nirjara*) of those *karmas* takes place. The dispositions of invocations to *Arhantas*, etc., are assuredly of the nature of feebled passions; those are, therefore, the ingenuous instincts. Moreover, they are the means of destroying all sorts of passions, therefore, are the cause of pure (passionless) dispositions; so by such instincts the self-obscuring *Ghati-Karmas* become feeble and the passionless discriminative-knowledge gets naturally evolved. The extent to which it becomes feeble, to the same extent (degrees) this gets evolved. Thus our purpose is accomplished by *Arhantas*, etc.

Or the acts like looking (sighting) at the image of *Arhantas*, or pondering over their nature, or listening to their preachings (revelation), or being closer to them, or following the path according to their preachings, instantly reduce the delusion, attachment, etc., by becoming instrumental causes and give rise to discriminative-knowledge of *Jiva* (soul), *Ajiva* (non-soul), etc. Therefore, in this way also the purpose of passionless discriminative-knowledge gets accomplished by *Arhantas*, etc.

Here some one may say that 'Well, such objective (purpose) gets fulfilled by them, but "that by which the sensual pleasure evolves and misery ends" - such objective is also achieved by them or not?

**Answer :** The ingenuous instincts of the form of invocation etc. towards *Arhantas*, etc., cause the bondage of *Sata*, etc., pleasure-producing type of *Aghati* (non-obscuring) *karmas* and if those instincts are powerful, then they reduce the *Asata*, etc., misery producing-type of *karmas* bonded in the past, or by destroying, converts them into *Punya* – the pleasure producing type of *karmas* and on rise of that *Punya* (auspicious *karma*) the objects causing sensual pleasure become available on their own, and on removal of the rise of

*Papa* (inauspicious *Karma*) the objects causing misery vanish automatically.

In this way this purpose is also attained through them. Or *Devas* (celestial beings) who are devotees of *Jina-Shasana* (Omniscient rule), they make the objects of sensual-pleasure available to that devotee and remove the objects of misery. In this way also this purpose is attained through those *Arhantas*, etc., But by this purpose no good of the self (soul) takes place, because due to passionate emotions the soul makes conjectures of happiness-unhappiness by considering the external objects good or bad. Without passions, the external objects do not cause any pleasure or pain. And all passions are full of misery, therefore, desiring for sensual pleasures and fearing from miseries is nothing but fallacy.

Further, for this purpose, even adoring *Arhantas*, etc., being intense passion, causes bondage of inauspicious *karmas* (*Papa-Bandha*); soliciting this purpose is not desirable for us. By adoration of *Arhantas*, etc., such purposes are automatically accomplished.

Thus *Arhantas*, etc., are *Parameshta* (the utmost beneficial) for us. Further, those *Arhantas*, etc., only are the supreme auspice - *Mangala* and having adoration (invocation) feeling in them causes great auspice. *Mang* means happiness, *lati* means bestows. Or *Mam* means sins *Galyati* means melts away; that is called *Mangala* (auspice). Thus, as mentioned above, both purposes are accomplished by them, therefore, supreme auspiciousness is possible in them.

### **Purpose of Observing Benediction (*Mangalaacharan*)**

Here someone asks "What is the purpose of benediction right in the beginning of the book?"

**Answer :** Completing the book happily without any disturbance due to rise of evil (*Papa*) *karmas* is the object of performing benediction *Mangalaacharan* in the beginning.

**Question :** The people of other faiths who do not make obeisance like this, in their case also, the completion of book and non-occurrence of disturbance is seen, how is it so?

**Answer :** The people of other faiths who write books, they, due to rise of intense delusion, keep self-contradictory words and meanings in them which nourish the erroneous faith and passionless instincts; hence its disturbanceless completion is possible even without such obeisance. If by such obeisance delusion becomes feeble, how would then such contradictory work be accomplished? And I am also writing this book; by virtue of feeble-passion, I will keep (write) in it the words nourishing the passionless science of *Tattovas* (essential-principles); its disturbanceless completion is possible only by performing such an obeisance. If such an obeisance is not done then the intensity of delusion will persist; how would then such noble act be possible?

Further, he says “well this is acceptable but he who does not perform such obeisance, is also seen to be happy, the rise of sinful *karmas* is not seen and someone who performs such obeisance in him also happiness is not seen, rather the rise of sinful *karmas* is found; therefore, how is the aforesaid auspiciousness possible?

The cruel (intense) and ingenuous (mild) instincts of *Jivas* are of many types. The *karmas* bounded by them in the past in different times rise at one time. Therefore, for example, one who had accumulated lot of wealth in the past is found possessing wealth without earning and is not seen in debt and the one who had taken lot of debt in the past is found indebted even while earning wealth and wealth is not seen, but on thinking one finds that earning is always the cause of wealth only and not of debt. Similarly, the one who had bounded lot of auspicious *karmas* in the past, he is seen possessed of happiness even without performing such obeisance and the rise of sinful *karmas* is not seen and the one who had bounded lot of sinful *karmas* in the past he is not seen possessed of happiness even after performing such obeisance and the rise of sinful *karmas* is seen but on thinking one finds that performing of such obeisance is assuredly the cause of happiness and not of the rise of sinful *karmas*. Thus the auspiciousness of aforesaid obeisance is established.

Again he says, “this too is accepted; but why the *Devas* (celestial beings) who are the devotees of *Jina-Shasana* (omniscients-rule) did not help the one who observed the obeisance and did not punish the one who did not observe the obeisance?



**Answer :** The predominating factor of *Jivas* getting pleasure and pain is the rise of their own *karmas*; according to that only the external instrumental causes are met with, so the one whose sinful *karmas* are in rise (operative state) does not get help-rendering cause and the one whose pious (auspicious) *karmas* are in rise (operative state) does not get the punishment rendering cause.

How such instrumental cause is not met with, is being explained:

The *Devas* (celestial beings) can not know everything simultaneously due to *Kshayopashama Jnan* (destruction cum subsidence type of knowledge) hence knowing of the person observing obeisance and the one not observing obeisance takes place rarely to some celestial being etc; so if they do not know them, how could they help or punish? And if they know them then if their (*Devas*) passion be extremely feeble, then the instinct of helping or punishing does not arise and if the passion be intense then religious feeling can not arise and if the passion for involvement in such act be of average degrees and one may not have power then what can he do? In this way, the instrumental cause of rendering help or giving punishment does not materialise.

If one has capacity and due to rise of passion of average order has compassionate feeling also and in such states he should also be knowing pious-impious form of duty towards other *Jiva* then some celestial being etc. helps some pious fellow – or punishes some impious fellow. Thus there is no set rule for such action.

It is to be understood here that the desire of being happy, not being miserable, seeking help, creating trouble - all that is full of passion, is painful instantly as well as in future; therefore, discarding such desire and being aspirant of passionless-science only, I have observed obeisance to *Arhantas* etc. in the form of invocation etc.

### **Authenticity of This Book and Scriptural Tradition**

After such obeisance, the meaningful book named *Moksha Marg Prakashak* is being written. There, for proving and establishing the fact that 'this book is authentic', the old tradition is being followed and explained thus :

'A' etc. alphabetic letters, are eternal and not created by any body. Writing of their shapes is of many types as per one's will but the spoken alphabets are always found used alike everywhere. Therefore, it is said "सिद्धो वर्णसामान्यः"। The meaning of this is that the group (tradition) of alphabets is self-existent and created from those alphabets are the words which render true meaning (of the objects), the name of their group is the *Shruta* (scripture), so that also is eternal. As *Jiva* - this is an eternal word, it indicates the *Jiva* (the soul substance). Thus there are various words capable of rendering their own true meanings; the group of those words is to be known as *Shruta* (scripture). Further, as the pearls are self-existent, out of those someone taking a few pearls, someone taking many pearls produces the ornaments by arranging them in the way he likes. Similarly, the words are self-existent, out of those someone taking a few words, someone taking many words produces the book by arranging them in the way he likes. Here I am also going to create a book by arranging those words conveying true meanings as per my knowledge. I am not going to keep in this book the words conveying false meaning imagined by me. Hence, this book is authentic.

**Question :** How does the tradition of those words exist up to the creation of this book?

**Answer :** Since eternity *Kevali Tirthankaras* are being found; they know each and every thing; hence they know those words and their meaning also. Further through *Divya Dhvani* (revelation) of those omniscient *Tirthankaras* such discourses are found by virtue of which other *Jivas* (capable souls) attain the knowledge of words and their meanings; according to that *Gandhara-Devas* (Head *Acharyas* monks) create the *Granthas* (sacred books) in the form of *Anga-Prakeernakas* and according to those books other *Acharyas* prepare various types of books. Some people study them, some narrate them, some listen to them. Thus, the traditional path continues.

Now in this *Bharat-Kshetra* presently the *Avasarpini-Kala* is prevailing. During this time 24 *Tirthankaras* were born; amongst them *Shri Wardhamana Swami* was the last *Tirthankara*. He being omniscient, preached *Jivas* (all living beings) through the medium of *Divya-Dhwani* (divine-speech). Through the instrumentality of

the opportunity of listening to it, the *Ganadhara Acharya* named *Gautam* having known its subtle and intricate meaning composed the *Anga-Prakeernakas* (Sacred books) out of compassionate feeling. Thereafter, *Wardhamana Swami* attained salvation. After some time in this fifth era, three *Kevalis* (omniscients) were found: (1) *Gautam* (2) *Sudharmaacharya* (3) *Jambu Swami*. Thereafter, due to bad times, occurrence of omniscients stopped, but for some time *Shruta-Kevalis* (the knowers of all 12 *Angas*, i.e. complete scripture) were available and thereafter their-availability also came to an end. Further for some time more the knowers of a few *Angas* only were found. Later on their availability too came to an end. Thereafter, the *Acharyas* wrote scriptures (sacred books) on the basis of scriptures written by *Anga-knowers*. In this tradition more scriptures were written and their prevalence continued. In them also, due to bad times, many books (*Granthas*) were destroyed by wicked persons and due to discontinuance of study, the important books (*Granthas*) were lost, but some of the great *Granthas* are still found; because of feeble knowledge their study became difficult. For example, in south India near *Gommatta Swami* (*Shravanbelgola*) in Moodbidri town (near *Mangalore*) the *Dhawala*, *Mahadhawala*, *Jai Dhawala*, etc. *Granthas* are existing but are available for adoration (*Darshan*) only. However, many other *Granthas* which are still available are within the reach of our knowledge for study but amongst them too only a few *Granthas* are being studied. Thus, in these bad times the highest Jaina religion underwent the state of downfall, but through this tradition even now in *Jaina-Shastras* (sacred books of Jains) the existence of words conveying true meaning is continuing.

### A Word About This Book

Here in this era, I have now got human-birth. In this birth, I developed interest in study of *Jain-Shastras* owing to my past (religious) impressions and present good luck. Due to which after studying in general the useful books on grammar, logic, mathematical science, etc., I have been studying as per my intellect and understanding the following various *Shastras* (Sacred books) with their commentaries.

(1) *Samayasara*, *Panchastikaya*, *Pravachansara*, *Niyama-sara*, *Tattvarth sutra*, etc. (*Shastras* of *Dravyanuyoga*, the metaphysics).

(2) *Gommatasara, Labdhisara, Triloksara, Kshapanasara, etc. (Shastras of Karananuyoga-aetiology)* (3) *Purushartha-Siddhyupaya, Ashtapahuda, Atmanushasana* etc. and books describing the code of conduct laid for *Shravakas* (householders) and *Munis* (naked possessionless monks) (the *Shastras of Charananuyoga*, i.e. Ethology) and (4) Mythological scriptures containing stories of the brave personages leading to salvation path, etc. (*Shastras of Prathamanyoga*).

By virtue of that I too have attained some knowledge of true words with their true meanings.

Moreover, in this bad period of downfall, many people are seen possessing knowledge poorer than my feeble knowledge. They too may obtain the knowledge of these words with their meaning - keeping this point in view, I made up my mind to write this book in spoken language out of compassionate feeling. This is the reason for writing this book. In this book also the same words with their true meanings are interpreted. The only speciality is that as in the *Prakrit Sanskrit* books the words (sentences) are written in *Prakrit-Sanskrit*; similarly, here I am writing in country's spoken language either with *Apbhransha* or with their exact form but there is no adulteration in the meanings of the words.

Thus the tradition of those true words exists up to this book also.

### **Negation of Writing False Words**

Someone asks here - we have known in this way the tradition, but how could we believe that in this tradition, only the right words with their exact meanings were written and were not intermingled with false words?

**Answer :** Composing of false words is not possible without intense passion, because due to such false composition by which many *Jivas* may be badly harmed traditionally and as a consequence of such a great injury, the self will have to go to hellish and *Nigoda*\* form of life - such a great sinful act is possible only on being empowered by the intensest anger, pride, deceit and greed

---

\**Nigoda* - inferiorest one sensed beings undergoing 18 times births and deaths in one respiration.

passions; but in Jain religion such a highly passionate person does not take birth.

The first basic preceptor *Tirthankara* - *Kewali* (the omni-scient) is free from all passions due to complete annihilation of *Moha* (delusion and attachment, etc. ). Next originators of *Shastras* are the *Ganadharas* and *Acharyas* who because of feeble rise of *Moha karma* (attachment) have forsaken all sorts of external and internal possessions; hence are extremely dispassionate. Owing to the presence of feeble passion in them they are found possessed with somewhat proclivity of *Shubhopayoga* (auspicious thought activity) and no other purpose is found. And if the right-faithed *Shravakas* (householders) also compose the *Shastras*, they too are not highly passionate; if they had intense passions how could they cultivate interest in *Jina-Dharma* (Jainism) which is the destroyer of all sorts of passions by all means ? Or, if someone owing to the rise of perverse faith, nourishes the passions by other (temporal) deeds, he may do so but by going against *Jina's* preachings (Maxims), if he nourishes one's passions, he loses Jain-identity.

Thus, in Jainism such a highly passionate person is not found, who shall by composing false words, spoil others as well as his own lot in this birth and the births hereafter.

**Question :** If someone "so-called" *Jaina* under the influence of intense passion mixes false words in *Jain Shartras* and then his tradition continues, what to do in such case?

**Answer:** As someone mixes artificial pearls in the ornament of real pearls but the shining does not match, so by examining it the examiner does not get cheated also, except the ignorant one who gets cheated in the name of real pearls, and his tradition also does not continue; soon someone starts disapproving the artificial pearls. Similarly, in the *Jain-Shastras* which are a collection (treatise) of true words, someone may intermix false words, but the purpose shown in the words of *Jain-Shastras* is of uprooting the passions and of reducing worldly affairs. And the false words which are intermixed by that sinful person, serve the purpose of nourishing the passions and accomplishing the worldly affairs. Thus the purpose does not match; therefore, after examination, the wise person is not cheated.



The ignorant alone gets cheated by the name of *Jain-Shastra* and his tradition also does not continue, rather someone immediately contradicts the false words.

The other aspect is this that such highly-passioned, the so-called Jains, are found here in this bad time only; many good regions and periods are also there wherein such people are not found. Therefore, it should be understood that in *Jaina-Shastras* the tradition of false words does not continue.

Further, he asks that one may not mix false words out of passions but since the scripture-writers possess *Kshayopashama Jnan*, therefore, if due to miscomprehension someone mixes wrong words then his tradition may continue ?

**Answer :** The basic scripture composers are *Ganadhara Devas* (Chief *Acharyas*); they themselves possess four kinds of knowledges and they listen to omniscient's divine speech (*Divya-Dhwani*) directly; by virtue of its glory (divineness) the right meaning only is comprehended and accordingly they compose the *Shastras*; therefore how can the false words be entwined in those *Shastras*? And the other *Acharyas*, etc. who compose the *Shastras* they also possess the right knowledge as per their capacity and they compose the *Shastras* by following the tradition of the original scriptures. Moreover, they do not compose those words which are not known to them and compose only those words which are well-comprehended by them with the authenticity of right knowledge. So, firstly by taking such due precautions, the false words are not intermixed and sometimes if they themselves have mis-comprehended the meaning of the words of original text (scripture) and also it may appear to be right in their knowledge then there is no escape but this happens with someone rarely and not with all, therefore, those who have comprehended it rightly, they, by negating the same, do not allow the wrong tradition to continue.

Further, let it be known that the rightfaithed Jains do not have misconception about *Deva-Guru-Dharma* etc. and *Jiva-Ajiva*, etc. Tattvas by the misconception of which the *Jivas* become miserable; these are prominently described in the *Jaina-Shastras*. And there are some such deep meanings which may even be misconceived under

illusion but because of faith in omniscients' preachings there will be no spiritual harm to *Jiva*. If out of them someone draws wrong conclusion about some subtle meanings even then it is not his great mistake. The same is said in *Gommattasara*:-

“सम्माइट्ठी जीवो उवइट्ठं पवयणं तु सहहदि ।  
सहहदि असब्भावं अजाणमाणे गुरुणियोगा ॥”  
( जीवकाण्ड गाथा-27 )

**Meaning :** The right believer (*Samyagdrishti-Jiva*) believes in the preached true words and (sometimes) under the instruction of an ignorant teacher, believes also in wrong words.

Moreover, I also do not possess vast knowledge but I am very much afraid of going against the omniscients' preachings; due to the strength of this concept only, I am daring to write this book (shastra). So, in this book also I shall be describing the *Taitvas* exactly in the same way in which these are described in the old texts (*Shastras*). Or if at some places in the old books the description is unelaborated and deep, I shall describe the same here elaborately. In describing in this manner, I shall remain very careful but even besides taking all due precautions if at some place something deeper in meaning gets misinterpreted, it is my humble request to the intellectual savants to correct the same properly. In this way I have decided to write this *Shastra*.

Now, “what types of *Shastras* are worth reading and listening and what kind of discourers and listeners of those *Shastras* should be there”, the same is being described here.

### **Shastras worth Reading & Listening**

Only those *Shastras*, which illuminate the right path of liberation, are worth reading and listening. In this world all living beings are suffering from innumerable kinds of miseries; if through the lamp (light) of *Shastras*, they attain the right path of liberation, then by treading on that path they themselves can be free from those miseries. And that liberation-path is nothing but a passionless disposition. It is, therefore, desirable to read and listen to only those *Shastras* in which the sole purpose of passionlessness has been discoursed by judiciously contradicting delusion, attachment, aver-

sion, etc. And all those *Shastras* wherein the purpose of cultivating attachment feeling by cherishing voluptuousness, merriment, etc., aversion feeling by fostering violent activities, wars etc. and the perverted belief by nourishing the faith in false elements has been advocated are not the *Shastras* but "weapons". Because attachment, aversion, etc. fallacious feelings on account of which the *Jiva* has suffered from miseries from eternity, the tendency of those instincts and feelings was already existing in him oven without imparting any training and if through these *Shastras* the same instincts and feelings are fostered, then what has been preached for the well being of *Jiva* on the contrary it may amount to destruction of the very nature of the soul. Therefore, reading of and listening to such *Shastras* is not desirable.

As has been stated about reading and listening, similarly, one should know about composition, learning, teaching, thinking, writing, etc., by inference.

Thus only those *Shastras* which promote growth of passionlessness either directly or traditionally are only worth studying.

### **Traits of a Discourser**

Now, the traits of a (true) discourser are being described :-  
(1) He must be firm in Jaina-faith; for, if he himself is a misbeliever, how can he make others true believer ? The listerners by themselves possess less intellect, how would he make them true believer through some logic? And the right belief only is the basis of all religion.  
(2) He should have developed the ability to deliver discourses on *Shastras* through the study of scriptures because without attaining such ability how can he be eligible for preachership? (3) Through right knowledge, he should be able to discriminate the gist of all sorts of empirical (*Vyavahara*) and real (*Nishchaya*) etc. forms of expositions; for, if this be not there then if there be some description with some different purpose, there he might draw some other meaning and become instrumental in wrong conduct. (4) He should be very fearful of going against the omniscient's commandment because if this be not so then bearing some purpose in mind he may preach against the '*Sutras*' (Scripture) and create misery for *Jivas*. So is stated below :-

“बहु गुणाविज्जाणिलयो असुत्तभासी तहावि मुत्तव्वो ।

जह वरमणिजुत्तो वि हु विग्घयरो विसहरो लोए ॥” (उ. सि. र. माला)

The one who possesses many virtues like forbearance, modesty, etc. and has knowledge of grammar, etc. but is a perverse discourser (wrong-interpreter) he is worth discarding. For instance, a snake though possessing costliest jewel, yet it is only a source of trouble in the world. (5) He must not have any desire of accomplishing the temporal acts like earning livelihood, etc. by means of giving discourses on *Shastras*; for, if he has expectation then he can not preach (the truth) correctly; he simply makes it a source of accomplishing his objective by giving lectures according to the desire of some listeners. Moreover, the preacher's rank is higher than that of listeners; but, if the preacher be greedy, then the preacher will himself become inferior and the listeners will become superior. (6) He should not have intense anger and pride, because the highly-passioned (angry & haughty) person will be criticized, the listeners will be fearful of him, then how would they be benefitted by him? (7) He should himself raise different questions and provide answers or if other people raise questions many times in different ways, then through soft (sweet) words he should clarify in such a way that their doubt is removed. In case he himself does not have the capacity to answer rightly then he should say that he himself lacks knowledge of it; for, if this be not so, the doubt of the listeners will not be removed. How will then there be good of them? And the glorification of Jaina-faith will also not be possible. (8) He should not indulge in any immoral and publicly censurable activities, for he would become a place of laughter due to indulgence in publicly censurable deeds; who would then trust his words? He will bring bad name to Jaina-faith. (9) He should not be of low caste, not be a crippled fellow, not have hoarse voice, be of sweet tongue, should be influential so that he may be acceptable to the people; for, if it be not so then the orator's greatness will not be reflected in him. The above qualities are essential in the discourser. The same is stated in *Atmanushasana* :-

प्राज्ञः प्राप्तसमस्तशास्त्रहृदयः प्रव्यक्तलोकस्थितिः,  
प्रास्ताशः प्रतिभापरः प्रशमवान् प्रागेव दृष्टोत्तरः ।

प्रायः प्रश्नसहः प्रभुः परमनोहारी परानिन्दया,  
ब्रूयाद्धर्मकथां गणी गुणनिधिः प्रस्पष्टमिष्टाक्षरः ॥ ५ ॥

The one who is brilliant, has grasped the gist of all *Shastras*, is graceful in public life, desire-free, lustrous, dispassionate and one who knows the answer even before the question is raised, should have great forbearance for facing several questions, be influential, could win the hearts of others because of being free from the criticism of others as well as of his own by others, be store of virtues and whose words are clear and sweet - such a leader of the congregation should deliver the discourses.

Further, the special characteristic of a discourser is such that if he knows grammar, logic, etc. and possesses deep knowledge of voluminous *Jaina Shastras* then his oratorship will be more glorious. Moreover, in spite of all these qualities, if he has not acquired self-realisation through spiritual taste, then he is not likely to know the spirit (essence) of *Jina Dharma* (Omniscients' religion), he is a discourser merely tradition-ally. How can he explain the characteristic of the true *Jina Dharma* which is full of spiritual taste ? Therefore, if he be an enlightened self - *Atma-Jnani* then only he is a true preacher. In *Pravachansara* also it is stated that *Agama-Jnana* (knowledge of scripture), *Tattvartha-Sharaddhana* (faith in *Jiva-Ajiva*, etc. essential principles), *Sanyama Bhava* (continence) - these three if are devoid of self-knowledge (*Atma-Jnana*), they are ineffective. Further, in *Doha-Pahuda* it is stated that :-

पंडिय पंडिय पंडिय कण छोडि वि तुम कंडिया ।  
पय अत्थं तुट्टोसि परमत्थ ण जाणइ मूढोसि ॥

“Oh Pandey ! Oh Pandey ! Oh Pandey ! you are leaving the grain thrasing the husk only. You are satisfied in words and their literal meanings, but do not know the reality, therefore, you are assuredly a fool”.

Moreover, in fourteen types of learnings, the metaphysics (spiritual science) is described as to be the supreme of all. Therefore, the discourser who is fond of the taste of spiritual science should be known as the discourser of the mystery of *Jina-Dharma*. Further, the discourser who possess extra-ordinary intellectual power and are possessed of clairvoyance, telepathy, omniscience are to be known as the great preachers. Such should be known the distinctive traits of the discourser.



So, if one gets the association of a discourser possessing these distinctive traits, it is highly beneficial and if not obtained then one ought to listen the *Shastras* from the mouth of those discourses only who possess qualities of right belief, etc. It is desirable to listen to the *Shastras* from the mouth of *Munis* (monks) and *Shravakas* (householders) possessing such characteristics and it is not worth listening the *Shastras* customarily or with the greed of listening the *Shastras* from the mouth of sinful persons, who are not possessed of the right-belief, etc. traits. Also it is said that :-

“तं जिणआणपरेण य धम्मो सोयव्व सुगुरुपासम्मि ।

अह उचिओ सद्धाओ, तस्सुवएसस्स कहगाओ ॥” 23 (अ.सि.र.)

The one who is attentive in obeying the omniscient's commandments, it is worth-while for him to listen to the sermons from (the mouth of) a *Nirgrantha* (naked possessionless) true preceptor monk or should listen to religious discourses from the proper true believer *Shravaka* (householder) who interpretes the sermons of the true preceptor only.

Only such discourser, who preaches with religious attitude, can do good of the self and of other *Jivas* (capable souls) also, and one who preaches with passional attitude, harms himself as well as other *Jivas*.

### Characteristics of Listeners

Now the characteristics of a listener are being described. He whose future seems to be bright thinks “Who am I? What is my inherent nature? How is this all happening to me? What will be the fruit of the thoughts and feelings arising in me? *Jiva* (the self) is suffering from miseries, so what is the means of ending the miseries? I have to find out the solution of all these questions and should do that which is beneficial to me” - with such thoughts he has become active. Believing that this object can be achieved by listening to *Shastras* listens to *Shastras* enthusiastically, asks whatever is to be asked, ponders repeatedly in his innerself over the meaning explained by the preceptors and after determining the true meaning by his own thoughts makes efforts to achieve the desirable - such is the differentia of a new listener.

Further, those who are the firm believers of *Jina-Dharma* and whose intellect has been sharpened by listening to different *Shastras* and having known thoroughly well the differentia of *Vyavahara* (conventional) and *Nishchaya* (realistic) stand points, etc. whatever sermon they listen to grasp it correctly by knowing what it really means; and whenever a question arises they most humbly raise the question or by mutual discussion on different questions and answers take decision about the things, keep deeply engrossed in the study of scripture, have discarded censurable acts with religious attitude. – Such ought to be the listeners of *Shastras*.

### **Special Characteristics of the Listeners (of *Jaina-Shastras*)**

If a listener possesses some knowledge of grammar, logic and of voluminous *Jaina Shastras*, then the listenership is praiseworthy. And even if there be such a listener but be devoid of *Atma-Jnana* (self-knowledge) he can not understand the gist of the sermons. Therefore, the one who has tasted (the blissful nature of) the self-soul through self-realisation, he is the real listener of the mystery of *Jina-Dharma*. Further, the one who possesses extraordinary intellectual power or the clairvoyance, telepathy knowledges, then he is to be known as an excellent listener. Such are the special qualities of the listeners. Such should be the listeners of the *Jina-Shastras*.

Moreover, those who listen to *Shastras* believing that listening to *Shastras* will be beneficial to them but due to weakness of knowledge do not understand much, to them *Punya-Bandha* (bondage of auspicious *karmas*) occurs, but the specific purpose can not be achieved. And those who listen to *Shastras* either by family-tradition or customarily or incidently or simply listen but do not retain any thing, so according to their thoughts and feelings, sometimes *Punya-Bandha* (auspicious bondage) or sometimes *Papa Bandha* (inauspicious bondage) is caused to them. And those who listen to *Shastras* with pride or jealousy or whose intention is only of arguing and those who listen to *Shastras* simply for being called the great person or for the sake of fulfilling some greed, etc. or those who listen to *Shastras* but do not like it - to such listeners the *Papa-Bandha* alone is caused. Such are the various traits of listeners. Similarly, it

should be inferred about the persons indulging in learning, teaching activities, etc.

Thus the characteristics of discourses and listeners of the *Shastras* have been described. Hence, the right *Shashtra*, should be read and listened to by becoming a right discourses and a right listener.

### **Meaningfulness of Moksha Marg Prakashak Shashtra**

Now, starts the composition of the *Shashtra*, named *Moksha Marg Prakashak*. Its meaningfulness is being discussed.

In this world-forest all *Jivas* (mundane beings) are suffering from different kinds of miseries caused due to *karmic* bondage and darkness of delusion is pervading every-where because of which the *Jivas* are not able to find the path of liberation, rather continue suffering from the miseries tormentedly.

As an instrumental cause of benefaction of all such *Jivas* dawned the sun in the form of *Tirthankar Kewali Bhagawan* (omniscient Lord) and through the rays of his *Divya-Dhwani* (divine speech) the path of liberation got illuminated. As the sun has no intention to illuminate the path but automatically its rays are spread out and the path gets illuminated. Similarly, the *Kewali* (Omniscient Lord) is devoid of attachment, so He has no intention to show the path of liberation, but automatically due to rise of *Aghati-Karmas* (non-obscuring *karmas*) the matter particles of his body turn into *Divya-Dhwani* (divine speech) through which the path of liberation is illuminated.

Further, the *Ganadhara Devas* thought that after the setting of the omniscient-sun how could *Jivas* obtain the liberation-path (*Moksha Marg*) and without treading on liberation-path, the *Jivas* will continue suffering from miseries; this compassionate feeling encouraged them to compose the *Shastras* in the forms of *Anga-Prakeernaka* etc. These served as great lamps which spread the light.

Further, as the tradition of lamps continues by lighting the lamp from the (other) lamp, similarly some *Acharyas*. (chief saints) composed other *Shastras* from those *Shastras*. Thus through the creation

of *Shastras* the tradition of *Shastras* continues. This *Shashtra* is, also being composed on the basis of previous *Shastras*.

Further, as the sun and all lamps illuminate the path in the same manner, similarly, *Divya-Dhwani* and all *Shastras* illuminate the liberation-path (*Moksha Marg*) in the same way. So, this *Shashtra* too illuminates the liberation-path. And as even on illuminating the path, the persons, who are either without eyes or have diseased eyes, are not able to see the path but the lamp has not lost the power of illuminating the path, similarly, on illuminating (the liberation-path) the *Jivas* who are either without mind (irrational beings) or are over-powered by delusion, etc. are not able to see the path of liberation thereby it can not be said that the *Shashtra* has lost the power of illuminating the liberation-path. In this way, the meaningful name of *Moksha Marga Prakashak Shashtra* be known.

**Question:** There already existed *Shastras* illuminating liberation-path, why then you are composing this new *Shashtra* ?

**Answer:** As the illumination of big lamps is possible by means of much quantity of oil, etc. but those who do not have much quantity of oil, for them if a small lamp is lighted then they, by maintaining its means, can do their work in its illumination. Similarly, understanding of big *Shastras* is possible through the means of vast knowledge, etc. but those who do not have vast knowledge, for them if a small *Shashtra* (treatise) is composed then, by means of it, they may achieve their objective. This is the aim of composing this small and easy *Shashtra*.

Further, this *Shashtra* is being composed neither for self-exaltation under passion nor for fulfilling some greed, or for earning name and fame or for establishing my own tradition. Those who do not possess the knowledge of grammar, logic, *Naya-Pramana* and distinctive meaning of the words, due to which they cannot study big *Shastras* and even if they study some small *Shastras* then they can not comprehend the true meaning, as such in the present time most of the *Jivas* have feeble knowledge; for their benefaction, this *Shashtra* is being composed with pious instinct in the spoken language.

Further, as if a *Chintamani* - a miraculous & precious diamond, is offered to an extremely pauper for looking at it but he refuses to

even look at it and as if a cup of nectar is offered to a leper for drinking, but he refuses to drink it, similarly if a mundane miserable *Jiva* gets an opportunity to listen to an easy discourse on path of liberation but he refuses to pay attention to it, then it is not possible for us to describe the glory of his misfortune. When we ponder over his future a compassionate feeling arises in us. Also it is said that :-

“साहीणे गुरुजोगे जे ण सुणंतीह धम्मवयणाइ ।

ते धिद्वदुद्वचित्ता अह सुहडा भवभयविहुणा ॥ 93 ॥” (उ. सि. र.)

The *Jivas* who even on getting the company of self-dependent discourser *Guru* (preceptor) do not listen to religious sermons, are haughty and possess cruel heart or they are devoid of fear of transmigration from which great personages like *Tirthankaras*, etc. were afraid; they seem to be very brave warriors.

In *Pravachanasara* also there is a chapter on *Moksha Marga* wherein the knowledge of scripture has been advocated as worth adopting (*Upadeya*) firstly. So, the prime duty of this *Jiva* is to attain knowledge of scripture. By its attainment the true belief of *Tattvas* (*Jiva*, *Ajiva* etc. realities) gets evolved and on attainment of right belief of *Tattvas* continence-disposition (*Sanyama-Bhava*) gets evolved. And on the basis of this knowledge of scriptures even self-realisation materialises; then on its own, the attainment of liberation takes place.

Further there are various components of religion; in them, excepting *Dhyana* (meditation) there is no other components of religion higher than study of scriptures. Therefore, one should study scriptures by making all possible efforts.

Further, reading, listening and pondering over this *Shastra* is very easy, even knowledge of grammar, etc. is not necessary. Therefore, all should essentially study this book. The readers are bound to achieve spiritual welfare.

Thus ends the 1st Chapter dealing with introductory part of *Shri Moksha Marg. Prakashak Shastra*.





Version 002: remember to check <http://www.AtmaDharma.com> for updates

Please inform us of any errors on [rajesh@AtmaDharma.com](mailto:rajesh@AtmaDharma.com)

## CHAPTER 2

### NATURE OF MUNDANE EXISTENCE

दोहा : मिथ्याभाव अभावतै, जो प्रगटै निजभाव ।

सो जयवंत रहौ सदा, यह ही मोक्ष उपाव ॥

Let the intrinsic nature of self (soul) remain victorious always which gets manifested due to termination of false belief, etc. This alone is the means of Liberation.

Now, in this *Shastra* light is thrown on the path of liberation. Liberation is the 'Release from bondage'. This soul is having bondage of karmas\* and due to that bondage the soul is suffering from miseries. Although *Jiva* is continuously trying also to ward off the misery but without attaining the right means misery does not end and misery is also unbearable; therefore, this *Jiva* is becoming restless.

Thus the root cause of all miseries to this *Jiva* is the karmic bondage. Its destruction (separation) is Emancipation (liberation) and same is the supreme welfare and the prime duty is to make true effort for the same; therefore, all preaching is for the same.

Just as a physician first tells the patient about the diagnosis of disease as to how he got diseased, thereafter he tells him about the different conditions resulting from the disease. Thereby the patient infers that he assuredly has this disease. Then the physician further tells him about the means of curing the disease in various ways and makes him believe about the appropriateness of the treatment. Giving such advice is the duty of physician. And if that patient adopts that means then he can enjoy his natural state after freeing himself from the disease. This is the duty of the patient.

---

\*Subtle matter particles or atoms of *Kārmān-Varganā* which are characterised with bonding power with soul.

Similarly, here the *Jiva* (mudane being) having karmic bondage is first being told the reason for the *karmic* bondage as to how he got entangled with the karmas. Then he is told about the various conditions which he undergoes. Thereby the *Jiva* concludes that he assuredly has such *karmic* bondage and then he is further told in various ways about the means of release from that *karmic* bondage and the physician makes him believe about the efficacy of the means. So much is the sermon of the scriptures. If this *Jiva* makes efforts accordingly then by freeing himself from karmic bondage he can enjoy his natural bliss. This is the duty of *Jiva*.

### **Diagnosis of Karmic Bondage**

Now the diagnosis of karmic bondage is described. Due to *karmic* bondage transmigration of soul in various alien dispositions is found. One fixed state is not possible. Therefore, the state with *karmic* bondage is called 'Mundane-existence (*Sansara*). In this mundane-existence there are infinite times infinite *Jiva* Dravyas (Soul-substances); they all are having karmic-bondage from eternity. It is not so that earlier the soul (*Jiva*) was separate and the karmic matter was separate and later on these got intermingled. How is it then? As in the *Merugiri* (*Meru* mountain), naturally existing molecules, there are infinite atoms existing from eternity in a single-bonded form. From them many atoms get separated, many new atoms get united and thus their union and separation continues. Similarly, in this universe the one soul substance and infinite matter-particles (atoms) in the form of *kar*mas are found in bonded form since eternity; afterwards many get separated, many get united and thus their union and separation continues.

### **Establishing eternity of *karmic* bondage**

Here arises the question as to how *kar*mas are eternal because matter-particles (atoms) turn into *karmic* matter owing to the instrumental cause (*Nimitta*) of attachment (*Raag*) etc.?

**Answer :** Attributing instrumentality is possible only when there is a new modification; there is no role of *Nimitta* in beginning-less state. As the bondage of fresh matter-particles (atoms) occurs only due to (difference in) the degrees of smoothness-roughness.

But in the molecules of Mountain *Merugiri*, etc. the bondage of matter-particles (atoms) is from beginningless time. So what is the purpose (function) of *Nimitta* there? Similarly, changing of fresh matter-particles (atoms) into karmic matter results only due to attachment etc. (impure) dispositions of the soul. But the matter particles which are (already existing) in the form of *karmic* matter from beginningless time, what is the purpose (function) of *Nimitta* there? Moreover, if in the beginningless state also *Nimitta* is accepted then 'beginninglessness' is not established. Hence, the bondage of karmic matter is to be accepted from beginningless time. In *Tattava-Pradeepika* commentary of *Pravachansara Shastra*, there is a *Samanya Jneyaadhikar*; therein it is stated that 'The associating (instrumental) cause of attachment (*Raag*) etc. is *karmic* matter (*Dravya-Karma*) and the associating cause of *karmic* matter is attachment (*Raag*) etc. There, a question is raised that in believing so the inter-dependence-fault (*Itaretarashraya Dosha*) arises, i.e., that depends on it and it depends on that; there is no stoppage anywhere. There the following reply is given :-

“नैवं अनादिप्रसिद्धद्रव्यकर्मसम्बन्धस्य तत्र हेतुत्वेनोपादानात् ।”

**Meaning:** In this way there is no fault of interdependence because the association of *karmic* matter is axiomatic from beginningless time, there it has been accepted as an instrumental cause.

This is what is stated in scripture and logically also this alone is possible that if without the instrumental cause of *karmas* ab-initio *Jiva* gets entangled in attachment, etc. then attachment etc. would become the nature of *Jiva*, because that which is found without any other associating cause, same is called the nature (*Swabhava*). Hence, the association with the *karmic* matter is established from eternity.

Here again the question arises : 'When the two substances are distinctly separate, how could such relationship between them be possible from eternity?'

**Explanation :** As from the origin itself, the bondage of water and milk, gold and stone, husk and seed and oil and sesame is found,

these are not intermingled newly. Similarly, the bondage of soul and *karmic* matter be known from beginningless time. They are not intermingled newly. As from beginningless time many substances are quite separate and in the same way many substances are in bonded form (intermingled state); thus in the possibility of being so, there appears to be no contradiction.

**Question :** Asserting the state of bondage or association is possible then only when the (two distinct) things are firstly separate and then get intermingled. How is here the bondage of soul and *karmic* matter asserted to be existing from beginningless time?

**Answer :** These were in intermingled state from eternity but later on got separated, then it was known that they were separate, so got separated. Therefore, formerly also they were separate; thus by inference as well as by omniscience these clearly appear separate. On account of this, their separateness exists in spite of their being in bonded state. And from that separateness point of view only their bondage or association is asserted because in intermingled state of different substances, irrespective of their intermingling afresh or already being in intermingled state, asserting in this way only is possible. Thus, the bondage of this soul and *karmas* is from beginningless time.

### **Distinctiveness of Soul and *Karmas***

*Jiva-Dravya* (soul substance) possesses sentience attribute (*Chetana Guna*) as its distinctive characteristic in the form of knowing and seeing and it being imperceptible by senses has immaterial form, a substance having innumerable spatial units (*Pradeshas*) with the power of contraction-expansion. And the *Karma* is an insentient matter devoid of sentience attribute and has material form, is a mass of infinite matter-particles (atoms), hence it is not a single substance. Thus are these *Jivas* (souls) and *karmas* (*karmic* matter) having relationship since eternity. Nevertheless, none of the space-points of *Jiva* changes into *karmic* matter form and none of the atoms of *karmic* matter change into *Jiva* form, both, by retaining their own distinctive characteristics, exist distinctly separate. For example, if there be a compound molecule of gold and silver, even then the gold by retaining its yellowness, etc.



attributes remains distinctly different and silver by retaining its whiteness, etc. attributes remains distinctly different. Similarly, the soul and karmas should be known as distinct and separate.

**Question :** The matter to matter bondage is possible but how can the bondage of matter (material particles) with the immaterial soul substance be possible ?

**Answer :** As the bondage of subtle matter particles (atoms) which are not perceptible to senses and the gross matter-particles (molecules) which are perceptible to senses is accepted, similarly the bondage of immaterial soul which is not perceptible to senses and material *karmas* worthy of being perceptible to senses should be accepted. Moreover, in this process of bondage none acts as the doer of other; so long as the bondage continues till then these remain united, do not get separated and the relationship of cause and effect continues in them. This much alone be known as the bondage here. So, there is no contradiction in being this type of bondage between the material karmas and the immaterial soul.

Thus as is explained the eternal *karmic* bondage to one Jiva, similarly it should be understood about each of the infinite Jivas (souls).

### **Obscuring (*Ghati*) & Non-obscuring (*Aghati*) *Karmas* and their Function**

Further those karmas are of eight types classified into *Jnanavarana*, etc. Owing to the instrumental cause of four *Ghati Karmas*, the intrinsic nature of soul gets obscured. Owing to the instrumentality of *Jnanavarana* (knowledge obscuring) – *Darshanavarana* (perception obscuring) type of *karmas*, the knowledge and perception nature of soul does not get manifested; only according to the *Kshayopashama* (destruction cum subsidence) state of these *karmas*, the knowledge and perception remain partially manifested. And owing to the instrumentality of *Mohaniya* (deluding) *Karma*, the dispositions which are not the true nature of the *Jiva* (soul), such as misbelief, anger, pride, deceit, greed, etc., passions get manifested. And owing to the instrumentality of *Antaraya* (obstructive) *Karma*, the nature of the soul, *Virya* (spiritual power) of the order of accepting asecticism does not get manifested;

according to its *Kshayopashama* only partial spiritual power (*Virya*) remains manifested.

Thus owing to the instrumentality of *Ghati Karmas*, the intrinsic nature of the soul is being obscured from eternity. It is not so that originally the soul was intrinsically in pure state and afterwards became impure due to the instrumentality of *karmas*, resulting in the destruction of pure nature.

**Question :** Destruction is the name of annihilation, so, that which existed earlier could be stated to have been annihilated. Here, when there is no existence of intrinsic nature what has been then destroyed ?

**Answer :** The soul possesses eternally such an intrinsic power that if the instrumental cause of *karmas* be not there then the *Jiva* (soul) would be found with the manifestation of omniscience, etc., form of his intrinsic nature but since eternity the bondage of *karmas* is found, therefore, the manifestation of that capacity has never been there. Hence, from inherent capacity point of view, the intrinsic nature does exist; only from the standpoint of not letting it to manifest it is said to have been destroyed.

And there are four kinds of *Aghati Karmas* owing to the instrumental cause of which the soul comes in contact with external things. There, due to *Vedniya Karma* (feeling producing *Karma*) various other (non-self) things acting as instrumental cause of happiness and misery get associated either in the body or outside the body; due to *Ayu* (life) *Karma*, the bondage with the present body does not get released till the expiry of its duration; due to *Nama-Karma* (physique making *Karma*) the *Gati* (state of embodied form of existence), *Jati* (the class of beings), the body, etc. are produced and due to *Gotra-Karma* (status determining *Karma*) one attains high or low status.

Thus by *Aghati Karmas* the external things get assembled. In their presence, due to the association of the rise of *Moha* (deluding *Karma*), *Jiva* becomes happy and miserable. And due to bondage with the body, etc., the immaterial intrinsic characteristic, etc., of the soul do not function as per their own nature. For example, if someone catches the body then the soul also gets caught. Moreover, so long as the rise of *karmas* continues, till then the association of

external things remains as it is; does not become otherwise. Such should be known the instrumentality of these *Aghati Karmas*.

### **Destruction of *Jiva's* Natural Functioning and Assembling of External Things by Strengthless Material *Karma***

**Question :** *Karmas* are inanimate and are not strong; how is then the destruction of *Jiva's* natural functioning and assembling of external things possible through them?

**Answer :** If *karma* by acting itself as a doer destroys the nature of the soul and causes association of external things effortfully, then *karma* should possess sentience and strength. But it is not so; just cause and effect relationship (*Nimitta-Naimittika Sambandha*) (between them) is a natural occurrence. When the operative stage of those *Karmas* arises, at that time the soul of its own does not function in his natural state, rather functions alienatedly and the other things too are found functioning in a related manner.

**For Example :** *Mohandhool* (an enchanting type of dust) is found lying on the head of some person due to which that person has become mad; there that *Mohandhool* was neither having knowledge nor strength but madness appears to have been caused by that *Mohandhool* only. There the *Mohandhool* is only a *Nimitta* and the person of his own becomes mad. Such only exists *Nimitta-Naimittika* (cause and effect) relation-ship.

Further, just as at the time of sun-rise *Chakwa-Chakwi* (the male & female birds of duck family) meet together, (but) there in the night nobody has separated them forcedly out of jealousy and in the day time nobody has brought them together out of compassion; rather they meet on their own due to *Nimitta* of sun-rise. Such only is the functioning of *Nimitta-Naimittika*. In the same way the *Nimitta-Naimittika* functioning of *karmas* should be known. Such is the state of soul owing to the rise of *karmas*.

### **Process of New Bondage**

'How is new bondage caused' is being clarified. The portion of light of the sun which is not perceptible due to the layers of clouds that much is absent (unmanifested) in that time. And owing to the

rarefaction of the layers of clouds the light which is manifesting is the part of sun's nature, is not produced by clouds. Similarly, *Jnan* (knowledge), *Darshan* (perception) and *Virya* (power) is the nature of soul; the portion of it which owing to the instrumentality of *Jnanavarana*, *Darshanavarana* and *Antaraya Karmas* is not manifesting, that much is absent (unmanifested) in that time. And owing to the *Kshayopashams* (destruction cum subsidence) state of those *Karmas* that part of *Jnan*, *Darshan*, *Virya* which is manifesting, all that is the part of soul's nature and is not a contrary (alien) disposition produced by *Karmas*. So, right from eternity, such a manifested portion of soul's intrinsic nature never comes to an end. Only through this (inherent faculty) the consciousness of the soul is ascertained that the substance possessing the power of knowing and seeing is the soul only.

And the bondage of new *karmas* does not take place due to this nature (of soul); for, if the soul's nature itself be the cause of bondage, how could then the release from bondage be possible? Moreover, owing to the rise of those *karmas*, the part of *Jnan*, *Darshan*, *Virya* attributes which is not manifesting, that also is not the cause of bondage, for that which itself is not existing how can it be the cause for others (bondage)? Therefore, the dispositions produced due to *Nimitta* of *Jnanavarana*, *Darshanavarana* and *Antaraya-Karmas* are not the cause of new bondage of *karmas*.

Further, owing to the rise of *Mohaniya Karma*, the perverse belief in the form of untrue faith and passions, anger, pride, deceit, greed, etc. are evolved in the soul. All those dispositions are although found existing in the state of soul, are not separate from soul, *Jiva* himself is the doer of them, those are assuredly the functional deeds of *Jiva*, nevertheless, their manifestation is only due to *Nimitta* of *Moha-Karma*. These (alien dispositions) come to an end on elimination of instrumentality of *karma*. Therefore, these are not *Jiva*'s own nature but are the contrary dispositions. And due to those (alien) dispositions new bondage of *karmas* takes place; hence the dispositions manifesting due to rise of *Moha-Karma* are the cause of *karmic* bondage.

And owing to rise of *Aghati Karmas*, external things are met with; among them the physique, etc., get bonded in one (inter-

mingled) form with *Jiva-Pradeshas* (spatial units of soul) by occupying the same one region (as that of the soul); and wealth, family etc., are totally separate from soul, therefore, all those are not the cause of bondage; for, the other (non-self) substances do not cause bondage, but in those objects the soul develops the feeling of mineness and perverse belief, etc. This alone is to be known as the cause of bondage.

### ***Yoga (Vibratory Activity) the Cause of Prakriti Bandh (Type-Bondage) and Pradesh Bandh (Space-Bondage)***

Further, it should be known that owing to rise of *Nama-Karma* (physique-making *Karma*), body, organ of speech and mind are created; due to *Nimitta* (instrumentality) of their movement, the space-points (*Pradeshas*) of soul vibrate and by virtue of it soul attains the power of getting into one bonded form with the species of karmic matter. This is termed as *yoga* (vibratory activity). Due to its *Nimitta* at each moment, the inflow of infinite atoms transformable into karmic form, takes place. If *Yoga* is feeble then inflow of atoms is less and if *Yoga* is intense then inflow of atoms is more. Further, the atoms of matter that are absorbed in one *Samaya* (an unit of time) get divided into *Jnanavarana*, etc., main-types and their sub-types (species) of *Karmas* as are stated in scripture. According to that division atoms get transformed into those types (species) of *Karmas* of their own.

Further, *Yoga* is of two types : Auspicious Activity (*Shubha Yoga*) and Inauspicious Activity (*Ashubha Yoga*). Inclination through mind, speech and body in pious acts is called *Shubha Yoga* and inclination in impious acts is called *Ashubha-Yoga*. Whether there be *Shubha Yoga* or *Ashubha Yoga*, without attaining right belief (*Samyaktva*) bondage of all sorts of species of *Ghati Karmas* continues incessantly. Even for a single moment bondage of any species of *Karmas* does not stop. However, the specific point is that in the pair of *Hasya-Shoka* (laughter and lamentation), *Rati-Arati* (liking and disliking) and three types of *Vedas* (sex-passions) of *Mohaniya* (deluding) *Karna* in one time only one in each group gets bonded.



Further, in the species of *Aghati Karmas*, during *Shubha Yoga*, *Sata Vedniya* (pleasure producing *Karma*) etc., auspicious species of *Karmas*, get bonded and during *Ashubha Yoga Asata Vedniya* (pain producing *Karma*) etc., inauspicious species of *Karmas* get bonded and during *Mishra Yoga* (mixed auspicious-inauspicious activity) some auspicious and some inauspicious species of *Aghati Karmas* get bonded.

Thus, the inflow of *Karmas* takes place due to instrumentality of *Yoga* (Vibratory activity). Hence, *Yoga* is *Asrava* (influx). And the (quantity of) atoms of karmic matter so attracted through that *Yoga* is called *Pradesha*; thus, the atoms so bonded get divided into main types and sub-types of *Karmas*, therefore it should be known that space-bondage and type-bondage are caused by *Yoga*.

### **Duration & Fruition Bondage caused by Passions**

Further, wrong belief (*Mithyatva*) and anger, etc., dispositions are evolved due to the rise of *Moha* (deluding *karma*); all these (dispositions) are collectively termed as *Kashaya* (passions). Due to that (passion) the duration bondage (*sthiti-bandh*) of those karmic species takes place. Out of the total duration so bonded, leaving aside the *Abadhakal* (the period of *Karmas* lying bonded in inoperative state), afterwards, till the bonded duration ends, every moment the rise (*Udaya*) of that *Prakriti* (particular species of *Karma*) continues. Excepting the *Ayu Karma* of celestial beings, human beings and sub-human beings (animals, etc.), all the other species of *Ghatia* and *Aghatia Karmas* get bonded with less duration in the state of feeble passion and with more duration in the state of intense passion. And these three types of *Ayu Karmas* get bonded with more duration in the state of feeble passion and with less duration in the state of intense passion.

And the passion (*Kashaya*) is also the instrumental cause for the fruition power in those species of *Karmas*. At the time of their rise, the *Karmic*-species produce more or less effect according to their fruition bondage. In all the species of *Ghati Karmas*, and in the inauspicious (*Papa*) species of *Aghati Karmas* the fruition bondage is caused more in the state of high-passion and in the auspicious

species (of *Aghati Karmas*) intense fruition bondage takes place in the state of low-passion and less fruition bondage in the state of high-passion.

In this way, duration and fruition bondage is governed by passions. Therefore, it should be known that passions are instrumental cause of duration bondage and fruition bondage.

As, even if wine is more in quantity and it has less intoxicating power for lesser period then that wine is of poor quality and even if wine is less in quantity and it has more intoxicating power for longer period then that wine is of strong quality; similarly, even if the atoms of species of *Karmas* are more in quantity and those have less fruition power for lesser period then those species of *karmas* are less effective; and even if the atoms of species of *Karmas* are less in quantity and those have more fruition power for longer period then those species of *Karmas* are more effective.

Hence, the type-bondage and space-bondage resulting from *Yogas* are not strong. Only duration bondage and fruition bondage caused by passions are strong. Therefore, passions should be known as the prime cause of bondage. Those who do not want to get bonded, should not indulge in passions.

### **Transformation of Insentient Matter-particles (Atoms) into Appropriate Species of *Karmas***

Now, here someone raises a question that the matter-particles are inanimate and are devoid of knowledge; how do they then undergo transformation into appropriate species of *karmas*?

**Answer :** As on getting hungry, the mass of matter-particles of food swallowed through mouth gets transformed into bodily constituents like blood, flesh, semen, etc., and the atoms (particles) of that food (morsel) get appropriately distributed in the form of some bodily constituents in a lesser measure and in the form of some bodily constituents in greater measure. And in them, many atoms remain bonded for quite long duration and many for a short duration. Further, in those atoms many (atoms) possess greater power of producing their effect and many have less power. In this process none of the mass of matter-particles of food know that it should get

transformed in this particular way. Moreover, there is no one to motivate them in this transformation; such type of *Nimitta-Naimittika* (cause and effect) relationship is existing and owing to which such transformation takes place.

Similarly, on the rise of passions the mass of matter in *Karma-varganas* (*karmic* matter) so absorbed through the channel of *Yoga* gets transformed into *Jnanavarana*, etc., type of *Karmas* (species) and the atoms of those *Karma-varganas* (*Karmic-matter*) get appropriately distributed into some types of *Karmas* (species) having less atoms and into some types of *Karmas* (species) having more atoms. And in them many atoms (of some species) remain in bonded state for a longer period and many for a shorter period. And in those atoms some (atoms) possess greater potency of producing their effect and some (atoms) possess lesser potency. In this process, none of the mass of matter-particles of *Karma-Varganas* knows that it should get transformed in this particular way. And there is no one to motivate them in this transformation; such type of *Nimitta-Naimittika* (cause and effect) relationship is existing and owing to which such transformation takes place.

Like this, many *Nimitta-Naimittika* relations are taking place in this universe. As owing to *Nimitta* of *Mantras* (incantations) water, etc., attains the potency of curing disease and pebbles, etc. attain the potency of stopping snakes. Similarly, owing to *Nimitta* of *Jiva-Bhavas* (dispositions of the soul) the pudgalas, i.e., the matter-particles (atoms) attain the potency of *Jnanavarana*, etc., types of *Karmas*. Here if *Karmas* produce the effect after deligeration effortfully then it ought to possess knowledge, but on meeting with an appropriate *Nimitta* the corresponding transformation takes place automatically, and so there is no need of knowledge.

Such is the set process of new bondage.

### **State of Existence of Bonded *Karmas***

Now, the atoms which have transformed into *karmas* form remain in bonded form intermingled with space-points of *Jiva* till they do not acquire the operative state. There, owing to *Nimitta* of dispositions of soul (*Jiva-Bhavas*) the condition of many species of *karmas* also gets changed. The atoms of many different types of

species of *karmas* get transformed into atoms of other types of species of *karmas*. And many species (of *karmas*) which were bonded for longer duration with intense fruition become scant by getting decreased and many other species (of *karmas*) bonded for lesser duration with the potency of feeble fruition become more by getting increased. Thus, even the condition of atoms bonded in the past change due to *Nimitta* of *Jiva Bhavas* and if *Nimitta* is absent then there is no change but they remain as they were.

In this way, the bonded *karmas* remain in existence.

### **The Ripening (Operative State) of Bonded *Karmas***

And when the time of rise (ripening) of species of *karmas* matures then automatically according to the fruition of those species of *karmas* the effect gets produced; the *karmas* do not produce those effects. At the time of their ripening state, the specific effect (disposition) gets evolved; only so much is to be known the cause and effect relationship (*Nimitta-Naimittika Samband*). And simultaneously with their fructification the *karmic* form ends due to the end of fruition-power of those *karmas*; these (dissociated) matter-particles get changed into other forms; this is called *Savipaka-Nirjara* (Shedding-off of *karmas* on their ripening in usual course of time).

In this way, the *karmas* shed off every moment on rise (ripening) of the same.

After the end of *karmic* power, these matter-particles, irrespective of being present in the same species of molecules or getting separated from them, become ineffective. It should be known that at each moment infinite atoms (*karmic* matter-particles) get bonded with soul; the atoms so bonded in one moment (in one unit of time), leaving the period of *Aabadha-kal* (prior to ripening), continue coming serially into operative state (*Udaya*) in all the moments of their duration period. And the atoms so bonded in several moments which are capable of ripening together, come into *Udaya* state collectively. The collective fruition of all those atoms (species of *karmas*) gets produced at one time accordingly to their combined fruition-power. And the atoms so bonded in several moments holding the identity as *karma*, remain in intermingled relationship with *Jiva* (soul)

from the time of bondage till the time of their *Udaya*, (rise or ripening state).

Thus should be known the bondage, the rise or ripening and the existence states of *karmas*. Every moment the atoms (karmic species) equal to one *Samaya-Prabaddha* only get bonded and equal to one *Samaya-Prabaddha* only get dissociated (shedded off). There the *karmas* remain always in existence equal to one and a half *Gunahani* times *Samaya-Prabaddha* only. The details of all these will be written in the forthcoming chapter on *Karmas*.

### **Characteristics of *Dravya-Karmas* & *Bhava-Karmas***

Thus, *Karma* is a product of infinite matter-particles in atomic form; therefore its' name is *Dravya-Karma* (material *Karma*). Due to the instrumentality of rise of *Moha*, impure dispositions like perverse belief, anger, etc., are caused. These are the product of Jiva's own impure dispositions; therefore, its name is *Bhava-Karma*. *Bhava-Karma* is caused due to instrumentality of *Dravya-Karma* and *Dravya-Karma's* bondage is caused due to instrumentality of *Bhava-Karma*. *Bhava-Karma* from *Dravya-Karma* and *Dravya-Karma* from *Bhava-Karma*; thus due to mutual cause and effect relationship Jiva transmigrates in the world.

The specific point to be known is that due to bondage being intense or feeble or due to internal transformation, etc., or due to rise in different moments of *karmas* bonded in one moment or due to rise in one moment of *Karmas* bonded in different moments, if in some particular moment the rise be intense then the passions would be intense and the resulting fresh bondage would also be intense; and if in some particular moment rise be feeble then the passions would also be feeble and the fresh bondage would also be feeble. And exactly according to those intense or feeble passions the internal transformation etc., of *Karmas* bonded formerly in the past moments may also take place.

In this way, the automatic process of *Dravya-Karma* and *Bhava-Karma* has been taking place continuously from eternity.



## Characteristics and Tendency of *Nokarmas* (Quasi-Passions)

Owing to rise of *Nama-Karma* (physique-making *Karma*) body is produced. It is somewhat instrumental cause of happiness and misery similar to *Dravya-Karma*. Therefore, the body is called *Nokarma*. Here the word 'No' is to be known as denoting lesser measure. The body is a mass of matter-particles (atoms) and *Dravya Indriyas* (sense organs), *Dravya-Mana* (material mind), respiration and vocal organs all these are also the parts of body; therefore, these also are to be known as mass of matter-particles (atoms).

In this way, *Jiva* with *Dravya-Karma* and body is found bonded occupying same spacepoints (*Eka-Kshetraavagaha*\* form of bondage). The relation of body remains with *Jiva* from the moment of birth till the duration of *Ayu* (life) *Karma*; and at the end of (the period of) *Ayu-karma*, death takes place, then the relation with that body comes to an end; body and soul get separated and either in the same very moment or in second, third, fourth moment (*Samaya*), *Jiva* acquires new body owing to the *Nimitta* of rise of *karmas*; there also similar relation continues upto the end of one's *Ayu* (life *Karma*) and again death occurs, then relation ends with that body. Like this, leaving of former body and acquiring new body continues successively.

Further, this soul, although possesses innumerable space-points (*Pradeshas*) but by virtue of the quality of contraction and expansion it remains equal to the extent of the size of the body occupied; however, the specific point is this that at the time of *Samudghat* (emanation of soul's space-points) the *Pradeshas* of soul emanate even outside the body and thereafter (on end of emanation period) remain equal in size of the last body left (before emanation).

Further, the functioning of knowing activity takes place to this *Jiva* through the instrumentality of *Dravya-Indriya* and *Mana* which are the parts (organs) of the body. And according to the condition of the body, *Jiva* experiences happiness and sorrow owing to the rise of *Mohakarma*. And sometimes body functions as per the will of *Jiva*, sometimes *Jiva* acts as per the condition of the body;

---

\*'Eka' means one or same, 'Kshetra' means region, 'Avagah' means to occupy or occupying.

sometimes *Jiva* acts in a different way according to its will and body (mass of matter-particles) functions in a different way.

Thus, the tendency of *Nokarma* is to be understood.

### **Nitya (Eternal) Nigoda and Itara (Non-eternal) Nigoda State of Jiva**

Originally since eternity *Jiva* is found bonded in *Nitya-Nigoda\** form of body. There, the *Jiva* occupying *Nitya* (eternal) *Nigoda* form of body dies on completion of *Ayu-karma* and again acquires *Nitya* (eternal) *Nigoda* form of body only and then again dies after the expiry of *Ayu karma* and again acquires *Nitya Nigoda* body only. In this way, there are infinite times infinite *Jivas* which are continuously dying and taking birth from eternity there only. Further, from (*Nitya Nigoda*) state 608 *Jivas* get out in six months and eight *Samayas*. They assume other forms of bodies after getting out from there. They continue transmigration in earth, water, fire, air and single plant-life forms of one-sensed beings, in the forms of two-sensed, three-sensed and four-sensed beings or in infernal, animal, human and celestial forms of five-sensed beings. After undergoing transmigration for a long time if *Jiva* again attains the *Nigoda* form of existence then it is termed as *Itara* (non-eternal) *Nigoda*.

And after having stayed there for-long time and getting out from there, *Jivas* continue transmigration in other forms of existence. There, the maximum period of transmigration in earth, etc., immobile forms of beings (*Sthavara Jivas*) is innumerable *Kalpas* only and in mobile forms of two to five sensed beings (*Trasa-Jivas*) it is somewhat more than two thousand *Sagaras*. In *Itara Nigoda* it is two and a half *Pudgal-Paravartanas* (wandering in matter-cycle of time) which is infinite period. Some *Jivas* after getting out from *Itara-Nigoda* and getting *Sthavara* (immobile) form of existence again go back to *Nigoda*.

Thus, in one-sensed forms of existence the maximum period of transmigration is innumerable *Pudgal-Paravartanas* only and the minimum period is of one *Antar-Muhurta* in all states of existence.

---

\*Nigoda : The subtle one-sensed undeveloped form of *Jiva* where birth-death occurs 18 times in one respiration period.

In this way, the maximum embodied forms occupied (by this Jiva) are of one-sensed beings only and acquiring other (higher) forms of existence is just like Kaktaliya Nyaya – a flying crow catching falling down fruit by chance.

Thus, this *Jiva* is having the disease of *karmic* bondage from beginningless time. Thus ends the diagnosis of *karmic* bondage.

### **States of *Jiva* Caused Due to the Disease of *Karmic* Bondage**

Now, the states of *Jiva* caused by instrumentality of disease of *karmic* bondage are being described :

Inherently the nature of this *Jiva* is *Chaitanya* (sentience); it possesses the power of cognizing general and specific nature of all existing substances. *Chaitanya* is the name of (soul's) that attribute in which the real nature of substances is reflected as they are. Cognition of general (common) nature (of substances) is called perception (*Darshan*) and cognition of specific (uncommon) nature (of substances) is called knowledge (*Jnan*). Due to such nature the soul always possesses the power of perceiving and knowing all substances directly and simultaneously with their all attributes and modifications of the past, present and future without any help or means; but from eternity, knowledge-obscuring and perception-obscuring *Karmas* are found bonded with *Jiva*, due to its *Nimitta* the manifestation of this power does not take place. Owing to *Kshayopashama* (destruction-cum-subsidence) of these *Karmas* somewhat (a little) manifestation of *Mati-Jnan* (sensory knowledge) and *Shruta-Jnan* (scriptural knowledge) is found and very rarely *Avadhi-Jnan* (clairvoyance) is also found; *Achakshu-Darshan'* (non-ocular perception) is found and rarely *Chakshu-Darshan* (ocular perception) and *Avadhi-Darshan* (clairvoyant perception) are also found.

Now, the tendency of these is explained below :

### **Dependent Functioning of *Mati-Jnan***

*Mati-Jnana* knows with the help of *Dravya-Indriyas* – the bodily organs namely tongue, nose, eyes, ears, touch and *Dravya-Mana*– the material mind situated in heart in the shape of an eight-petalled

open lotus. For example, he whose eye-sight is weak though sees through his eyes only but sees only after putting on eye-glass and can not see without eye-glass. Similarly, soul's knowing power is feeble, he knows by his knowledge only but knows only with the instrumentality of *Dravya-Indriyas* & *Mana*; can not know without them. And even when the eyes are alright but if some defect develops in the eye-glass then he can not see or sees unclearly or sees differently; similarly, one's *Kshayopashama-Jnan* is as it is but if the matter-particles (atoms) of *Dravya-Indriya* and *Mana* turn otherwise then he can not know or knows unclearly or knows differently; because, there exists cause and effect relationship between the modification of atoms of *Dravya Indriya* & *Mana* and *Mati-Jnana*. Therefore, according to their modifications the modification of knowledge also takes place. As for example, in childhood and oldage of human beings, *Dravya-Indriyas* and *Mana*, etc. are feeble, then knowing power is also found feeble; and further as owing to the instrumentality of cold atmosphere, etc. the particles of senses of touch etc. and mind act differently, then either nothing is known or a very little is known.

Further, *Nimitta-Naimittika* (cause and effect) relationship is found also in-between knowledge and external objects. For instance, if the particles (atoms) of darkness or the particles, forming cataract, etc. or the opaque particles of stone, etc. come before eyes then eyes can not see. And if a red glass comes before eyes then all appears red. If green glass comes before eyes then all appears green. Thus, erroneous knowing takes place.

Further, if telescope, eye-glass, etc. come before eyes then the things appear in magnified form. If particles of light, water, plain glass come before eyes then also things appear as they are. Similarly, one should know about other senses and mind also appropriately. Owing to the use of incantation, etc. or owing to the drunkenness, etc. or owing to the *Nimitta* of ghost, etc. either no knowing or a very little knowing or knowing differently takes place. In this way, this knowledge is dependent on external things also.

Moreover, whatever is known through this knowledge is known unclearly; from remote position knows in one way, from vicinity knows in other way, instantly knows in a different way, if there be

delay in knowing then knows differently, knows some objects with suspicion, knows some objects erroneously, knows some objects a little only – in all these ways clear knowing is not possible.

In this way, *Mati Jnana* (sensory knowledge) functions depending upon the medium of senses and mind. It knows through the medium of those senses only such molecules of matter which lie in the area within the reach of senses, are present in gross form and are knowable by self. Even in those molecules, the modes of touch, etc. of some molecules only are known through different-different senses in different-different moments of time. And through the mind it knows quite unclearly a little bit about the material and immaterial substances and their modifications of past, present and future knowable to oneself of the remote areas or of the nearer areas. That too, it knows only that thing which has been deduced through deductive-reasoning. And some times it knows about the non-existing things through his own conjecture. For example, as in dream or in conscious state also it contemplates about such things, forms, etc. which are perhaps found nowhere and believes them contrary to their nature. In this way, knowing takes place through mind. So the knowledge which functions through senses and mind is called *Mati-Jnana* (sensory knowledge).

Further, the one-sensed beings viz. earth, water, fire, air and vegetables (plants) have the knowledge of touch only; earth worm, conch, etc. two-sensed beings have the knowledge of touch and taste; ant, bug, etc. three-sensed beings have the knowledge of touch, taste and smell; large-black-bee, fly, moths, etc. four-sensed beings have the knowledge of touch, taste, smell and colour; crocodile, cow, pigeon, etc. animals (sub-human beings) and human beings, celestial beings, infernal beings – these are five-sensed beings; they have the knowledge of touch, taste, smell, colour and words (sound). In animals (*Tiryanchas*) many are rational, i.e., with mind and many are irrational, i.e., without mind. There, the rational beings have the knowledge arising through mind; the irrational beings do not have the same. And the human beings, celestial beings, infernal beings are only rational beings; all of them are found possessed with the knowledge arising through the medium of mind.



Thus is to be known the functioning of *Mati-Jnana*.

### **Dependent Functioning of *Shrut-Jnana* (Scriptural Knowledge)**

Now, whatever object has been known by *Mati Jnana*, through its reference the knowledge by which another object is known is called *Shrut-Jnana* (scriptural knowledge). It is of two kinds:- 1. *Aksharatmaka* (lettered or verbal) and 2. *Anaksharatmaka* (letterless or non-verbal). For example, someone listens to or sees the word 'JAR' - that knowledge (produced in the person) is *Mati-Jnana* (sensory knowledge) and the knowledge of the object 'JAR' arising with its reference is called *Shrut-Jnana* (scriptural knowledge). Likewise other examples also are to be known. This is '*Aksharatmaka Shrut-Jnana*'. Further, knowledge of cold arising through sense of touch is *Mati-Jnana*, with its reference the knowledge evolved that 'this is not beneficial, hence better to run away (from here)' - is *Shrut-Jnana*. Similarly, other examples can also be given. This is *Anaksharatmaka Shrut-Jnana*.

The one-sensed etc. irrational beings (*Jivas* without mind) possess '*Anaksharatmaka-Shrut-Jnana*' only and rational beings (*Jivas* with mind) possess both types of *Shrut-Jnana*. So this *Shrut-Jnana* is thus dependent even on *Mati-Jnana*- which itself is dependent in many ways and it (*shrut-jnana*) is dependent on various other factors also; hence, it is to be known as extremely dependent.

### **Functioning of Clairvoyance, Telepathy & Omniscience**

Now, that (knowledge) by which the material objects are known distinctly and clearly according to its limitations of the extent of area (region) and time is, called *Avadhi Jnana* (clairvoyance). It is found manifested in all celestial and infernal beings and is also found rarely in any of the rational five-second animals and human beings. This is not found in irrational beings. \* So this knowledge is also dependent on body, etc. *Pudgalas* (matter-particles). The clairvoyance is of three kinds- 1. *Deshavavadi* (partial clairvoyance), 2. *Parmaavadi* (excellent clairvoyance) and 3. *Sarvaavadi* (full

---

\* Irrational Beings-*Jivas* without 'mind' organ, (*Asanjni-Jivas*)

clairvoyance). In these *Deshaavadhi* knows material objects with somewhat clarity and limitation of limited area and time, that too is found in some *Jiva* only.

And *Parmaavadhi*, *Sarvaavadhi* and *Manah-Paryaya Jnana* (telepathy) these (three types of direct) knowledges get manifested in *Moksh Marg* (path to liberation) only. *Kewal-Jnana* (omniscience) is itself the form of liberation (*moksha*); hence in this beginningless mundane existence these are not found existing. Thus is found the functioning of knowledge.

### **Functioning of Ocular, Non-ocular, Clairvoyant and Omni-perception**

Now, on getting association of objects of touch, etc. with senses and mind, the perception that occurs in the form of appearance of mere existence (of something) in the first moment just before the occurrence of sensory knowledge is called *Chakshu-Darshan* and *Achakshu-Darshan*. The perception that occurs through the eye-sense is known *Chakshu-Darshan* (ocular perception); it is found in the four-sensed and five-sensed beings only. And the perception that occurs through the touch, tongue, nose, ears - these four senses and mind is called *Achakshu-Darshan* (non-ocular perception); it is found in the one-sensed, etc. beings as per their capacities.

Now on getting association of objects of clairvoyance the perception that occurs in the form of appearance of mere existence just before the occurrence of clairvoyance-knowledge is called *Avadhi-Darshan* (clairvoyance-perception). This is found only in them who possess *Avadhi-Jnana*, the clairvoyance-knowledge.

These *Chakshu-Achakshu-Avadhi Darshans* are to be known dependent similar to *Mati-Jnana* and *Avadhi-Jnana*. And *Kewal-Darshan* (omnipercption) is itself the form of liberation; its existence is not found here.

Thus is found the existence (functioning) of *Darshan* (perception-attribute).

### **Functioning of Knowledge & Perception**

In this way, the existence (manifestation) of *Jnan* and *Darshan* is found according to the *Kshayopashama* (destruction cum subsidence)

of *Jnanavarana* (knowledge-obscuring) and *Darshan-Varana* (perception obscuring) *Karmas*. When the *Kshayopashama* is less, the power of *Jnana* and *Darshan* is also less and when it is more, the power (of *Jnana* & *Darshan*) is also more. Further, due to *Kshayopashama* the power (of knowing and perceiving) remains as such but in the process of utilisation only one object is known or seen in one unit of time (*Samaya*) by a *Jiva*. The name of this activity is *Upayoga* (active consciousness). There, in one *Samaya* (in one unit of time) only one *Upayoga*—either *Jnan-upayoga* or *Darshan-upayoga*— is found in action to a *Jiva*. And even in one *Upayoga* only one of its kind is found functioning. For example, when *Mati-Jnana* is functioning, the other kinds of *Jnanas* are not found functioning. Even in its one kind only one object is visualised. For instance, when it knows touch then it does not know taste, etc. Moreover, in one object also it is found engaged in any one part of it only. For instance, when it knows about hot touch then it does not know about roughness, etc.

Thus, in one moment of time (in one *Samaya*) a *Jiva* knows only one knowledge or perceivable object through active knowledge or perception. And it appears to be so only. When *upayoga* is busy in hearing then even the object situated very near to the eyes is not seen. In the same way other tendency is found.

Moreover, rambling of *upayoga* is very fast. Due to this in some particular moment it appears that knowing and seeing of many objects takes place simultaneously, but it does not happen simultaneously, rather happens serially. Due to instinctive force their instrumentality (of knowing & seeing) continues. For example, there are two sockets in the crow's eye but the pupil is only one, it moves very swiftly owing to which it serves the purpose of both the sockets. Similarly, for this *Jiva*, there are several doors but *upayoga* is one; it moves very swiftly due to which the instrumentality (of knowing) through all doors remains existing.

**Question :** Since in one moment of time only one object is known or seen, then it should be asserted that the *Kshayopashama* is only so much, why is it stated to be more ? It is further stated that owing to the *kshayopashama* such power is found existing but the power of omniscience and omniperception is also found in the soul.

**Answer :** As a person has power of going to many villages but someone stops him and tells visit five villages but visit only one village in one day. Now this person possesses the power of visiting several villages from substance (inherent potentiality) point of view, however, that (power) may get manifested at some other time; but it is not found manifested in the present time, because he can not visit more than five villages at present, and also the power of going to five villages exists in him at present from the manifestation power point of view, because he can go to these five villages but the instantaneous manifestation of that power is of visiting only one village in one day.

Similarly, this *Jiva* has the power of knowing and seeing all the substances but the *karmas* obstructed it, and only so much *Kshayopashama* resulted (manifested) that the objects of touch sense, etc. only can be known or seen but only one object in one *Samaya* (moment of time) can be known or perceived. The *Jiva* has the power of knowing and seeing all objects from substance (inherent potentiality) point view which may get manifested at some other time but does not exist manifested at present because he cannot know or see the objects more than the objects of one's own manifested capability of knowing and seeing. And also the power of knowing and seeing the objects as per his capability in the present manifestation form exists from the modification point of view, because he can know and see those objects but the instantaneous manifested capacity is found of knowing or seeing only one object in one *Samaya* (unit of time).

**Question :** This is understood, but the *kshayopashama* (of *Karmas*) is found (manifested) and on there being contrary instrumental cause of external sense etc. knowing and seeing (of the objects) does not materialise or materialises less or otherwise, so in such instance how can the instrumentality (*Nimitta*) of *Karma* alone be established ?

**Answer :** As (in the above example) the man obstructing (the going person) says- 'Out of five villages go to one village in one day but go along with these servants'. There, if those servants act contrarily then going may not be possible or may be possible to some extent or in opposite direction. Similarly, the *Kshayopashama*

of *Karmas* is of such type that out of so many objects only one object can be known or seen in one 'Samaya', but that too on being the *Nimitta* (presence) of so many external objects. There, if those external objects modify contrarily then knowing and seeing may not be possible or may be possible to some extent or otherwise. All this is the peculiarity of *Karmas Kshayopashama* only. Hence, the *Nimitta* of *Karmas* only is to be known, for example, someone is not able to see due to the obstruction by the atoms of darkness but the owl, cat, etc. are able to see even in the presence of obstruction created by them. All this is the peculiarity of *Kshayopashama* only. Thus, knowing and seeing materialises in accordance with the degrees of *Kshayopashama* only.

In this way is found the functioning of *Kshayopashama Jnana* (knowledge) to this *Jiva*.

The clairvoyance and telepathy knowledges found in the path of liberation are also the (types of) *Kshayopashama-Jnana* only. (Hence) similarly, these also know and see only one object in one *Samaya* (moment) and are dependent on other objects. And whatever are their details (specialities) should be known in detail.

Thus, owing to the instrumentality of the rise of *Jnanavarana* and *Darshanavarana Karmas*, most of the degrees of *Jnana* and *Darshan* are non-existent and owing to their *Kshayopashama* a few degrees (of *Jnana* & *Darshan*) are found existing.

### ***Jiva's State Due to Rise of Mohaniya-Karma***

Due to rise of *Mohaniya-Karma* the perverse-belief (*Mithyatva*) and passional dispositions (*Kashaya Bhavas*) are caused to this *Jiva*.

### ***Jiva's Condition Due to the Rise of Darshan-Moha (Faith-deluding) Karma***

Owing to the rise of *Darshan-Moha* the disposition of perverse-belief (*Mithyatva-Bhava*) is caused, due to which this *Jiva* believes the *Tattvas* (substance) contrary to their nature in the form of erroneous ascertainment. He does not believe as they are but believes as they are not .

"A mass of immaterial *pradeshas* (spatial units), possessor of the celebrated knowledge, etc.attributes and an eternal substance is the



self (soul); and the mass of material-matter substances, devoid of celebrated knowledge, etc. attributes, which are newly associated – such bodies, etc. *pudgalas* are the non-self (non-soul)”. And in their association the *Jiva* assumes various types of bodily modifications like that of human beings, animals etc. In those bodily modifications the *Jiva* holds the feelings of I-ness (or oneness), can not discriminate between the self and non-self. Whatever (bodily form of) modification he obtains, the same modification he treats as to be the self.

Further, in that modification the knowledge, etc. are his own attributes and the attachments, etc. are the impure (alien) dispositions produced due to the instrumentality of *Karmas* and complexion, etc. are the attributes of the bodies, etc. *Pudgalas* and the various changes that take place of atomic particles and complexion, etc. in the body, etc. are the modifications of matter (*pudgalas*); he identifies all these modifications as to be his own nature; the discrimination between the nature of the self and non-self can not be possible.

And in the human, etc. embodied modifications, the association of family, wealth, etc. is met with; these are clearly different from the self and they do not act or modify under one’s control; even then he feels mineness in them that these are mine. They in no way become his own. He himself considers them as his own by his own belief. Further, on acquiring human, etc. embodied modifications, he sometimes believes the self-imagined false nature of the deity, etc. or of the *Tattoas* (substances), etc. but does not believe in their true nature as they really are.

Thus, owing to the rise of *Darshan Moha* (faith-deluding *Karma*) the disposition of perverse belief in the form of non-substantial faith is caused in this *Jiva*. Where its rise is found intense, a more perverse faith contrary to true faith is caused, when its rise is feeble then less perverse faith contrary to true faith is caused.

### ***Jiva’s Condition Due to the Rise of Charitra Moha***

When *Jiva* indulges in passions due to the rise of *Charitra-Moha* (conduct-deluding *Karma*), then even knowingly and seeingly

involves himself in anger, etc, believing the other objects beneficial and harmful.

Due to the rise of anger passion, believing other objects to be harmful, the *Jiva* wishes ill (evil) of them. When some temple, etc. inanimate objects appear to be disagreeable then he wants to damage them by way of breaking and destroying, etc. and when the foes etc. animate objects appear to be bad then he wishes evil of them by inflicting pain through killing, chaining or beating, etc. And if he himself or the other living and non-living objects get modified in some form which he does not like then he wishes ill of that modification by turning it into other form.

Thus the desire of wishing ill of others is caused due to (the rise of) anger-passion but its harm depends on destiny.

And on rise of pride-passion, believing other object to be harmful, he desires to undermine it and desires to extol himself. Due to the feeling of dislike and disrespect in excreta-dust, etc., inanimate objects, he desires these to remain inferior and self to remain superior. And by bending and keeping under his control, he wishes other people, etc., animate substances, to remain inferior and self to remain superior. And for establishing one's own superiority in the world by decorating the body and spending money and other such acts, he desires others to remain inferior and himself to become superior. And if someone performs more commendable act in comparison to his own act then he tries to prove it inferior through some means and wants to show his inferior act as superior.

Thus owing to pride-passion, the desire to establish one's own superiority arises, but achieving superiority depends on destiny.

And on rise of deceit-passion, believing other object to be beneficial, he desires to achieve it through various fraudulent ways. He indulges in various types of frauds for obtaining jewels, gold, etc. inanimate things and for acquiring women, male-female servants, etc., animate objects. For the purpose of cheating, he assumes different poses and changes the conditions of other animate and inanimate objects. Through such forms of deception he wants to accomplish his goal.

Thus owing to the deceit-passion, one commits fraud for the accomplishment of one's goal but accomplishment of cherished goal depends on destiny.

And on rise of greed-passion, believing other objects to be beneficial, he desires to obtain them. The avarice of cloths, ornaments, wealth & grains, etc., inanimate objects, is induced and avarice of wife, sons, etc. animate objects is induced. Further, believing some particular modification to be beneficial to self or to other animate-inanimate objects, he wants to change them into that form or modification.

Thus owing to greed-passion, the desire of obtaining beneficial objects is induced but obtaining beneficial objects depends on destiny.

Thus due to rise of anger, etc. passions, the soul undergoes (alien) modifications.

These passions (*Kashayas*) are of four kinds :

1. *Anantanubandhi*-(Intensest type of anger, pride, deceit & greed-passions).
2. *Apratyakhyanavarana*-(Intenser type of passions).
3. *Pratyakhyanavarana*-(intense type of passions).
4. *Samjwalana*-(mild-gleaming passion).

The passions on rise of which *Samyaktva* (right belief) and *Swaroopacharana charitra* (self-absorption conduct) can not be evolved in the soul, are called *Anantanubandhi Kashayas*. Those passions, on rise of which the partial right conduct (*Desha-Charitra*) is not evolved, and even partial abstinence can not be observed, are called *Apratyakhyanavarana Kashayas*. And those passions on rise of which complete right conduct (*sakal-charitra*) is not evolved and complete abstinence can not be observed, are called *Pratyakhyanavarana Kashayas*. And those passions on rise of which transgressions continue evolving in *Sakal-charitra* and hence perfect conduct (*Yathakhyata-charitra*) can not be evolved, are called *Samjwalana Kashyas*.

In beginningless mundane existence (of *Jivas*), continuous rise of all these four passions is found. There, when the passion is

intense in the form of *Krishna-Leshya* (black thought-colouration) and when the passion is feeble in the form of *Shukla-Leshya* (white thought-colouration) an incessant rise of all those four passions is found existing in both the conditions. Because the divisions of *Anantanubandhi*, etc. passions are not from the viewpoint of their being intense or feeble but are from the viewpoint of obliterating *Samyaktva* (right belief), etc. On intense rise of fruition of those *Karmic* species, intense anger, etc (alien dispositions) are caused and on feeble rise of fruition (of these species of *Karmas*) feeble anger, etc. are caused.

Further, on attaining the right path of liberation, the rise of last three, two and one species out of these four kinds (of conduct-deluding *Karma*) is found and afterwards all the four get destroyed in the end.

Further, out of anger, etc. four passions, the rise of only one passion is found in one unit of time. Also these passions have mutual cause and effect relationship. Anger turns into pride, etc. pride turns into anger, etc; that is why sometimes the difference is recognised and sometimes it is not recognised. This is to be known as the passional form of modification.

Further, owing to the rise of *Charitra-Moha* only the quasi-passions (*No-kashayas*) are caused; there, due to rise of laughter (*Hasya*) passion, believing some object beneficial, one becomes cheerful and feels happy. And due to rise of 'Liking' (*Rati*) passion, believing something good, one makes love with it & gets attached therein. And due to rise of 'disliking' (*Arati*) passion, believing something harmful, one feels aversion & becomes desperate. And due to rise of 'sorrow' (*shok*) passion, believing something harmful, one feels dejected, feels sorry. And due to rise of fear (*Bhaya*) passion, believing some object harmful, one feels afraid of it & does not like its association. And due to rise of 'disgust' (*Jugupsa*) passion, believing some object harmful, one hates it & wants to get rid of it.

Thus, one should know these laughter (*Hasya*), etc. six quasi-passions. And due to rise of sex-passions, the feeling or desire of co-habitation is caused. There, due to rise of 'female' sex-passion, the desire of cohabiting with man is caused and due to rise of

'male-sex' passion, the desire of cohabiting with woman is caused and due to rise of neuter sex-passion the desire of cohabiting with both man and woman is caused.

Thus, these are the nine types of *No Kashayas* (quasi-passions). These are not so strong as anger, etc; that is why these are termed as *Ishat*. (quasi) Here the word 'No' is to be known synonym of *Ishat*. The rise of these quasi-passions is found along with those anger, etc. passions as per their rise.

In this way, due to rise of *Moha* (deluding *karma*) perverse belief and passions (alien dispositions) are caused and these (alien-dispositions) alone are the root cause of *Samsara* (transmigration). Because of these passions only the *Jiva* is unhappy at present and these only are the causes of future *Karmic* bondage also. The name of these very passions is also *Raaga* (attachment)- *Dweshha* (aversion), *Moha* (delusion).

There, the name of *Mithyatva* (perverse belief) is *Moha* because there is absence of advertance (about the self-soul). Further the name of deceit, greed passions and laughter, liking and three kinds of sex-passions is *Raaga* (attachment), because love (affinity) is found there with agreeable feeling. And the name of anger, pride passions and disliking, sorrow, fear, disgust is '*Dweshha*' (aversion), because hatred (ill-will) is found there with disagreeable feeling. And in general the name of all kinds of passions and quasi-passions is *Moha* (delusion), because in all these passions inadvertance is found all everywhere.

### ***Jiva's Condition Due to Rise of Antaraya-Karma (Obstructive Karma)***

Further, due to rise of *Antaraya-Karma* whatever *Jiva* wishes does not happen. If he wishes to give donation he can not give, wishes to obtain a thing but can not obtain, wishes to enjoy but can not enjoy, wishes to enjoy again and again but can not do so, wishes to exert for manifesting his power of knowledge, etc. but can not get manifested. In this way, whatever one wishes does not happen due to the rise of *Antaraya-Karma* (obstructive-Karma); And due to its *Kshayopashama* the desired thing materialises to some extent. One's desire is great but he can donate only a little; some



profit is achieved and only some power of knowledge, etc. is manifested; there too several outward instrumental causes are required.

Thus *Jiva's* state is caused due to rise of *Ghati-karmas*.

### **Jiva's Condition Due to Rise of *Vedniya-Karma* (Feeling-producing *Karma*)**

Further, in '*Aghati-karmas*' (non-destructive *Karmas*), due to rise of *Vedniya-Karma* (feeling-producing *Karma*), the causes of external happiness-unhappiness are produced in the body. Healthiness, powerfulness, etc. and hunger, thirst, disease, sorrow, pain, etc., the causes of happiness-unhappiness are developed in the body. Externally pleasant season (weather), wind, etc. favourite wife, son, etc. and friend, wealth, etc. unpleasant season(weather), wind, etc. unfavourite wife, son, etc. and foe, poverty, assassination, bondage (imprisonment) become the cause of happiness-unhappiness.

In these external causes as mentioned above, many causes are of such type due to instrumentality of which the condition of body becomes the cause of happiness-unhappiness and those very causes become the cause of happiness-unhappiness. And many causes are of such type which themselves become the causes of happiness-unhappiness. The association of such cause takes place due to rise of *Vedniya Karma*. There, the causes of happiness are met with due to rise of *Sata-Vedniya* (pleasant feeling-producing) *Karma* and the cause of misery are met with due to rise of *Asata Vedniya* (unpleasant feeling-producing) *Karma*.

Here it should be known that those causes themselves do not produce happiness or misery, (but) owing to the rise of *Mohakarma* (deluding *Karma*) the soul of his own believes & feels happiness-unhappiness. Such is the relationship between the rise of *Vedniya Karma* and the rise of *Moha-karma*. When the external cause produced by *Sata Vedniya* is met with, then the rise of *Moha-karma* of the type of believing happiness is found and when the external cause produced by *Asata Vedniya* is met with then the rise of *Mohakarma* of the type of believing unhappiness is found.

And the same cause becomes the cause of happiness to someone and of unhappiness to other. For example, the type of cloth which

becomes the cause of happiness to someone due to rise of *Sata Vedniya*, the same cloth becomes the cause of misery to someone else due to rise of *Asata Vedniya*. Hence, the external object is simply an instrumental cause of happiness and unhappiness. Whatever happiness-unhappiness is caused is due to *Nimitta* (rise) of *Moha* only. The disillusioned monks possess many super-natural powers (*Riddhis*) and face afflictions (*Parishahas*), but the feeling of happiness-unhappiness is not caused in them. The illusioned *Jiva*, on meeting external cause or even without meeting any cause, is assuredly found feeling happiness-unhappiness due to his own conjecture only. There too, on meeting with that particular cause by which a highly-illusioned *Jiva* becomes more happy-unhappy, by meeting with the same cause a less-illusioned *Jiva* becomes less happy-unhappy.

Therefore, the principal strong cause of happiness-unhappiness is the rise of *Moha* (deluding) *Karma*; the other external things are not strong cause; but the primeness of cause and effect relationship between other (non-self) objects and the dispositions of the illusioned *Jiva* is found, due to which the illusioned *Jiva* believes other external objects only as to be the cause of happiness-unhappiness.

In this way, the cause of happiness-unhappiness is produced due to (rise of ) *Vedniya-Karma*.

### ***Jiva's Condition Due to Rise of Ayu (Life) Karma***

And due to rise of *Ayu-karma*, the duration of human, etc. embodied forms is found existing. So long as the rise of *Ayu-karma* continues, till then even on meeting with several diseases, etc. (external) causes, the bondage with the body does not end. And when the rise of (species of) *Ayu-karma* ends, then even on making several efforts there remains no bondage with body; at the same very instant soul and body become separate.

In this world (of transmigratory existence) the cause of birth, life and death is *Ayu-karma* only. When rise of new *Ayu-karma* starts, then birth in new embodied form takes place. And so long as the rise of *Ayu-karma* continues, till then life remains by existence of vitalities in that embodied form. And when the rise of *Ayu-karma* ends then death is caused by dissociation of vitalities in that embodied

form. One should know that such is the natural instrumentality of *Ayu-karma*; none else is the creator, destroyer or protector.

Further, as someone wears new dress (cloth), he keeps on wearing it for some period, then quits it and puts on other dress; similarly, *Jiva* occupies new body, he keeps on occupying that body for some period, then quits it and (again) occupies another body. Therefore, birth, etc. are from bodily association point of view.

*Jiva* (soul) is assuredly eternal and devoid of birth, etc., nevertheless, the illusioned *Jiva* does not think of past and future, therefore, he keeps himself continuously busy in the activities concerning to the present embodied form only, believing his own existence to be only till the duration of the present embodied form.

In this way, the duration of embodied existence due to rise of *Ayu-karma* is to be known.

### ***Jiva's Condition Due to Rise of Nama-Karma (Physique-making Karma)***

Further, due to rise of *Nama-karma*, *Jiva* attains human body, etc. (different) forms of existence and accordingly he is found in that state of existence. There, the different kinds of *Trasa* (mobile beings), *Sthavara* (immobile beings) are born. And there the soul holds *Jati* (class) of one-sensed beings, etc. It should be known that there exists cause and effect relationship between the rise of *Jati Nama-karma* and *Kshayopashama* of *Mati-Jnanavarana Karma*. The soul acquires the *Jati* (class of embodied form) in accordance with his *Kshayopashama*.

And the association of bodies takes place; the atoms of body and *Pradeshas* (spatial units) of the soul get bonded in one form and the soul by getting contracted or expanded becomes equal to the extent of the body. And in *Nokarma* from of body, the appropriate positions of different limbs and sub-limbs are found proportionately. From this only the touch, taste, etc. material senses (*Dravya-Indriyas*) are formed and in the heart place a material mind (*Dravya-Mana*) of the shape of a lotus-flowered into eight petals is found. And in the same body itself particular shape etc., particular colour or complexion, etc. and grossness or subtleness, etc. are produced; thus, the atoms transformed into body form undergo such type of modifications.

Further, respiration and voice are produced; they too are the mass of *Pudgalas* (atoms) and remain in one bonded form with the body. The *Pradeshas* of soul are found co-extensive in the *Pudgalas* also. There, the respiration is (nothing but) the air. As one takes the food and discharges the excreta then only he remains alive; similarly, when one inhales external air and exhales internal air, then only the life exits. Hence, respiration is the cause of life. As bones, flesh, etc. are found in the body, similarly air is also found in the body. And as one does the work by hands, etc., similarly, he does the work by air (respiration). The morsel of food which is put in the mouth is swallowed by air, the excreta, etc. is also discharged by air. Similarly, other things should be known. And the pulse, gastric disease, tormina, etc. are also to be known as the parts of the body in air form.

The voice is sound. As on vibrating the string of guitar, the matter molecules (*Skandhas*) capable of transforming into speech species get modified into lettered or non-lettered form of sound; similarly, on vibrating the palate, lip, etc. parts (of the mouth), the *Pudgal-skandhas* (matter-particles) taken in during *Bhasha-Paryapti* (accomplishment of speech-species) get modified into lettered or non-lettered form of sound.

Further, graceful and awkward movement, etc. in embodied beings occur. Here it should be known that among the two persons chained by a common fetter, if one person wants to move and the other person also moves then movement can take place, but if one of the two remains sitting then movement can not take place and if one out of the two be strong then he might carry away the other person also. Similarly, the soul and the body form of *Pudgalas* (matter-particles) have one common region occupying form of bondage (*eka-kshetravagaha* form of bondage). There, if soul desires to make movement and *Pudgalas* (matter of body) being devoid of the power of movement do not make movement, or if *Pudgalas* are having power (of making movement) but the soul does not have desire (to move) then movement can not occur. And if among them, the *Pudgalas* by acquiring power, make movement then along with it the soul, even without having any desire, makes movement. Thus happens the activity of movement, etc. And this *Jiva* meets with

external *Nimitta* of defamation, etc. In this way, these acts are produced. And due to these external causes in accordance with the rise of *Moha*, the soul becomes happy and miserable also.

Thus, due to rise of *Nama-karma*, various types of formations take place of their own; none else is the creator. And the *Tirthankara*, etc. types (species) of *Nama-karma* are not found here.

### ***Jiva's Condition Due to Rise of Gotra-Karma (Status-determining Karma)***

Due to rise of *Gotra-Karma*, birth in high or low caste is caused; there one gets high or low status. Owing to rise of *Moha*, the soul becomes happy and miserable.

In this way, the state of *Jiva* is found due to the instrumentality of *Aghati-karmas*.

In this way, in this eternal world, the states of soul are caused due to rise of *Ghati* and *Aghati karmas*.

“Oh Bhavya Jiva ! (oh capable soul !) you should think deeply in your inner heart and see whether it is so only or not. On contemplation it would appear to be so only. If it is so then do accept that you are being afflicted since eternity by transmigration form of disease. You should make efforts to destroy it. Such meditation will bring true happiness to you”.

Thus ends the 2nd Chapter describing ‘the mundane state of existence of *Jivas* in this *Moksha Marg Prakashak* named *Shastra*.

• • •



## CHAPTER 3

# EXPOSITION OF MISERIES OF MUNDANE EXISTENCE AND BLISS OF LIBERATION

दोहा : सो निजभाव सदा सुखद, अपनों करौ प्रकाश ।  
जो बहुविधि भवदुखनिकौ, करिहै सत्ता नाश ॥

(Since) the nature of self soul is always blissful, thou ought to emit the light of self which will destroy the existence of different forms of miseries of mundane existence.

Many types of miseries are found in this *Sansara* (mundane existence); these are being narrated here, for if there be happiness in *Sansara* also, why should then we make effort for liberation from *Sansara* ? Since there are several kinds of miseries in this *Sansara* so efforts are to be made for liberation.

As a physician, by making diagnosis of disease and describing its condition, convinces the patient about his disease and thereafter creates interest in him for its treatment; similarly, here also by making diagnosis of *Sansara* and describing its condition, (Acharya) convinces the mundane being of his *Sansara* - disease and creates interest in him for making efforts to get rid of it.

For example, the patient is suffering from the disease but does not know its root cause, does not know the right treatment and also cannot bear the pain. Then, whatever appears to be the right treatment he takes it; therefore, the misery does not come to an end, then tormentedly, being helpless, he bears those pains; when the physician tells him the root cause of pain, tells the nature of the pain, proves all his efforts wrong, then he gets interested in making the right effort. Similarly, the mundane being is suffering from *Sansara* (transmigratory existence) but does not know its root cause,

does not know the right means and also cannot bear the miseries. Then, whatever appears the right effort he makes it; therefore, the misery does not come to an end, then tormentedly, being helpless; he bears those miseries. He is shown here the root cause of miseries; the nature of the misery is explained and all his efforts are proved to be wrong; then he gets interested in making the right efforts. For this purpose this description is being made here :

### Root Cause of Miseries

#### (A) From *Karm's* Bondage Point of View

The root cause of all miseries is wrong faith, wrong knowledge and wrong conduct. The misbelief in *Tattvas* (realities) due to rise of *Darshan-Moha* (faith-deluding *karma*) is wrong faith (*Mithya-Darshan*) because of it the true-realisation of the nature of substances is not possible, rather false-realisation is caused. And due to the instrumentality (*Nimitta*) of that wrong faith only whatever knowledge of *Kshayopashama* form exists, it is all perverse-knowledge; owing to that, right knowledge of the nature of substances does not evolve; rather contrary knowing is caused. And the passional dispositions caused due to the rise of *Charitra Moha* (conduct-deluding *karma*) is *Asanyama* (wrong conduct) because of which the *Jiva* does not act in accordance with the nature of the substances, rather acts contrarily.

Thus, these false belief etc. only are the root cause of all miseries; why is it so is being explained :

Misery caused by *Kshayopashama* of *Jnanavarana* and *Darshanavarana* and Release from it.

Because of wrong faith etc. *Jiva* can not attain discriminative knowledge of self and non-self. The self is a soul (living substance) and the body is the mass of infinite matter particles (*Pudgala-Parmanus*); by their union human, etc. embodied forms (*Paryayas*) are produced, *Jiva* believes that *Paryaya* (embodied form) to be self. The nature of soul is knowledge, perception etc., through it a little knowing and seeing takes place and anger etc. dispositions are evolved owing to *Karmic* bondage; and touch, taste, smell, colour (*complexion*) is the nature of the body which is obvious and it undergoes various modifications like becoming obese, lean, etc.

and changing of touch (*complexion*) etc. - he knows all these as his own nature.

The functioning of knowledge and perception takes place through senses and mind; therefore, he believes that skin, tongue, nose, eyes, ears and mind are his organs. "I know and see through these organs"; because of this belief, the feeling of belongingness & affection is found in the senses.

Further, due to force of *Moha* (delusion) the desire of knowing and enjoying the objects through those senses is produced and on enjoying those objects he feels satisfied on fulfilment of that desire and feels delighted. Just as a dog masticates the bone, due to that its own blood starts coming out. By its taste it believes that this is the taste of the bones; similarly, this *Jiva* knows the objects due to which his knowledge gets entangled in them; taking its taste he believes that this is the taste of objects, but the taste is not in the objects. He himself created the desire, by knowing it himself believed himself to be happy; but "I am an eternal soul characterised by knowledge (sentience)" such realisation of "self being an embodiment of knowledge only" is not there. And "I saw dance, heard melody, smelt the flowers, tasted and touched the objects, knew the *Shastra* (scripture), I should know this" - like this he possesses the realisation of knowledge mixed with the objects known; because of this the predominance of objects alone is perceived. In this way, owing to *Nimitta* of *Moha* the desire of objects is found to this *Jiva*.

He has the desire of knowing and enjoying all the objects of past, present and future. "I should touch all, taste all, smell all, see all, hear all and know all" - so much is the desire, but power is limited to touch, taste, smell, seeing and hearing only such objects which come into contact with the senses; out of them only a few are partly known and enjoyed and a few are known partly through remembrance by mind, etc. Even this much materialises on meeting several external causes. Hence, the desire never gets fulfilled. Such desire can only be fulfilled on attainment of (*Kewala Jnana*) omniscience.

The desire does not get fulfilled through the senses because of the state of *Kshyayopashama*. So, owing to *Nimitta* of *Moha* continuous desire of knowing and enjoying concerned objects through senses

persists; due to which, getting perturbed, the *Jiva* is suffering from misery. So much is the misery that even for knowing and enjoying a single object he is not even afraid of death. As an elephant has vehement desire of embracing the artificial female elephant, the fish of tasting of meat attached with the fisherman's stick, the bee of enjoying the smell of lotus flower, the moths of seeing the colour of lighted lamp and the deer of hearing the melody (of music) due to which even if instant death be sensed yet they are not afraid of it. On one hand death was sure if the objects were enjoyed and on the other hand misery of senses was felt to be greater if the objects were not enjoyed. Being afflicted from the agony of these senses, all *Jivas* irrationally plunge into the objects of senses just as some miserable person jumps from the top of the mountain. *Jivas* earn wealth by undergoing several types of pains, spend it for - obtaining the objects of senses and for the acquisition of those objects they knowingly go even to such places where death is sure to occur. They also indulge into the acts of injury, etc. and involve into passions of anger, etc.

What can they do ? The pang of the senses becomes unbearable; hence no other idea comes to their mind. The *Indras* (celestial beings) etc. are also afflicted from this pang. They too are found very much engrossed in the objects of the senses. Just as a person afflicted from eczema rubs the affected part engrossedly; if there be no pain why would he rub; similarly, the (celestial beings) etc. afflicted from the sensual disease, indulge engrossedly in the objects of senses. If there be no pain why would they indulge in sensual objects ? Such is the sensual knowledge produced by *Kshayopashama* of *Jnanavarana-Dasshanavarana karmas*. It acts as a cause of misery owing to *Nimitta* (association) of *Mithya Darshan* (wrong belief), etc. in association with desire.

Now, the means that this *Jiva* adopts for getting rid of miseries, is being explained : With the understanding that "My desire will be fulfilled by enjoying the objects through senses", he firstly strengthens the senses by taking different types of meals, etc. and knows thus only that if the senses are strong he will have more power of enjoying the objects. Moreover, various external causes are required there; he tries to acquire them.

Further, the senses enjoy the objects on coming in contact with them. Hence, he tries to bring about the contact of the objects with the senses through different external resources. Thus, for the sake of gathering together different types of garments, foods, flowers, temple ornaments, etc. and songs, musical instruments, etc. he undergoes severe stress and strain.

Further, so long as the object remains in contact with the senses, till then somewhat knowledge of that object continues, later on only its remembrance in the mind remains. By the lapse of time the remembrance also fads out. So, he makes effort to keep those objects under his control and frequently-frequently indulges in them. And the senses can enjoy only one object in one time, but he wants to enjoy many objects and rushes towards the other object, and leaves it also, rushes towards the other object - thus behaves ravenously.

In this way whatever means come to his mind, he adopts them but all those means are false. Because, firstly availability of the desired objects is not under one's control, it is extremely difficult, and if by chance according to the rise of *karmas* the desired situation is also met with then by strengthening the senses the power of enjoying the objects does not increase; that power increases only by increasing the power of knowledge and perception but this depends on the *Kashayopashama* of *Karmas*. Someone whose body is strong he is seen possessing such power in a lesser measure; Someone whose body is lean and thin, he is found possessing such power in greater measure. Therefore, by strengthening the senses through the meals, etc. nothing is accomplished. By decrease in passions & on getting *Kshayopashama* of *Karmas* if the power of knowledge and perception increases then accordingly the power of enjoying the objects increases.

Further, he tries to gather the sensual objects, (but) it either does not remain associated for long time or mostly the company of all the desired objects is never met with. So this anxiety continues. And by keeping those objects under his control, he very frequently indulges in them, but they do not remain under his control. Those separate substances change independently on their own or depend on the rise of *Karmas*. Such bondage of *Karmas* takes place on the evolution of suitable auspicious disposition (pious thoughts) and later on they



come to rise state which is clearly seen. Even on making several efforts, without the *Nimitta* of *Karmas*, the external objects are not met with.

Further, leaving one object he indulges in other object, thus behaves ravenously; what can be achieved from it? As a voracious person requiring a quintal food gets a particle of food; can his hunger be quenched ? Similarly, can the desire of the one who is desirous of obtaining all the objects, be satisfied by obtaining only one object ? Happiness is not possible without the end of desire; hence this effort is false.

**Question :** Many *Jivas* are seen becoming happy by-adopting such means (efforts); how do you say it to be totally false?

**Answer :** The *Jivas* do not become happy, but fallaciously consider themselves to be happy. If they have become happy, how will there remain the desire for other objects ? As on getting the disease cured, why one would like to take other medicine ? Similarly, on end of misery, why one would like to have other objects ? Therefore, if by enjoying the object, the desire ends then we may treat it to be happiness. But so long as the particular objects is not enjoyed, till then its desire persists, and the moment that object is enjoyed, at the same moment the desire of enjoying the other object is seen developing; how can this be treated as happiness ? For example, some voracious poor person got a particle of food and feels happiness by eating it, similarly this great greedy person got one desired object and he feels happy to obtain it, (but) in real sense there is no happiness.

**Question :** What is wrong if one satisfies his desire by enjoying the objects one after the other similar to the person who satisfies his hunger by eating the corn bit by bit ?

**Answer :** This may be accepted provided those corn-bits get accumulated, but when the next bit is eaten, by then the earlier bit gets driven out, how will then the appetite be quenched ? Similarly, (if) in the knowing process the knowledge of objects gets accumulated then the desire may get fulfilled, consummated, but when he starts knowing the next object by then the knowledge of the object known earlier vanishes; how will then the desire get fulfilled ?

Without consummation of desire the commotion does not end and without end of commotion how can it be called happiness ?

Further, the enjoyment of even one object takes place under the influence of wrong-faith etc., therefore, the bondage of *karmas* being the cause of forthcoming many miseries takes place. Hence, in the present moment also it is not happiness, nor is the cause of happiness in future; so it is assuredly misery. The same is stated in *Pravachanasara* as below :

सपरं बाधासहियं, विच्छिन्नं बंधकारणं विसमं ।  
जं इंदिहं लद्धं तं, सोक्खं दुक्खमेव तहा ॥ ७६ ॥

**Meaning :** Happiness derived through sense organs is dependent, amenable to disturbances, terminable, cause of bondage and fluctuating, hence, it is assuredly misery in disguise.

In this way the efforts made by this mandane being should be known as false.

What is the right effort then ? When the desire comes to an end and the enjoyment of all objects continues simultaneously then this misery ends, but the desire comes to an end only when *Moha* (delusion) perishes, and simultaneous enjoyment of all the objects is possible only on attainment of *Kewala Jnana* (Omniscience). The means of these is the attainment of *Samyag-darshan* (right belief) etc. and the same should be known as the right means.

In this way the *Kshayopashama* of *Jnanavarana* and *Darshanavarana* also becomes cause of misery owing to *Nimitta* (association) of *Moha* (delusion).

**Question :** *Knowing* (of the objects) does not materialise owing to rise of *Jnanavarana* and *Darshanavarana* *Karmas* hence regard them to be the cause of misery; why do you say the *Kshayopashama* as to be the cause of misery ?

**Answer :** If 'not knowing' be the cause of misery then the *Pudgalas* (matter) should also suffer from misery; but the root cause of misery is the desire and the desire is evolved owing to the *Kshayopashama* only, therefore, *Kashayopashama* is said to be the cause of misery but in reality *Kashayopashama* also is not the cause

of misery. The desire of sensual objects which evolves due to *Moha* (delusion), that (desire) alone is to be known as the cause of misery.

### **Misery caused by Rise of '*Mohaniya Karma*' and Release from it**

Firstly, owing to rise of *Darshana Moha* wrong belief is caused due to which the substance is not found as per one's belief and his belief is not according to as the substance is; therefore, he always remains agitated.

For example, someone puts on a cloth on a mad man. That mad man knowing that cloth as his own limb believes the self and the cloth as one entity. That cloth being under the control of dresser, he (the dresser) sometimes tears it, sometimes joins it, sometimes snatches it, sometimes puts on new cloth, thus behaves in many ways. That mad man believes it under his control, whereas its functioning is under other's control, due to which he feels very much dejected. Similarly, the rise of *Karmas* produced the association of body to this *Jiva*. This *Jiva*, knowing that body as one's own limb, believes the self and the body as one entity (mass). That body being dependent on *Karmas*, sometimes becomes thin, sometimes becomes obese, sometimes gets destroyed, sometimes gets newly created - thus different conditions are produced. This *Jiva* believes it to be under his control, whereas its functioning is under other's control, due to which he feels very much dejected.

Further, where that mad man was staying, there came from somewhere some persons, horses, wealth, etc. and halted there. That mad man knows them as his own but they being under their own control, some come, some depart and some modify into different forms; that mad person believes all those (objects) under his control and their actions take place under other's control due to which he feels very much dejected. Similarly, wherever this *Jiva* obtains (new) embodied form, there come from somewhere, son, horse, wealth, etc. on their own. This *Jiva* knows them to be his own. But they being under their own control, some arrive, some depart and some modify into different forms. This *Jiva* believes all those (objects) under his control and their actions take place under other's control, due to that he feels very much dejected.

**Question :** Sometimes the functioning or actions of body and son, etc. also appear to be under the control of this *Jiva*; then at least at that time, this *Jiva* feels happy ?

**Answer :** Coincidentally, on meeting of the tendency of the desire of *Jiva* and of the destined change of the body, etc., some object modifies in a particular way as per his desire, therefore, at some moment, while thinking about the same event, one feels it to be happiness, but all the objects do not modify in all respects according to his desire, hence, in his thought-process, various forms of agitation continue incessantly.

Further, sometime, seeing the objects modifying in some way according to his desire, this *Jiva* feels oneness and mineness in the body, son, etc. So owing to this understanding, he always remains agitated from the anxiety of producing, nourishing and protecting them. Even by bearing several types of pains he wishes good of them.

And the desire of enjoying the objects, occurrence of passions, agreeable-disagreeable feeling in external objects, adoption of contrary means, disbelief in right means and misconjecturing - the single root cause of all these is wrong faith (misbelief). On its destruction, all (perversities) get destroyed; therefore, the root of all miseries is this wrong faith only.

Further, he does not make effort to destroy that wrong faith also since he has accepted the wrong faith as to be the right faith; why would then he make effort ?

Further, if by chance the five-sensed rational being contemplates about the means of ascertaining the *Tattvas* (realities), thereupon, if due to misfortune, he comes into contact with the false deity, false preceptor, false scripture, then the mis-belief in *Tattvas* gets fostered. His understanding was that he will be benefitted by these but they provide such a means due to which he may become unconscious. He was making efforts for ascertaining the true nature of substances (reality) but contrarily becomes firm in false-belief and consequently due to increase of passions and sensual desires, becomes more miserable.

Further, if by chance the *Nimitta* of true deity-preceptor-scripture is also met with, even then he does not develop belief in

the real sense of their preachings, (but) remains a misbeliever of *Tattavaas* (realities) owing to faith in conventional preaching. There, if passions become feeble and the desire for objects is reduced then he becomes less miserable, but afterwards reverts to same condition. Therefore, whatever efforts this mundane being makes, they, too, are false.

Moreover, the other effort that this mundane being adopts is that he wishes to modify the substances according to his belief. If those objects get modified (accordingly) then his belief may be true; **but the substances are eternal, separate from each other and modify within their respective limits. None is dependent on other, none modifies by any other causing it to modify. Desiring to modify them is no remedy; it is assuredly wrong faith.**

**What is the right means then ? If one's belief becomes as per the nature of the substances then all miseries come to an end.** Just as someone deludedly believes the corpse to be alive or tries to make it alive, then he himself becomes miserable. And believing it to be dead and having the faith that this will not become alive by trying to make it alive, is the only means to get rid of that misery. Similarly, if someone holding wrong faith misbelieves the substances, tries to change them otherwise, then he himself becomes miserable. And believing them correctly and having the faith that these will not change otherwise by trying to get them changed, is the only means to get rid of that misery. The remedy of the misery caused by delusion is to remove the delusion only. So on removal of delusion right belief originates and that alone is to be known as the real remedy.

### **Misery due to *Charitra Moha* and Release from it**

Owing to rise of *Charitra Moha* (conduct-deluding *Karma*) (impure) dispositions of *Jiva* in the form of anger, etc. passions and laughter, etc. quasi-passions are caused, then this *Jiva* sorrowfully feeling much afflicted indulges in several types of evil-deeds anxiously. The same is being explained : When a person is over-powered by anger passion then he desires to harm others and for that purpose he thinks about



various means, utters heart-breaking words by using abusive language. He starts killing by his own limbs (hands, etc.), and by arms, stones, etc. He tries to harm others even by harming the self through undergoing lot of pains by spending money and by committing suicide or if he knows that the one can be harmed through others, then he tries to get him harmed through others or, if one gets harmed on his own then he approbates it. Even if by other's harm none of his purpose gets fulfilled yet he harms him, and on rise of anger if some venerable or well-wishers, also intervene in the matter then he abuses them also, starts beating (them) and becomes irrational. And if no harm be caused to other person then he feels very sorry in his heart of his own and cuts his own limbs and even dies by swallowing poison, etc.; such condition happens on rise of anger-passion.

And when a person is overpowered by pride-passion then he desires to humiliate others and exalts himself and for this purpose he plans many schemes. He censures others and extols himself and undermines other's image (prestige) through various ways and means and magnifies his own image. The wealth which he has collected with great pains, spends in marriages, etc. and spends even by taking loans thinking that his name and fame will remain even after his death; he tries to magnify his self-esteem even by committing suicide. If someone does not pay respect then he tries to earn respect even by giving threats and creating trouble for others. Moreover, under the pressure of pride, he does not pay respect even to honourable and elderly persons and becomes irrational. If he does not find others in the let-down position and himself in the higher position then he inwardly feels very sorry and cuts his own limbs and even dies by taking poison, etc. Such condition happens on rise of pride-passion.

And when a person is overpowered by deceit passion then he desires to accomplish his objective deceptively. For the purpose of accomplishing it he plans many schemes, utters deceitful words in different ways, poses his body deceitfully, tries to show external things otherwise, even indulges in such deceitful actions which may end his life. On exposure of his deception he may get badly harmed, even death may occur, yet he remains undaunted. Under the influence of deception even if some venerable and adorable persons come in his contact, he acts deceitfully with them also and

becomes irrational. If his-objective does not get accomplished by deception then he feels extremely sorry and cuts his own limbs and commits suicide by taking poison, etc. Such condition happens on rise of deceit passion.

And when a person is overpowered by greed-passion, then the desire of obtaining the favourite objects arises and for the purpose of accomplishing it he plans in various ways. He utters words in support of his objective, poses his body in different ways, tolerates lot of miseries, serves others, visits foreign countries, even he indulges in that work which may lead to his death and starts such activities which may cause great sufferings to him. And on the rise of greed-passion, even if there be some work related to the venerable and adorable persons, then also he tries to achieve his goal and becomes irrational. And whatever desired thing he has obtained, he tries to protect it by various means. If the desired object is not obtained or the favourite thing is lost then he himself feels very much distressed, cuts his limbs and dies by taking poison, etc.; such condition happens when one is overpowered by greed-passion.

Thus, the person afflicted by passions indulges in these various activities.

And along with these passions the quasi-passions (*No-Kashayas*) are also found; there, when laughter-passion is evolved then one himself feels elated and joyful. This is to be known as the laughing of a hysteric patient; (although) he is suffering from several types of diseases even then he starts laughing by making some conjecture. Similarly, this *Jiva* (mundane being) is suffering from different maladies even then by making some conjecture he feels happy considering it to be pleasing to one-self but in reality he is miserable. He will become happy only after the eradication of the disease of passion.

When the 'liking-passion' arises then one feels excessive doting in the favourite thing. Just as a cat gets engrossed fondly on catching a rat, does not leave it even if someone beats it; likewise, here also one feels excessive fondness (in one's favourite object) considering that it is obtained with a great difficulty and may get separated; therefore, it is assuredly misery.

When the disliking passion arises, then on getting the association of repugnant thing one feels highly dejected. The association of repugnant thing is not liked by him and the resulting agony becomes unbearable; so, he feels highly distressed for its desertation. This itself is misery.

When the sorrow (grief) passion is evolved, then on dissociation of favourite thing and association of unfavourite thing, getting highly upset, he feels very much afflicted, weeps, cries, becomes unmindful and dies by cutting his limbs; nothing is achieved by all this, even then he makes himself miserable.

When the fear-passion arises, then knowing someone to be the cause of dissociation of favourite thing and association of unfavourite thing he feels fearful, feels highly dismayed, runs away, hides, becomes nervous, reaches the place of misery and dies; hence all this is nothing but misery.

When the disgust passion arises, then he hates the unfavourite thing. That thing got associated on its own and he tries to escape disdainfully or wants to remove it away and getting dejected he experiences great pain.

When the carnal desire arises due to rise of three types of sex-passions, then the desire of cohabiting with female sex due to rise of male sex passion, the desire of cohabiting with male sex due to rise of female sex-passion and the desire of cohabiting with both male and female sex due to rise of neuter sex-passion gets evolved. On account of that one feels very much distressed, sex-fever develops, becomes shameless, spends money, does not bother about defame, does not care for the consequential miseries and punishment, etc. One becomes mad owing to the vehemency of carnal desire and dies. In the books on sex-passion ten states of carnal desire are described. Becoming mad and losing life are also included there in those ten states. In medical books under the types of fevers sex-fever is also stated to be the cause of death. Even occurrence of death due to sex-passion is seen apparently. The sex-blind person becomes irrational. The father with one's own daughter, the man with female animal, etc. starts copulating. Such is the pain of carnal desire which itself is great misery.

Thus are found the conditions owing to the rise of passions and quasi-passions.

Here a thought comes to the mind that if one does not indulge in these conditions then anger, etc. passions produce pain and if one indulges in these conditions then miseries continue till the end of life. There, the *Jivas* accept the miseries till the end of life but are not prepared to bear the agony of anger, etc. passions. From this discussion it is ascertained that the pain of passions is more than even the agony of death.

And when the rise of passion-causing *Karma* takes place then he cannot resist the temptation of indulging in passion. If the external causes of passions are met with then one indulges in passions entangling in them. If no causes are met with then he himself creates the causes. For example, if the cause of involving in business, etc. passions be not there, then he himself creates the causes, e.g. gambling and playing various other games that are the causes of anger, etc. and narrating and hearing to the wicked tales, etc. Moreover, if the carnal desire, anger passion, etc. produce agony and the body does not possess the power of acting according to those passions then he prepares and takes the medicines and adopts various other means. And if no cause is met with then he himself indulges in passions on his own by thinking in his *Upayoga* (active consciousness) about the objects which cause passions. In this way, this *Jiva* being afflicted from passional dispositions becomes extremely miserable.

And "If the purpose for which the passional disposition has occurred gets accomplished then my this misery may end and I may become happy" - thinking so, he arranges various means for getting that purpose accomplished and treats it to be the means of ending that misery.

Now, here the misery which is caused due to passional dispositions; is really true and one obviously himself suffers from such misery, but the means which he adopts are false, Why so ? This is being explained below :-

In anger to harm other, in pride to exalt self by humiliating others, in deceit to accomplish one's object through deceptive means,

in greed to acquire the favourite thing, in laughter the continuation of cause of laughing, in liking the continuance of the association of favourite thing, in disliking the dissociation of unfavourite thing, in grief the elimination of the cause of sorrow, in fear the elimination of the cause of fear, in disgust vanishing the cause of disgust, in male sex-passion uniting sexually with female sex, in female-sex-passion uniting sexually with male sex, in neuter-sex-passion uniting sexually with both (male and female) sex - such purposes are found.

If these are fulfilled then by mitigation of passions misery may come to an end and one may become happy, but the accomplishment of those purposes is not under the control of efforts made by him; it depends on destiny. Because one is seen making various efforts but the object is not fulfilled. Moreover, making of efforts is also not under one's own control, it depends on destiny. Because, one thinks of making various efforts but not a single effort is seen materialising.

And if by *Kakataleeya-Nyaya* the destiny be in accordance with one's objective and the effort made be also in congruance with it and by it even if the objective be achieved then some passion related to that objective may get mitigated but there is no end to it. So long as the objective was not accomplished till then only the passion related to that objective was persisting and the moment the particular objective got fulfilled at the same time passion related to another objective gets generated; even for a moment he does not become free from anxiety. Just as someone was thinking ill of other and the other got harmed then by becoming angry on some other person he started wishing ill of him or when his power was less then he used to wish ill of younger persons and when his power increased then he started wishing ill of elderly persons. Similarly, when the objective which he wanted to accomplish through pride, deceit, greed, etc. gets accomplished then he wishes to accomplish another objective by creating the feeling of pride, etc. in the other persons. When his power was less he wanted to accomplish the smaller objective, when his power increased then the desire to accomplish bigger objective got originated. If there be any limitation of the objectives in his passions then he may become happy by the accomplishment of that objective, but there is no limitation, desire goes on increasing. The same is stated in *Atmanushasana* :



आशागर्तः प्रतिप्राणी, यस्मिन् विश्वमणूपमम् ।  
कस्य किं कियदायाति, वृथा वो विषयैषिता ॥ ३६ ॥

**Meaning :** The pit of desires exists in each and every being. The beings (*Jivas*) are infinite times infinite in number. All of them are found having desires and the magnitude of that well of desires is such that in that single pit the whole universe appears to be just like an atom. Further, the universe is only one; then tell here in this instant how much (portion) would fall in whose share ? Hence, whatever desire of objects one has it is all worthless.

The desire never gets accomplished; hence, even on fulfilment of an objective the misery does not come to an end. Or if one passion disappears then immediately another passion crops up. For example, there be many persons to beat one person, if one stops beating then some other starts beating. Similarly, there are various types of passions to create misery to this *Jiva* and when anger is not there then pride crops up; when pride is not there then anger etc. crop up. In this way the existence of passion is always there; none is found without passion even for a moment. Hence, even on meeting any purpose of any passion how can the misery come to an end ? And one's intention is to accomplish all purposes of all passions. If this happens then he can be happy but it can never happen; therefore, psychically he always remains miserable. In this way, by fulfilling the objective of passions and ending the misery he wants to be happy; but this means is also false.

Then what is the real remedy ? When through right belief and knowledge correct faith & knowledge are acquired then good and bad feelings get removed and by their strength only the fruition of *Charitra Moha* gets reduced. When this happens then passions are destroyed and the misery caused by them may end and thereafter no objective remains. Thus on being free from anxiety one can be extremely happy. Therefore, right belief, etc. only are the true means of getting rid of this misery.

### **Misery caused by the rise of *Antaraya Karma* (Obstructive *Karma*) and Release from it**

And owing to the rise of *Moha* (deluding *karma*) the zeal of donating, gaining, enjoying, re-enjoying and increasing energy

arises in this *Jiva* but due to the rise of *Antaraya Karma* (obstructive *karma*) all this cannot materialise; then extreme agitation is caused. Hence, this itself is obviously misery.

The means that he adopts to get rid of this (misery) is that whatever external causes of obstruction come to his mind, he makes effort to remove the same but this means is false. Even on making efforts, the obstruction takes place owing to the rise of *Antaraya Karma*. And due to *Kshayopashama* of *Antaraya Karma* no obstruction is caused even in the absence of effort. Therefore, the root cause of obstruction is *Antaraya Karma*.

For example, a man beats a dog by a stick; the dog in vain develops envy towards the stick; similarly, obstructions are caused to this *Jiva* by external living and non-living objects due to the instrumental cause of *Antaraya Karma*. This *Jiva* in vain develops envy towards those external objects. The other (external) objects may like to create obstruction to him but obstruction may not be caused and other objects may not like to create obstruction to him but obstruction may be caused. Therefore, it is deduced that the other substances are not the controlling factors; why should one fight with those which have no effect ? Therefore, adopting this means is also false.

What then is the real means ? The prompture which was caused by desires owing to misbelief ends on attainment of right belief, etc. and by attainment of right belief, etc. only the fruition of *Antarya Karma* decreases, then the desire vanishes and the power of soul increases; in consequence, that misery ends and imperturbable bliss is evolved. Hence, right belief etc. is only the right means.

### **Misery caused by rise of *Vedaniya Karma* and Release from it**

Further, owing to rise of *Vedaniya Karma* (feeling-producing *karma*) association of causes of happiness and misery take place. There, various conditions are produced in the body itself, various types of external associations acting as instrumental cause to the conditions of the body are met with and many associations of external things only are found. There, due to rise of *Asata Vedaniya Karma* (unpleasant-feeling-producing *karma*) hunger, thirst, respi-

ration, ache disease, etc. are caused and the association of external - objects viz. extreme-cold and hot weathers, wind, bondages, etc. acting as instrumental cause of disagreeable conditions of body are met with and the associations of foes, bad sons etc. and molecules with bad complexions, etc. are met with externally; so, due to *Moha* (delusion) the feeling of disliking is caused in these objects. When these (*Asata Prakritis*) are in operative state then the rise of *Moha* is invariably of such order that due to which the *Jiva*, becoming highly perturbed, wants to remove them, and so long as those objects are not removed till then he remains miserable. All beings feel miserable in their association.

Further, owing to rise of *Sata Vedaniya Karma* (pleasant-feeling-producing *karma*) wholesomeness and vigorousness, etc. are found in the body and associations of external objects viz. eatables-drinkables and pleasant weather, etc. acting as instrumental cause of agreeable conditions of the body are met with; and the external associations of friends, obedient son, wife, servant, elephant, horse, wealth, grains, house, clothings, etc. are met with and through *Moha* (delusion) the feeling of liking in these objects is caused. When these (*Sata Prakritis*) are in operative state then the rise of *Moha* (deluding *karma*) is invariably of such order that due to which the *Jiva* feels happiness and wants their security; so long as those remain associated till then he feels happy. This feeling of happiness is just like a person who was suffering from many diseases and by taking some treatment he got one of his diseases subsided to some extent for sometime. Then he believes himself to be happy in comparison to earlier condition but in reality it is not happiness. Similarly, this *Jiva* was suffering too much from his miseries; by some means he got one of his miseries subsided to some extent for some period only. Then he believes himself to be happy in comparison to earlier condition but in spiritual sense this is not happiness.

Further, from whatever happens to him due to rise of *Asata*, he feels unhappiness; so he makes efforts to remove it; and from whatever happens to him due to rise of *Sata*, he feels happiness; so, he makes efforts of retaining it, but this effort is false.

Firstly, nothing is under his control; it depends on the rise of *Vedaniya Karma*. All make efforts for removing *Asata* and for retain-

ing *Sata*; but someone gets his purpose served either by making some effort or without any effort; someone may not get his purpose served even after great efforts; therefore, it is deduced that the means are not in his control.

And if by chance he makes effort also and rise (of *vedaniya karma*) is also in congruance to it, then for sometime the cause of some particular type of *Asata* subsides and the cause of *Sata* may arise; there also due to existence of *Moha* he becomes agitated by the desire of enjoying them. The desire of enjoying an object of enjoyment arises; so long as that object is not obtained till then he becomes agitated by its desire and as soon as it is obtained the desire of enjoying another object arises; then he becomes unhappy due to that. For example, someone had the desire of tasting something; the moment he tasted it the desire to taste and touch some other object arises.

Or, earlier, there may be the desire of enjoying only one object in a particular manner; so long as it is not obtained till then its anxiety persists and as soon as that enjoyment is over, the desire of enjoying it in another way arises. For example, someone wanted to see a woman, the moment he saw her, at the same moment the desire of coition arises. And also while enjoying such kind of sensual pleasure the anxiety of adopting other means is created. Then leaving those means he starts adopting other means; there also many types of anxieties are experienced.

Is it not a fact that in making effort for obtaining wealth a great degree of restlessness is experienced in doing business and observing precautions for keeping it safe ? Moreover, the rise of *Asata vedaniya* continues in the form of hunger, thirst, cold and hot states of body and secretion of excreta & phlegm, etc. from the body; *Jiva* feels happy by their removal; is this happiness ? It is simply a remedial measure of the disease. So long as hunger, etc. persist till then the anxiety of removing them persists. As soon as one desire is fulfilled some other desire crops up and that creates agitation and again hunger, etc. may arise, then these create agitation.

In this way while making efforts, by chance, *Asata* may turn into *Sata*; there also anxiety persist; hence only misery continues.

Further, even the above mentioned state may not continue; while making efforts one may have such rise of *Asata* that none of his efforts may succeed and it may cause severe agony which may be unbearable; then due to its agitation one may become distracted, there he feels extreme sorrow.

So, in this world, the rise of *Sata Vedaniya* is very rarely found to someone due to the rise of some *Punyakarma* (auspicious *karma*); most of the *Jivas* are found having the rise of *Asata Vedaniya* for a long time. Therefore, whatever efforts one makes are false.

Or, believing happiness and unhappiness by association of external things, is nothing but fallacy. It is obviously seen that happiness and unhappiness are caused due to the rise of *Sata* and *Asata Vedniya karma* through the instrumentality of *Mohaniya* (deluding) *Karma*. The person possessing one lakh rupees feels unhappy by an expenditure of one thousand rupees and the person possessing one hundred rupees feels happy by gaining one thousand rupees. The external wealth of the former is ninety-nine times more than that of the latter one. Or if the possessor of one lakh rupees is desirous of gaining more wealth then he is unhappy and if the possessor of one hundred rupees has contentment then he is happy. And on getting similar things one feels happy and other feels unhappy. For example, on getting a coarse cloth someone feels unhappy and someone feels happy. And on rise of pain of hunger, etc. in body, dissociation of external favourite thing, association of unfavourite thing, someone feels more miserable. Hence, happiness-unhappiness do not depend on external things; rather on rise of *Sata-Asata karma*, due to association of disposition of *Moha*, happiness-unhappiness are caused.

**Question :** About external objects your above statement is accepted but on getting pain in body one assuredly feels unhappy and on not having pain one feels happy - this happiness unhappiness appear to be dependent on the condition of the body only ?

**Answer :** The functioning of the knowledge of the soul is dependent on senses and senses are the parts of body; so whatever condition is produced in this (body) the knowledge gets engrossed in knowing it; if *Moha Bhava* (deluded feeling) be also associated



with it, then the happiness-unhappiness is specifically known through the condition of the body. And when there be great attachment towards son, wealth, etc. then one bears bodily pain and considers it to be less misery and on their becoming unhappy or on their association being lost, feels more miserable. Whereas the *monks* (naked possessionless saints) do not feel any unhappiness even on having physical pain; therefore, the feeling and believing of happiness-unhappiness is dependent on the rise of *Moha* (deluding *karma*) only. *Mohaniya* and *Vedaniya Karmas* have cause and effect relationship, that is why the feeling of happiness-unhappiness appear to be caused by the rise of *Sata-Asata*. And mostly the association of various external things is found due to the rise of *Sata* and many others due to the rise of *Asata*. Therefore, happiness-unhappiness appear to be caused by the external things. But on ascertaining thoughtfully, happiness-unhappiness is believed to be caused by *Moha* (deluding *karma*) only, there is no rule about happiness-unhappiness being caused by others. The rise of *Sata-Asata* and the association of external objects which are the cause of happiness-unhappiness is found to an omniscient Lord also; but due to absence of *Moha* (deluding *Karma*), he does not have even the slightest feeling of happiness-unhappiness. Hence, the feeling of happiness-unhappiness should be believed to be caused by *Moha* (deluding *Karma*) only. Therefore, if one wants to end misery and wants to become happy by means of removing or keeping the associated external objects then this means is false.

What then is the right means ? When delusion is destroyed by attainment of right belief, etc., then happiness-unhappiness do not appear to be arising due to the external associated objects, rather it appears to be arising due to one's own disposition only. And through the practice of real thinking one should adopt such means by which in his dispositions he would not feel happiness-unhappiness being caused by external things and by the spirit of right belief etc. only, *Moha* (delusion) may become feeble then such a condition develops that even on meeting with several external causes, one does not feel happy-unhappy; then he experiences the real bliss by holding the state of serenity and imperturbelity and then by end of all miseries he becomes happy; this is the right means.

### **Misery caused by rise of *Ayukarma* and release from it**

Holding life in the form of a particular embodied state owing to rise of *Ayukarma* (life-*Karma*) is aliveness and end of that embodied state is death. Due to perverse faith, etc. this *Jiva* experiences & believes the embodied form of existence (*Paryaya*) only as to be the *Self*; therefore, he believes his existence on being in embodied form and believes his non-existence on death. Only due to this reason he always remains fearful of death, and due to that fear the anxiety persists. He is very much afraid of those causes which he knows to be the cause of death. He becomes highly upset if by chance he comes in their contact. In this way, he remains very much unhappy.

The means that he adopts is that he keeps the causes of death away from him or himself runs away from them. And he takes medicines, etc., builds fort, boundary wall, adopts such various means. So, all these means are false because on exhaustion of *Ayukarma*, although he makes various efforts and many others may be helpful, nevertheless, death is certain; he does not survive even for a moment. And as long as *Ayu* (Life *karma*) is not exhausted, till then even if various causes are met with, death does not occur. Therefore, death cannot be avoided by any means. The duration of *Ayu* (Life) ends without fail, therefore, death also is bound to occur. Hence, making efforts for this is totally false.

What is then the right means ? When the belief of I-ness in the embodied state (*Paryaya*) is uprooted on attainment of right belief, etc. and by believing himself to be an eternal sentient substance (*Chaitanya-Dravya*) he develops I-ness feeling in self soul and knows present embodied state to be merely a disguise, then the fear of death disappears. Moreover, when through right belief etc., one attains the highest stage of *Siddhahood* (disembodied omniscient) then the death ends for ever. Hence, the right belief etc. are only the right means.

### **Misery caused by rise of *Name-Karma* and release from it**

Due to the rise of *Name-Karma* (Physique-making *karma*), *Gati* (State of existence), *Jati* (class or group of alike beings) and body, etc.

are created. Out of them those which are created owing to rise of *Punya* (virtue) act as the cause of pleasure and those which are created owing to rise of *Papa* (vice) act as the cause of misery; so, it is a fallacy to believe happiness in these conditions. And this mundane being tries to make effort of removing the cause of misery and getting the cause of happiness; so, this effort is false. The real means is right belief, etc. In this context, for details, one should refer to the description given earlier under *Vedaniya Karma*. Because of similarity of causation of happiness and misery between *Vedaniya* and *Name Karmas* the description of their effectiveness should be known to be similar.

### **Misery caused by rise of *Gotra-Karma* and release from it**

Owing to the rise of *Gotra karma* (high and low status determining *Karma*) one gets birth in high or low family. There, on getting birth in family of high status, one considers himself to be high and on getting birth in a family of low status considers himself to be low. Since he does not know the means of change of birth in high or low family, he feels oneness with the family status obtained by him. But to consider oneself high or low with regard to the family status is fallacy. If someone of high family status indulges in mean activity then he becomes low and if someone belonging to low family status indulges in commendable activity then he becomes high. Owing to greed-passion, etc., many people belonging to high family status start doing the service of the people belonging to low family status.

After all, how long does the family status exist ?

On termination of embodied form, the family status also changes; hence considering oneself high or low by birth in family of high-low status, the person of high status family is afraid of becoming low and one belonging to low status family is unhappy due to the lowness of the status obtained by him.

By attainment of right belief etc., not believing happiness-unhappiness to arise due to high or low status, is the right means; and by the same means he attains such a supreme and the highest state of *Siddha* which never changes; then all miseries end and he becomes perfectly blissful.

Thus, from the point of view of the rise of *karmas*, owing to the instrumentality of wrong belief etc., only miseries and miseries alone are found in the world.

**(B) Miseries from embodied modifications point of view**

Now the same miseries are further described from the embodied modifications point of view :

**The Miseries of One-sensed beings**

In this universe most of the time is spent in one-sensed embodied modifications only. Therefore, assuredly from the beginningless time *Jivas* are found living in the *Nitya Nigoda* state and getting out from there is like jumping out of a gram (grain) from the baking cauldron. Thus, after coming out from there the *Jiva* attains other embodied modification. There in *Trasa-Paryaya* (Mobile beings having two or more senses) the *Jiva* lives for a very short duration. Most of the time is spent in one-sensed embodied form.

There, in *Itar-Nigoda*, he lives for a very long period and for quite sometime he lives in earth, water, fire, air and gross vegetables-bodies. After getting out from *Nitya Nigoda* the maximum period of living in *Trasa* (Mobile beings) bodies is two thousand and a little more *Sagars* only and maximum period of living in one-sensed beings is innumerable *Pudgal Paravartans* only, and the period of one *Pudgal Paravartan* itself is such that in infinitesimal part of it infinite *Sagars* are found. So, mainly the period of this mundane being is passed in one-sensed bodies only.

There, in one-sensed beings the manifestation of power of knowledge and perception is found in extremely poor measure. Those (one-sensed) beings know and see only a little bit of cold and heat, etc. through *Mati-Jnan* (sensory knowledge) produced by the instrumentality of touch sense and through *Shruta Jnan* (the knowledge derived through *Mati Jnan*) and through non-ocular perception pertaining to touch sense. Owing to the intense rise of knowledge-obscuring and perception obscuring *karmas* the manifestation of knowledge and perception is not found more than this but the desire of (enjoying the) objects is found due to which they are extremely miserable. And owing to the rise of *Darshan Moha* (faith-deluding karma) perverse belief is found, due to which

they believe the embodied modification only to be the self; they possess no other thinking power.

Further, due to rise of *Charitra Moha* (conduct-deluding *karma*) they are found imbued with intense anger passion, etc; for, the omniscient Lord has revealed that they only possess black, blue and grey type of three inauspicious *Leshyas* (thought-complexion) and those are found only during the rise of intense passions. There (in that state of existence) the passions are more but the manifested power is extremely poor in all respects; therefore, they are experiencing extreme misery but there is no go.

**Question :** Since their knowledge is extremely poor (rather negligible) how do they indulge in passions ?

**Answer :** There is no such rule that the degree of passions should be in accordance with the knowledge. The power of knowledge is found in accordance with *Kashayopa-shama*. For example, a blind and deaf person possessing less power of knowledge, is found having more passion; similarly, it is agreed to that the one-sensed beings having very less power of knowledge, can have high degree of passion.

Further, the external passion gets exhibited then only when one exerts according to one's internal passion but they are strengthless; therefore, they can not make any effort; due to this, their passion is not visible. For example, some person is weak and due to some reason he has intense passion but cannot do anything, so his passion is not visible outwardly but he feels very unhappy. Similarly, the one-sensed beings are powerless; due to some reason they have passion but cannot do any thing. So, their passion is not visible outwardly and they themselves become miserable.

It is to be known that wherever the passion is more and the strength is less, the anguish is more, and gradually as the passion diminishes and strength increases then accordingly the anguish goes on lessening by any by. But the one-sensed beings have more passion and less strength; therefore, one-sensed beings are extremely miserable. They alone experience their misery and the omniscient knows it. For instance, the knowledge of a hysteric patient gets lessened and due to external physical weakness he



may also not be able to express his sufferings, but he is extremely distressed. Similarly, the knowledge possessed by one-sensed beings is less and due to weak external strength they cannot express their anguish but experience extreme anguish.

And due to intense rise of *Antaraya-Karma* the desired objectives do not materialise much; on account of this also, they are extremely distressed.

Further, in *Aghati Karmas* the rise of *papa-prakrati* (vice-karmas) is predominant; there, on getting the rise of *Asata Vedaniya* they feel extremely miserable owing to its instrumentality. The vegetables are broken by wind-pressure, get dried by cold and heat, are also dried in want of water, are burnt by fire, some-one pierces them, cuts them, crushes them, eats them, breaks them; such various conditions are found. Similarly, the one-sensed earth beings, etc. undergo all such possible conditions. Because of persistence of all those conditions they feel extremely distressed.

As pain is caused in human body on facing above-stated conditions, similarly, one-sensed beings also experience pain. Since knowledge of these conditions is caused through touch-sense and they do possess touch-sense, knowing them through it they feel extremely distressed being overpowered by delusion; but they do not have strength of feeling, fighting or of crying, that is why the ignorant people do not know their miseries. And by chance a little rise of *sata* may be found, but it is not strong.

Further, owing to *Ayukarma* in these one-sensed beings, those who are *Aparyaptas*<sup>1</sup> the duration of their life (*paryaya*) is only one-eighteenth part of the time of one respiration and that of *Paryaptas*<sup>2</sup> the life duration is found varying from one *Antarmuhurta* to many years. There being very short span of age karma, the birth and death continue incessantly and owing to this, they always remain miserable.

In *Name-karma*, the rise of *Tiryanchgati* etc. inauspicious *prakritis* only is particularly found. Even if some weak auspicious *prakriti*

- 
1. Those who have not attained completion of the molecules forming the body and the development of the body, sense-organs, respiratory organ.
  2. Those who have attained completion of the body, sense-organs, etc.

may come to rise, it is not strong; therefore, in their existence also they remain miserable due to the influence of *Moha*.

In *Gotrakarma*, only the rise of low status determining karma exists; therefore, they do not get respectability and as such they are unhappy only.

In this way, the one-sensed beings are extremely miserable. As in this world the stone having some base remains resting for a long time, but in the baseless space (sky) it rarely remains for a very short duration, similarly, *Jiva* remains in the state of one-sensed being for a very long duration but in other forms of existence he sometimes remains for a very short duration. Therefore, the *Jiva* is extremely miserable in this world.

### **Miseries of Mobile (Incomplete-sensed souls) and Irrational Five -sensed beings**

In the two-sensed, three-sensed, four-sensed and irrational five-sensed forms of bodies also, this *Jiva* experiences miseries similar to those experienced by one-sensed beings. The only difference is that here the *Jiva* obtains successively increased knowledge, perception and energy related to each sense and attains the power of speaking and moving. Here also the *Jivas* who are *Aparyaptas* and even those who are *Paryaptas* possessing weak strength and are smaller beings, all these do not possess much power. And there are many *Paryapta Jivas* also possessing lot of strength & are big in size; they possess some power; therefore, they try for getting the objects of senses and try for getting rid of miseries. Out of anger, etc., they indulge in the acts of biting, killing, fighting, deceiving, hoarding grains, etc., fleeing etc., they wriggle and cry out of pain; so, their sorrow is somewhat visible also. Thus, the worms, ants, etc. *Jivas* are seen extremely miserable due to cold, heat, severing, piercing, etc. and hunger, thirst, etc. One should think over their miseries which are clearly seen; what more to describe here ? Thus, the two-sensed beings, etc. also should be known as extremely miserable.

### **Miseries of Rational Five-sensed beings**

(1) **Miseries of Infernal State of Existence** : In the rational five-sensed beings the inhabitants of hell are extremely distressed in all

respects. They have somewhat power of knowledge, but the desire of the objects of senses is too much and they do not get even a little bit material of favourite objects. Therefore, the possession of that power (of knowledge, etc.) is also a cause of great misery. Extreme severity of anger, etc. passion is found in them, because they possess black *Leshyas*, etc. (inauspicious thought colouration) only.

The act of causing misery to one another is found there continuously due to wrath and pride. If they establish friendship with one another then the sufferings may end. Moreover, by causing pain to others none of their purpose is served, but vehemency of anger and pride is found more in them, because of which they have tendency of causing only misery to one another by means of *Vikriya*\* (transformation); they make limbs in the body for causing pain to others and also make weapons by which they cause affliction to others and others cause affliction to them. The passion never subsides. And the vehemency of deceit and greed passion is also more in them, but no agreeable material is available there; hence, they cannot exhibit the act of those passions; because of those passions they are extremely afflicted internally. And sometimes, by chance, some object of those passions is also materialised due to some reason.

Further indulgence in laughter and liking (Quasi) passions is also there but in the absence of external causes, their action is not visible; rarely on account of some reason, those become visible. And the external causes of disliking, sorrow, fear, disgust (Quasi-passions) are found; therefore, those passions are intensely manifested. And in sex-passions, only neuter sex-passion is found in them; so, the sex desire is great and the facility of copulation with women and men is not available there; therefore, they are extremely anguished.

In this way, they are extremely miserable because of passions.

Moreover, in *Vedaniya Karma* there exists only the rise of *Asata* (unpleasant feeling producing) *Karma*, due to which there exists the causes of various types of agonies. In the body, different diseases like leprosy, cough, asthma, etc. are found together and hunger, thirst are so intense that they want to eat and drink everything and the food available is only of that region. And that clay also

---

\* Ability to change appearance at will.

is of such kind that if it comes here (on this earth) then due to its bad smell the human beings of many miles will die. And cold and heat is such that if there be a round of iron having a diameter of 1 lakh *yojana* (approx. 8 lakhs miles) it will also turn into ashes. At some places there is cold and at some places there is heat. Further, the land there is full of thorns sharper than even the weapons. The forests in that land are full of leaves like the edge of weapons. The river is full of such kind of water that on getting its touch the body will split into pieces. The wind is so strong that due to it the body gets scorched. And the infernal beings cause agony in different ways to one another, viz. crush in the oil press, cut into pieces, parch in the big pots (in the ovens), beat with whips, touch red hot iron bars, etc. and thus in many ways, they torment one another. The *Asurakumar Devas* (malevolent celestial beings) go up to third infernal region. They themselves cause pain and make them to fight with each other. In spite of such agony severance of body is not possible; even on getting cut into pieces it rejoins just like mercury. Such extreme agony is there.

Further, no object of *Sata* is there. By chance, in some measure, to someone as per his belief, from some point of view, the rise of *Sata* is found but it is not powerful. There *Ayu* (life) is very long. The minimum life-time is ten thousand years and the maximum life-time is thirty-three *Sagaras*. For such a long period, one has to bear such kinds of sufferings. The rise of only all inauspicious (*papa prakritis* of *Name-karma*) is found there; not a single auspicious (*Punya Prakriti*) is found in the operative state; due to those (*papa-prakritis*) they are extremely distressed. And in *Gotra-karma* there exists the rise of *Neecha Gotra* (Low status *karma*) only due to that they do not get respectability; so also they are extremely miserable only. In this way, one should know that in the infernal state of existence there are extreme agonies only.

### **Miseries of *Tiryanch Gati* (Animals)**

In *Tiryanch Gati* many *Jivas* are *Labdhi Aparyaptas* (undeveloped beings). Their *Ayu* (life-time) is only 1/18th part of the time of one respiration. And many *Paryaptas* (developed beings) also are of very small size, but their power is not visibly seen manifested.

Their miseries are to be known like that of one-sensed beings; knowledge, etc. are somewhat more. And many big-sized *Paryaptas* beings are spontaneously born beings; many are of uterus birth. In them knowledge, etc. are found manifested, but they are found agitated by the desire of objects. Among them, many *Jivas* do not get favourite objects; someone rarely gets a few objects.

Owing to perverse faith, they are assuredly having fallacy in *Tattvas* and passion is chiefly found of intense type. Due to anger & pride, they fight, eat and cause pain to one another; due to deceit & greed, they indulge in deceitful acts and desired objects. They indulge in the acts of those passions through laughter, etc. Rarely someone is found having feeble passion; but this happens to only a few *Jivas*; hence, its predominance is not there.

In *Vedaniya Karma* there is chiefly the rise of *Asata*; due to which disease, anguish, hunger, thirst, piercing, severing, carrying too much load, cold, heat, maiming etc. conditions are caused. Because of that they are clearly seen afflicted; therefore, much is not described here. Rarely someone meets with the rise of somewhat *Sata* also but it is limited to a few *Jivas* only; it is not predominant. And the *Ayu* (life-time) is found from one *Antar Muhurta* (less than 48 minutes) up to crores of years. There, most of the *Jivas* possess only a very short span of life (age) and hence, they suffer from the pangs of birth and death. And the *Jivas* of enjoyment-land (*Bhoga-Bhumi*) have a greater span of life (age) and they have the rise of *Sata* (Karma causing pleasure) also, but those *Jivas* are limited in number. Moreover, mostly there is found the rise of *Tiryanch Gati* etc. inauspicious (*papa prakritis*) of *Name-karma*. Rarely someone meets with the rise of a few auspicious (*Punya*) *prakritis* also, but it is found in lesser measure to some *Jivas*; it is not predominant. And in *Gotra-Karma* only, the rise of low status determining karma is found, so they are suffering from lowness. Thus, there is extreme misery in *Tiryanch Gati* (animals).

### **Miseries of Human State of Existence**

In the human state of existence, innumerable *Jivas* are *Labdhi-Aparyaptas* (undeveloped souls), those all are *Sammoorchchhanas* (spontaneously generated); their span of life (age) is just 1/18th part



of the time of one respiration. And many of the *Jivas* after coming into mother's womb die in a very short period; their potentiality does not get manifested, their miseries are to be known similar to those of one-sensed beings and other specialities are also found which are to be known accordingly.

The beings of uterine birth are born after living for some period in the womb; their miseries have been described earlier from the karmic bondage point of view. All that description is possible for human beings of uterine birth. Or it should be known similar to that of the *Tiryanchas* as described earlier.

The special point is this that here in human beings some particular power is found. The kings, etc. have more rise of *Sata karma* and the *Kshatriyas* (militants) have the rise of high family status determining *karmas* also. And the association of wealth, relatives (kith and kin) etc. is found particularly.

Or, the distresses of womb state, etc. are known clearly. As a worm is generated in faeces, similarly, this *Jiva* is born in the womb, forming his body out of the union of sperm and ovum. There the growth of knowledge, etc. and of body takes place gradually. The pain of staying in womb is extreme. There, one completes the period in the contracted form and procumbent state with hunger and thirst feeling, etc. When he comes out of the womb then he suffers from great misery in childhood. Some people say that in childhood misery is less; it is not so, but due to weak power it is not manifested. Afterwards the miseries of indulging in business, etc. and satisfying the passional desires, etc. get manifested. The perturbation caused due to agreeable and disagreeable feelings continues persisting and in old age he becomes languid and then he becomes extremely unhappy. These miseries are evidently seen happening. What more should be stated? One who does not recognize the evidently happening miseries of human life, how would he like to listen to their description? Someone, by chance, meets with the rise of somewhat *Sata* (auspicious *prakritis*) that too is full of perturbation. And the ranks of the personages like *Tirthankaras*, etc. are not attained without attaining the path of liberation. Thus, in the human life, miseries alone exist.

In human life, if someone wishes to make effort for self-benefaction then he can do so. For example, the root and the top insipid portions of a worm-eaten sugarcane are not at all worth sucking and the middle pieces being worm-eaten are also not worth sucking. If someone greedy of taste spoils them he is free to do so, but if those are sown then many sugarcanes will be produced out of them and their taste will also be very sweet. Similarly, the childhood and the oldage of human life are not worth enjoying and the middle age is full of diseases and distresses; happiness cannot be there. If someone greedy of carnal pleasures spoils it he is free to do so, but if it is used in the observance of religious conduct then he will attain a very high spiritual status. There, high degree of imper-turbable happiness is found. Hence, here (in this human birth) one should make effort for self-benefaction and should not lose it in vain under the delusion of happiness.

### Miseries of celestial beings

In the celestial state of existence, the power of knowledge etc. is somewhat more than the others. They have false-belief about the *Tattvas* due to perverse faith. Their passions are somewhat feeble. The passions of the Residential (*Bhavanavasi*), the Peripatetic (*Vyantara*) and the Stellar (*Jyotiska*) orders of celestial beings are not very feeble and their *upayoga* (active consciousness) is very fickle; they possess some power also; so, they indulge in the acts of passions, keep engrossed in the frolicsome acts and carnal pleasures and due to that restlessness they are only unhappy. And heavenly Gods (*Vaimanikas*) of higher and higher orders have decreasingly less passion and the power is increasingly more. Hence, due to decrease in restlessness anguish also decreases.

Here in the celestial beings, the anger and pride passions are found but the motivating cause is less; so, the acts of those passions are not predominant. The lower class of *Devas* (celestial beings) are found indulging in causing harm and humiliating others due to forlicsomenss, etc. But this type of behaviour is found in lesser measure in the higher class of *Devas* (*Vaimanikas*). It is not predominant. And the causes of deceit and greed passions are found there; that is why the acts of those passions are predominant. As such the acts of deceiving, desiring the objects of sensual pleasures,

etc. are chiefly found in them. These acts too are found in lesser measure in higher and higher Devas.

Further, the motivating causes of laughter, liking quasi-passions are found in greater measure; hence, the acts of these passions are predominant. And the causes of disliking, sorrow, fear, disgust, quasi-passions are less; hence, the acts of these passions are not predominant. And the rise of female sex-passion and male sex-passion is also found and the cause of dalliance is also present, so they enjoy copulation; these passions too are feeble in the higher and higher *Devas*. The sexual desire is absent in the *Ahmindras* (Self-Gods) due to feebleness of sex-passion.

In this way, the celestial beings too have passions and anguish is caused by the passions only.

And as the degree of passions in *Devas* is of lesser measure; accordingly, the degree of misery is also less. That is why they are said to be happy in comparison to others. In spiritual sense the passions are alive; hence, they are only unhappy.

In *Vedaniya Karma* the rise of *Sata Vedania* is more. There also it is less in the three (residential, peripatetic and stellar) classes of Devas and is found in increasingly greater measure in higher & higher *Vaimanikas* (heavenly Gods). The association of favourite state of body, goddesses (wives), palaces, etc. is found there. And rarely due to some reason somewhat rise of *Asata Vedaniya* is also found. It is found somewhat manifested also in the lower classes of Devas, but it is not found manifested more apparently in the higher class of Devas. And *Ayu* (life-time) is very long. The minimum life-time is ten thousand years and maximum is thirty-one Sagaras. Without attaining the right path of liberation no one can have more *Ayu* (life-time) than this. So, for such a long period they (the *Devas*) remain engrossed in the carnal pleasures. And the rise of all (*Punya*) auspicious prakritis of *Name-karma* like *Devagati* etc. is found there; hence, are the causes, of happiness. And in *Gotrakarma*, there exists the rise of *Uchcha Gotra* only, hence, they hold respectable position.

Thus, owing to the speciality of the rise of *Punya Karmas* they possess the association of agreeable things and due to rise of passions the carnal desire is found. Therefore, they are found engrossed in

enjoying them. But the desire is excessively more; therefore, they do not become happy. The higher class of Devas possess the rise of highest degree of *punya* (auspicious *karmas*) and the passion is extremely feeble, nevertheless the absence of desire is not found in them also; therefore, in spiritual sense, they are assuredly unhappy.

In this way, everywhere in the world only miseries and miseries are found. Here ends the description of miseries from the modifications (*Paryayas*) point of view.

### General Characteristics of Miseries

Now, the general characteristics of all sorts of miseries are being described. The differentia of misery is perturbedness and the perturbedness is caused by desire.

#### Four kinds of desires

Many kinds of desires are found in this mundane being :

(1) One type of desire is of enjoying the objects of senses, due to which one wants to know and see; for example, the desire of seeing colour, listening to melody, knowing the unknown, etc. arises. No other pain is there but so long as one does not know and see, he feels extremely perturbed. This type of desire is called *Carnal Desire* (*Vishaya Ichchha*).

(2) The Second type of desire is of acting according to one's passional emotions, due to which one wants to indulge in actions like that of harming others, humiliating others, etc. Here, no other pain is there but so long as that work is not completed he remains highly perturbed. This type of desire is called *Passional desire* (*Kashaya-Ichchha*).

(3) The third type of desire is of removing those harmful causes which are met with either in the body or are external to the body owing to the rise of *papa-karmas*; for example, on association of disease, ache, hunger, etc., the desire of removing these arises; so, here one believes this only as to be the anguish. So long as it is not removed he remains highly perturbed. This type of desire is called the rise of Vice (*Papa*).

In this way, all *Jivas* feel unhappy on the rise of these three types of desires. This is assuredly misery.

(4) The fourth type of desire is produced due to some external cause because of which one desires to act according to above three types of desires. In these three types of desires each type of desire has many varieties. The causes of satisfaction of many varieties of desires are met with due to the rise of *Punya-karma* but their means are not met with simultaneously; that is why leaving indulgence in one desire he engages himself in other desire and afterwards leaves this also and involves himself in another one. As someone has got different kinds of things, out of them he sees any one thing, leaving it starts listening to melody; again leaves it and engages himself in harming others, leaving it starts taking meals or in the act of seeing only; after seeing one object starts seeing some other object. Similarly, the desire of indulging in various types of activities arises. So, this desire is called the rise of *Punya-karmas* (Virtue).

The world believes this to be happiness, but this is not happiness; this is misery only. Because, firstly nobody gets the means of satisfying all sorts of desires. And if in some way, the resources of fulfilling the desire are met with then their availability is not simultaneous. So long as the means of (satisfying) one desire is not obtained, the perturbedness due to the same continues. And after getting its means, at the same time the desire of getting the means of another desire arises; then it causes perturbedness. He does not remain unperturbed even for a single moment. Therefore, it is nothing but misery. Or he tries somewhat to eradicate the disease in the form of three kinds of desires; so the anguish gets somewhat reduced. But the misery is not fully removed. Therefore, it is nothing but misery. In this way, the mundane beings suffer from miseries in every respect.

Further, it should be known here that the whole world is afflicted by these three types of desires and the fourth type of desire, is evolved on the rise of *Punya* and the bondage of *Punya* is caused by engrossment in religious acts; but the *Jiva* engages himself in religious acts only sometimes. Mostly *Jiva* indulges in sinful acts. Therefore, the fourth type of desire is found in some *Jivas* at sometime only.

It is to be remembered that from the point of view of *Jivas* having similar desires the *Jiva* having the fourth type of desire is said to be



happy owing to the partial decrease in three types of desires. And in comparison to the *Jiva* having fourth type of desire the *Jiva* having very intense desire, though found with fourth type of desire, is more miserable. Someone possesses lot of wealth and desires it too much, then he is very much perturbed; and one who has got less wealth and his desire is also less, then he is less perturbed. Or someone has got the (association of) disagreeable thing but has less desire of removing it, then he is less agitated. And someone has the association of agreeable things but he has more desire of enjoying them and of collecting various other things, then that *Jiva* is more agitated. Therefore, it is to be known that happiness or misery are not dependent on external causes but are governed by desire.

It is stated that the infernal (hellish) beings are unhappy and celestial beings are happy; this also is stated from the desire point of view. Because the infernal beings have too much desire due to vehement passions and the celestial beings have less desire due to feeble passions. Also human beings and sub-human beings (animals, birds, etc.) are happy or unhappy on account of desires only. Owing to intense passions, one who has excessive desire is said to be unhappy and owing to mild passion, one who has less desire is said to be happy. Spiritually, the anguish only is either more or less but there is no happiness. The celestial beings, etc. are also believed to be happy; this too is only fallacy. In them, the fourth desire predominates, so they are perturbed.

Thus, the desire is caused due to wrong faith, wrong knowledge and wrong conduct (incontinence). The desire is full of perturbedness and the perturbedness is nothing but misery. In this way, all mundane beings are assuredly suffering from different types of miseries.

### **Bliss of Liberation and the Means of its Attainment**

Now, those *Jivas* who want to get rid of misery should make effort to root out desire. And the desire gets rooted out only then, when wrong faith, wrong knowledge and wrong conduct (incontinence) are destroyed and the right faith, right knowledge and right conduct are attained. It is, therefore, worthwhile to make effort for

achieving this only. By making such effort, the misery gets destroyed in the same measure in which the desire gets rooted out.

And when due to total extermination of *Moha* (delusion) all desires are destroyed then all sorts of miseries get destroyed, then all sorts of miseries get destroyed and real bliss is evolved. And when *Jnanavarana*, *Darshanavarana* and *Antaraya Karmas* are destroyed then the desire causing *Kshayopashamik Jnandarshan & Virya* also comes to an end; and the infinite knowledge, perception and energy are attained. And after lapse of sometime, the *Aghati Karmas* also get destroyed; then the external causes of desire also get destroyed. Because, after eradication of *Moha* (delusion) these (*Aghati-karmas*) are not capable of producing any desire at any time. These become causes only in existence of *Moha*. Therefore, these (*Aghati-karmas*) are said to be the causes; on their destruction the *Jiva* attains *Siddhahood* (liberated state of the soul). There being the total absence of sorrow and causes of sorrow, the emancipated souls always remain situated in the state of peerless, irrevocable supreme bliss (beatitude) for infinite time. The same is being explained :

### **Absence of Miseries in Liberated State**

In the state of *Kshayopashama* and *Udaya* (rise of *Jnanavarana* and *Darshanavarana Karmas*) being over-powered by *Moha* (deluding karma) and due to the desire of seeing and knowing each and every item, this *Jiva* used to remain extremely perturbed, now (in *Siddha* state) due to absence for *Moha*, the desire also ends; consequently, misery also ends. And due to *Kshaya* (destruction) of *Jnanavarana* and *Darshanavarana Karmas* all objects of all senses are being known together; hence, the cause of misery is also removed. For example, one wanted to see every object one after the other through eyes, now he sees all colours of the whole universe and of all times (past, present and future) simultaneously, none remains unseen for which the desire of seeing may arise. Similarly, he (mundane being) wanted to know every object one by one through the touch and other senses, now, he, (*Siddha*) knows all sorts of touch, taste, odour and words of the whole universe and of all times (present, past and future) simultaneously; nothing remains unattained for which the desire of attaining may arise.

**Question :** How would it be feasible to know without the body, etc. ?

**Answer :** In the presence of sensory knowledge, one was not able to know the objects without physical senses, etc.; now such characteristic got manifested that even without physical senses knowing of objects takes place.

**Question :** In *Siddha* state, knowing would be taking place in the same manner as the mundane beings know the touch, etc. through mind and would not be in the manner in which the mundane beings know through touch and tongue, etc. ?

**Answer :** It is not so; because on remembering, etc. through mind, one knows a little indistinctly. As in mundane state, one knows clearly the touch, taste, etc. through the sense of touch, tongue, etc. by touching, taking taste, smelling, seeing and hearing, even infinite times more clear than that is known here in *siddha* state.

The difference is only this much that there in mundane state one used to know on getting contact between senses and the objects, whereas here in *Siddha* state similar knowing takes place in spite of the objects remaining far off; this is the excellence of the power of knowledge. Further, he (the mundane rational being) wanted to know some objects of past, future and the unmanifested through the mind; now (in *Siddha* state) he knows the substance, place, time and dispositions (traits) of all kinds of substances simultaneously from beginningless to endless period; nothing remains unknown for which the desire of knowing may arise. In this way, one should know the absence of misery and its causes in the *Siddha* state.

Further, (in mundane state) owing to the rise of *Moha* (deluding karma) perverse belief and the passional dispositions used to arise, all those got totally destroyed (in *Siddha* state); consequently, the misery also ended and because the causes of these (misbelief & passions) are destroyed, therefore, the causes of misery have also got destroyed. The absence of those causes is being explained here :

On having realised (known) the true nature of all the substances, how can there remain the perverse belief of the form of disbelief in *Tattvas* ? Nothing remained harmful, the censurer himself gets

harmed; on whom should he (*siddha*) become angry ? None is higher than *Siddhas*. The Lord *Indra*, etc. themselves bow to them and achieve the desired object; with whom should he feel exalted ? All destiny is known, nothing is left undone, no purpose remains with any object; in which thing should he have greed ? No other agreeable thing remains unattained; due to what reason should he indulge in laughter ? No other agreeable object remains worth loving; where should he have liking ? No distress causing external association remains; where should he have disliking ? No favourable-disfavourable association-dissociation take place; why should he feel lamentation about anything ? No cause creating harm remains, why should he have fear from anything ? All things are cognized by him with their inherent characteristics, nothing is disagreeable to him; where should he have disgust ? Due to absence of sexual affliction no purpose remains of cohabiting with woman and man both; what for should he feel the sex-passion peculiar to man, woman or eunuch ? Thus, in *Siddha* state there is total absence of the causes producing *Moha*.

Further, because of feeble power due to rise of *Antaraya* (obstructing) *karma* the soul's energy was not manifested fully; now it is destroyed; so, the misery also got destroyed. And infinite energy of soul is manifested; hence, the cause of misery has also disappeared.

**Question :** The *Siddha* Gods do not perform the acts of charity, benefit, enjoyment, re-enjoyment; how has their power got manifested?

**Answer :** These acts were the treatment of the disease; when there is no disease why should one take treatment ? Hence, there is no existence of these acts and the *karmas* obstructing these acts got destroyed, that is why the power is said to have got manifested. For example, someone wanted to go somewhere; some other person obstructed him, then he was unhappy and when the obstruction is removed then the purpose for which he wanted to go is now no more. Therefore, he did not go. There, even without his going, the power of going is said to be manifested; similarly, one should know here also. Further, they are found possessing infinite energy in the form of infinite knowledge, etc.

Further, on getting the rise of inauspicious *prakritis* of *Aghati-karmas* (non-destructive *karmas*) he (the mundane being) was feeling distressed and on getting the rise of auspicious (*Punya*) *prakritis* was feeling happiness but in spiritual sense due to perturbedness all that was anguish only. Now (in *Siddha* state) due to destruction of *Moha* (deluding *karma*) on getting all sorts of perturbedness rooted out, the anguish of all kinds is destroyed. And the causes by which he was feeling distressed, got destroyed and due to certain reasons, because of some lessening in misery, he was feeling happiness. Now the misery is rooted out; therefore, there remains no necessity of the means of treatment of misery by which he (the *Siddha* God) may like to accomplish the purpose. Its accomplishment is taking place on its own. The details of the same are explained here :

In *Vedaniya*, due to rise of *Asata* the diseases, hunger, etc. used to evolve in the body as cause of anguish. Now (in *Siddha* state) since there is no corporeal body, where would these generate ? Moreover, the fever, etc. were the causes of harmful state of the body but now (in *Siddha* state) without body where would the causes remain ? And in the mundane life) the external harmful instrumental causes were associated, but now nothing disagreeable remains for them. In this way (in *Siddhahood*) the causes of misery have ended.

And due to rise of *Sata*, the medicines, food, etc. were the cause of mitigating somewhat misery, now (in *Siddha* state) their purpose does not remain and the agreeable purposes are not dependent on anything; therefore, externally also there remains no purpose of considering friends, etc. to be beneficial; in the mundane state, he wanted to end misery by means of them and wanted to obtain agreeable state, now (in the *Siddha* state) all misery has ended and everything agreeable has been obtained. And (in the mundane state) birth and death were caused due to *Ayukarma*. There, one used to feel anguish due to death but now he has attained an immortal state; hence, there remains no cause of anguish. Further, by holding the material vitalities he used to feel happiness (in mundane state) for quite a long period by keeping alive and dieing. There also, in the hellish life, due to intensity of agonies, he did not want to survive; but now in this *Siddha* state he keeps alive for ever



by his sentient vitality even without having material vitalities and there remains even no trace of anguish.

Further, (in mundane existence) due to *name-karma* on association of inauspicious *Gati* (condition of existence) and *Jati* (genus) etc. he used to feel anguish, but now (in *Siddha* state) all those have ended wherefrom now anguish arise ? And on association of auspicious *Gati*, *Jati*, etc. by reduction of some misery, he used to feel happy but now (in *Siddha* state) even without all these, all miseries have ended and absolute happiness has been manifested. Therefore, no purpose remains with them.

And on getting birth in a low status family due to instrumental cause of *Gotra-karma* he used to feel misery; now (in *Siddha* state), owing to its absence, there remains no cause of misery, and on getting birth in a high status family he used to feel happiness but now (in *Siddha* state) even without having the high status family, he has attained the highest status worshipable by three worlds.

In this way in *Siddha-Gods*, due to destruction (shedding off) of all kinds of *karmas*, all miseries have ended.

The characteristic of misery is perturbedness, and perturbedness is caused only when desire arises, but now in *Siddha* state the desire and the causes of desire have totally ended; therefore, by becoming stoical one experiences infinite bliss devoid of all miseries, because imperturbedness only is the characteristic of bliss. In the world also, everyone believes happiness by somehow becoming imperturbed. Why should not one believe full happiness to arise when one becomes totally unperturbed ?

Thus, on attaining the *Siddhahood* by means of right belief, etc. all kinds of miseries end and infinite bliss manifests.

Now, here the sermon is given “: ‘O’ Bhavya ! ‘O’ Brother ! think yourself as to the worldly miseries described here are experienced by you or not. And whatever means you adopt to remove them are false or not. And also ponder over whether happiness is caused or not on attaining *Siddhahood*. If you believe in whatever is stated above then adopt those measures which we have suggested for

getting release from mundane existence and obtaining *Siddhahood*; don't delay. By adopting these measures, you will achieve self - benefaction."

Thus ends the 3rd chapter describing "The miseries of mundance existence and bliss of liberation" in this Moksha Marga Prakashaka named *Shastra*.

• • •

## CHAPTER 4

### EXPOSITION OF FALSE BELIEF KNOWLEDGE & CONDUCT

दोहा : इस भवके सब दुःखनिके, कारण मिथ्याभाव ।  
तिनिकी सत्ता नाश करि, प्रगटै मोक्ष उपाव ॥

The main causes of all miseries of this mundane existence are fallacious (alien) dispositions of belief - knowledge and conduct. By uprooting their existence, the right means of attaining liberation gets manifested.

The fundamental causes of all worldly miseries are perverse belief, perverse knowledge and perverse conduct. Their characteristics are being elaborately described here. As a physician tells in detail the causes of the disease and the patient does not take unsuitable diet then he gets free from the disease. Similarly, a detailed exposition of the cause of transmigration (mundane existence) is given here; by knowing which if the mundane beings do not indulge in perverse belief, etc., then they would get free from mundane existence. Hence, a detailed exposition of the perverse belief, etc. is being given here :-

#### The Characteristics of Perverse Belief

This *Jiva* is having bondage of *karmic* matter from times immemorial. The misbelief in *Tattvas* (reality) caused in him owing to the rise of *Darshan Moha* (faith-deluding) *karma* is termed as *Mithyadarshan* (wrong belief). For, the *Quality of thatness* is the reality (*Tattva*) i.e. the intrinsic characteristics of the substance which is worth ascertaining is termed as *Tattva* (the reality). That which is not a *Tattva* is *Atattva* (non-reality). Therefore, that which is *Atattva* (non-reality) is false, so the name of this (falsity) is perversity (*Mithya*). And "this is thus only"- having such ascertainment, is called *Shraddha* (belief).

Here *Shraddha* (belief) is to be taken as *Darshan* (Faith). Although the literal meaning of the word *Darshan* is general (undifferentiated) perception, yet with reference to the context here the meaning of this verb should be known as "to believe." Similar interpretation is given in Tattvarthsutra's commentary *Sarvartha Siddhi*. Because general perception is neither the cause of transmigratory existence nor of liberation; rather the belief alone is the cause of transmigration or liberation; hence, in the context of the cause of transmigration-liberation, the meaning of *Darshan* should be known as belief only.

Thus, the wrong form of perception, i.e., belief is to be understood as *Mithya Darshan* (wrong belief). Believing contrary to the nature of the substance and not believing as it really is-such fallacious determination, i.e. misconception is *Mithyadarshan* (perverse belief).

**Question :** Without omniscience (perfect knowledge) all the substances are not comprehended rightly and without having right comprehension the right belief does not evolve; how could then the wrong belief be abandoned ?

**Answer :** Knowing, not knowing or wrong knowing of the substances depends on the *Kshayopashama* or *Udaya of Jnanavaran karma* and the ascertainment (belief) evolves only on knowing; how could ascertainment take place without knowing - this is true. But as some person knows incorrectly or correctly those objects with which he has got nothing to do and believes them exactly as he knows them, even due to that there is no harm or benefit to him; because of this he does not get the name of an insane or an ingenious person. And if he knows incorrectly the objects with which he is concerned and believes them accordingly then he gets harmed; so, he is called an insane person and if he knows those objects correctly and believes accordingly then he is benefitted; so, he is called a wise person. Similarly, if the Jiva knows incorrectly or correctly those things with which he is not concerned and believes them accordingly then there is no harm or gain to him; because of this he does not get the title of misbeliever or true believer, but if he knows incorrectly the substances or elements with which he is concerned and believes them accordingly then he is harmed; therefore, he is called

misbeliever and if he knows them correctly and believes them accordingly then he is benefitted; therefore, he is called true believer.

Here it should be known that in not knowing or knowing correctly-incorrectly the non-concerned or concerned substances, there happens the decrease or increase of one's knowledge; so, this much is the loss or gain of the *Jiva* and its instrumental cause is the *Jnanavarana karma*. But due to holding false or right belief about the concerned (essential) substances, there happens some more harm or benefit to this *Jiva*; so, its instrumental cause is *Darshan Moha karma*.

**Question :** Since belief is according to the knowledge, hence, belief appears to be related with *Jnanavarana karma*; how could the specific instrumentality of *Darshan Moha karma* be established here?

**Answer :** All five-sensed rational beings possess the *Kshayopashama* (destruction cum subsidence) of *Jnanavarana karma* (i.e., manifestation of knowledge) necessary for effectuating belief of the *Jiva* etc., essential principles (Purposeful *Tattvas*). But the *Dravyalingi Muni* (a possessionless ascetic following complete conduct without right belief) studies even up to eleven *Angas* (out of the total 12 *Angas* of the whole scripture) and the *Devas* (Gods) of *Graiveyaka heavens* possess clairvoyance knowledge (*Avadhijan*) etc.; in spite of possessing such a high degree of *Kshayopashama* of *Jnanavarana karma* they do not possess the right belief of *Jiva* etc., essential principles whereas the *Tiryanchas* (rational five-sensed animals) in spite of their having lesser degree of *Kshayopashama* of *Jnanavarana karma* may be found possessed with right belief of *Jiva* etc., essential principles. It is, therefore, understood that the belief does not evolve according to. (the *kshayopashama* of) *Jnanavarana* only; some other (instrumental) *karma* is there and that is *Darshan Moha* (faith-deluding *karma*). Owing to its rise, the *Jiva* is found with false belief; then he perversely believes the *Jiva* etc. essential *Tattvas*.

### **Purposeful and Purposeless Substances (Principles)**

**Question :** Which are the purposeful and purposeless substances ?



**Answer :** This *Jiva* has only one purpose and it is that he should not be miserable but be happy. No *Jiva* has any other purpose. And non-occurrence of sorrow and occurrence of happiness is one and the same thing, because the absence of misery is nothing but happiness and the accomplishment of this purpose takes place by acquiring right belief of *Jiva* etc. *Tattvas* (realities).

**Question :** How does it happen ?

**Answer :** First of all for eradicating miseries, one must possess the discriminating knowledge of the self and the non-self. If one does not have the discriminative knowledge of the self and non-self then how can he eradicate his misery without identifying the self ? Or knowing the self & non-self as to be one thing, if for rooting out the sorrow of the self, one does the treatment of the other non-self thing, how can then the sorrow of the self be rooted out ? Or the non-self things are distinctly different from the self, but if one holds the feeling of I-ness and mineness in those non-self things, then misery alone results. The misery gets eradicated only on attaining the discriminative knowledge of the self and non-self. And the knowledge of the self and non-self is attained only after having got the discriminative knowledge of *Jiva* (soul) and *Ajiva* (non-soul) substances, because the one himself is *Jiva* (soul) and the body, etc. are *Ajiva* (non-soul).

If through distinctive characteristics (differentias) etc., the *Jiva-Ajiva* are identified, then the separateness of self and non-self may be comprehended; hence one ought to know *Jiva-Ajiva*. Or, on acquiring the knowledge of *Jiva-Ajiva*, the substances by contrary belief of which one used to suffer from misery, now by attaining the right knowledge of the same, misery gets eradicated; hence, acquiring knowledge of *Jiva-Ajiva* is a must.

Further, the cause of sorrow is bondage of *karmic* matter and its causes are false belief, etc. influx (instincts). If one does not identify these, does not know these as to be the root cause of sorrow, how can then he uproot them ? And if one does not eradicate these instincts, how would not then the *karmic* bondage take place ? Therefore, misery alone is caused. Or the false belief, etc. instincts (dispositions) are misery - incarnate. If those are not identified correctly as

they really are, then one cannot eradicate them and consequently, one would remain miserable only; hence, one must know *Asrava* (influx).

Further, the cause of all miseries is *karmic* bondage. If one does not know this then one would not make effort to get rid of it; then due to its instrumentality one would remain miserable. Therefore, one must know *Bandha* (Bondage).

And uprooting of *Asrava* (influx) is *Samvara* (stoppage); if one does not know its (*Samvara*'s) differentia then one would not indulge in it; then influx (*Asrava*) only would continue, due to which misery alone would be caused both in present and in future. Therefore, one must know *Samvara* (stoppage).

Further, somewhat partial eradication of *karmic* bondage is termed as *Nirjara* (partial shedding off). If one does not know it, then he would not make effort to follow it; consequently, the *karmic* bondage would persist wholly, due to which misery alone would continue. Hence, one must know *Nirjara* (partial shedding off of impurity).

And the absolute uprooting of all sorts of *karmic* bondage is termed as *Moksha* (perfect liberation). If one does not identify it, he would not make effort for evolving it, then he will continue suffering from the agonies in the world produced by *karmic* bondage. Hence, one must know *Moksha* (liberation). Thus, one should know *Jiva*, *Ajiva* etc. seven *Tattvas* (realities).

Further, if someone may know the seven *Tattvas* from scripture but until "those are exactly so only" - such sort of a crystal clear conception is not evolved, what is then the advantage of such knowledge? Therefore, right belief of *Tattvas* is fruitful. Thus, only on acquiring the true belief of *Jiva* etc. *Tattvas*, the purpose of eradicating miseries is accomplished. Hence, one should know that the *Jiva* etc. substances only are the purposeful substances (*tattvas*).

Further, specific details of these (*Tattvas*) are *Punya* (virtue) and *papa* (vice) etc; their true belief also is fruitful because detailed exposition is more effective than general exposition. Thus, these substances are purposeful; hence, on acquiring their right belief,

misery ends and real happiness evolves and without their right belief misery continues and happiness does not evolve.

And besides above stated *Padarthas* (substances) there are other innumerable substances; all those are unpurposeful because possessing or not possessing their right belief is in no way the cause of happiness or misery.

**Question :** Basically, you have described *Jiva* and *Ajiva* the two substances, in which rest all substances are covered; besides them, what other substances are left out which are described as unpurposeful?

**Answer :** All substances are, of course, covered in *Jiva-Ajiva* but there are many specialities of those *Jiva-Ajiva* substances. Out of those specialities of *Jiva-Ajiva*, the right belief of such specialities which leads to the right belief of self and non-self, gives rise to the belief of forsaking *Raag* (attachment) etc. and will produce happiness; and by having wrong belief, of which the right belief of self and non-self is not evolved, the belief of forsaking attachment, etc. is not generated and will result in misery. Knowledge of *Jiva & Ajiva* substances with such specialities is to be known as purposeful. Moreover, the *Jiva-Ajiva* substances with their those specialities are to be known unpurposeful by having or not having the right belief of which the belief of self and non-self may or may not get generated and the belief of uprooting attachment, etc. may or may not get evolved; there is no surity.

For instance, having belief of *Jiva* and body (person) with *Chaitanya* (consciousness) and *Murtatva* (corporality) etc. respectively is purposeful and having belief of human, etc. embodied and jar, cloth, etc. forms of matter (specific forms of *Jiva & matter*) is unpurposeful. Similarly, other examples are to be known.

Thus, wrong belief of the aforesaid purposeful *Jiva* etc. *Tattvas* should be known as *Mithyadarshan* (perverse faith).

### **The Tendency of Wrong Belief**

Now the tendency of wrong belief found in mundane beings is described here. Though belief is to be described, yet the description is being given with emphasis on cognisance, because belief follows knowledge.

### **Wrong Belief About the Self (*Jiva*) and Non-self (*Ajiva*) *Tattvas***

The self-*Jiva* is from the beginningless time; he assumes different modifications owing to the instrumentality of *karmic* matter. There, he relinquishes the former modification and assumes new modification. And that modification is a conglomerated form of bondage of the one-self (soul) and corporal body of infinite matter-particles (atoms). And "I am this" such sort of I-ness feeling in that modification is found to this *Jiva*. And he himself is *Jiva* (soul), his intrinsic nature is knowledge, perception, etc. and the alien dispositions are anger, etc. and the colour, smell, taste, touch, etc. are the nature of matter-particles (atoms) - all these characteristics, he believe to be as his own nature.

'These are mine' - this type of mineness feeling is found in them (non-self things). And he himself is a *Jiva*, the increasing-decreasing states of knowledge, etc. and anger-passion, etc. are his modifications and the changing of colour, etc. is the modification of matter-particles (atoms) - all these forms he believes to be as his own modifications. 'This is my state' such sort of mineness feeling is held by him.

Further, there exists cause and effect relationship between the *Jiva* (soul) and body, hence, whatever movement or action takes place, he believes it to be as his own. Perception, knowledge (sentience) is one's nature and the touch, etc. material senses which are parts (limbs) of the body are merely instrumental to his activity. This (misbeliever) treating these as one with himself, believes that "I touched by hand, etc., tasted by tongue, smelled by nose, saw by eyes, heard by ears". Further, situated in the heart is the material-mind made up of (specific material-particles called) *Manovargana* in the form of eight-petalled lotus. It is not visible to eyes, and is a part of body; thus on its being instrumental, the knowledge functions in the form of remembrance, etc. Treating the material mind and the knowledge as one, he believes that "I knew by material mind".

Further, when the desire of speaking arises then he vibrates his *Pradeshas* (spatial units) in a way that speaking materialises. Thereby, owing to (the instrumentality of) common-space-occu-

pancy-relationship, the organs of the body also vibrate. Owing to their instrumentality, the *Bhasha-Vargana* kind of *Pudgalas* (matter-particles) turn into the vocal-words-form. Treating all these as one, he believes "I speak".

Further, the desire of making movement, etc. action or acquiring (enjoying) a thing, etc., arises in the self, then he vibrates his *Pradeshas* in a way that the desired action takes place. There, owing to the common-space-occupancy-relationship; the organs of the body vibrate then that action takes place; or without one's desire the body vibrates; then one's (soul's) *pradeshas* also vibrate. Treating all these as one, he believes "I make movement, etc. I acquire (enjoy) the objects or I have acquired (enjoyed) it, etc." Thus he believes in several ways.

Further, when the passional dispositions arise in this *Jiva* then the bodily movements also become according to those passions; for example, eyes become red on the rise of anger-passion, etc., the face becomes cheerful on the rise of laughter-passion, the penis becomes stiff (erect) on the rise of male sex-passion; this (misbeliever) treating all these as one, believes, "I do all these acts". And the states of cold, warm, hunger, thirst, disease, etc. are generated in the body; through their instrumentality, being overpowered by delusion, he himself believes happiness and sorrow; knowing all these as one, he believes the cold, etc. (states of body) and happiness-sorrow as if all this has happened in him.

Further, because of union and disunion of the atoms of the body or because of changes in their states or because of cuts in the bodily parts, etc., one (embodied self) becomes (physically) obese-gaunt (lean and thin) etc., young-old, etc. or crippled, and accordingly, one's soul's *pradeshas* get contracted or expanded; this (misbeliever) treating all these as one, believes: "I am obese, I am lean and thin (gaunt), I am child, I am old (aged), my these limbs have been cut"-believes in such many ways.

Further, the *Gati* (state of existence), *Kul* (race) etc. are found from the viewpoints of the body. Treating them as one's own, he believes, "I am human, I am animal or plant (*Tiryanch*), I am *Kshatriya* (warrior), I am *Vaishya* (trader) etc." And from the union and dis-



union of the body point of view, birth and death take place; treating it as his own birth-death, he believes: "I took birth, I will die".

Due to the relationship with the body only, he believes having kinship with other things. He treats them to be his parents who have been instrumental in giving birth to his body, to her who dallys his body amorously accepts as his wife, to him who got birth by his body accepts as his son, to him who is beneficent (helpful) to his body accepts as his friend, to him who harms his body accepts as his foe; such sorts of belief are found in him.

What more to say ? He believes himself and the body as one in all respects. Here the names of the senses, etc. have been described but he is totally unaware of all this. Senselessly, he holds I-ness feeling in the embodied form (*Paryaya*); What is its reason ? The same is being explained now :

This *Jiva* is having sensory knowledge from the beginningless time, due to that reason, "the self who is of non-corporeal (immaterial) form" this is not cognized by him, but 'the body which is of material form' - that only is cognized by him. And it is the nature of the self to definitely possess I-ness feeling by knowing something as to be the self. Hence, so long as the self (soul) is not cognized as to be a separate entity till then he possesses I-ness feeling in their combined form of modification (embodied form) only.

There exists an uttermost cause and effect relationship between the self (soul) and the body, that is why the separateness (discrimination) is not cognized and the thought by which the separateness is cognized cannot evolve owing to intense influence of wrong belief. Therefore, I-ness feeling is found in the embodied form (*Paryaya*) only.

Further, sometimes on association of external things (wealth, etc.), this *Jiva* treats all these things as his own due to wrong belief. Although son, wife, wealth, grain, elephant, horse, house (palace), servant, etc. appear to the self as distinctly different from the self and always not dependent on the self, even then he (this misbeliever) feels mineness in them.

Sometimes such sort of hallucination about the son, etc. arises that "their existence is my existence". And due to wrong belief, the

characteristics of the body, etc. are perceived only contrary to their nature. He believes transitory as permanent, separate as inseparable, cause of sorrow as cause of happiness, sorrow as happiness; such contrary feeling generates.

Thus, owing to wrong knowledge of *Jiva-Ajiva Tattvas* wrong belief persists.

### **Wrong Belief About *Asrava-Tattva***

Further, owing to the rise of *Mohaniya karma* (deluding *karma*) *Mithyatva* (wrong belief) and *Kashayas* (attachment & aversion passions) etc. dispositions are caused in this *Jiva*; he (the misbeliever) believes them to be as his nature, does not know them as caused by the rise of *karmas*. He believes perception and knowledge (*upayoga*) and these influx dispositions (*Asrava Bhavas*) to be as one thing, because their substratum is the same one soul and the change of their modification happens on the same moment of time, therefore, the distinct nature of these is not comprehended by him and the thought (knowledge) which is the cause of realising distinct nature cannot evolve owing to the force (severity) of wrong belief.

“These wrong belief and passions are found with restlessness, hence are distressing in the present and are the cause of *karmic* bondage; therefore, will produce misery in future” - he (the misbeliever) does not believe them so and knowing advantageous, indulges himself by engrossing in these dispositions. Further, he becomes miserable because of his own wrong belief and passions and in vain considers others to be the cause of misery. For example, (the *Jiva*) becomes miserable due to wrong belief but considers that substance irksome which does not modify according to his belief. And one becomes sorrowful due to anger-passion but he considers that thing distressing with which he got angry. One becomes miserable due to greed-passion but he considers misery being caused by not getting the desired thing. Similarly, one should understand in other respects also.

Further, whatever fruition of these influx dispositions takes place, same is not cognized by him. Due to severity of these (passions) one gets birth in the hell, etc. and due to mildness of these, one gets birth in the heaven, etc.; there he experiences more - less

restless-ness/misery but one does not cognizes it to be so and as such those dispositions (influx) do not appear to be bad. The reason is this that those dispositions appear to be produced by him, therefore, how to believe them to be bad ?

Thus, owing to wrong knowledge of *Asrava-Tattova* wrong belief is caused.

### **Wrong Belief About *Bandha-Tattva* (Bondage)**

Further, karmic bondage of knowledge-obscuring, etc. type of *karmas* is caused by these influx dispositions (*Asrava Bhavas*); on rise of those *karmas*, decrease in knowledge and perception, evolution of perverse belief and passions, non-fulfillment of desired object, meeting with causes of happiness and unhappiness, continued association with the body, getting birth with particular *Gati* (state of existence), *Jati* (class of *Jivas*) body, etc. and obtaining of high-low status take place.

In the causation of these, the prime cause is the *karmic* matter, which he (the misbeliever) does not identify, because it is extremely subtle in form, it is not visible to him and that *karma* does not appear to him to be doer (instrumentalcause) of these deeds; therefore, in their occurrence, either he believes himself as the doer or someone else as the doer. And when he fails in determining the doer (creator) to be either himself or someone else, then thoughtlessly believes destiny to be the creator.

Thus, owing to wrong knowledge of *Bandha-Tattva* (principle of bondage) wrong belief is caused.

### **Wrong Belief About *Samvara Tattva***

Absence of influx (*Asrava*) is stoppage (*Samvara*). How can one effectuate the right belief of *Samvara* (stoppage of inflow of *karmic* matter) who does not correctly recognize influx (*asrava*) ? For instance, someone follows unwholesome conduct; (if) it does not appear unwholesome to him how would then he believe its absence to be wholesome ? Similarly, *Jiva* (mūndane being) is engrossed in influx *Asravas*; (if) it does not appear harmful to him, how then would he believe *Samvara* to be beneficial which evolves in the absence of influx (*Asrava*) ?

Since eternity, only *Asrava Bhavas* are found evolving to this *Jiva*. *Samvara* (stoppage of influx) has never been evolved; therefore, evolution of *Samvara* is not comprehended by him. On evolution of *Samvara* the spiritual bliss is produced; this is not believed by him. By *Samvara* there will be no sorrow in future, is not believed by him. Therefore, he makes no effort for stoppage of influx (*Samvara of Asrava*) and believing other objects to be distress-causing, makes efforts for their dissociation but those are not under his control; he unnecessarily feels melancholic.

Thus, due to wrong knowledge of *Samvara Tattva*, wrong belief is caused.

### **Wrong Belief About Nirjara Tattva**

Further, partial destruction of bondage (of *karmas*) is *Nirjara* (shedding off). How can he who does not recognize *Bandha* correctly, evolve the right belief of *Nirjara* ? For example, if someone does not know that misery will be caused by the poison etc. eaten by him, why would then he know beneficial the remedy of destroying it ? Similarly, if one does not know that the misery will be caused by the *karmas* bonded in the past, how would then he know beneficial the remedy of their destruction (*Nirjara*) ?

Further, this *Jiva* cannot acquire the knowledge of subtle *karmic* particles through senses and also does not know their power of causing misery. Therefore, knowing other objects as instrumental in producing misery, he tries to destroy them only, but those objects are not under his control. Moreover, if by chance, for the sake of removing sorrow, some agreeable association takes place, then that too takes place as per one's *karmas*. Therefore, he unnecessarily becomes miserable by making effort about them.

Thus, due to wrong knowledge of *Nirjara Tattva*, wrong belief is caused.

### **Wrong Belief About Moksha Tattva**

And (the state of) complete destruction of all sorts of *karmic* bondage is termed *Moksha* (perfect liberation). How can one, who does not recognize *karmic* bondage and all sorts of miseries caused by bondage, have right belief of *Moksha* ? For example, someone is

having a disease; if he does not know that disease and the anguish caused by that disease, how would then he believe beneficial the complete eradication of disease? Similarly, this *Jiva* is having *karmic* bondage; if he does not know that bondage and the misery caused by that bondage, how would then he know beneficial the complete eradication of *karmic* bondage?

And this *Jiva* does not have the knowledge of *karmic* matter and their potentiality; therefore, knowing the external objects as to be the cause of misery, he tries to destroy them totally. And he knows that he will become perfectly happy by accumulating the desired materials which he believes to be the cause of complete destruction of miseries, but this can never happen. He unnecessarily becomes miserable.

Thus, due to perverse faith and owing to wrong knowledge of *Moksha Tattva* the wrong belief is caused. In this way, this *Jiva* entertains wrong belief about *Jiva* etc. seven purposeful *Tattoas* (elements) due to perverse faith.

### **Wrong Belief About *Punya-Papa* (Virtue & Vice)**

Further, *Punya-papa Tattvas* (virtue & vice) are the details of aforesaid *Tattvas* and the class of both *Punya* and *Papa* is one and the same; nevertheless, he understands *Punya* beneficial and *Papa* harmful due to wrong belief. Owing to rise of *Punya* if according to one's desire some work is accomplished then he feels it beneficial and owing to rise of *Papa* if the desired work does not materialise then he feels it bad; but both are the cause of agitation; hence, both are bad only.

And this *Jiva*, due to his own conviction, feels happiness-unhappiness in such conditions. Spiritually speaking, wherever there is agitation there is sorrow only. Therefore, treating the rise of *Punya* and *Papa* as beneficial and harmful is nothing but delusion.

And many *Jivas*, at times, consider the auspicious-inauspicious thoughts which are the cause of bondage of *Punya* and *Papa* as good or bad; that also is delusion, because both (types of thoughts) are the cause of *karmic* bondage.



Thus, owing to wrong knowledge of *Punya-papa* wrong belief takes place. In this way, the nature of perverse faith in the form of misbelief of *Tattvas* has been described. This is false; hence, its name is *Mithyatva* (perverseness) and this is devoid of true belief; hence, the same is termed as *Adarshan* (no-belief).

### **The Nature of Wrong Knowledge**

Now the nature of wrong knowledge is described. Knowing incorrectly the *Jiva* etc. purposeful *Tattvas* is termed *Mithya-jnan* (false knowledge). Due to this, doubt, perverseness and indecisiveness are caused in knowing the *Tattvas*. There, "is it this or that ?" - such sort of mutually contradictory dual form of knowledge is termed doubt (*Sanshaya*); e.g.- "Am I a soul or a material body ?" such knowledge - And "It is like this only"- such sort of one form of knowledge contradictory to the intrinsic nature of the substance is termed perverseness (*Viparyaya*); e.g.- "I am a material body" - such knowledge. And "Something is there" such sort of indeterminate form of thought (knowledge) is termed indecisiveness (*Anadhyavasaya*), e.g. "I am something"- such knowledge. Thus, doubt, perverseness, indecisiveness form of knowledge about the purposeful essential *Jiva* etc. *Tattvas* is termed wrong knowledge (*Mithya-jnan*).

Further, the name of false knowledge or right knowledge is not attributed from the viewpoint of knowing correctly or incorrectly the purposeless substances (*tattvas*). For instance, if a misbeliever knows a rope as a rope, it is not termed as right knowledge and if a true believer knows a rope as a snake, it is not termed as false knowledge.

**Question :** Why should not one call right knowledge or wrong knowledge to the clearly perceptible right-wrong knowledge ?

**Answer :** Where the purpose is only of knowing or ascertaining right-wrong, then whatever substance is there, the name right knowledge, wrong knowledge is given according to the viewpoint of knowing it right or wrong. For example, in describing direct-indirect form of comprehensive knowledge (*Pramana*) some substance is taken in view; there knowing it correctly is taken as right knowledge and knowing it doubtfully etc. is stated as the invalid form of wrong knowledge. But here the object is to determine the right and wrong

knowledge which are the cause of transmigration or liberation. In this connection the right or wrong knowledge of rope, serpent etc.; is not the cause of transmigration or liberation; that is why the right knowledge or wrong knowledge are not described here from their point of view. Here the right knowledge - wrong knowledge are described from the viewpoint of knowing of the purposeful *Jiva*, etc. *Tattvas*.

From this purport point of view only, in the scripture, all knowledge of a misbeliever is termed as false knowledge only and all knowledge of a true believer is termed as right knowledge.

**Question :** The misbeliever's knowledge about the *Jiva* etc. *Tattvas* is wrong; you may call it wrong knowledge, but at least call his correct knowledge about rope, serpent, etc. as to be the right knowledge ?

**Answer :** Whatever a misbeliever knows, he does not perceive there the difference of substantial existence and non-existence, that is why it produces cause-perversity, nature-perversity and discriminative-perversity. There, whatsoever he knows, he does not identify its root cause and believes the contrary cause as to be the real cause; this is cause-perversity. And whatever he knows, there he does not identify its basic substantial nature; rather believes the contrary nature as to be the real nature. This is nature-perversity. And whatever he knows, there he does not identify that this is different from these and indivisible from these; rather believes divisibility and indivisibility contrarily; so, this is discriminative perversity. Thus, perversity (contrariness) is found in the knowledge of a misbeliever.

Just as an insane person understands mother as wife and wife as mother; in the same way the misbeliever knows (the *Tattvas*) contrarily. And just as that insane person also in some particular moment knows mother as mother and wife as wife, even then, his knowledge is not backed by definite and assertive belief. Therefore, his knowledge is not said to be right knowledge. Similarly, a misbeliever if in some particular moment knows some thing correctly also, even then his knowledge is not backed by definite and assertive belief or if he knows correctly also from it he fulfills

his purpose contrarily only. Therefore, his knowledge is not termed the right knowledge. Thus, misbelieve's knowledge is called wrong knowledge.

**Question :** What's the cause of this wrong knowledge ?

**Answer :** Due to rise of *Moha* (faith-deluding *karma*) the wrong belief is caused and the right belief is not evolved, this is the cause of this wrong knowledge; e.g. as due to mixing of poison, the food also is termed as poison; similarly, due to relation with wrong belief, the knowledge is also termed as wrong knowledge.

**Question :** Why don't you call *Jnanavarana karma* as to be the instrumental cause?

**Answer :** Due to rise of *Jnanavarana karma* ignorance in the form of absence of knowledge is caused and on account of its *Kshayopashama* somewhat manifestation of knowledge in the form of *matijnan* (sensory knowledge) etc. takes place. If out of these we regard some aspect as wrong knowledge and some aspect as right knowledge then both of these aspects are found in the misbeliever as well as in the true believer; hence, both of them will be found possessing wrong knowledge and right knowledge and this is against the fundamental principle; therefore, *Jnanavarana karma* is not established as to be the instrumental cause (of wrong or right knowledge).

**Question :** What is the cause of wrong-right knowledge about rope, snake, etc. ? Why should not the same be described as the cause of wrong-right knowledge about the *Jiva*, *Ajiva*, etc. *Tattvas* ?

**Answer :** Whatever incorrectness is there in the knowing process, it is due to the rise of *Jnanavarana karma* and whatever correctness is found, that is due to the *Kshayopashama* of *Jnanavarana karma*. For example, someone knew a rope as a snake; there is the rise of the obstructing cause of the power of knowing correctly; that is why he knows incorrectly; and when he knew a rope as a rope, there the cause of the power of knowing correctly is the *Kshayopashama* (of *Jnanavarana karma*); that is why he knows correctly. Similarly, the instrumental cause in the manifestation and non-manifestation of the power of knowing the *Jiva-Ajiva* etc.

*Tattovas* correctly is only of *Jnanavarana karma*, but for example, if due to *Kshayopashama* some person possesses the power of knowing correctly the substances which are the cause of sorrow and happiness, there the one who has got the rise of *Asata Vedania karma* experiences those objects only which are the cause of sorrow, and does not experience the objects which are the cause of happiness. If he could experience the objects which cause happiness, then he may become happy but that cannot be due to the rise of *Asata Vedaniya karma*. Therefore, here in experiencing the objects which cause sorrow and happiness, the instrumentality is not of the *Jnanavarana karma* but the rise of *Asata-Sata Vedaniya karma* alone is the instrumental cause. Similarly, *Jiva* possesses the power of knowing correctly the *Jiva* etc. purposeful *Tattovas* and the other unpurposeful objects. There, one who has the rise of faith-deluding *karma*, experiences and knows only those objects which are unpurposeful and does not know the purposeful *Tattovas*. If he could know the purposeful *Tattovas*, he may attain the right belief but that cannot be due to the rise of *Mithyatva* (faith-deluding *karma*). Therefore, here in knowing the purposeful and unpurposeful objects, the instrumental cause is not of the *Jnanavarana karma* but only that of the rise and non-rise of *Mithyatva* (faith-deluding *karma*). Here one should know that in the one-sensed, etc. irrational beings, where the power of knowing *Jiva* etc. *Tattovas* correctly is not found, there the rise of *Jnanavarana karma* and the wrong belief caused due to the rise of faith-deluding *karma* both are instrumental cause. And in the rational human beings etc., where the power of knowing exists due to attainment of *Kshayopashma* etc. and even then if one does not know (the purposeful *Tattovas*), there lies the instrumentality of faith-deluding *karma* only. Therefore, *Jnanavarana karma* is not stated to be the main cause of wrong knowledge, (but) the disposition caused due to the rise of *Mithyatva* (faith-deluding *karma*) only is stated to be the cause of wrong knowledge.

**Question :** Belief evolves on knowing, therefore, why not say that wrong faith is preceded by wrong knowledge?

**Answer :** It is so only; how can belief evolve without knowing ? But the name wrong and 'right' is attributed to knowledge on account of instrumentality of wrong belief and right belief

respectively. For example, both misbeliever and true believer know the gold etc. objects alike but the knowledge of misbeliever is termed wrong knowledge and knowledge of true believer is termed right knowledge. Similarly, it should be known that the cause of all wrong knowledge and right knowledge is wrong belief and right belief respectively.

Therefore, where knowledge and belief are described in the general sense, there, knowledge is the cause; it should be mentioned first and belief is the effect; so it should be mentioned later. And where wrong-right knowledge-belief are being described, there belief is the cause; it should be stated first and knowledge is the effect; so it should be stated later.

**Question :** Knowledge and belief both are produced together; how do you establish cause and effect relationship between them? If the cause is present, the effect will also be there ?

**Answer :** The cause and effect relationship is stated from the point of view that if one is there the other is there; For example, the lamp and light are found together but the light will be there only when the lamp is there; therefore, the lamp is the cause and the light is the effect. Similarly, relationship exists between knowledge and belief. In other words the cause and effect relationship should be known between wrong belief wrong knowledge and right belief right knowledge.

**Question :** If knowledge gets the name of wrong knowledge when accompanied by wrong belief then why not state the wrong belief only the cause of *Samsara* (mundane existence); why is wrong knowledge stated separately ?

**Answer :** From the knowledge point of view only there is no speciality in the correct knowledge produced due to *Kshayopashama* in both the misbeliever and the true believer; and finally the knowledge attains the form of omniscience also in the same way as a river joins the sea. Therefore, there is no fault in the knowledge; but wherever *Kshayopashama* knowledge gets attached, there it knows (is attached in) only one object (knowable), and due to instrumentality of this wrong belief; that knowledge gets attached in the other unpurposeful objects (knowables) but it does not get engrossed in



ascertaining correctly the purposeful *Jiva* etc. *Tattvas*. So, this is the fault of knowledge. This is termed as wrong knowledge. And the right faith about *Jiva* etc. *Tattvas* is not evolved; so, it is the fault of belief; this is termed as wrong belief. Thus, due to characteristic difference, the wrong belief and the wrong knowledge are stated to be different.

In this way, the nature of wrong knowledge has been described. This itself is termed as *Ajnana* (ignorance) owing to the absence of knowledge of *Tattvas* (realities), and (since) it does not accomplish the purpose of the self so the same is termed as *Kujnana* (folly).

### **The Nature of Wrong Conduct**

Now the nature of wrong conduct is being described : The passional disposition which is produced due to the rise of *Charitra Mohaniya* (conduct-deluding *karma*) is termed as *Mithya Charitra* (wrong conduct). Here one is not found with the conduct of the self intrinsic nature and instead wants to follow the false conduct of the non-self nature, which does not materialise; therefore, its name is wrong conduct. The same is being explained.

The nature of the self (soul) is knowing and seeing but the self does not remain a seer and a knower only; whatever objects he sees and knows, he believes them to be beneficial-harmful; therefore, due to attachment-aversion feeling, he wants the association of some object and dissociation of some object, but their association or dissociation is not in his hand, because no substance is the creator or destroyer of any other substance; all substances modify according to their respective nature; he unnecessarily becomes agitated due to passional disposition.

And if, by chance, a substance modifies according to his desire it has not modified by his effort to modify it that way. As a cart moves and if a child by giving a push to it believes that "I am moving it" - then his belief is false. If it moves due to his effort then why does he not move it when it does not move ? Similarly, the substances modify on their own and this *Jiva* by knowing that modification believes that "I am modifying these this way", but his belief is false. If the substances modify due to his effort then why does he not modify them when they do not modify in the desired fashion ? Rarely, it

happens so, that the substance modifies incidently according to his desire. Most of the modifications, which he does not like, are seen modifying in their own way; hence, this is a confirmed fact that the association or dissociation of anything is not caused by our effort.

And if the association - dissociation (of the objects) are not caused by our effort, then what is the sense in indulging in passions ? Only the self becomes miserable; as in some marriage ceremony, etc., someone's advice is not followed at all, then he of his own indulges in passions, then he himself becomes miserable; similarly, one should know here.

Therefore, indulging in passions is vainful like churning of the water. Hence, the tendency of these passions is called *Mithya-charitra* (wrong conduct).

### **Misconjecture About Good & Bad**

The passional dispositions are produced owing to believing the substances either good or bad, but believing good or bad is also false, because no substance is good or bad. The same is being explained here :-

That, which is pleasurable and beneficial to us, is termed good, and that, which is distressing and unbeneficial, is termed bad. In the universe, all substances are the producer of their individual natural functions only, none is pleasurable or distressing, beneficial or unbeneficial to anybody. This *Jiva* himself, in his thoughts, by believing them pleasureable beneficial knowes them to be agreeable or knows them bad by believing them distressing and unbeneficial; for same substance appears to be good to someone and bad to someone. For example, one who does not get the cloth, to him a coarse cloth appears to be good and the one who gets the fine cloth, to him the coarse cloth appears to be bad; to swine, etc. the faeces appears to be good and to celestial beings, etc. it appear to be bad. To someone the torrents appear to be good and to someone it appears to be bad. Similarly, other examples are to be understood.

And in the same way, to some *Jiva*, one substance appears to be good in some particular instant and the same substance appears to be bad in some other particular instant. Moreover, it should be

known that this *Jiva* considers chiefly a particular substance to be good but the same substance sometime appears to be bad. For example, the body is agreeable but when it gets diseased then it becomes disagreeable; the son, etc. are agreeable but under some circumstances they appear to be disagreeable. And those objects which this *Jiva* chiefly considers to be disagreeable appear to be agreeable sometime. For example, an abuse (usually) is unagreeable but the same appears to be agreeable in father-in-law's house.

Thus, beneficiality - harmfulness are not the characteristics of substance. Had there been beneficiality-harmfulness in the substance, then the substance which would have been beneficial by itself it should be beneficial to all and which would have been harmful by itself it should be harmful to all; but it is not so. This *Jiva* himself believes them in his imagination to be beneficial or harmful; so, this imagination is false.

Further, the substance, which appears to be pleasurable-beneficial or distressing - unbeneficial is not of its own but due to the rise of *Punya-Papa karmas*. The one who has got the rise of *Punya* (merit) karma to him the association of substances is found to be pleasurable-beneficial and the one who has got the rise of *Papa* (demerit) karma to him the association of substances is found to be distressing-unbeneficial. This is practically found to be so. To someone, wife, son, etc. are pleasurable and to someone are distressing; someone earns profit by doing the business and someone gets loss; to someone even the foes become slaves and to someone even the son becomes inimical. Therefore, it is ascertained that the substances do not become good or bad on their own but they act according to the rise of *karmas*. As the servants, according to their master's order, produce good or bad situation to someone then it is not the work of the servants but is the work of their master. If someone considers the servants only to be good or bad then it is wrong; similarly, if the substances, associated due to rise of *karmas*, produce good or bad situation to *Jiva* according to *karmas* then it is not the work of the substances; it is the work of *karmas*. If someone believes the substances only to be good or bad, then it is wrong.

Hence, this is proved that indulging in attachment-aversion feeling, by believing the substances to be good or bad, is a fallacy.

**Question :** The association of external objects is caused due to the instrumentality of *karmas*, then should we have attachment-aversion feeling in the *karmas* ?

**Answer :** The *karmas* are material (inanimate matter- particles), they have no desire to give pleasure or pain. Moreover, they on their own, do not turn into *karmic* form but assume the *karmic* form due to the instrumentality of his (impure) dispositions. For example, if someone breaks his head by picking stone in his hand then what is the fault of the stone ? Similarly, if this *Jiva* harms himself by turning the matter-particles into *karmic* form by means of his attachment, etc. (impure) dispositions, then what is the fault of the *karmas* ? Therefore, it is wrong to entertain the feeling of attachment-aversion in *karmas* even.

Thus, having attachment-aversion feeling in other objects, by considering them good or bad, is wrong. Had the other objects been good or bad and if he used to feel attachment-aversion towards them then it would have not been termed to be wrong. Those objects are not good or bad but this *Jiva* (mundane being) entertains the feeling of attachment-aversion towards them by considering them good or bad; that is why this type of conduct is described to be wrong, and the conduct which is wrong is termed as wrong conduct.

### **Constitution and Growth of *Raag-Dwesh***

Now the constitution and growth of attachment (*Raag*) and aversion (*Dwesh*) in this *Jiva* are being analysed.

Primarily, this *Jiva* is possessing I-ness feeling in the embodied form; so, he acts by knowing self and body to be one. When a pleasurable condition is produced in this body, agreeable to self, he feels attachment in it and when an unpleasurable condition is produced, disagreeable to self, he feels aversion in it. He feels attachment in the external objects which are the cause of pleasurable state of the body and develops aversion in the destroyers of that state. And he develops aversion in the external objects which are the cause of unpleasurable state of the body and feels attachment in the destroyers of that state. And further, he develops attachment is those objects which are the instrumental cause of above external objects and feels aversion is their destroyers. And further, develops

aversion in those objects which are the instrumental cause of external objects in which he was already having aversion feeling and feels attachment in their destroyers. And among these objects also in which he feels affection, he entertains the feeling of aversion-attachment in the other objects, acting as the associating cause and destroyers of them. And the objects in which he has developed aversion, he entertains the feeling of aversion-attachment in the other objects, acting as the associating cause and destroyers of them. In this way, the tradition of attachment-aversion continues.

Further, in those many external objects which are not the cause of producing any condition in the body, in them too, he feels attachment-aversion. For example, nothing good of the body is caused to the cows, etc. from its calves, even then they (cows, etc.) feel affection in them and nothing bad of the body is caused to the dogs, etc. from the cats, etc., yet they entertain the feeling of aversion in them. Further, nothing good of the body is caused by perceiving, etc. of many of the colours, smells, words (tune) etc.; even then this *Jiva* feels affection in them, and nothing bad of the body is caused by perceiving etc. of many of the colours etc., yet the *Jiva* feels aversion in them. In this way, the attachment-aversion feeling is generated towards different external objects.

Further, in these objects too in which he feels attachment, he develops attachment-aversion in other objects too, acting as the supporting cause and the destroyers of them. And one object in which he feels aversion, he develops aversion attachment in other objects too acting as the supporting cause and the destroyers of them. Similarly, here too the tradition of attachment-aversion continues.

**Question :** The purpose of having attachment-aversion feeling in the other non-self objects is understood but primarily what is the purpose of believing good or bad in the basic states of the body and in the objects which are not the cause of the state of the body ?

**Answer :** Firstly, whatever basic states of the body are, there, even in them, if he feels attachment-aversion keeping the purpose in view, why would it then be termed as *Mithya Charitra* (wrong conduct) ? In them, purposelessly, he develops the feeling of attachment-aversion and for the sake of them only he feels



attachment-aversion in the other objects, therefore, all passional modifications (all sorts of attachment-aversion, etc.) are termed *Mithya Charitra* (wrong conduct).

**Question :** This much seems to be clear that no purpose is served in developing the feeling of good or bad in the state of the body and in the external objects, yet one is not able to abstain from developing the feeling of good or bad in the same; what is the reason ?

**Answer :** Owing to the rise of *Charitra Moha karma* the attachment-aversion feelings are caused to this *Jiva* and those feelings cannot be caused without developing association with some object. For example, if attachment feeling is developed, it must be based on some object and if aversion feeling is developed, it too must be based on some object. Thus, there exists the cause and effect relationship between those objects and the attachment-aversion feelings. There, the specific point is only this that many objects are predominantly the cause of attachment feeling and many other objects are predominantly the cause of aversion feeling. Many objects act as the cause of attachment feeling to someone in some particular time and act as the cause of aversion feeling to someone in some particular time.

Here it should be known that there are many instrumental causes in the evolution of a modification. In the evolution of attachment feelings, etc., the internal cause is the rise of *Mohaniya karma*; it is the strong cause and the external cause is the associated object; it is not a strong cause. Due to feeble rise of *Mohaniya karma*, the great ascetics do not develop the feeling of attachment-aversion in spite of the instrumentality of external objects. On the other hand, even in the absence of external causes, due to intense rise of *Mohaniya karma*, the wicked *Jivas* develop the feeling of attachment in those objects by mere imagination. Therefore, attachment, etc. (passional dispositions) are evolved due to rise of *Moha karma*. There, that external object with the association of which attachment feeling is to be evolved, in that object without any purpose or with some purpose attachment feeling is developed. And that external object, with the association of which aversion feeling is to be developed, in that object without any purpose or with some purpose, aversion feeling is developed. Therefore, due to the rise of *Mohaniya* one is not able to abstain from developing the feeling of good or

bad in the objects. In this way, whatever attachment-aversion form of conduct is caused due to believing the objects good or bad, that is termed *Mithya Charitra*.

And the anger, pride, deceit, greed, laughter, liking, disliking, sorrow, fear, disgust, female sex-passion, male sex-passion, neuter sex-passion, forms of passional dispositions are nothing but the details of these attachment-aversion feelings only. All these are the sub-divisions of *Mithya Charitra* only. All these have already been described earlier.

And in this conduct, there is absence of self-absorption form of conduct; therefore, it is also termed as *Acharitra* (non-conduct). And here those (passional) thoughts are not destroyed or are not free from attachment; therefore, this is called *Asamyam* (incontinence) or *Avirati* (vowlessness). Because, if there is unrestrained involvement in the objects of five senses and mind and in the injury of five kinds of immobile being as well as mobile beings and the thoughts of renouncing them do not arise, the same is termed as twelve kinds of incontinence or vowlessness. Such activities take place on the evolution of the passional dispositions. Hence, know that *Mithya charitra* is called *Asamyam* or *Avirati*. This is also termed as *Avrat* (Vowlessness) because indulgence in sinful acts of injury, falsehood, theft, unchastity and hoarding is called *Avrat*. The root cause of all these tendencies is the *Pramattayoga* i.e., the activity actuated by passions. The *Pramattayoga* is full of passions; therefore, *Mithya Charitra* is also called *Avrat*, (Vowlessness). In this way, the nature of wrong conduct, (*Mithya charitra*) has been described.

In this way, the tendency of wrong belief, wrong knowledge and wrong conduct is found in the mundane beings since eternity. This type of conduct is found in all kinds of *Jivas* from one-sensed etc., up to the irrational five-sensed beings. And excepting true believers, such kind of conduct is found in all the rational five-sensed beings. Whatever type of conduct be possible in whichever state of existence, the same should be understood in that context. For example, the one-sensed beings, etc., are found possessed with less or more senses and the attachment of wealth, son, etc. is found in the human beings only. With the consideration of these things only the wrong belief, etc. are described here. And whatever peculiarities are possible in

whichever state of existence the same should be understood in that context.

Further, the one-sensed beings, etc., do not know the name of the senses, body, etc. but the disposition which signifies the meaning of that name, they are found indulging in them in the aforesaid manner. For instance, "I touch with the touch-sense, body is mine"-such word or name is not known to him, nevertheless, it indulges in that disposition which signifies its meaning. And the human beings etc., know many of the names too and tend to indulge according to their characteristics; such many types of peculiarities are possible in different contexts.

### **The Glory of Delusion**

Such dispositions of wrong belief, etc. are found in this *Jiva* since eternity; these are not imbibed afresh. Behold its greatness; whatever embodied form (this *Jiva*) attains there at (in that particular state of existence) such sort of aforesaid conduct only is found automatically to this *Jiva* even without any sermonization, due to the rise of *Moha* (deluding *karma*). And in the human beings etc., even on meeting the causes of right thinking, right form of conduct is not evolved and even if the chance of the discourse of a real monk is available and he may admonish repeatedly but he does not pay any attention. And if he also perceives the truth rightly even then he does not believe in it and believes contrarily. The same is being explained hereunder :

When death occurs, the body and the soul clearly get separated. Leaving one body, the soul reincarnates in other body; there the peripatetic *devas* etc. are seen disclosing the relations of their previous births, but he cannot discriminate the self from the body. The wife, son, etc. are clearly seen to be the companions of their selfish motto. If their self-interest is not served, instantaneously they are seen turning inimical, (but) this misbeliever feels mineness in them and for fulfilling their desires, he indulges in various types of sinful acts which become instrumental cause of his going to hell, etc. Wealth, property, etc. are seen changing hands, but he believes the same to be his own. Further, the condition of the body and the external property, etc. are seen getting created and destroyed of

their own; he unnecessarily becomes the doer of them. There the work which goes right according to his will, about it he says- 'I did it' and if it goes wrong then he says, 'What can I do ? Rather he thinks "so was to happen or why did it happen like this?" But either he should have been the doer of all such deeds or should have remained the non-doeer, (but) he does not think so.

Although he knows that death is certain, yet being sure of his death he does not do any thing worth doing; rather he indulges in the activities concerning the present embodied existence only. And being sure of his death, he sometimes says, "I will die and the body will be burnt"; sometimes says, "If my fame remains, I remain alive"; sometimes says, "If the sons, etc. will survive, I will survive". In this way, he prattles like a mad man and thus remains unconscious (about the self).

Although he knows well that he has to leave for next embodied life, yet he makes no effort for getting agreeable and avoiding unagreeable associations for the next birth and instead makes ceaseless effort in order that the generation of his sons, grandsons, etc. may remain in agreeable condition; nothing unagreeable may happen to them.

Although, after someone's death, the property collected in the present existence is not seen rendering any help, yet in spite of being sure of next birth, he continues to protect and acquire property, etc. in this birth.

And due to indulgence in sensual pleasures, passional acts and acts of injury, etc., he himself becomes unhappy and miserable; becomes foe of others and reproachable in this world and becomes miserable in the next world also. All this he knows well, yet indulges in the aforesaid acts only. Although in many ways he himself perceives all this well, yet he believes, knows and follows contrarily. So, all this is the glory of delusion.

In this way, this *Jiva* is found indulging in wrong belief-knowledge-conduct from beginningless time. Due to this indulgence, the association of *karmas* creating several kinds of **miseris** in this world is found. These (perverse) dispositions alone are the seeds of all sorrows and none else.

Therefore, Oh ! Bhavya ! (O ! capable soul !) If you wish to get rid of sorrows then eradicating of these wrong belief etc., alienated dispositions, is the only act worth doing; by this way only, you will achieve the highest benediction.

Thus, the 4th chapter describing the wrong belief-knowledge-conduct in the Moksha Marg Prakashak *Shastra* is concluded.





## CHAPTER 5

### AN ANALYTICAL STUDY OF DIFFERENT RELIGIONS

दोहा : “बहुविधि मिथ्या गहनकरि, मलिन भयो निज भाव ।  
ताको होत अभाव है, सहजरूप दरसाव ॥”

[ Due to deep false belief, knowledge & conduct of different kinds, our natural disposition has become foul. When such delusion is destroyed then automatically natural form of self-qualities get manifested. ]

As described earlier, this mundane being is found indulging in wrong belief-knowledge-conduct since eternity. Due to that, bearing the sorrows in the world, he, rarely, in the human state of existence, attains the power of having distinct belief, etc. There, if by indulgence in the specific causes of wrong belief, etc., he fosters the same wrong belief, etc., then getting rid of sorrows becomes extremely difficult.

For example, some person is sick; if he after getting some relief, starts taking unwholesome diet then it will be very difficult for him to get rid of that disease. Similarly, this *Jiva* is having wrong belief etc.; if he after obtaining some greater power of knowledge etc., starts indulging in the specific cause of perverse belief etc. then his liberation (from *karmic* bondage) will become extremely difficult. Therefore, as a physician, by pointing out the details of unwholesome diet, advises the patient not to take those things; similarly, by explaining the specific causes of wrong belief etc., he is advised not to indulge in those causes.

Here the false belief etc. dispositions which are found from eternity, are to be known as *Agraheet-Mithyatva* (not newly adopted false belief etc.) because those are not newly adopted. And their

supporting causes further boost up those wrong belief etc.; such supporting causes are to be known as *Graheet Mithyatva* i.e., newly adopted false belief etc.

The *Agraheet* type of false belief etc. has already been described earlier. Now the *Graheet* (newly adopted) type of false belief etc. is being discussed here :-

Faith in the untrue deity (*Kudeva*), untrue preceptor (*Kuguru*), untrue religion (*Kudharm*) and imaginary principles (false *Tattvas*) is false belief (*Mithyadarshan*). And the study of such untrue scripture (*Kushastras*) with due respect, wherein the attachment, etc. passions are fostered by way of wrong interpretation, is false knowledge (*Mithya Jnan*). And the conduct in which the indulgence in passions is fostered and acceptance of such conduct is termed as religion is false conduct (*Mithya charitra*). Now the details of these (per-versities) are being explained :-

*Indra* (heavenly God), *Lokpal* (so-called protectig deity) etc., monotheistic *Brahma*, *Rama*, *Krishna*, *Mahadeva*, *Buddha*, *Khuda*, *Peer*, *Paigamber* etc., *Hanuman*, *Bhairon*, *Kshetrapal*, *Devi*, *Dahadi*, *Sati* etc., *Sheetala* (so-called Goddess of smallpox), *Chauth* (4th lunar day), *Sanjhi*, *Gangaur*, *Holi* (burning the heap of wood) etc., sun, moon, planets, *Auta-ancestors*, peripatetic gods, cow, snake etc., and fire, water, tree etc., and weapon, inkpot, utensils etc., many things are there (in India particularly) which the misbelievers worship; then by having wrong faith in them they want to fulfill their object but those things are not the causes of fulfilling the objects. Therefore, this type of faith is called newly adopted false belief (*Graheet Mithyatva*).

'How their belief is wrong', this is now being described:-

### **Analysis of the Theory of Ubiquitous Monotheism (*Addvait Brahma*).**

Many people believe *Addvait Brahma* (monism) as to be the ubiquitous and the creator of whole world but no such person is there. First, they believe him ubiquitous but all kinds of substances are distinctly separate and their nature are perceived distinctly separate; how to believe them as one ? The following are the different ways of believing him to be ubiquitous:

The one way of such belief is this : Though all things are separate-separate but conjecturing them altogether as one group, some common name is given. For example, the horses, the elephants etc. are separate-separate but their collective name is army. In reality there is no such thing as army different from horses etc. So in this way all substances which are termed *Brahmu*, that *Brahma* is not proved to be a distinct entity; it is mere imagination.

Another way of such belief is this : From individual point of view all things are separate-separate, but those are conjecturally treated as one from common character point of view. For example, one hundred horses are there; from individual point of view, those are separately-separately one hundred only. Seeing their common features, they are collectively treated as one class but that class is not something different from those individual horses. In this way, looking at some common specific features of all substances, if their collective name is one *Brahma*, then in reality no separate existence of *Brahma* is proved.

A third way of such belief is this : Though all substances are separate from each other, owing to their conglomeration, one lump is formed, that is called one. As the molecules of water are separate-separate, on their getting conglomerated, their collective name is called sea etc. and on getting the conglomeration of the molecules of clay, it is termed as 'pot' (jar) etc. But in these examples, there is nothing like a separate sea or a separate pot different from the molecules from which they are formed. Thus, all kinds of substances are separate-separate, but" sometimes by getting conglomerated those (substances) become one and that is *Brahma*. If this is to be accepted then no *Brahma* is proved to be something separate distinct entity.

A fourth way of such belief is this : Though the limbs are separate-separate, yet he who has those limbs is one corporal form. As the eyes, hands, legs etc. are separate-separate but the man who has those limbs is one human being. Thus, all these substances are limbs and the one who possesses these, in the corporal form is one *Brahma*. This whole universe in gigantic form is the limb of *Brahma* - this is what they believe. But, if there be any gap in the form of disconnection between hands, legs, etc., limbs of the human body,

there remains no oneness; only on their remaining connected, those are collectively called one body. In the universe, the substances are seen mutually disconnected from one another; how then to believe in its oneness? Even if in such disconnected state of existence oneness is believed, then where would the separateness of all substances be believed?

**Question:** In the centre of all substances, the limbs of *Brahma*, in the subtle form, are existing, by means of which all remain connected.

**Answer:** Whichever limb is connected to whatever other limb, does it remain connected so with it or continues getting connected with the other different limbs by breaking repeatedly? If the first side of the argument is accepted then the sun etc. make movement; with them by which subtle limbs it gets connected, those will also move. And due to their movement, the subtle limbs, which remain connected with the other massive limbs, will also move; in this way, the whole universe will become unstable. As on pulling any one limb of the body all the limbs get pulled, similarly, by making movement etc. of any one substance, all the substances will start making movement. But this does not seem to be logical. And if the second side of the argument is accepted then due to breaking of the limbs the separateness is definitely caused; how would then oneness remain existing? Therefore, how can it be possible to believe *Brahma* to be the oneness of the whole universe?

Another way, of such belief is this : Originally he was one, later on became many, again becomes one, so he is one. For example, water was one but in different utensils it got divided, when it meets again, it becomes one. And as there was a lump of gold, later on it was turned into bangle, ring, etc., it again becomes the lump of the gold by reunion. Similarly, there was one *Brahma*, later on he modified into many forms and again he will become one, therefore he is one.

In this way, the monist believes the oneness. Here our query is that when he assumed different forms then he remained united or got disconnected? If he will say that 'He' remained united then the aforesaid fault will arise. If he will say that 'He' got disconnected then at that moment there remained no oneness. Further, they (the

monists) call water, gold etc. as to be one even on their getting separated but this (oneness) is stated from one specific point of view. But here the class of all kinds of substances does not appear to be as one. Some are animate and some are inanimate; thus, the substances are of various kinds; how can their class be described to be as one?

Further, they believe that originally he was one, later on he got separated; so as a stone turns into pieces by splitting up, similarly. The *Brahma*, got turned into pieces. Further, the monist believes that those pieces get reunited; so does their character remains separate there or it becomes one? If, it remains separate then, there, those are assuredly separate by their individual characteristics and if they become one then the inanimate things also will turn into animate beings and the animate beings will turn into the inanimate things. When many (different) things become one thing, it will be necessary to call them many in some moment and one in some moment; then it will not be possible to say—"there is one eternal infinite *Brahma*".

And if he will say that by creation or non-creation of the universe the *Brahma* remains one and unchanged, therefore the *Brahma* is eternal & infinite, then our question is -"In the universe, the earth, the water etc. are seen. Are all these things created newly and separately or the *Brahma* himself has obtained these forms? If these are created newly and separately then these things are separate and *Brahma* remains separate. This means there is no ubiquitous *Advoait Brahma*. And if the *Brahma* has transformed himself in the form of these things then sometimes he became universe and sometimes remained as *Brahma*; how did then he remain unchanged?

Further, he says that whole of the *Brahma* does not transform into the universe, its some portion only transforms. There, we ask him—as one drop of the sea is transformed into poison then from gross-vision point of view it is beyond perception but from one drop point of view the sea has changed. Similarly, *Brahma's* one portion on getting separated transformed into the universe; nothing is comprehensible there by gross-vision but on thinking minutely



the *Brahma* has changed from the one portion point of view. This change has not occurred to anything else.

In this way, believing the universal form of *Brahma* is nothing but a fallacy only.

Further, another way of such belief is this- "As the space (sky) is an ubiquitous one, similarly, the *Brahma* is an ubiquitous one. If you (the monist) believe so, then believe the *Brahma* also as big as space and wherever the material objects, jar, cloth, etc. are found, the space is also found there; in the same way, believe the existence of *Brahma* too. But how could the jar, cloth, etc. and the space be treated and called as one only? Similarly, how the universe and the *Brahma* could be believed to be as one? And the differentia of space is perceived to be everywhere; so, its existence is believed to be everywhere; but the differentia of the *Brahma* is not perceived everywhere; so how could then his existence be believed everywhere? In this way also, no universal form of *Brahma* is established."

From all these considerations, the existence of one *Brahma* is in no way established. All substances appear to be separate-separate entities.

Here the respondent says- "All is one only, but you are under delusion, that's why you are not able to perceive him as one. And you have put up your logic but the nature of *Brahma* is beyond logic. And his nature is not describable in words. He is one as well as many. He is separate as well as united. His glory is so great".

Our answer to him is- "What I, you and all are perceiving clearly, you call it delusion. And if we deduce by logic then you say that the real nature is beyond logic. And if you say that the real nature is not describable in words then how can one ascertain without words? "Further he says- "He is one as well as many, is separate as well as united", but you do not specify the viewpoint and instead like an insane person you are magnifying his glory by asserting that he is like this and also like that. But, where there is no justice, the liars indulge there in such garrulousness only. So, let them do so but justice will remain unchanged.

## Revocation of World-creatorship

Further, some people believe that *Brahma* is the creator of the universe; the falsehood of the same is being shown hereunder :-

Firstly, they believe that such a desire arose to *Brahma* that (H) "I am single, so I would like to be many". There we ask them-"If one was unhappy in earlier state then he would like to change that state". *Brahma* desired to obtain many forms discarding the earlier one form. What was the sorrow in that state of one form? Then the monist says that there was no sorrow but it was just an inquisitive instinct. Then we say to him-"If earlier one be less happy and if by inquisitiveness, he becomes more happy, then he may think of indulging in inquisitiveness. So, how is it possible for *Brahma* to have become more happy by changing into many forms from one form. And if he was perfectly happy in the earlier state, why should he change that state or form? Without any purpose, no body wants to indulge in any activity.

And suppose he was happy earlier and also remained happy after completing the desired act but would he not be unhappy at the moment of rise of the desire? Then he says- "the moment desire arises in *Brahma*, at the same moment the desire is fulfilled, so he does not become unhappy. Then we say- "One can accept this from relatively longer period point of view but from the instantaneous time period point of view the fulfillment of desire is not possible the moment it arises. The desire arises only when the act is not fulfilled; and when it is fulfilled there remains no desire. So, he must have become unhappy at least in that minutest interval of time. Because the desire itself is misery and none else is misery. Therefore, the rise of desire in *Brahma* is inconceivable."

Further, they (the monists) say that on evolution of desire the *Maya* (illusion) of *Brahma* got produced. Since *Maya* got produced in *Brahma* then *Brahma* also became an illusive (deceitful) person; how did then he remain of pure nature? And *Brahma* and *Maya* have the coherent relation just like a staff-bearer and the staff or both have an inseparable relation just like fire and heat. If it is a coherent relation then the *Brahma* is separate and the *Maya* is separate; how did 'He' remain undivided (Addvait) *Brahma*? And as the staff-bearer holds

the staff knowing it to be helpful, similarly *Brahma* knows the *Maya* as to be helpful to him, that's why he holds it, otherwise why should he hold it? And the *Maya* which *Brahma* himself holds, how is it possible to deny (forbid) it? Rather, it is proved useful. And if it is an inseparable relation then as heat is the nature of fire, similarly *Maya* is proved to be the nature of *Brahma*. That which is the nature of *Brahma*, how its denial is possible? Thus *Maya* is proved to be useful.

Further, they say that the *Brahma* is a sentient being, *Maya* is insentient. But in inseparable relation such two (contrary) natures (of a thing) are not possible; e.g., how can light and darkness both be found together?

Further, they say that *Brahma* himself does not become deluded by *Maya*, rather (other) jiva gets deluded by his *Maya*. Our answer is: As a treacherous knows his treachery himself, so he himself does not get deluded, rather the other persons get deluded by his treachery. But he who indulges in treachery, is called a treacherous; the others who got deluded due to his treachery are not called treacherous. Similarly, the *Brahma* knows his *Maya*; the other *Jivas* get deluded. There, the *Brahma* only will be called treacherous (*mayavi*); how the other *Jivas* who got deluded by his *Maya* could be called treacherous (*mayavi*) ?

Further we ask them - whether *Jivas* are one with the *Brahma* or are separate entities? If they are one then as someone himself starts giving pain to his own limbs so he is called an insane person, similarly, the *Brahma* himself by his *Maya* starts giving pain to those *Jivas* who are not separate from him; so, how would this be possible? If the (*Jivas*) are separate from him, then as some ghost (peripatetic god) without any purpose creates delusion to other *Jivas* and makes them miserable., similarly, without any purpose the *Brahma* creates *Maya* for other *Jivas* and makes them miserable; this also seems illogical.

Thus, saying that *Maya* is of *Brahma* cannot be established. Further, they say that on evolution of *Maya* the universe got created; there the consciousness found in *Jivas* is part of *Brahma's* nature and their bodies etc. are *Maya*. For example, water is filled in many

separate utensils; in (the water of) all those utensils the image of moon appears separately-separately, whereas the moon is one. Similarly, the consciousness light of *Brahma* is found separately-separately in many separate-separate bodies, whereas the *Brahma* is one, therefore, the consciousness found in *Jivas* is that of the *Brahma*.

This statement is also full of delusion because the body is inanimate; if in this body the consciousness got created due to the image of *Brahma*, why could not then the image of *Brahma* fall in other inanimate substances like jar, cloth, etc. and create consciousness in them ?

Further, the monist says that the *Brahma* does not make the body conscious but makes the *Jivas* conscious.

Then we ask him - "Is the nature of *Jiva chetana* (conscious) or *achetana* (non-conscious)? If it is conscious then what would new consciousness be created in the already conscious *Jivas*? If *Jiva* is non-conscious then the category of body, jar, etc. and that of the *Jiva* proves to be the same. "Further, we ask him," - 'Is the consciousness of the *Brahma* and that of the "*Jivas* one and the same or separate? If it is one and the same then how is the knowledge seen more or less in different *Jivas*?' And why one *Jiva* does not know whatever is known by other *Jiva*?' You might say that this is due to difference in embodiment of various *Jivas*. Then due to difference in embodiments, the consciousness of different *Jivas* is proved to be separate-separate. On destruction of embodiment, will the consciousness of the *Jivas* get intermingled in *Brahma* or get destroyed? If it will get destroyed then this *Jiva* will become inanimate. And if you will say that the *Jiva* itself gets intermingled with *Brahma* then there on intermingling with *Brahma* its own existence remains or does not remain? If *Jiva's* existence remains separate then that *Jiva* along with his own consciousness also existed (remained intact); what did then intermingle with *Brahma*? And if existence does not remain then it means it got destroyed; who did then intermingle with *Brahma*? If you will say that the consciousness of *Brahma* and that of the *Jivas* are separate then the *Brahma* and all *Jivas* prove to be separate-separate. Thus, the belief that the consciousness of the *Jivas* and that of the *Brahma* are one and the same is also disproved.

You call the bodies etc. as to be of the *Maya*; so, does the *Maya* itself turn into the bone-flesh etc. or due to the instrumentality of *Maya* someone else turns in those forms? If the *Maya* itself converts then were the colour, smell etc. of *Maya* existing formerly or are produced afresh? If those were existing formerly then *Maya* was formerly of *Brahma* but *Brahma* is of immaterial form; how are the colour etc. attributes possible in him? And if those are produced afresh then he being of the immaterial form, got turned into the material form; hence, consequently the immaterial form did not prove to be eternal. And if you will say that due to the instrumentality of *Maya* someone else turns then the question is that when you do not prove or accept existence of the other substances who else got turned then?

If you will say that the new substance gets created, then does it get created separate from *Maya* or inseparable with it? If it is produced separate from *Maya*, why do you call then *Mayamayi Sharira* i.e., the bodies etc. to have formed from *Maya*? But those prove to be of their own substances. And if those substances are created as inseparable then *Maya* itself became tantamount; why do you then say that the new substances got created? Thus, your this statement that the body etc. are of the nature of *Maya* is fallacious.

Further, they say that three qualities (constituents) got produced out of *Maya*, (i) *Rajas*- the quality of passion, of love and pleasure (ii) *Tamas*- the quality of malignancy and (iii) *Satvik*- the quality of goodness and virtues. This statement is also not maintainable; because the disposition of pride-passion-form is called *Rajas*, the disposition of anger-passion-form is called *Tamas* and disposition of feeble-passion-form is called *Satvik*. So, these dispositions are clearly seen full of consciousness but the nature of *Maya* according to you is inanimate. So, how would these dispositions be created out of the inanimate objects? If the inanimate objects too have these (qualities) then stone etc. will also have these dispositions; but only the *Jivas* of conscious nature are seen possessing these dispositions; therefore, these dispositions are not produced out of *Maya*. If *Maya* is considered to be of conscious nature, then this can be believed. So, on accepting the *Maya* as to be conscious, if you will say the bodies etc. as produced out of *Maya* then nobody



will believe it. Hence, you should ascertain properly; what is the gain in believing fallaciously?

Further, they say that from those three qualities, *Brahma*, *Vishnu* and *Mahesh*, these three deities are born; so how is it possible? Because the quality is produced from the substance possessing qualities; how would the substance of qualities be produced from the quality? The anger passion will get produced from man, but how will man be produced from anger passion? Moreover, these qualities are censured; how are *Brahma* etc. produced from these (qualities) considered venerable? Further, these qualities are full of *Maya* and the same are described as to be the incarnation of *Brahma*; but these are proved to be the incarnation of *Maya*, how are these described as to be the incarnation\* of *Brahma*? And those who are found having even a little of these qualities they are sermonised to give up them, but how could those who are the idols of these qualities only be treated as venerable? Is it not delusion?

Further, their actions also seem to be full of these traits. They indulge in the acts of sportiveness etc., sexual intercourse etc. and combating etc.; so, from those *Rajas* etc. qualities, only these acts are caused; therefore, you should say that the *Rajas* etc. traits are found in them. Treating them venerable and supreme God etc. is not befitting. They too are like other mundane beings.

Further, you might say that the mundane beings are under the influence of *Maya*, so unknowingly they indulge in those acts. But *Maya* is under the control of *Brahma* etc., so they indulge in these acts knowingly. So, this too is fallacy. Because by being under the control of *Maya*, sex-passion, anger-passion etc. only are created, what else is created? Only the vehemency of sex-passion, anger etc. is found in those *Brahma* etc. Due to the vehemency of sex-passion, they being overpowered by women, started dancing and singing, started becoming impatient, started indulging in bad demeanour in many ways and started combating in various ways under the influence of anger, started adopting various means for exhibiting one's excellence under the influence of pride, started making lot of frauds

\* Vishnu Puran, chapter 22/58.

Vayu Puran, chapter 7/68-69.

under the pressure of deceit, started accumulating belongings (paraphernalia) being overpowered by greed and so on, – what more to describe? Thus being overpowered by passions, they started doing many censurable acts, such as the immodests' act of snatching off the cloths of the ladies, the thieves' act of looting the curd, the mads' act of wearing the wreath of human heads\*, 'the ghosts' act of making different forms of the body and the plebeians' act of cow-keeping (herdsmanship) etc.; what more censurable acts would have resulted on being overpowered by *Maya* is beyond comprehension !

Believing *Brahma* etc. who are found with censurable external acts and intense carnal desires etc. to be deceitless is similar to believing cloudy no-moon night as without darkness.

Further, he says that the sex-passion, anger etc. do not overpower them; this also is a sportive act of supreme God. Our question is "Such passionnal acts which he does are done with desire or without desire?" If he does with desire then the name of desire of sexual intercourse itself is sex-passion, the name of desire of combating itself is the anger passion and so on. And if he does without desire then the act, which he himself does not want to do, is caused only on being dependent on someone; so, how is dependence possible in *Brahma*? Further, you regard this as to be a sportive act; so, if the God performs such sportive acts by reincarnating, then why do they preach the other *Jivas* for getting liberation by detaching themselves from such acts? The discourse of observing forbearance, contentment, chastity, continence, etc. all is proved useless.

\* नानारूपाय मुण्डाय वरुथपृथुदण्डिने ।

नमः कपालहस्ताय दिग्वासाय शिखण्डिने ।

— मत्स्य पुराण, 250/2

Further, he says that God has no motive; just for the sake of keeping the wordly phenomena running he incarnates\* for protecting the devotees and punishing the cruels. Then we ask him : "Without any motive even an ant does not do anything, why would then God do so?" And you have also told the purpose that "He acts

\* परित्राणाय साधूनां, विनाशाय च दुष्कृताम् ।

धर्मसंस्थापनार्थाय, संभवामि युगे युगे ॥ ( गीता 4-8 )

for the sake of keeping the worldly phenomena running". So as some man himself teaches his sons with ill intention and when they start behaving in that fashion then he beats them; how would then such a father be called good? Similarly, if *Brahma* etc. by his passionate form of activity causes his own creation to indulge in untoward acts and when they do so then why he places them in the hell etc.? In the scriptures, the consequence of these dispositions is described as getting birth in hell etc.; so, how can such a God be believed to be good?

And you have stated that the motive of God is to protect the devotees and punish the cruels. Here we ask you that the cruels who torture the devotees were created by the desire of God, or without his desire? If they were created by God's desire then tell us as to how such a master be called good who firstly gets his own subordinates beaten by others and later on beats those beaters? Similarly, how such a God be called good who himself willingly causes his devotees to be afflicted by the cruels and then he starts killing those curels by incarnating (into embodied form)?

If you will say that the cruels got created without his desire then either the God might not be having such a foresight that these cruels will torture his devotees or earlier he might not be having such sort of power that this should not be allowed to happen. Further, we ask him- 'If God incarnated for the purpose of performing such activity, so, did he possess such power without incarnating or not? If he was possessing such power, why did then he incarnate? And if he did not possess such power then what was the cause of obtaining such power later on?'

Then he says- 'How would the glory (importance) of God be reflected without doing so?' Then we tell him- "Protecting one's followers and punishing opponents for establishing one's glory is nothing but attachment-aversion passions (*Raag & Dwesha*) and *Raag-Dwesha* is the characteristic of the mundane being (*Sansari-Jiva*). If God also is found having *Raag-dwesha* then why to preach the other *Jivas* for effectuating equanimity by quitting *Raag-Dwesha*? Moreover, as he thought to act according to *Raag-Dwesha*, so no work is accomplished without consumption of some more or less time; then during that period God would remain restless. If the king

himself undertakes to do the work which can be performed by a person of lower status then this does not glorify the king, rather it becomes a cause of his censure. Similarly, if God himself undertakes to do, through incarnation that work which can be accomplished by a king and a peripatetic deva etc., then this does not glorify God, rather it becomes a cause of his censure.

Further, the importance is shown to someone else if someone else be there, but you believe in one ubiquitous '*Addvait Brahma*' only; to whom he shows the importance? And the effect of showing the importance is to cause others to pray him; so, by whom does he want to be prayed? And you say that all Jivas function as per the will of the God, so, if the self has the desire of causing others to pray him then direct all the Jivas to pray him. Why should people engage themselves in other activities? Therefore, Gods, action for being glorified by others also does not seem to be logical.

Further, he says that God, even by doing all these acts remains non-doer; this cannot be ascertained. We say to him- "If you would say that this is my mother as well as is a barren lady" then how to believe your saying so? The one who does the work, how to believe him to be a non-doer? And you say that the ascertainment is not possible, so this means believing something without its ascertainment; then you should also believe that sky produces flowers and asses have horns; but such statement supporting impossible phenomenon is not logical.

In this way, belief in the existence of *Brahma*, *Vishnu* & *Mahesh* is false belief.

Further, they say that *Brahma* creates the *Srishti* (universe), *Vishnu* protects it and *Mahesh* destroys it; all this is also not possible, because while performing these duties someone would like to do one thing whereas the other would like to do the contrary thing; then there will arise mutual contradiction.

And if you will say that this also is a characteristic of God, why would there be any contradiction? Then "creating (the universe) himself and destroying it himself" - in performing such a task, what is the result? If the *Srishti* (creation) is harmful to the self why did he create it then? And if it is beneficial why did he destroy it? And

“if earlier he felt it beneficial so he created it, later on he felt it harmful so he destroyed it”- if it is so then either God’s characteristic is wrong or the creation’s characteristic is wrong. If you will favour first side of the logic then God’s character is not proved to be of one nature. So tell us what is the reason of not having one nature? Why would the turning of the nature happen without the cause? And if you will favour second side of the logic then when the creation was under the control of God, why did he allow it to happen so, that it appeared harmful to himself ?

Further, we ask him- “*Brahma* creates the universe; so how does he create it?” The one way is this that as the builder of the temple makes the shape (of the building) etc. by collecting lime, (cement) stones etc. material. Similarly, *Brahma* creates the universe by collecting the material. Let us know that place where from he brought and collected the material and if only *Brahma* alone created the whole universe then either he might have made it in parts - some parts earlier and some parts later or might have made his hands etc. many? Whatever answer you will give, it will also prove contradictory on thinking over it.

And the one way is this that as the work is performed as per king’s order, similarly the universe is created by the order of *Brahma*, (If this be so) then whom did he order? And wherefrom the persons who were ordered brought the material and how did they create the universe?

And the one way is this that the work gets accomplished automatically as per the desire of the person possessing supernatural powers. Similarly, the universe gets automatically created as per the wish of *Brahma*. If this be so, then *Brahma*’s role remained confined to desiring only and the universe got automatically created. Moreover, the desire arose in *Param Brahma*, what was then the role of *Brahma* whom you advocate creator of the universe?

If you will say that *Param Brahma* also desired and *Brahma* also desired then the universe got created. Then it appears that the desire of *Param Brahma* alone is not efficacious. This shows lack of power in *Param Brahma*.



Further, we ask, 'If the universe is created only by creating it then the creator will surely create it for the sake of happiness and then he will create the favourite things only. But in this universe the favourite things are found in lesser number and unfavourite things are found in greater number. Amongst the *Jivas*, *Devas* (celestial beings) etc. were created as favourite beings for the sake of enjoyment and for adoration. But what for worm, ant, dog, pig, lion, etc. were created? Those are neither pleasing nor do they worship; rather, they are harmful in all respects. And why were such harmful objects like poor-wretched, unhappy-hellish beings, etc. created by seeing which disgust, aversion, sorrow are caused?'

There he says that the *Jivas* suffer due to their own sins in the embodied forms of worm, ant, pauper, hellish beings, etc. We ask him, ultimately you may say that these embodied forms *Paryayas* are produced owing to the consequence of vicious acts only, but why were these created earlier at the time of creating the universe? And later on the *Jivas* turned sinful, so why did they turn sinful? If you will say that they themselves turned so, then it appears that *Brahma* first created them and afterwards they did not remain under his control; for this reason *Brahma* felt sorry.

And if you will say that *Brahma* activates them to become active then why did he activate them for sinful deeds? The *Jivas* were created by him; why did he mean ill of them? Therefore, this too is illogical.

And amongst the insentient objects, he created many things of good colour, good smell etc. for the sake of enjoyment but what for did he create the distressing things having bad colours, bad smell, etc.? *Brahma* would not be happy by seeing these things. And if you will say that he created these things for torturing the wicked *Jivas*; then what for did he do such cruelty with the self-created *Jivas* that for them he created distressing things earlier? Further, dust, mountain, etc. are some such things also which are neither pleasing (delightful) nor distressing; what for did he create these things? Of their own those things may get any shape or size, but if there is a creator of them then he will create them with some purpose only. How is therefore *Brahma* called creator of the universe?

And they call *Vishnu* as protector of the universe. The protector performs only two acts; firstly he does not allow development of the

causes of misery and secondly he does not allow development of the causes of destruction or devastation. But in the universe all everywhere only the causes of growth of miseries are seen and those things are seen causing misery to *Jivas*. The *Jivas* are suffering from hunger, thirst, etc., sorrow is caused due to cold and heat, etc., *Jivas* produce pain & misery to one another; weapons, etc., are the cause, of sorrow and various other causes of devastations are found. The different diseases etc., and fire, poison, weapons, etc. are seen as instrumental causes for the end of *Jivas* lives and in the insentient material objects also the causes of mutual destruction are seen. Thus, both types of objects could not be protected; what did then *Vishnu* protect being a protector?

He says - "*Vishnu* is the protector only. For the remedy of hunger, thirst, etc., grain seeds, water, etc. are created, ants get grain particles and elephants get ample food; He helps in difficulty. Even when the causes of death arise, he protects as he did in the case of lapwing (peewit)\* - thus, in many ways *Vishnu* protects". There, we say to him- "If it is so, then where hunger, thirst, etc. cause excessive pain & misery to the *Jivas* and food grain, water, etc. are not available, when one is in difficulty no help is rendered, even a slight cause causes death - in all these cases either *Vishnu's* power became weak or he did not have the knowledge of these things? In the universe; many *Jivas* generally live unhappy and die; why then did *Vishnu* not protect them?

Then he says - "It is the outcome of the *Jivas* own acts & conduct". Our answer to him is - "As an ignorant greedy-liar-physician, finding someone benefitted somewhat by his medicine, says that he has cured him but when the case gets spoiled or the patient dies then he says that it was his destiny. Similarly, you say, if something happened good (agreeable) to someone then it is attributed to as done by *Vishnu* and if something happened bad (disagreeable) then it is said to be the outcome of his own acts & conduct. Why should therefore one have such a misconjuncture? Either say that both the

---

\* A king of bird which used to live on seashore. The sea used to sweep away her eggs. Sorrowfully she prayed to Lord *Vishnu* through the adjutant bird, so, he caused these eggs to be given back to her from the sea. Such sort of story is there in Hindi mythology.

good and bad conditions are caused by *Vishnu* or say that both are the outcome of one's own acts & conduct. If everything is done by *Vishnu* then how can he be called a protector when many *Jivas* are seen unhappy and dieing quickly? And if it is the outcome of one's own acts & conduct then "as he will sow so shall he reap"- what will then *Vishnu* protect?

Then he says - "Those who are the devotees of *Vishnu*, he protects them." We say to him- 'Ants, elephants etc., are not his devotees then, believing the duty of *Vishnu* in supplying food grain, etc. to them, in helping in difficulty and in not letting one die, why do you then believe him to be the protector of all? Rather believe him to be the protector of the devotees only. But he does not seem to be the protector even of the devotees, because the non-devotees also are seen torturing the devotees.'

Then he says - On many occasions he has helped *Prahlad* etc., we say to him - 'Wherever he has helped, there you may believe him to be so. 'But we find that the devotees are afflicted by the wicked barbarian, Mohammedans, etc., 'non-devotees and temples etc. are being destroyed by such persons then why does he not help in such situations? So, either he does not possess the power or he is not aware of it. If he does not possess the power then he is proved to be weaker than the non-devotees too. If he is not aware of it then one who does not know even this much, he is proved to be an ignorant.

And if you say that *Vishnu* possesses the power also and knows also, but he desired this way only. Why do you then call him kind to devotees? Thus, believing *Vishnu* as the protector of the universe is not proved.

Further, they, the monists, say- 'Lord *Mahesha* is the destroyer'. We ask them - Whether *Mahesha* indulges in the act of destruction always or does so only at the time of total destruction of the world? If he always does so, then as you have adored *Vishnu* for protecting the universe, similarly you should censure *Mahesha* for destroying the universe. Because the protection and destruction are contradictory.

And how does he do the destruction? As a person beats someone by his hands, etc. or gets him beaten by others, so similarly

does *Mahesha* do the destruction by his own limbs or gets destroyed by ordering someone else? In whole of the universe the destruction of many *Jivas* is continuously taking place every moment; then how does he destroy all together simultaneously, by what kinds of limbs and by ordering whom? Moreover, if you say that *Mahesha* merely desires and the destruction takes place automatically by his desiring only; then he would always be having cruel thoughts of the form of killing others and how would the desire of killing many *Jivas* alltogether simutaneously be produced in him? And if he destroys at the time of total destruction of the world, then does he do so at the instance of *Param Brahma* or does he do so without his wish? If he does so at *Param Brahma's* wish then how did such intense anger arise to *Param Brahma* that he desired to destroy all? Because, without any reason, the desire of destruction cannot arise and the desire of destruction itself is anger. So, tell us the reason for such anger.

And if you say that *Param Brahma* had created this game of universe; later on he demolished it - for this no reason can be given. The game-maker creates the game when he likes it and finishes it when he dislikes it. Similarly, if this universe appears to be good or bad to him (the *Param Brahma*), then it shows that he has attachment aversion with the universe. Why do you then say *Brahma's* nature to be that of a mere observer? A mere observer is the name of that person who merely remains knower and seer of what automatically happens. How could he be called a mere observer if he creates or destroys the universe by treating it to be good or bad (agreeable or disagreeable). Because remaining a mere observer and also being doer & destroyer are contradictory to each other. Both these things are not possible in one person.

Originally, *Param Brahma* desired that "I am one, so I shall be many", then he became many. Now this desire cropped up- "I am many, so I will become less". So, as out of innocence, someone indulges in some work and then gives it up, similarly *Param Brahma* also after becoming many desired back to become one; so, it appears that the work of becoming many he might have done out of innocence only. Had it been done with foresightedness then why for did he desire to give it up?

And if without the desire of *Param Brahma*, *Mahesha* indulges in destruction then he is proved to be an opponent of *Param Brahma* and *Brahma*.

Further, we ask- 'How does *Mahesha* destroy the universe? Does he do so by his own limbs or destruction takes place automatically just on his desiring? If he destroys by his own limbs then how does he destroy all things at once?' And if destruction takes place automatically by his (*Mahesha's*) desire, then we ask - as to why did he destroy the universe when the desire originated in *Param Brahma*?

Further, we ask him- 'Where have the *Jivas* and *Ajivas* (i.e., living and non-living substances) of the universe gone on complete destruction?' Then he says- 'Among the *Jivas* those who were the devotees, they got united with *Brahma* and the rest got united with *Maya*'. Now, we ask him- 'Does *Maya* remain separate from *Brahma* or later on it gets unified with him? If it remains separate, then *Maya* is also proved to be eternal just like *Brahma*, then *Brahma* did not remain an *Addvaita* (single undivided) *Brahma*. And if *Maya* gets unified with *Brahma* then the *Jivas* who intermixed with *Maya*, they also got intermixed with *Brahma* along with *Maya*; then it is established that at the time of total destruction all *Jivas* got intermixed with *Param Brahma*; why should then the *Jivas* make effort for liberation (*Moksha*)?'

'Further, the *Jivas* who were united with *Maya*, will the same *Jivas* come back into the universe on re-creation of the universe or because these were united with *Brahma* so will the new *Jivas* be created? If the same *Jivas* will come back then it appears that those *Jivas* remain separate-separate; why do you call them united? And if the new *Jivas* are created then the *Jiva's* existence remains for a very short duration only; why should then the *Jivas* make effort for getting liberated?'

Then he says- 'Only the earth etc. (inanimate objects) get united with *Maya*;' then we ask whether *Maya* is an immaterial animate object or a material inanimate object? If it is an immaterial animate object then how would the material inanimate object get united with the immaterial one? And if it is a material inanimate object then does it get united with *Brahma* or not? If it gets united with



*Brahma* then due to this union *Brahma* would also get intermixed with the material inanimate object. And if it does not intermix then the undividedness (monotheism) did not remain intact. And if you say- "All these become immaterial inanimate", then the soul and the body etc. proved to have become one, and this is what a mundane being believes (in the oneness of the soul and the body); why to call him an ignorant self?

Further, we ask- 'On total destruction of the universe., *Mahesha* is also destroyed or not?' If he is destroyed then his destruction takes place along with that of universe or some-what earlier or later. If *Mahesha* and the universe get destroyed simultaneously then how could he destroy the universe who himself gets destroyed simultaneously. If the destruction takes place somewhat earlier and later then where did *Mahesha* reside after destructing the universe, because he himself was a part of the universe. Thus, believing *Mahesha* to be the destroyer of universe is proved impossible.

In this way, believing *Brahma*, *Vishnu*, *Mahesha* respectively as to be the creator, protector and destroyer of the universe is proved to be wrong by the logic given above and by various other reasonings; hence, believe the universe as eternal uncreated and endless.

### **The Vindication of the Eternity & Infinity of the Universe**

In this universe whatever *Jivas* etc. substances are, they all are separate-separate and eternal and their states (módes) always continue changing; from this point of view they are said to be getting created and destroyed. And whatever heaven, hell, islands, etc. are there, they too are existing in the same form as they are from the beginningless time and will remain always existing in the same form infinitely.

Perhaps you may ask- 'How would such shapes, etc. be formed without making them? Therefore, the various shapes, etc. which are found existing, are there only after being created?' This is not so. How could any logic be advanced about the substances which are found existing from the beginningless time? The way in which you believe *Param Brahma's* nature as to be beginningless and endless, so similarly the *Jivas* etc. and heaven, etc. are believed to be eternal and

uncreated. If you ask- "How the *Jivas* etc. and heaven, etc. came into being?" Our rejoinder is- "How *Param Brahma* came into being?" You might ask- 'Who made all these like this?' We will ask- 'Who created *Param Brahma* like this?' You may say- "*Param Brahma* is self-established"; we will say- "The *Jivas* etc. and the heaven, etc. are self-established". You will say- "How is the parity between these and *Param Brahma* possible?" Then you should spell out the flaw or fault in the possibility of their existence. We have already pointed out many flaws and faults in the belief that the universe is newly created and gets destroyed. Now you tell us what is the fault in believing the universe beginningless and endless.

You believe in the existence of *Param Brahma*, but no such separate entity is there. There are *Jivas* in this world; they attain the state of passionlessness and omniscience by acquiring the right path of liberation through right knowledge.

Further, he argues- "You are maintaining that the *Jivas* are separate-separate and eternal, but after their attaining liberation, they become formless, how is then their remaining separate-separate possible there?"

**Answer:** After attaining liberation, they are seen by omniscients or not? If they are seen, some configuration of them would also be visible. What did the omniscient see without seeing the form? And if they are not visible then either the substance itself is not there or the omniscient is not there ! Hence from the viewpoint of knowing through material senses they have no form; from this angle they, the liberated souls, are formless. But because they are known by omniscients, so they have an immaterial form. When their immaterial form is established then what is wrong in accepting them separate-separate? And if you say that they are one from one class point of view, then we also believe like that. For example, each grain of wheat is separate-separate but their class is one; in this way, if they (the liberated souls) are believed to be one then their is no fault.

Thus on the basis of right faith, all substances in the universe are to be believed to be uncreated, separate-separate and eternal. If someone under fallacy does not ascertain the truth or falsehood then it is upto him; he will bear the fruit of his own belief.

## Negation of Hereditary Succession From *Brahma*

And they (the monists) maintain that the hereditary succession through son, grand-son, etc. is from *Brahma* and they uphold that amongst the races there exists mutual sexual relationship between demons, humans, gods and animals. There they believe that birth of son - daughter from any mother and any father such as human from god, god from human and human from animals, etc. takes place; how is this possible?

Further, they say that birth takes place through mental imagination, inhaling air and smelling semen, etc. All this clearly appears to be wrong. If this be true then how could the rule of hereditary succession of son, grandson, etc. prevail? And they further believe that the big noble saints are born from different mothers and different fathers, but how would the noble persons take birth from the unchaste mothers and fathers? This is an abuse in the world; why then they ascribe nobility to those persons?

Further, they ascribe the birth of *Ganesha* etc. to have taken place from filth, etc. and say that someone's limbs are found joined with someone other's limbs. All this is clearly contradictory and false.

## X-ray of Incarnation Theory

Further, they say that there have been 24 incarnations\* of the God. Some of these *Avataras* are said to be complete incarnations and some others incomplete incarnations. When complete incarnations took place, then *Brahma* remained pervasive elsewhere or not? If so, then why call these incarnations as complete? If it did not remain pervasive then *Brahma* remained only of this much extent. And when incomplete incarnations took place then what extra event happened, since *Brahma's* part is found present all everywhere?

---

\* 1. Sanat Kumar 2. Shookaravatar 3. Devarshi Narad, 4. Nar-Narayana, 5. Kapil, 6. Dattatraya, 7. Yajna Purush, 8. Rishabhaavatar, 9. Prathu avatar, 10. Matsya, 11. Kachchhapa, 12. Dhanvantari, 13. Mohini, 14. Nrisinghavatar, 15. Vaman, 16. Parasuram, 17. Vyas, 18. Hansa, 19. Ramavatar, 20. Krishnavatar, 21. Haya Greeva, 22. Hari, 23. Buddha and 24. Kalki; these are believed to be the 24 *Avataras* (incarnations of God).

Moreover, this act was insignificant; why then *Brahma* himself took the incarnation. This shows that without taking the incarnation *Brahma* did not possess the power of doing that act; why should one make more effort when the same act can be accomplished by small effort there?

And in these *Avataras* the *Matsya* (Fish) *Kachchapa* (Tortoise) etc., incarnations are said to have taken place; so, for minor acts, why did he incarnate in the form of inferior beasts? And for protecting *Prahlad* he incarnated in the form of *Nrisingh*. But why did he allow *Harinankush* to act that way and cause sorrow to his devotee for such a long period? And what for did he assume such a form? Further, they uphold that the King *Nabhi* was blessed with *Vrashabha-Avatar*, and he (*Brahma*) incarnated for blessing King *Nabhi* with son's pleasure. Why did he observe severe austerities in that incarnation? There was nothing to be accomplished by him. You might say that he acted so just to show to the world; then he showed some incarnations with the austerities and some incarnations with enjoyment, etc. In this condition, to which incarnation the world will believe god?

Further, he says that there had been a king named *Arhanta* who discovered the *Jaina-faith* by accepting the religion of *Vrashabha Avatar*. Then we say to him that in *Jaina* tradition not only one *Arhanta* had been there but any man who on acquiring omniscience becomes adorable, his name is called '*Arhat*'.

And they (the monists) regard *Rama* & *Krishna*, these two incarnations, as to be the main incarnations, so what did *Ramavatar* do? He moaned for *Sita* (his queen), fought with *Ravana* and killed him and then ruled. And in *Krinshavatar*, first he became a cow-keeper and indulged in many contemptible gestures and bodily actions for fascinating other cow-keepers-wives and became a king after killing *Jarasindhu* etc. So what is achieved by such acts?

Moreover, they mention that *Rama* and *Krishna* had one identity. But where did they live during such a long gap of time? If they lived in *Brahma*, then did they remain separate or united? If they remained separate then it appears that they live separate from *Brahma*. And if they remained united then how do you say that *Rama* himself became *Krishna*, *Sita* herself became *Rukmani*?

And in *Ramavatara*, they lay emphasis on *Sita* (*Ram's* wife) and in *Krishnaavatara* they say that *Sita* is born as *Rukmani* (*Krishna's* wife) but they do not regard her as superior lady and instead regard *Raadhika Kumari* as superior lady. When asked, then they say- '*Raadhika* was a devotee of *Krishna*, but how is it justified to regard a maid servant superior to one's own wife. And *Krishna* is said to have indulged in all sorts of actions in the form of illegal relationship with other's wives including *Raadhika*. How could this be called adoration? Such acts are certainly highly condemnable. And he treated *Raadha* as superior to *Rukmani*; this means that he might have established illegal relations with other's wives knowing this as a good thing. Moreover, he did not remain captivated in one *Radha* lady only but also got involved with *Gopika-Kubja\** etc., other ladies. Thus, this incarnation was perhaps meant for all such acts only.

Further they say- '*Lakshmi* is his (*Brahma's*) wife and the wealth, etc. is called *Lakshmi*'. But as the stones, dust, etc. are found in the earth, etc., similarly, gems, gold, etc. wealth are also found; who else is then this *Lakshmi* whose husband is *Narayana*? And they say that *Sita* etc. are the form (nature) of *Maya* (illusion). And when they (those *Rama*, *Krishna* incarnations) got captivated in them then how did they not get captivated in *Maya*? How long ! how more to describe; whatever they say all that is found contradictory. But the *Jivas* feel gratification in the fables of sensual pleasures, etc., that is why narration of the same is pleasing to them.

Such *Avataras* (incarnations) are said to be the form of *Brahma*. And many other things also they describe to be the form of *Brahma*. One is *Mahadeva* whom they believe *Brahma-swaroopa*. They call him a recluse (*yogi*), what for did he accept the *yoga* (penances)? And he uses skin of deer and smears the body with ashes. What purpose is served by this? And he wears the garland of the trunks of human heads but even touching of bone is contemptible. Then why does he put it round his neck? He wears snakes, etc. like a garland but what is the greatness in this act? He eats susallow-wort and thoru-apple; so what benefit flows out of it? He keeps the trident, so whose fear he has? And he keeps *Parvati* with him but being an ascetic he keeps

\* Bhagwat - skandh-10, chapter 48, 1-11.



woman, so why did he indulge in such contrariety? If he was so passionate, he should have remained at home. And he indulged in various types of contrary activities; no purpose seems to be served by these acts. All these actions seems to be that of a mad-man. Such a person is said to be the personification of *Brahma*.

And sometimes they call *Krishna* to be the attendant of him (*Mahadava*) and some other times call him to be the attendant of *Krishna*. Sometimes they call both to be one and the same. All seems to be baseless.

Further, they call the Sun etc. as the personification of *Brahma*. And they put up *Vishnu* as saying - "Gold in metals, *kalpa-vraksha* in trees, lie in gambling etc. -I am found in all these". All this is irrational. One who is described great by mundane beings from a particular aspect, the same is said to be the personification of *Brahma*. But if *Brghma* is omnipresent then why is such specific personification imagined? And if *Brahma* is found in Sun, gold, etc., then the sun gives light, gold is wealth; due to these qualities you consider these things as parts of *Brahma*. If this is so then treat the lamp also which gives light like Sun; and silver-iron, etc. also which are wealth like gold,-such qualities are found in other substances also; so this way accept them also as parts of *Brahma*. You may treat them big or small *Brahma* but their class is one. This shows that for proving false greatness they put up different illogical arguments.

Further, they describe *Jwalamalini* etc., many goddesses as the personification of *Maya* (illusion) and regard them as adorable by creating sin of injury (sacrifice) etc., but *Maya* is censurable; how is its worshipping possible? And how could the act of committing injury be good? And they regard cows, snakes, etc. animals as adorable, which eat non-eatables, etc. And they describe fire, air, water, etc., venerable by regarding them as gods and also describe trees, etc. as venerable by supporting with false reasoning.

What more to say? All objects with a masculine name are imagined to be *Brahma* personified and all objects with a feminine name are treated as *Maya* personified and regard all those adorable. They do not apply their mind as to what will come out of their adoration. They misguide the world by ascribing false causes of temporal gains and purposes in these objects.

Further, they say that the creator *Brahma* makes the body and the god of death (called *Yama*) kills, and at the time of death the messengers of *Yama* come to take him; after death lot of time is spent in the way, there they prepare the balance account of *Punya* (virtue) and *Papa* (vice) and there they give him punishment, etc., but all this is fictitious, false conjecture. At each unit of time, i.e., every moment, infinite *Jivas* take birth and die; how is such simultaneous happening possible? And also there appears to be no reason for this belief.

They further say that the dead person is benefitted by performing *Shraaddh* etc. after his death, but in the alive state none is seen becoming happy-unhappy by other's pious-impious acts; how would then he become happy-unhappy after death? This illogic is put up for the purpose of fulfilling one's greed by befooling people.

Ant, Moth, Lion, etc. *Jivas* also take birth and die. All these are regarded to be *Jivas* of destruction. But the birth and death of these animals too are seen like that of human beings, etc., what is the gain in misconjecturing? Further, they narrate the fables in the *Shastras* (scriptures), but on thinking over them they are found to be contradictory.

Further, they regard *Yajna* (sacrificial-oblation-ceremony) as a religious activity; there they sacrifice (burn) the big animals into the fire. They indulge in the sinful act of producing lot of fire, etc. and in that a lot of *Jivas* die; but in their own scripture and in the world also killing of *Jivas* is forbidden. But they are so cruel that they do not bother at all and say that “यज्ञार्थं पशवः सृष्टाः”, the beast are created for sacrifice in *Yajna* only; there is no sin in killing them.”

Further, for the sake of accomplishing their greed, they misguide the kings, etc. by asserting that the performance of *Yajna* would result in heavy rains and destruction of enemy, etc. This is as contradictory as saying that by devouring poison people will become alive. Similarly, advocating the act of killing to be religion and the means of fulfillment of desire, is clearly contradictory. But the *Jivas* whose sacrificing is advocated do not possess much power and no body feels afflicted by their killing. It would have been befitting if the sacrificing of some powerful and beloved one would have been approbated. But there is no fear of sin, that is why the wicked

people are engaged in doing ill of the self as well as of others by killing the weaker beings for the sake of fulfillment of their greed.

### A Discussion on Yoga Theory

Further they, the monists, say that the path of salvation is achievable by two streams *Bhakti Yoga* (adoration process) and *Jnan Yoga* (knowledge process).

**Analysis of *Bhakti-Yoga*:** Now the characteristics of salvation-path through *Bhakti-Yoga* (adoration process) are being described:-

They describe the adoration (*Bhakti*) as of two kinds:- *Nirguna* (undivided & formless) and *Saguna* (with forms & qualities).

Adoration of an absolute & undivided God (*Param-Brahma*) is called *Nirguna-Bhakti* and same is explained as under:-

“Thou art formless, faultless, not knowable by mind and speech (words), limitless, ubiquitous, one, saviour of all, exonerater of sinners, creator and destroyer of all”. They thus invoke by these and other such qualities. Out of these, many of the qualities such as formless, etc. are of non-existence form; by believing them in totally to be so, the non-existence of God only is established, because how can there be any substance without any form? And many of the qualities like ubiquitous, etc., are impossible and have already been proved so earlier.

Further, they say that “from *Jiva* point of view I am your devotee, from scripture point of view I am your part, and from *Tatva* (reality) point of view You and I are one”; all these three concepts are mere fallacies. This devotee himself is an animate entity or is an inanimate object? If it is animate then is this animation (sentience) of *Brahma* or of his own? If it of *Brahma* then the belief that “I am devotee” is possible in the consciousness only. Therefore, consciousness is proved to be the nature of *Brahma* and the *Swabhava* (intrinsic nature) and *Swabhavi* (substance possessing that nature) have an indivisible relationship (*Tadatmya Sambandh*). How can then there be the relationship of devotee and lord between them? The relationship of devotee and *Lord* is possible only between two separate substances. And if this consciousness is of his own then he is proved to be a separate entity as the master of his own consciousness.

Then "I am part" and "You and I are one" this statement is false. And if the devotee is an inanimate object then the presence of sense in an inanimate object is impossible; how could such sense be there? Therefore, "I am devotee" this statement is possible only when two, substances are separate entities. And "I am your part" this statement is also not maintainable because saying 'You' and 'I' is possible only when there are two separate substances but how could the 'part' and the 'whole' be separate entities? The 'whole entity is not separate from its parts because the mass of parts itself is the whole entity. And "You and I are one" this statement itself is contradictory. How is it possible to believe mineness and separateness in one and the same substance? Therefore, one should ascertain the truth by giving up fallacy.

And many of them recite the name only. How would simply reciting the name be fruitful without ascertaining the nature of the person whose name is being recited? If you will say that the grandeur is in the name only, then our question is that if the same name of a wicked person is kept as that of the name of the God then in reciting the name of both, there would be commonness of fruit. How could this be possible? Therefore, only after ascertaining the nature and characteristics of the adorable, one should adore him. Thus, the differentia of *Nirguna-Bhakti* has been explained.

And adoration of God by describing his deeds generated under passions of lust, anger, etc., is called *Saguna-Bhakti*, (adoration of forms & qualities). In *Saguna-Bhakti*, the description of *God-Thakur* and *Goddess-Thakurani* is done on the same lines as that of Hero-Heroine with worldly adornment. There they describe all kinds of behaviour pertaining to relationship with one's own wife as well as with other's wife under circumstances of attachment and detachment. Further, they associate with God the acts like stealing of cloths of ladies, taking bath, looting of curd, touching the feet of ladies, dancing before ladies, etc., in performing of which even an ordinary person would feel ashamed. Such acts are possible only under intense desire of sex.

Further, He is said to have fought the wars, etc. but these are acts of anger. He is said to have made efforts for showing his

importance; but those are the acts of pride. Indulgence in the acts of duplicity is also associated with God's name but those are the acts of deceit. He is said to have made efforts for gaining the objects of senses. But these are the acts of greed. He is said to have indulged in sportive acts, but those are the acts of laughter, etc. Hence, such kinds of acts are possible only under the influence of anger, etc.

In this way, by attributing the acts of sex, anger, etc. to God, they say that they are praying, but which acts would then be called censurable if acts of sex, anger, etc. are stated to be adorable? Adoring of God by ascribing to him such acts which are censured in world as well as in scripture is an act like that of a sycophant. Now our question is- 'Will you regard him gentle or wicked who without naming the person starts describing the acts that someone has done such and such acts? If you will regard him gentle then the wicked people are proved gentle; who else would then remain wicked? And if you will regard him wicked then whosoever does such acts, he is wicked. Justice should be done without prejudice.

If you will say prejudicedly that describing the *Thakur* with such traits is also an invocation, then we ask you "Why did *Thakur* indulge in such acts? What did he accomplish by indulging in such censurable acts? If you say that for establishing the tradition he did so, then our question is-'What benefit did he and others get in establishing such a tradition of contemptible acts of enjoying other's wife, etc.? Therefore, indulgement of *Thakur* God in such acts is not possible. And if *Thakur* did not indulge in such acts and you yourself attributed such traits to him, then you have blamed a person without blemish. Therefore, such a description is not adoration but censure.

Moreover, while invoking, one gets the same type of ideas and harbours affection in the same qualities which are being described. So, while describing the acts of sex, anger, etc. one would also develop the feelings of sex, anger etc., or will become interested in such passions. But such thoughts and feelings are not praise-worthy. If you will say-" The devotees do not get involved in such feelings, then we will ask you as to how one would describe without being affected by such ideas? How could one adore without the feelings of affection? If these thoughts and feelings are supposed to be good



then why celibacy and forbearance, etc. are said to be beneficial? Because, these are contradictory to each other.

Moreover, for the purpose of doing *Saguna-Bhakti*, they adorn the idols of *Rama-Krishna*, etc., with curvature accompanied by woman, etc. Merely on seeing them, passionate feelings of sex, anger, etc. arise. And they worship Mahadeva in the form of phallus. See the Mockery ! By taking the name of which one feels ashamed, which the world keeps covered, they adore the same in an idol form. Did he not have other limbs? But excessive mockery is exhibited only by doing so.

Further, for the purpose of *Saguna-Bhakti*, they hoard different kinds of sensual objects. In the name of God (*Thakur*) they themselves enjoy the objects. They prepare the food, etc. for offering to God (*Thakur*), but they themselves eat it by imagining it to be gift of God. Here we ask- "Perhaps *Thakur* would be suffering from hunger and thirst, if not so, then how such imagination is possible? "And when he would be suffering from hunger, etc., then he (the God) being restless would become unhappy; how will then he remove sorrow of others? And you have offered the food, etc. material to God for his use; therefore, it could be called a gift of God only when *Thakur* himself gives it. But taking food; etc. by one's own hand cannot be called God's gift. For example, if someone gives a present to the king and then the king gives him reward then its acceptance is commendable but if someone gives a present to the king and without king's saying anything; one himself takes back the present by his own hands saying that the king has given me the gift, then this is proved to be a mockery. Similarly, here in the case of God, all this cannot be called adoration, it is mere mockery.

Further, *Thakur* and you are two or one? If *Thakur* and you are separate then the present that you have offered should be accepted back only if *Thakur* gives it to you, but why do you take on your own? And if you will say that because God (*Thakur*) is in idol form, therefore, I myself make the imagination; then, this means that you yourself did the work which was to be done by *Thakur*, then you yourself became *Thakur*. And if *Thakur* and you are one, then presenting and taking back in the form of gift is false and imaginary.

This behaviour is not possible when both are one. Therefore, this shows that food greedy persons themselves indulge in such imagination.

Further, they indulge in the arrangement of activities like dancing, singing and accumulating such sensual objects which are agreeable to all mundane beings in different seasons of winter, summer, autumn, etc. for pleasing God (*Thakurji*). Although they show that they are doing all this for pleasing *Thakurji* but in reality they cherish the objects of senses for themselves. This shows that all such arrangement is done by the sensualist *Jivas*. And by mere imagination they celebrate birthday, marriage, etc. and show acts of sleeping, awakening, etc. (of *Thakurji*). This, in reality, is similar to the game of dolls which girls arrange for their amusement. So, this has nothing to do with spirituality. Moreover, they dramatise the various actions of childhood of God and through it they cherish their sensual urges and say that this also is an adoration. What more to say, such many contrarities are found in *Saguna-Bhakti*.

In this way, both these types of adorations, though propagated as path of salvation, are proved to be false.

### **Analysis of *Jnana-Yoga* Theory**

Now the nature of the Salvation-path as described through *Jnana-yoga* (knowledge-means) by different sects is being explained:-

There, the believers of this theory regard knowing of an absolute ubiquitous *Para-Brahma* (Supreme God) as *Jnana* (knowledge); so, its falsehood has already been explained earlier.

Believing oneself totally pure and of the nature of God and knowing sex, anger, etc. and bodily existence, etc. as delusion, is regarded as *Jnana* (knowledge). So, this too is fallacy; if the self (soul) is pure then why do you endeavour for salvation? When himself is pure *Brahma* then what remains to be achieved? And the sex, anger, etc. are clearly seen arising to the self and the association of the body, etc. is also seen; hence, when their dissociation will take place at its proper time, how then their association in the present state of existence is treated as delusion?

They further say that "Making effort for *Moksha* (final release) is also delusion. As the rope is a rope only, knowing it a snake was

delusion, on removal of delusion it is a rope only. Similarly, one is *Brahma* himself, knowing (or believing) oneself impure was the delusion, when this delusion ends, the self remains *Brahma* only". All this statement is false. If the self is pure and one knows it to be impure then it is delusion; but the self is in impure state due to sex, anger, etc. How would then believing impure as impure be called delusion? Rather knowing pure would be delusion. Therefore, what is gained by believing oneself as pure *Brahma* due to false delusion?

And if you will say that "These sex, anger, etc. impure dispositions are the traits of mind and *Brahma* is separate". then we ask you- "Whether the mind is your own functionary or not?" If it is, then the impure dispositions of sex, anger, etc. are also your own. And if those are not yours then tell us- 'Whether you are of sentience nature or of material (insentience) nature?' If you are of sentience nature then the knowledge in you is seen functioning through the mind and the senses only. If anybody can establish the knowledge functioning without these (mind and senses) then that can be accepted to be your separate nature, but it is not discernible. Moreover, the word *Mana* (mind) is derived from the root *Mana-Jnane* (in grammar), i.e., *Mana* means 'To know', so the mind (*mana*) is of the knowledge form, so tell us whose is this knowledge? But knowledge does not appear to be separate from you. And if you are a material (insentient) object then without knowledge how do you think of the nature of self? This does not seem to be possible. And you say that *Brahma* is separate", so whether you yourself are that separate *Brahma* or someone else is? If you yourself are, then your knowledge which believes that "I am *Brahma*", is the function of the mind only, it is not separate from the mind and believing I-ness i.e., belief of self is found in oneself only. In a separate entity, one cannot develop the feeling of oneness. If *Brahma* is separate from the mind, then why does the knowledge of mind-form establish oneness in *Brahma*? And if *Brahma* is an entity separate from you then why do you believe oneness with *Brahma*? Hence, give up your fallacy and know that as the touch, etc. senses are the nature of the body so those are lifeless (insentient) but the knowledge which is caused through them is the nature of the soul. Similarly, the mind also is a heap of subtle particles of matter and is a part of the body only. The knowing activity and the feeling of sex,

anger, etc. which are generated through it are all nature (function) of the soul.

The specific point to be noted here is that the act of knowing is one's own nature and the feeling of sex, anger, etc. are the perverse (impure) dispositions (of the self); owing to them, the soul is in impure state. When in due course of time, the sex, anger, etc. (impure dispositions) will vanish and the dependence of knowing act on mind and senses will end then on manifestation of omniscience-nature of soul, the soul will become pure.

Similarly, know about the intellect, egotism, etc. also, because the mind and the intellect, etc. are synonyms and the egotism, etc. are also the perverse impure dispositions like sex, anger, etc.; knowing these separate from the self is a fallacy. Rather, knowing these as one's own dispositions, it is desirable to make effort for uprooting these impure dispositions. Those *Jivas* who are unable to uproot them and want to establish their superiority, behave in an unrestrained manner by not accepting these impure dispositions to be of the self. Rather, they remain engaged in sensual objects and acts of injury, etc., by intensifying the feelings of sex, anger, etc.

Moreover, giving up of egotism, etc., is also not correctly understood by them. Believing all as *Par-Brahma*; not establishing I-ness in any object and dispositions, is regarded by them as giving up of egotism. But this is a fallacy. Because, is he himself a separate entity or not? If he is a separate entity then how not to believe I-ness in the self. If the self is not an entity then who believes everything to be *Brahma*? Therefore, uprooting egotism consists in giving up the sense of I-ness and doerness in the body, etc. which are non-self (foreign) objects. But having I-ness feeling in the self (soul) is not wrong.

Treating all equal, not differentiating in objects of different nature, is stated to be uprooting of attachment-aversion (*Raag-Dwesh*). This (belief) also is wrong because all kinds of substances are not of similar nature. Some substances are *Chetan* (sentient) and some substances are *Achetan* (insentient), each is different from the other; how can all those be believed to be similar? Therefore, not believing the non-self objects agreeable-disagreeable is relinquish-

ing of *Raag-Dwesh*; however, there is nothing wrong in knowing the details of various substances.

In the same way, they imagine contrarily other dispositions (modes) pertaining to salvation-path and due to such false imagination they indulge in adultery, eat the non-eatables, do not differentiate between various castes, etc.; adopt low conduct which is perverse conduct. When someone questions then they say- "This is the function of the body or things change according to destiny or things happen as per God's desire; we should not ramble.

See the lie ! The one himself knowingly indulges in various aforesaid activities and states it as to be the function of the body. He himself knowingly makes efforts for the said acts and puts the blame on providence. Further, he willfully indulges in passionate acts and acclaims it to be the wish of God. He involves himself in rambling, yet absolves himself from its responsibility. Because he wants to enjoy sensual pleasures under the shelter of religion. So, he puts forward such false logic. If he does not involve himself interestedly in such acts then we will not hold him responsible for the same. For example, suppose someone is sitting in meditation posture and someone else covers him by cloth, there, if the meditator does not entertain any feeling of happiness, then it is true that there is no involvement on his part. But, if he accepts the cloth and wears it and feels happy by ending his suffering from cold, etc., then how is it possible that this is not treated as his own act? And the acts of indulging in adultery, eating the non-eatables, etc. cannot take place without one's own thoughts and desire. How can this be accepted as non-involvement by him? Therefore, only where the desire of sex, anger, etc. (impure dispositions) have ended, there only, one's involvement in any kind of activities is not maintainable. And if one cannot get rid of the passions of sex, anger, etc., then one should act in a manner by which these passions can be minimised. It is not desirable to increase them by behaving unrestrainedly.

### **Refutation of being called Enlightened by Breath-control**

And many *Jivas* consider themselves enlightened by practising breath-control. When the air exhales out from the *Ida, Pingla,*



*Sushumna* forms of the nose-doors, there, they, through the difference of colours, etc., imagine the air itself as to be the form of earthen element, etc. By way of practising through that technique, one attains some knowledge of instrumental causes, so they foretell the world about the good or bad events and they are called learned; but this is nothing but a worldly act only and has no relation with the salvation-path. What is achieved by foretelling the good or bad events to *Jivas* causing them to enhance their attachment-aversion feelings and developing one's own pride & greed, etc. passions?

Further, he practises the *Pranayam* etc. yogic practice (physical exercises) and claims to have taken *Samadhi* by stopping breathing. This act of yogic practice by controlling air is just like that of an acrobat who, through constant practice, performs various actions by hands, etc. The hands and breath are the limbs of the body only; how would the self-benediction be possible by controlling these limbs?

Further, you may say that the rambling state of mind stops, happiness arises and one is not overpowered by death. So, all this is false. As in sleep, the outward actions of sentience stop, similarly, in breath-control also the outward activity of the sentience stops. There, he has controlled the mind but the carnal desire is not destroyed, that is why the rambling state of mind cannot be said to have stopped and without sentience who experiences the happiness? Therefore, the happiness cannot be said to have arisen. Moreover, many accomplishers (practitioners) of this technique have been there in this field but none of them is seen immortal. By setting fire, they are also seen dieing. Hence, saying that they are not under the control of the God of death, is mere false imagination.

And in the process of devotion, where some conscious awareness remains and there he hears some word, he calls it to be the *Anhad-Naad* (unique pleasure). So, as one feels pleasure by listening to the sound of lyre (a stringed musical instrument) etc., similarly, he feels pleasure by listening to that *Anhad-Naad*. So, here the sensuality only is fostered; no spiritual purpose is served. And by imagining the word *Soaham* (that I am) in the process of inhaling and exhaling air, he calls it to be *Ajapa-Jaap* (silent utterance of deity's name

without rosary). As in the sound of partridge, he imagines the word *Too-hi* (you yourself, are that), but the partridge does not intentionally make such sound for conveying any meaning; similarly, no intention could be imposed on the process of controlled breath for producing the word *Soaham*. It is mere imagination. Nothing is achieved by mere chanting and listening to words. Only by grasping the meaning of the word, some achievement is possible.

The meaning of the word *Soaham* is "I am that". Here one should know who is "That" with whom he is comparing the self. He should ascertain "That" because the word "That" and the word "Who" are always inter-related terms. Therefore, the word *Soaham* could be used after ascertaining the substance and then developing the feeling of 'I-ness' in that substance. There also if he experiences the 'self' to be the self only then the use of the word *Soaham* is not possible. Saying the word *Soaham* is possible only when some other object is to be shown as the self. For example, some person knows himself as the 'self'; why would then he think so, "I am the same". Some other *Jiva* who is not able to identify himself and does not know the nature of the self, then he is sermonised that the one who possesses so and so qualities, the same I am. Similarly, understand here also.

Further, by concentrating on forehead, eyebrows and tip of the nose, one maintains that he meditated on *Trikuti* etc. and thus claims to have achieved *Parmarth* (spiritual excellence). There, he saw the material thing by turning the pupil of the eye; what is the spiritual achievement in that? And if through such means someone acquires somewhat knowledge of the past and future, etc., gains the power of words and the power of fast movement on the earth and in the sky, etc. and gains the power of restoration of health, etc. in the body, all these are only worldly achievements. The celestial beings are naturally found possessed with such powers. By such powers no spiritual benefit is obtainable. Real spiritual benefit is obtained by uprooting carnal desires; whereas these powers are the means of fostering the sensuality and passions. Therefore, all these means are not at all really beneficial to the self. In the achievement of these, a lot of affliction is caused till death and no benefaction of the self is attained. Hence, the spiritual persons do not unnecessarily

entangle themselves in such activities; only the passionate people indulge in such acts.

Further, they assert that some people have attained liberation with difficulty through the observance of many austerities, etc., and on the other hand, some people are said to have attained liberation easily. *Uddhava* etc. who were stated to be great devotees were advised to undergo severe austerities and while the prostitutes, etc. are said to have achieved salvation by mere chanting of God's name. Thus, there is no consistency at all.

In this way, they interpret the liberation-path contrarily.

### **Analysis of Liberation-path imagined by Other Sects**

Further, they (the monists) describe the nature of *Moksha* (liberation) also wrongly and of various types:-

The one type of *Moksha* (liberation) is this "In the abode of liberation (*Vaikuntha-dham*), the *Thakur* along with *Thakurani* enjoys different sensual pleasures. If one reaches there and remains engrossed in their service, so this his *Moksha*. But this is contradictory. Firstly, the *Thakur* himself is said to be indulging in sensual pleasures like other worldly persons. So, the *Thakur* also is portrayed like a king. Moreover, He has to be attended by others which shows the dependence of *Thakur*. And if the devotee even after *Moksha* remains a servant then it is just like being servant. How would there he be happy on being dependent? Hence, this type of *Moksha* is also not possible.

Another type of *Moksha* is stated thus : "In *Moksha* the self becomes similar to God". So, this too is wrong. If the other *Jivas* are also found separately similar to God then there would be many Gods. Who would then be the creator and destroyer of the universe? If all are accepted to be Gods then due to rise of different desires, contradiction will arise amongst them. And if only one God is there then equality is not proved; one who has some deficiency will remain restless for attaining higher status from lower status; how will then he be happy? As the difference between a small king and a big king is found in the world, so similarly, the difference between

a small God and a big God would be found in the liberated state also, but this is not possible.

Yet, another type of *Moksha* is described thus : "In *Vaikuntha* (liberated state) there is a light (*Jyoti*) similar to the flame of a lamp; there in that light this light, gets united. So, this concept, too, is wrong. The light of the lamp is of material and inanimate form; how is such kind of light possible there? And on union of one light with the other light, whether this light (*Jyoti*) exists or gets destroyed? If it remains existing then the light (*Jyoti*) will go on increasing then there will be decrease-increase in the light (*Jyoti*), and if it gets destroyed then how can such an act be believed to be worth achieving due to which our own existence gets destroyed? Therefore, this concept also is not possible.

One other form of *Moksha* is this : "The soul is *Brahma* only; on destruction of *Maya*'s (illusion) cover, liberation gets manifested". So, this concept also is wrong. When he was under the cover of *Maya*, then was he one with *Brahma* or separate from him? If he was one then *Brahma* himself became *Maya* (illusion) and if he was separate then on destruction of *Maya* he gets united with *Brahma*; thereafter, his separate existence remains or not? If it remains then the omniscient would definitely be knowing his existence to be separate; then you should say them to have got united due to their meeting together, but from spiritual or realistic point of view they are not united. And if his existence is lost then who would like to get his own existence destroyed? Therefore, this concept too is not maintainable.

Yet, another kind of *Moksha* is advocated by many people thus: "On destruction of intellect, etc. *Moksha* is attained". It means the knowledge did not remain dependent on mind and senses, etc., which are the limbs of the body. This statement is possible on eradication of sex, anger, etc., impure dispositions and if the sentience is also believed to have ended there then how can the inanimate condition like stones, etc. be accepted as beneficial? Moreover, by adopting good means, the knowledge increases, then on adopting much better means how could the destruction of the act of knowledge be acceptable? And in the universe, the greatness of materialism (inanimateness) is not more than the greatness of the consciousness (animateness). Therefore, this concept also is not true.

In this way, they (the monists) describe *Moksha* (liberated state) in various ways by imagination. But they do not know the reality; rather misconjecturing the mundane state as the liberated state, they prate according to their will. Thus, in *Vedanta* (monistic theory), and other sects, the form of *Moksha* is described perversely.

### **A Discussion about Mohammedanism**

And in Mohammedanism also, false interpretations are found in the aforesaid manner. As they, the monists, believe *Brahma* to be an ubiquitous, one faultless and the creator and destroyer of all, similarly, these (Mohammedans) believe *Khuda* God. And as they (the monists) believe the incarnations of God, similarly these (Mohammedans) believe the *Paigamberas* (prophets). As, they (the monists) assert that *Brahma* takes an account of *Punya-Papa* (virtues & vices) of *Jivas* and accordingly gives punishment, etc., similarly, these (Mohammedans) attribute these deeds to *Khuda*. And as these (monists) worship cow, etc., similarly, those (Mohammedans) pay same regard to pig, etc. All these are the animals (of *Tiryancha* state of existence). And as they advocate achievement of liberation by worship of God, same thing these (Mohammedans) say about devotion of *Khuda*. And as they (the monists) at some place foster kindness (*Ahinsa*) and at other place foster injury (*Hinsa*), similarly these (Mohammedans) also at one place foster kindness and at other place foster killing. And as they (the monists) at some place advocate observing of penances and at some other place indulgence in sensual objects, in the same way these (Mohammedans) also foster different contrary things at different places. And as they somewhere prohibit use of meat-eating, alcohol-drinking, preying, etc., and at some other place support its use by noble persons, similarly, these also support at different places prohibition and use of these things. Thus, in many ways, the parity in the views of monists and Mohammedans is found. Although the names, etc. are different-different, nevertheless, the harmony is found in their concepts and purposes.

Moreover, there is found similarity in their fundamental belief of *Ishwar* (God-*Brahma*) and *Khuda* God but in the details of their belief, various differences are found. These Mohammedans lay even greater emphasis on contrary acts of fostering of sensual desires,



acts of injury, etc. and assert many things clearly against logic and reasoning as compared to monists.

Hence, the Mohammedanism is to be known as highly perverse and contradictory.

Thus, the falsehood of all those schools of faiths which are abundantly followed in this region and time, has been established.

Someone may argue here "If these various faiths are false then why do the great kings and great learned persons follow them?"

**Answer:** The *Jivas* are found having false longing from the times immemorial and in these faiths the misbelief alone is fostered. And the desire of indulging in the acts of sensuality exists in all the *Jivas*; so in these sects, the acts of carnal desires only are fostered. And the purpose of carnal desires of the kings and learned persons is supported in such faiths. And the acts which a *Jiva* wants to do even by ignoring public slander and knowing them vicious, and advocating indulgence in such acts as religion, then who would not engage himself in such religion? Therefore, these religions are followed in great measure.

And perhaps you might say that in these religions detachment (renunciation), kindness, etc. virtues are also preached. But as a false coin is not accepted in circulation without giving a coating of superior metal, similarly, the false statement does not become acceptable without mixing the truth, but for the purpose of general benefit, the carnal desires only have been fostered. As in *Geeta* (the sacred book of Hindus monists) the purpose of waging war is supported under the garb of religion; in *Vedanta* the unrestrained behaviour is supported by describing the self to be pure (in the present state also); similarly, one should know at other places. Moreover, the present time is very bad, so in this era, particularly, the worthless religions only prosper.

See the tragedy ! In the present time, the Mohammedans have increased in power and in number and the Hindus have decreased; amongst Hindus also others have increased and the Jains have decreased. So, this is the effect of bad time.

Thus in the present world and present time, indulgence in perverse activities in the name of religion is found immensely.

## Examining the Elements Propounded in Other Sects

Many schools of thoughts have emerged on the basis of misconceptions under the power of erudition. The main elements of philosophy discussed therein are being examined here:-

### The *Sankhya* - Faith

In *Sankhya* faith, 25 *Tattvas* (elements) are stated\*, amongst which the basic ones are three *Satva* (virtue), *Rajah* (passions) and *Tamah* (ignorance). The *Satva* quality causes happiness, the *Rajah* quality produces wavering state in mind and the *Tamah* quality generates ignorance. The collective name of conditions produced by these qualities is called *Prakruti* and it gives birth to *Buddhi* (intellect) which is termed *Mah-tattva*. The *Mah-tattva* produces ego which further generates sixteen *Matras* (divisions). Of these, five are *Jnan-Indriyas* i.e., senses instrumental in knowing activity, namely *Sparshan* (touch-sense), *Rasna* (tongue-sense), *Ghraan* (nose-sense), *Chakshu* (Eye-sense) and *Shrotra* (ear-sense) and the one is *Mana* (mind). And five are *Karma-Indriyas* (senses or limbs of action) *Vachan* (voice), *Charan* (foot), *Hasta* (hand) *Linga* (sex-organ), *Guda* (anus). And five are the *Tanmatras* (i) *Roop* (colour), *Ras* (taste), *Gandha* (smell), *Sparsha* (touch) and *Shabda* (words or sound). Further they describe that fire from *Roop*, water from *Ras*, earth from *Gandha*, air from *Sparsha* and space or sky from *Shabda* are created. Thus, the aforesaid 24 *Tattvas* are of *Prakruti* form and different from these is one *Purusha* who is *Nirguna* (undivided one absolute soul), *Karta* (doer) and *Bhokta* (enjoyer).

Thus, they describe the twenty-five *Tattvas*, which are imaginary because how would the *Rajas* etc. qualities be evolved without some shelter? The shelter of these could only be the *Chetan-Dravya* (soul-substance). And *Buddhi* (intellect) is said to be generated from these qualities, but intellect is nothing but knowledge and it is found only in the substance possessing knowledge; how could then the knowledge be said to have been originated from this? If he says that intellect is separate and knowledge is separate, then our query is that

\* प्रकृतमहंस्तताऽहंकारस्तस्माद्गणश्च षोडशकः ।

तस्मादपि षोडशकाल्पंचभ्यः पंचभूतानि ॥ (सांख्य का. 12)

the mind has been included earlier in sixteen *Matras* and if you assert knowledge to be separate, what else then would be called intellect? And ego is said to be generated from it but ego lies in doership in other objects. Ego does not consist in knowing something in detached manner. How could then ego be a product of knowledge?

And sixteen *Matras* are described to have evolved from ego; amongst them five are described as *Jnan-Indriyas* (senses instrumental in knowing activity). But in the body there are material senses (*Dravya-Indriyas*) in the form of eyes, etc.; those are seen to be insentient like the earth, etc. and there are psychic senses (*Bhava-Indriyas*) which are of knowledge form and their function is knowing the colour, etc. What is then the purpose of ego (I-ness) there? Someone may be found possessing knowledge but without the feeling of ego (I-ness); therefore, how is it possible to treat knowledge as a by-product of the feeling of ego (I-ness)? And the *Mana* (mind) in nothing but like other material senses, because the material mind (*Dravya-Mana*) is a part of body and the psychic mind (*Bhava-Mana*) is a form of knowledge. And the five so-called *Karma-Indriyas* (senses or limbs of actions) are nothing but the limbs of the body and are of material form. How can these be believed to have evolved from the immaterial ego (I-ness-feeling)?

Moreover, the *Karma-Indriyas* are not five only but all the limbs of the body are useful. And the whole description is concerning with all *Jivas* and not concerned with human beings only. Therefore, trunk, tail, etc. limbs are also the senses of action. Why do you limit them to be the five only?

And five *Tan-Matras*, touch, colour, etc., are not separate entities but those are modes (qualities) inseparable from atoms; how are those said to be produced separately? Moreover, ego is the disposition of immaterial *Jiva* (soul); how can, therefore, these material modes be believed to have been produced from that *Jiva*?

Further, they say that the fire, etc. are produced from these five *Tan-Matras*. This is clearly false; colour, etc. and fire, etc. have coexisting relationship of qualities (*Guna*) and substance (*Guni*) possessing those qualities. In description only, those appear to be separate but substantially they are not separate. In no way, these

can be sensed as separate. Separation is created only in description. How can, therefore, fire, etc. be described to have been produced from colour, etc.? Even in description, the correct statement would be that qualities (*Gunas*) are found in the substance but how can the substance (*Guni*) be believed to have been produced from the qualities (*Gunas*) ?

Further, they say that there is a '*Purusha*' (living entity) quite different from all these (abovementioned things); but when asked about his nature, they reply that he is indescribable, then who would understand the indescribable? They are not able to answer how is he, where is he, how is he a doer and destroyer? Whatever answer they might give could be proved to be false on examination. Thus, the *Tattvas* as imagined in *Sankhya* philosophy are to be known false.

Further, knowing the *Purusha* separate from the *Prakruti* (nature) is stated to be the path of salvation by them. In reality, there is nothing like *Prakruti* and *Purusha*. Moreover, nothing is achieved by mere knowing. Salvation (*Moksha*) can be obtained only by uprooting the passions like attachment, etc. after knowing their nature. But by knowing what they say, attachment, etc. are not reduced. So long as one believes *Prakruti* to be the doer (of attachment, etc.) and the self as non-doer, why would then he try to reduce attachment, etc.? Therefore, this is not the path of salvation or liberation.

Further, they say that separation between *Prakruti* and *Purusha* is salvation (*Moksha*). But out of the twenty-five *Tattvas*, twenty-four *Tattvas* are related with *Prakruti*, only one *Purusha* is said to be different. But those are already separate and no *Jiva* (soul) substance has been included in the twenty-five *Tattvas*. And *Purusha* itself is termed *Jiva* (soul) on union with *Prakruti*. But different *Purushas* are found associated with different types of *Prakrutis* and afterwards by adopting some means some *Purusha* may get dissociated from *Prakruti*,- this is proved. So, in reality, there is no one single *Purusha*.

Further, "Is the *Prakruti* a mistake of *Purusha* or is separate like a *Vyantari* (peripatetic goddess) who over-powers the *Jiva*?" If it is his mistake then how could the senses, etc. and the touch, etc.

*Tattvas* be believed to have been produced from Prakruti? And if it is separate then that also is proved to be a substance, hence everything is governed by it, nothing is in the hands of *Purusha*. Then with what object do you preach? Thus believing this type of *Moksha* (liberation) is also erroneous.

Further, they describe three kinds of *Pramanas* (valid knowledges) *Pratyaksha* (direct knowledge), *Anumana* (inference) and *Aagama* (scripture). But ascertainment of their true or false nature can be done only from Jainas' books on logic.

Moreover, some followers of *Sankhya* religion do not believe in *God*; some others believe in one *Purusha* to be *God*, some believe *Shiva* and some others *Narayana* as *God*. All of them make imaginations as per their understanding without any firm decision and many followers of this sect keep long hair (matted and braided hair), some others keep *Choti*\*, some are without hair, many wear clothes of catechu colour. Thus by adopting various disguising dress styles, they are called great under the garb of *Tattva-Jnan* (possessing knowledge of *Tattvas*-reality).

Thus ends the discussion of *Sankhya* religion.

### ***Shivamat* (Followers of Shiva)**

The *Shivamat* is of two types, *Naiyayika* and *Vaisheshika*

In *Naiyayika* sect, sixteen *Tattvas* (elements) are described, which are *Pramana*, *Premeya*, *Santhaya*, *Prayojana*, *Drushtanta*, *Siddhanta*, *Avayava*, *Tarka*, *Nirnaya*, *Vaada*, *Jalpa*, *Vitanda*, *Hetvabhava*, *Chhala*, *Jati* and *Nigraha-Sthana*.

There, the *Pramana* (valid-knowledge) is described to be of four kinds: *Pratyaksha* (direct knowledge), *Anumana* (inference), *Shabda* (words), *Upama* (comparison). Soul, body, wealth and intellect, etc. are described to be the *Premeya* (knowables). And the query 'What is this' is *Sanshaya* (doubt). The purpose or object for which the effort is made is *Prayojana*. That which is acceptable to both plaintiff and defendant is *Drushtanta* (Example). Whatever is decided through example is *Siddhanta* (principle). And the *Pratijna* (pledge) etc. five

\* *Choti*, i.e., a lock of hair on the crown of the head left after tonsure.



parts of *Anumana* (inference) are the *Avayavas* (components). On removal of *Sanshaya* (doubt), finding something correct from some angle, is *Tarka* (logic). Later on, knowing (something) in ascertained form, is *Nirnaya* (decision). Learning by discussion between the teacher (*Acharya*) and the taught (pupil) in the form of 'for and against a subject' is the *vada* (debate). In the inquisitiveness form of tale, whatever faults like duplicity, etc. found, is called *Jalpa* (prattling). A discussion without opposite viewpoint is *Vitanda* (preverse argumentation). Where there is no true reasoning such subdivisions like unapproved reasoning, etc., are *Hetoabhasa* (fallacy). The words or speech with duplicity is *Chhala* (fraud). Such imposed defects which are not real defects are called *Jati* (class or category). And by which the subjugation of opponent is caused that is *Nigraha Sthana* (stoppage of argument).

Thus, the aforesaid *Sanshya* etc. *Tattvas* are in fact not substantially any *Tattva* (reality). The *Tattvas* are described for involving thinking and being the cause for ascertaining the knowledge and for showing the profound learning through discussion. But what spiritual achievement would result from these *Tattvas*? To remain imperturbed by uprooting sex-anger, etc. impure dispositions, is real achievement; that object is not highlighted here at all, rather different tactics of pedantry are put forth. So, this too is mere cleverness; therefore, this theory is not rudimental.

Further, you will say that without knowing these (*Tattvas*) the purposeful *Tattvas* cannot be ascertained; therefore, these are called *Tattvas*, but the grammarians also put forth such type of tradition that by reading grammar the meaning (of words, etc.) is determined and the specialists of food, etc. also maintain that on getting stableness of the body by taking food, the people become capable in ascertaining the *Tattvas*; so, such an argument is not purposeful.

And if you will say that the grammar, food, etc. are certainly not the cause of *Tattva-Jnan* i.e., attaining knowledge of *Tattvas*, but are the cause of accomplishing worldly objects. Similar to these (cause) the *Tattvas* described by you are instrumental causes of accomplishing temporal deeds. Knowing through senses, etc. has been described to be the direct knowledge, etc., and in taking decision about stump or person is stated to be the doubt etc. Hence, those

*Tattvas* only are useful by knowing of which the sex-anger, etc. impure dispositions are uprooted and imperturbability is produced.

Further, you may say that in *Prameya Tattvas* (knowable elements) the ascertainment of soul, etc. takes place; so, it is purposeful, but everything is knowable (*Prameya*), no such substance is there which is not the object of *Pramiti* (knowledge), so what for are the *Prameya Tattvas* described? The soul, etc. *Tattvas* should only have been described.

And also the nature of the soul has been propounded contrarily; such decision is reached on thinking without prejudice. For example, they describe two kinds of souls, *Paramatma* (supreme soul) and *Jivatma* (mundane souls). The *Paramatma* is said to be the creator of all. They conjecture that this world is created by the doer (creator) because it is a creation. And whatever creation is there that is created by the creator, e.g., Jar (pot) etc. But this too is a misconception because the other facet of this conjecture is also possible which is that this world is not created by the creator, because many uncreated (self-existing) substances are also found in this world. Those which are self-existing are not created by any creator, e.g., sun, etc. For in the world of conglomerated form of different substances, some objects are created by human beings, etc. but many other things are self-existing. So none is the creator of them. These are imperceptible by direct knowledge. Therefore believing God as creator is false.

Further, they describe each *Jivatma* (soul) has separate-separate bodies, so this is quite true but after their attaining liberation also each liberated soul should be believed to be separate-separate. This has already been discussed in detail earlier. Similarly other *Tattvas* are described contrarily. Moreover, the differentia of *Pramana* (valid knowledge) etc. are also imagined contrarily by them. This can be clearly understood by study of *Jaina*-scripture. In this way the *Tattvas* described in the *Naiyayika*-sect are to be known as imaginary.

**Vaisheshika-Sect:-** In vaisheshika-sect, six kinds of *Tattvas* are described : 1. *Dravya* (substances), 2. *Guna* (attributes), 3. *Karma* (the actions), 4. *Samanya* (common), 5. *Vishesha* (specific) and 6. *Samvaya* (inseparable).

*Dravyas* are stated to be of nine kinds: - 1. *Prithvi* (earth), 2. *Jal* (water), 3. *Agni* (fire), 4. *Vayu* (air), 5. *Akash* (space), 6. *Kal* (time), 7. *Disha* (direction), 8. *Atma* (soul) and 9. *Man* (mind).

There the atoms of the earth, water, fire and air are separate-separate; those atoms are eternal, from them *Prithvi* (earth) etc. are formed which are unstable. But this is contrary to actual experience and knowledge. The fuel-form atoms of the earth, etc. are seen converting into fire-form and the fire-form atoms are seen converting into ash-form of earth. The atoms of water are seen converting into the pearl-form of earth. Again you will say that those atoms disappear and some different atoms only turn into those forms. By saying so, you are clearly falsifying what is clearly evident. If you are able to put up some very strong logic then we may consider it; but simply stating so it is not proved. Therefore, it is clear that all atoms belong to the one *Pudgal* (matter) form of material class which modifies into various forms like earth, etc. conditions.

And at some places they (the *vaisheshikas*) state that the *Prithvi* (earth) etc. possess separate body, but that is false only, because it has no proof. Moreover, the earth, etc. are the mass of atoms; this is not possible that their body be elsewhere and these be elsewhere; hence, this too is false. And where no substance gets obstructed such a hollowness they term as to be the *Akash* (space). They describe the moment, an instant, etc. as to be the *Kal* (time). But both of these are non-entities because these are not the substantive objects. They imagin these objects for the sake of considering from various angles - the area, modification, etc. of substances. And (according to them) there is no substance like direction (*disha*), they believe directions as substance simply by imagining the divisions in the space. And soul is described in two ways. So this has been discussed earlier. And the *Man* (mind) is not any separate substance. The psychic mind (*Bhava-man*) is of knowing form so it is the nature of the soul and the physical or material-mind (*Dravya-man*) is a mass of atoms (mental-*oárgands*) which is the part of the body. Thus, these substances are imaginary.

Further, they describe twenty-four types of qualities (*Gunas*) : *Sparsh* (touch), *Rasa* (taste), *Gandha* (smell), *Varna* (colour), *Shabda* (words or sound), *Sankhya* (number), *Vibhaga* (division), *Sanyoga* (union), *Parinaama* (consequence), *Prithakatva* (separateness), *Paratva*

(difference), *Aparatva* (similarity), *Buddhi* (intellect), *Sukha* (happiness), *Dukha* (sorrow), *Ichchha* (desire), *Dharma* (virtue or piety), *Adharma* (vice or impiety), *Prayatna* (effort) *Sanskara* (impression), *Dweshha* (aversion), *Sneha* (smoothness or oily), *Gurutva* (heaviness), *Dravyatva* (substantiality). Out of these touch etc. qualities are found in atoms but describing earth odorous only, describing water having cold touch only, etc. is false; for nowhere in earth, prominence of smell is found, somewhere water is seen hot; hence, it is all against clear-cut knowledge and experience. And they describe the words (i.e., sound) as to be the attribute of space (*Akash*), but it is false, for the words or sound is obstructed by the wall, etc.; so, it is of material form and the space (*Akash*) is an immaterial and ubiquitous substance. When space is found in the wall and the word or sound attribute (*Shabda-Guna*) which is asserted to be the quality of space cannot enter the wall, how would this be possible? And the number, etc. are not there in the substance itself but we imagine the number, etc. in our knowledge for knowing the numerical strength of any particular substance in comparison to other substances. And the intellect (*Buddhi*) etc. are the function or mode of soul, the intellect is the name of knowledge and it is definitely an attribute of the soul. And when the *Man* (mind) has already been stated under nine substances why has it now been described as an attribute separately again? And happiness (*Sukha*) etc. are found sometimes in the soul, those are not the characteristics (attributes) of the soul, rather these are seemingly so-called characteristics because they are not found in all states of soul. And smoothness, heaviness, etc. are found in the atoms of matter and are known through the sense of touch, hence these are covered under *Sparsh Guna* (touch attribute); why are then these described separately? And fluidity is described to be the quality of water, but the fire, etc. are also found having the quality of upward motion, etc. So, either all qualities (*Gunas*) should have been described or should have been generalised. Thus, all the aforesaid qualities (*Gunas*) are imaginary.

Further, they describe *karmas* as of five kinds:-

1. *Utkshepana* (Throwing Outward or exhaling)
2. *Avakshepana* (Throwing Inward or Inhaling)
3. *Aakunchana* (Contraction)

4. *Prasarana* (Expansion)
5. *Yaman* (Mortification).

But all these are mere bodily actions, what is the purpose of describing these separately? Moreover, these are not the only ones but are of many types. And these are stated as separate *Tattvas*; but had these been separate substances then you should have described them as the separate *Tattvas*, or had these been specifically purposeful in rooting out the sex-anger, etc. passions, then these should have been described as *Tattvas* but both these specialities are not there. And if there is just a casual approach in describing these then the stones, etc. are also found having different forms which could also be described. Nothing is achieved by believing these.

And the *Samanya* (generalisation) is of two types : *Par* and *Apar*. *Par* is of existence form. *Apar* is of substance form, etc. And those which are always found functioning in the substance are called its details (*Vishesha*). The name of an ununited and inseparable relationship between a substance and its qualities is called *Samavaya*. These *Samanya* etc. appear in our thoughts only, either by believing many as to be of one kind or by imagining the divisions in one substance or by believing the relationship from the divisions-imagination point of view. These are not separate-separate substances. Moreover, by knowing these (*Tattvas*) even the specific purpose of uprooting sex-anger, etc. passions is not accomplished; why for then these are called *Tattvas*? And if only such *Tattvas* were to be stated then *Prameyatva* (knowableness) etc. infinite qualities are there in the substance and various types of cases like relationship base, etc. are possible in the substance; so, either all things should have been described or only purposeful ones. Hence, these *Samanya* etc. *Tattvas* also are purposelessly described.

Thus, the *Tattvas* (principles) described by the *Vaisheshikas* are to be known as imaginary. Besides this, the *Vaisheshikas* believe only two kinds of *Pramanas* (valid knowledges) :- 1. *Pratyaksha* (direct knowledge) and 2. *Anumaana* (inferential knowledge). So, the correctness-incorrectness of these may be ascertained from *Jaina*-scriptures pertaining to logic<sup>-1</sup>.

1. देवागम, युक्त्यानुशासन, अष्टसहस्री, न्यायविनिश्चय, सिद्धिविनिश्चय, प्रमाणसंग्रह, तत्त्वार्थश्लोकवार्तिक, राजवार्तिक, प्रमेयकमलमार्तण्ड, न्यायकुमुदचन्द्र आदि दार्शनिक जैन-न्याय ग्रन्थ हैं ।



And the *Naiyayikas* say that the state of the soul manifested in the absence of objects, senses, intellect, body, happiness and sorrows is liberation. And the *Vaisheshikas* say that out of twenty-four *Gunas* (qualities) the absence of intellect (*Buddhi*) etc. nine qualities is liberation. Here the absence of intellect is described, but the intellect is the name of knowledge and the substratum of knowledge was described as the differentia, i.e., intrinsic nature of the soul. Now, on effacement of knowledge both the characteristics and the object possessing that characteristics, i.e., soul will also get effaced. Then what would be the state of the soul? And if the intellect is the name of mind then the *Bhava-man* (psychic mind) is of knowledge form only and the *Dravya-man* (material mind) is a part of body. So, on liberation the association with material mind (*Dravya-man*) ends. How could then the name of insentient material mind (*Achetan Dravya-man*) be the intellect? And the senses are like mind. And if the object is destroyed then the knowing of the touch etc. objects would also get effaced. Then, what will remain of knowledge? And on effacement of objects, the universe too will get effaced. Further, they say that happiness also ends; but all *Jivas* make efforts for happiness only. When it will get effaced, how would then it remain worth obtaining? And if the sensuous pleasure which is full of perturbableness is said to have got effaced there, then it is true; for the supersensible happiness having the imperturbability as its characteristic is all possible in liberation, hence happiness is not lost. However, it is correct to say that in liberation, body, misery, aversion etc. come to an end.

Further, in *Shivamat* (Shiva's followers) the doer or creator is an absolute single (undivided) *God Shiva*, they believe him to be the God. The falsehood of his (God's) existence has already been proved established earlier, it should be known from there. And in this sect the *Bhesha* (attire of body) consists of cinders, lion-cloth, matted hair, sacred thread, etc; so, from the conduct code point of view, those *Bheshas* (attires) are of four kinds: *Shaiva*, *Pasupat*, *Mahavrati*, *Kaalmukha*. All these *Bheshas* are nothing but the facets of attachment, etc. passions; these are, therefore, not the correct *Bheshas* (*Sulingas*). Thus has been discussed and concluded the *Shivamat* (Shiva faith).

## Meemansaka-mat (One of the 6 Systems of Hindu Philosophy)

Now, the characteristics of *Meemansaka faith* are described. The *Meemansakas* (those who reflect deeply on a subject) are of two kinds 1. *Brahmavadi* and 2. *Karmavadi*.

The *Brahmavadis* believe in one absolute undivided *Brahma* and describe in *Vedanta* philosophy that "This whole universe is *Brahma*, none else is there" and "to remain engrossed in the self (soul) is liberation." The falsehood of these have already been explained earlier which needs reflection.

And the *Karmavadis* believe in performing the rituals - religious duties, sacrificial ceremonies, etc. But in these activities, the presence of fostering of attachment, etc. alone is found; therefore, indulging in such activities is not at all useful.

Further, there are two types of customs established by *Bhatta* and *Prabhakara*. As per *Bhatta* there are six kinds of *Pramanas* (valid forms of knowledges) - *Pratyaksha* (direct knowledge, i.e., perceptible to senses), *Anumaana* (inference), *Veda* (scripture), *Upama* (analogy), *Arthaapatti* (corollary) and *Abhava* (absence or negation). And as per *Prabhakara* only five *Pramanas* excepting the *Abhava* are accepted. So, their truth or falsehood should be known by study of *Jaina*-scriptures.

And those who follow *Shat-karmas*, i.e., six kinds of daily duties, wear the sacred thread of *Brahma*, have forsaken taking food-grains, etc. from the *Shudras* (persons belonging to fourth caste in Hindus) and live as house-holders are called *Bhattis*. And in *Vedanta* sect the people who do not wear the sacred thread and accept the food, etc. from the *Brahmins'* house are named as *Bhagwat*; they are of four kinds - *Kutichar*, *Bahoodak*, *Hansa*, *Paramhansa*. So, these are found to be satisfied with some external renunciation but perversity of knowledge and faith and presence of fostering of attachment, etc. are found in them. Hence, these garbed or ungarbed *Bheshas* (postures of the body) are not beneficial.

## Jaimineeya-mat. (Followers of Jaimaneeya Faith)

There is one *Jaimineeya* school of faith which states as follows:- "No omniscient (all knowing Lord) is there, the *Veda-Vachanas* (the

wordings or aphorisms of Veda-scripture) are eternal; the right ascertainment of truth is possible from them. Hence, one should first observe the religious acts by following Veda path which is called *Nodana* (inspiration) and that alone is the emblem of a religion which one should practise. For example, they say “स्वः कामोऽग्निं यजेत्” i.e., one, who aspires heavenly abode ought to worship the fire.

Here we ask them - “The *Shaivas*, the *Samkhyas*, the *Naiyayikas*, etc., all believe the Vedas in which you too believe but in your and in their interpretation of *Tattoas* etc. mutual contradiction is found, what is the reason for this? If in the *Vedas* itself, somewhere something and somewhere something else is interpreted then how is its authenticity proved? And if the followers themselves interpret somewhere something and somewhere something else then first of all, you people, by discussing mutually yourselves decide who is real follower of Vedas and who is not? But to us it appears that in the Vedas itself, the interpretations given earlier are contradictory to those given later. That is why there have been different enunciators of different sects by having grasped its meaning differently according to their own wills. But how can such Vedas be proved authentic? And by worshipping fire, one attains the heavenly abode! So, how can the fire be believed to be better than the human being? This is evidently wrong. And how would it be the provider of heaven? In the same way, the other aphorisms of Vedas are against authentic knowledge. When Vedas advocate the existence of *Brahma* why then you not accept the existence of omniscient? Thus, the *Jaimineeya* sect is also to be known as imaginary.

### **The *Bauddha-mat* (Bauddha Faith)**

Now the differentia of *Bauddha-mat* (the Bauddha school of faith) is described:

In *Bauddha-mat* four *Arya Satyas*<sup>1</sup>. (Fundamental truths or principles) are stated :-

1. *Dukha* (sorrows or miseries)
2. *Aayatana* (senses and their objects, etc.)

---

1. दुःखमायतनं चैव ततः समुदयो मतः। मार्गश्चेत्यस्य च व्याख्या क्रमेण श्रूयतामतः ॥ 36 ॥  
वि.वि.

3. *Samudaya* (combination), and
4. *Marga* (path).

There, the bodily form of mundane beings is *Dukha* (sorrow). It is of five kinds<sup>1</sup>: *Vijnana*, *Vedana*, *Sanjna*, *Samskara*, *Roop*.

Knowing of *Roop* (colour) etc. is *Vijnana* (knowledge). The feeling of happiness and sorrow is *Vedana* (affliction); awakening from sleep is *Sanjna* (consciousness); memorising what was read is *Sanskara* (impression); formation of body is *roop*<sup>2</sup>. Describing the *Vijnana* (knowledge) etc. as sorrow is false. The sex-anger, etc. passions are sorrows, knowledge is not sorrow. It is evidently seen that someone has less knowledge but has more anger-greed, etc. passion, so he is unhappy; some other has more knowledge but has less or no sex-anger, etc. passions, so he is happy; hence, the *Vijnana* (knowledge) etc. are not the sorrows.

And *Aayatanas* are stated to be twelve :- Five senses and their five objects (the words etc.), the mind (*mana*) and *Dharmaayatana* (the abode of religion). What for are these *Aayatanas* described? When all are said to be momentary, what is then the purpose of all these?

And the combination of soul and passions (dispositions of soul) which produces further intense passions is called *Samudaya*. There the I-ness form is soul and mineness form is soul's disposition; but owing to believing everything momentary, there lie no purpose of describing these too.

And "all kinds of impressions (sanskaras) are momentary" holding such feeling is the *Marga* (path). But things are evidently seen existing for a longer duration. You may argue that same condition (of an object) does never exist, so we too believe this. The subtle modification is momentary, i.e., exists for a moment only. Further, they the Buddhists believe the complete destruction of the same substance, but this is not seen happening; how can we believe? And in all young, old age, etc. conditions of the body the existence of only one soul is realised (perceived); if the soul is not the same one then how do you believe the one doer of the former and posterior

1. दुःखं संसारिणः स्कन्धास्ते च पंचप्रकीर्तिताः। विज्ञानं वेदना संज्ञा संस्काररूपमेव च ॥ 37 ॥
2. रूपं पंचेन्द्रियाण्यर्थाः पंचविज्ञापिरेव च। तद्विज्ञानाश्रया रूपप्रसादाश्चक्षुरादयाः ॥ 7 ॥  
वेदानुभवः संज्ञा निमित्तोद् ग्रहणात्मिका। संस्कारस्कन्धश्चतुर्भ्योन्ये संस्कारास्त इमे त्रयः ॥ 15 ॥

conditions. If you will say - "This is due to impressions (sanskaras)". Then our question is - "whose are these *Sanskaras*?" He whose these *Sanskaras* (impressions) are, is perpetual or momentary? If perpetual, then how do you state everything momentary wholly? If momentary, how can then that *Sanskara* (impression) whose basis itself is momentary, keep its continuance? And if all is momentary, then you too are momentary. You have described the *Marga* (path) to be holding of the feeling of momentariness. But why do you tread on this path when you are not likely to get the fruit of this treading? And what for have the useless scriptures been created in your sect? The discourse is given for the purpose of gaining the fruit by doing some duty. Thus, the *Marga* (path) stated by you is false.

Further, they describe *Moksha* (final liberation) to be the destruction of attachment etc., knowledge and their off-shoots. But who attains liberation or beatitude when everything is momentary? We also believe in the uprooting of attachment, etc. passions; but on destruction of knowledge which is our own intrinsic nature, we would also get destroyed, how would then making effort for destruction of knowledge be beneficial? Ascertaining what is beneficial and what is not beneficial is the function of knowledge only; how would then the wise-person treat beneficial his own destruction?

And in Bauddha religion two kinds of *Pramanas* (valid knowledge) are described:- 1. *Pratyaksha* (direct knowledge) and 2. *Anumaana* (inferential knowledge). Their truth and falsehood can be ascertained by study of *Jaina* scriptures. And if these two only are the *Pramaanas* (valid knowledges) then their scriptures (*shastras*) would be proved to be unauthentic? For what purpose have those been written? The *Jivas* will themselves ascertain what is *Pratyaksha* (direct or clear-cut knowledge) and what is *Anumaana* (inferential knowledge). Why did then you compose the *Shastras* (scriptures)?

Further, they regard *Sugata* (Buddha) as god and establish his nature to be naked and in different poses. This is nothing but mockery. And the hall-mark of Bauddha-saint (Buddhists saints) is a water-pot in hand, red cloth on body and taking meal in forenoon, etc. So, what is the purpose of assuming such a posture when everything is momentary? But acceptance of such a posture and



imaginary description of *Tattavas* is done for establishing one's superiority.

The Buddhists are of four kinds:- 1. *Vaibhashika*, 2. *Sautrantika*, 3. *Yogachara* and 4. *Maadhyamika*.

The *Vaibhashikas* believe the substance with knowledge, the *Sautrantikas* believe in the existence of those things only which are directly visible, nothing beyond that. The *Yogacharas* believe in following a particular conduct and the *Maadhyamikas* believe in knowledge independent of any substance. Thus, these four groups have developed different types of imaginations about *Tattavas*; but on analysing their concepts are found to be baseless.

In this way, the *Bauddha* religion has been discussed.

### **The Charvaka Philosophy**

Now the differentia of *Charvaka* philosophy is described:- The Charvaka negates the existence of all these things - omniscient, religion, irreligion, liberation, the fruit of virtue and vice, birth after death and states that whatever is perceptible or can be seen and sensed by material senses that is the only world.

Here we ask him, 'Is omniscient not there in this present time and region or is he not present at all times and anywhere in the world?' We too believe that omniscient is not found in the present time and region but who did know this without omniscient that omniscient is not present anywhere and at any time? One who knows about all regions and all times is omniscient and if he does not know then how does he negate it?

Further, religion-irreligion are well-known in the world. If these were merely fancied then how would those have been very well-known to all persons? Moreover, religion-irreligion form of conduct is clearly seen, owing to which the *Jivas* feel happiness and sorrow even in the present time, why not to believe these? And the existence of *Moksha* (liberation) is also well-known by inference. The anger, etc. blemishes (impure dispositions) are found less in someone and are more in some others. This proves that there should be someone who should not have these blemishes at all. Similarly manifestation of knowledge, etc. appears to be less in someone and

more in some others. Therefore, it can be concluded that there should be someone who would have these (knowledge, etc.) in full measure. In this way, the state of *Moksha* is achieved by one who has uprooted all vices and evolved all qualities.

Moreover, we see the *Jivas* reaping the fruit of their virtues and vices. Someone remains pauper even besides his making the efforts; someone gets wealth on its own; someone remains diseased even besides taking due care of the body; someone enjoys good health without efforts, etc. - is seen clearly. So, there should be some reason of all these contradictory conditions? Whatever is the cause of these, the same is virtues and vices.

The existence after death i.e., rebirth also can be conjectured directly and by inference. The *Vyantaras* (peripatetic gods) etc. are seen stating, "I was so and so and I have now become a god". And if you say- "This is the *Pavan* (air) only but we call (believe) soul to be that substance in which "I am" etc. form of consciousness is found; you call same as *Pavan* (air). But *Pavan* (air) is obstructed by wall, etc; whereas soul, even besides its being enclosed by body, cannot be obstructed by any thing; therefore, how can it be treated as *Pavan* (air)?

Further, you say that the world is confined to that much only which is seen and sensed by material senses but you cannot know by senses even about the objects of regions which are a few miles distant only and about times a few years past and a few years hence. Yet, we have been hearing traditionally about far distant places and of immemorial times. This proves that you do not possess the capacity of knowing all, how do you then say that world is confined to what you know?

Further, in *Charvaka* sect it is said that by intermingling of earth (clay), water, fire, air, sky (space) the animate object gets created. But on death, the earth (material body) etc. are left here and the sentient substance departed and became a *Vyantara* (peripatetic god) etc.; thus these (earthen body and soul) are seen clearly separate-separate. And in a body the earth, etc. clearly appear to be separate-separate, the sentience appears to be one. If the sentience be based on earth, etc. then bones, blood, breath, etc. will be having

separate-separate sentience. And on cutting the hand, etc. the colour (pigment) etc. remains with it; similarly, the sentience will also remain there (which is not so). Further, egoism and intellect are found in a sentient object. When (on death) the earth, etc. constituents of body remained here itself, but in the *Vyantara* (peripatetic god) etc. state of existence the feeling of I-ness about the previous life is found, how does it happen so? And the *Vyantas* etc. disclose the secrets of last life; so with whom the knowing activity remained intact is the soul itself.

And in *Charvaka* sect unrestrained activities like eating, drinking, enjoying sensual pleasures, etc. have been advised but the world is found indulging in such unrestrained activities of its own. What benefit have you bestowed by writing such books and sermonising through them? You might say that the object of giving such sermons was to dissociate people from penances, chastity, continence, etc. but by following these acts the passions are reduced which result in reduction of perturbedness and misery. This, in reality, is happiness which also brings name and fame. What benefit do you propose to do by advising people to give up these? You are not afraid of harming the self as well as others by telling agreeable things to sensualist *Jivas*; you indulge in such false logic by becoming unrestrained for the sake of enjoying sensuous pleasures.

Thus, the *Charvaka* faith has been x-rayed (explained).

### **Concluding Remarks about Falsehood in Other Faiths**

Similarly, there are many other faiths (so-called religions) in which false logic has been adopted and which are propounded by wicked and passionate people. So, harm is caused to *Jivas* who believe in them. And the *Jina's* religion or *Jaina*-faith is the only interpreter of reality being discoursed by the omniscient passionless *God (Arihant-deva)*; only by having faith in it the *Jivas* are benefitted, i.e., they get real happiness.

In *Jinamat* i.e. in the religion discoursed by omniscient *Jina*, the *Jiva-Ajiva* etc. *Tattvas* (essential purposeful principles) are described. The *Pratyaksha* (direct knowledge) and *Paroksha* (indirect knowledge)- these two forms of *Pramana* (valid or authentic knowledge)

are stated. Completely passionless and omniscient is the Lord *Arihanta Deva*. Having no external and internal possessions or paraphernalia - such naked monk is the *Nirgrantha Guru* (preceptor). Detailed characteristics of these will be discussed later on in this book.

Here someone may say - "You have attachment-aversion feeling, that is why you establish your faith by negating other faiths."

Our answer to this is that "There is no attachment-aversion feeling in describing the right thing. If contrary exposition is done with some self-interest then it can be regarded as prompted by attachment-aversion feeling".

Then he says - "If you do not have any attachment-aversion feeling then how do you say that other faiths are false and only *Jaina*-faith is true? If you have feeling of equanimity then you ought to treat all as equal; why do you take side with your faith?"

Our answer is that "What is wrong we call it wrong, what is right" we call it right. How is attachment-aversion feeling involved in it? Moreover equanimity does not consist in treating both wrong and right as similar, this is rather insensibility.

He further says that the purpose of all faiths is one and the same; hence, one should know all as equal?

Our answer is that 'Why are there so many faiths (philosophies) if all have the same objective. In one specific faith discourse can be given in different ways from different angles but with one object only; who calls it a separate faith? But the objects of various faiths are different, the same is being explained here as under:-

### **Comparison of Jaina Faith with Other Faiths**

In *Jaina*-faith the sole purpose is of fostering passionless disposition (conduct) *Veetaraagbhava* only. Therefore, through mythological stories, description of universe, etc., code of conduct and essential principles or *Tattvas* etc., thus everywhere, only passionlessness (*Veetraagata*) has been fostered. But in other faiths the sole purpose is of fostering passionate dispositions (*Saraag Bhva*). Because imaginary exposition of substances, etc. is done only by passionate beings who foster only passions by putting forth various

tactics. For example, the followers of *Addvait Brahma* (monists) by believing all to be one *Brahma*, the followers of *Sankhya* by believing the self to be a purely non-doer by treating whole of the functioning to be the act of *Prakriti* (nature) and the followers of *Shiva* by believing the fulfillment of objectives by knowledge of *Tattvas* only, the followere of *Meemansaka* by believing religion in passional concuct, the followers of *Buddha* by believing everything momentary, the *Charvakas* by not believing in the continuance of life after death - all these foster the propensity of living unrestrained in the sensuous pleasures through indulgence in passional acts. Although at some places, they support the viewpoint of reducing passions also but under that pretext they foster some other kind of passions. They advise people to leave householder's state and engage in the invocation of God by quitting householder's state and foster their sensuous pleasures under the garb of God's characteristics to be *Saraagi*, i.e., full of passions, whereas in *Jaina* religion only *Veetaraagata* i.e., passionlessness and attachmentlessness alone is fostered by specifying the characteristics of the omniscient God, preceptor and religion to be *Veetaraaga* passionless, i.e., free from all sorts of passions, attachment-aversion feelings; so, this is an established fact.

Not only we say, even *Bhatrighari* - a non-*Jain* monk (poet) has described in context with renunciation as under :

एको रागिषु राजते प्रियतमादेहार्द्धधारी हरो,  
नीरागेषु जिनो विमुक्तललनासंगो न यस्मात्परः।  
दुर्वारस्मरबाणपन्नगविषव्यासक्तमुग्धो जनः,  
शेषः कामविडंबितो हि विषयान् भोक्तुं न मोक्तुं क्षमः ॥ 1 ॥

[Amongst passionate persons, *Shiva* is unique, sharing half his body with his beloved and again amongst the dispassionate, *Jina* the conqueror is unique who is totally unattached to the company of women and none is superior to him, while the rest of mankind smitten and stupefied by the irresistible, serpent-like poisoned arrows of cupid and being overpowered by intense feeling of sex can neither enjoy their desires nor renounce them at will.]

In this verse, amongst *Saraagis* (passionates) *Mahadeva* has been found to be supreme and amongst *Veetaraagis* (dispassionates)



*Jinadeva* is supreme. Moreover, there is contrariety in the *Saraaga Bhava* (passional dispositions). So, both are not praiseworthy but in these only one is beneficial and that is passionlessness (*Veetaraaga-Bhava*) only, by evolution of which, owing to immediate end of perturbedness one becomes adorable. Not only we but even people following other faiths agree that passionlessness is the basis of future happiness also. On the other hand, on evolution of *Saraaga Bhava* (passional dispositions) perturbedness is caused immediately; the person becomes censurable and future also becomes miserable. Therefore, the *Jaina*-faith wherein the purpose of *Veetaraaga-Bhava* (passionless conduct) alone is supported is only benedictory (beneficial). The other faiths wherein the purpose of *Saraaga-Bhava* (passional dispositions) are supported and fostered - such kinds of other non-*Jaina* faiths are harmful; how could these be treated as equal?

Further, they say that this is true but by criticizing other faiths, the followers of other faiths will feel afflicted, dissension will be caused, therefore, why should you criticize others?

Our answer is that if we criticize any body out of passion and hurt others feelings, then we are certainly sinners. But knowing that due to faith in other (non-*Jaina*) religions *Jivas'* belief in wrong *Tattvas* or wrong principles will be reinforced and because of that the *Jivas* will suffer miseries in the world, out of compassion, we have described the truth. What could we do if someone is hurt and dissension results without our fault? For example - by censuring use of wine the vintner feels unhappy, by condemning adultery the the whores, etc. become unhappy and by describing the method of differentiating between wrong and right things, the swindler gets hurt, what could then we do? Similarly, if due to the fear of sinners, the religious discourses are not given, how could then the benediction of *Jivas* be possible? There is no such discourse by virtue of which everybody will feel happy and if they create dissension then disharmony will result when we too partake in it; but we will not indulge in any quarrel; so, they will themselves become calm, we shall reap the fruit of our own thoughts and actions.

Further, if someone says that by erroneous faith in purposeful *Jiva* etc. *Tattvas* the wrong belief, etc. are caused; how would the wrong belief, etc. be caused by faith in other religions?

**Answer:** In other religions, by putting forth contrary, logic an effort is made to misguide *Jivas* about the real nature of *Jiva* etc. *Tattvas*; what for have they done so? When the true nature of *Jiva* etc. *Tattvas* is ascertained by someone then after the emergence of *Veetaraaga-Bhava* (passionless pure disposition) only, his superiority is established but the *Jivas* who are not *Veetaraagi* (passionless) and want to establish their superiority or greatness even besides having passional dispositions have interpreted the *Tattvas* contrarily through misconjectures for the sake of establishing superiority. They foster false faith of *Jiva-Ajiva* by describing an *Addvait Brahma* etc., *Asrava* (influx) *Samvara* (stoppage of influx) by supporting unrestrained conduct and *Moksha* (liberation) by stating *Moksha* to be like a passionate and inanimate state; that is why the falsehood of the other (non-Jaina) faiths is revealed. When one realises the falsehood of these then he may develop interest in the ascertainment and belief of real *Tattvas* and misconception may not be caused by their contrary logic.

Thus, the different (non-Jaina) faiths have been discussed here as above.

### **Establishment of Antiquity & Correctness of Jainism on the Basis of Extracts from the Scriptures of Other (non-Jaina) Faiths**

Now the correctness and antiquity of *Jaina* faith is shown (proved) on the basis of evidence from scriptures of other faiths (non-Jaina religions) :-

The *Bada Yoga vaasishtha* is equal to 36,000 verses (couplets). In its chapter on the negation of egotism under renunciation topic in the dialogue between *Vasishtha* and *Rama* it is described that:-

रामवाच — नाहं रामो न मे बांछा भावेषु च न मे मनः ।

शान्तिमास्थातुमिच्छामि स्वात्मन्येव जिनो यथा ॥ 1 ॥

Here in this verse *Lord Rama* has expressed his desire "Neither I am *Rama*, nor I have any desire, nor my mind is entangled in the thoughts and objects, rather I want to establish or attain peace in my own soul similar to the *Jina* (the conqueror omniscient Lord).

Here *Rama* has expressed his desire to become like a *Jina*; hence, the supremacy and the antiquity of *Jinadeva* is proved in comparison to *Lord Rama*.

And in *Dakshinamurty-Sahasranaama* it is said – “शिवोवाच – जैनमार्गरतो जैन जिन क्रोधो जितामयः।” Here Bhagwat’s name is described to be a Jain who is engrossed in the *Jaina*-path (*Jaina* way of life): This also proves the prominence and antiquity of *Jaina*-path.

And in the *Vaishampayna-Sahasranaama* it is said – “कालनेमिर्महावीरः शूरः शौरिजिनेवश्वरः।” Here the *Bhagwan*’s (God’s) name is said to be *Jineshwara*; so, *Jineshwara* (passionless omniscient) is the *Bhagwan* (the God).

And in the *Mahimni-Stotra* by *Durwasa-Rishi* (saint) it is said –

तत्तद्दर्शनमुख्यशक्तिरिती च त्वं ब्रह्माकर्मेश्वरी ।  
कर्त्तार्हन् पुरुषो हरिश्च सविता बुद्धः शिवस्त्वं गुरुः ॥ 1 ॥

Here “Thou art *Arhanta*” by these words God has been prayed. Therefore, it is accepted that *Arhanta* is God.

And in the “*Hanumannataka*” it is said –

“यं शैवाः समुपासते शिव इति ब्रह्मेति वेदान्तिनः ।  
बौद्धा बुद्ध इति प्रमाणपटवः कर्त्तैति नैयायिकाः ॥  
अर्हन्नित्यथ जैनशासनरतः कर्मेति मीमांसकाः ।  
सोऽयं वो विदधातु बाञ्छितफलं त्रैलोक्यनाथः प्रभु ॥ 1 ॥

-(3rd verse of *Hanumannataka*)

In this verse, in the six systems of Indian philosophics only one God is stated. Thus *Arahnta Deva*, i.e., *Jina* is also accepted as God.

Here someone may ask-“You (*Jaina*) should also believe in one God as stated in all the systems of philosophies?”

Our answer to him is - “This is your statement and not ours; hence, in your faith also *Arahanta Deva* is proved to be God. If we too describe in our faith as done by you then it would mean that we too accept *Shiva* etc. as God. For example, some trader shows real gems and some other shows counterfeit gems. Here if the man possessing counterfeit gems describes both types of gems as of the same (real) quality for selling his gems at the price of the real gems then how would the real gems seller agree to both gems being treated at par? Similarly, the *Jainas* describe the true *Deva* (God) etc. whereas the rest (non-*Jaina*) describe the false. There the believers of other (non-

*Jaina*) faith describe all faiths as equal for the sake of gaining their equal importance (dignity) but how can the Jainas agree to this?

Further, in *Rudrayaamal Tantra* in *Bhavaani Sahasranaam* it is said -

कुण्डासना जगद्धात्री, बुद्धमाता जिनेश्वरी ।  
जिनमाता जिनेन्द्रा च, शारदा हंसवाहिनी ॥ 1 ॥

Here in this verse the *Bhavaani's* names are stated as *Jineshwari* etc.; hence, the superiority of *Jina* is established.

And in the *Ganesh Puraana* it is stated so (HINDI) (*Jainam Pashupatam Sankhyam*).

And in *Vyaskrit Sutra* it is stated thus, “जैना एकस्मिन्नेव वस्तुनि उभयं प्ररूपयन्ति स्याद्वादिनः ।” (*Jainas Ekasminneva Vastuni Ubhayam Praroopayanti Syadvadinah*). Thus at many places in their scriptures, the description of Jain religion is found; hence, the antiquity of *Jaina*-faith is established.

And in the fifth chapter of *Bhagwat*, the description of *Rishaba* incarnation is found. There, He is described as benevolent, devoid of passions, etc., possessor of meditation posture and adorable by all. And they say that the king *Arhat* has followed the path shown by Him. So, as the other faiths are the followers of the reincarnations of *Rama-Krishna*, etc., similarly, the *Jaina*-faith is also the follower of *Rishabha* incarnation. Therefore, according to their belief too the *Jaina*-faith is established.

Here one must think this also that according to incarnations of *Krishna*, etc., the tradition of indulgence in passional acts is established, whereas according to the incarnation of *Rishabha* the tradition of passionless or attachmentless tranquillity is established. Here treating alike both the traditions, there will remain no distinction between the religious and irreligious practices and by accepting the specific difference between the two, one should follow the tradition which is beneficial.

Further, in *Dashaavatara Charitra*, “बद्धवापद्वासनं यो नयनयुगमिदं न्यस्य नासाग्रदेशे” etc., the differentia of *Buddhaavatara* is written identical to *Arahanta Deva*; so, if such sort of differentia (posture) is adorable then the *Arahanta Deva* is automatically established as adorable.

And in *Kaashi-Khanda* it is stated that on being sermonised the king *Deva Das* relinquished his kingdom.

It is, further, stated that the *Narayana* became the *Vinaya-Kirti*, *Yati* (monk), *Laxmi* became *Vinayashree Aaryika* (nun) and *Garuda* accepted the vows of *Shravaka* (house-holder's religion). So, wherever sermonizing was required there the *Jaina* vows and postures were adopted. This proves that the *Jaina*-path is beneficial and very old.

And in *Prabhasa Purana* it is stated that:-

भवस्य पश्चिमे भागे, वामनेन तपः कृतम् ।  
तेनैव तपसाकृष्टः शिवः प्रत्यक्षतां गतः ॥ 1 ॥  
पद्मासनमासीनः श्याममूर्तिर्दिगम्बरः ।  
नेमिनाथः शिवेत्येवं नाम चक्रे अस्य वामनः ॥ 2 ॥  
कलिकाले महाघोरे सर्वपापप्रणाशकः ।  
दर्शनात्स्पर्शनादेव कोटियज्ञफलप्रदः ॥ 3 ॥

Here *Vamana* is said to have got the *Darshana* (glimpse) of *Digamber God Neminath* in *Padmaasana* posture and He is described as *Shiva* also. And his adoration, *Darshana*, etc. is described to be resulting in the fruit equal to one crore *Yajnas* (oblations); so, such fruit of adoration of *Neminath* God the *Jainas* too advocate; therefore, *Jaina*-faith is proved to be authentic.

And in *Prabhasa-Puraana* is stated thus:-

“रैवताद्रौ जिनो नेमिर्युगादिर्विमलाचले ।  
ऋषीणामाश्रमादेव मुक्तिमार्गस्यकारणम् ॥”

Here *Lord Neminath* is called *Jina*, His abode is described as the hermitage of saints and the cause of liberation and the abode of *Yuga*, etc. is also stated to be alike; hence, He (*Neminath*) is proved to be supreme and adorable.

Further, in the *Nagar-Puraana* under *Bhavaavatara Rahasya* it is stated thus:-

अकारादिहकारान्तमूर्द्धाधोरेफसंयुतम् ।  
नादविन्दुकलाक्रान्तं चन्द्रमण्डलसन्निभम् ॥ 1 ॥



एतद्देवि परं तत्त्वं यो विजानाति तत्त्वतः ।  
संसारबंधनं छित्त्वा स गच्छेत्परमां गतिम् ॥ 2 ॥

Here the word *Arham* ( अर्ह ) is described to be the supreme *Tattova* (reality). And it is stated that by its knowledge one attains liberation. So, this word *Arham* ( अर्ह ) is taken from *Jaina*-faith.

Further, in *Nagar Purana* it is stated:-

दशभिर्भोजितैर्विप्रै यत्फलं जायते कृते ।  
मुनेरर्हत्सुभक्तस्य तत्फलं जायते कलौ ॥ 1 ॥

Here it is stated that the fruit which results by feeding ten *Brahmanas* in *Krit-yuga*, the same fruit results in offering food to one *Jaina* saint devout of *Arihanta* in *Kaliyuga*. This establishes the superiority of *Jaina* saint.

And in *Manu-smriti* it is written that:-

“ कुलादिबीजं सर्वेषां प्रथमो विमलवाहनः ।  
चक्षुष्मान् यशस्वी वाभिचन्द्रोअथ प्रसेनजित् ॥ 1 ॥  
मरुदेवी च नाभिश्च भरते कुल सत्तमाः ।  
अष्टमो मरुदेव्यां तु नाभेजति उरक्रमः ॥ 2 ॥  
दर्शयन् वर्त्म वीराणां सुरासुरनमस्कृतः ।  
नीतित्रितयकर्ता यो युगादौ प्रथमो जिनः ॥ 3 ॥”

Here *Vimalvaahana*, etc. *Manus* (personages) are described; so the same names of the *Kulkaras* are described in *Jaina*-mythology and here further the first *Jina* is described to have been the guide of the salvation-path in the beginning of the aeon and worshipped by the celestial gods and demons. This proves that the *Jaina*-faith is existing from the beginning of the aeon, and how is then the *Jaina*-faith not proved to be authentic ?

And in *Rigaveda* it is mentioned thus:-

“ओऽम् त्रैलोक्य प्रतिष्ठतान् चतुर्विंशतितीर्थकरान् ऋषभाद्यान् वर्द्धमानान्तान्  
सिद्धान् शरणं प्रपद्ये । ओऽम् पवित्र नग्नमुपविस्पृसामहे एषं नग्नं येषां जातं येषां वीरं  
सुवीरं ..... इत्यादि ।”

Here it is stated that I (the aspirant of liberation) take the refuge of 24 *Tirthankaras* from *Rishabha* etc. to *Vardhmana* - all liberated souls

who are worshipped by whole of the universe,.....etc. And in Yajurveda it is written so “ ओऽम् नमो अर्हतो ऋषभाय ” and in same Veda it is further stated so : “ ओऽम् ऋषमपवित्रं पुरुहूतमध्वजं यज्ञेषु नग्नं परमं माहसंस्तुतं वरं शत्रुं जयंतं पशुरिद्रमाहतिरिति स्वाहा । ओऽम् त्रातारमिंद्रं ऋषभं वदन्ति । अमृतारमिंद्रं हवे सुगतं सुपार्श्वमिंद्रं हवे शक्रमर्जितं तद्वर्द्धमानपुरुहूतमिंद्रमाहरिति स्वाहा । ओऽम् नग्नं सुधीरं दिग्वाससं ब्रह्मगर्भं सनातनं उपैमि वीरं पुरुषमर्हतमादित्यवर्णं तमसः परस्तात स्वाहा । ओऽम् स्वस्तिन् इन्द्रो वृद्धश्रवा स्वस्तिनः पूषा विश्ववेदाः स्वस्तिनस्ताक्षर्यो अरिष्टनेमि स्वस्तिनो वृहस्पतिर्दधातु । दीर्घायुस्त्वायुवलायुर्वा शुभाजातायु । ओऽम् रक्ष रक्ष अरिष्टनेमिः स्वाहा । वामदेव शान्त्यर्थ - मनुविधीयते सोऽस्माकं अरिष्टनेमिः स्वाहा । ” — यजुर्वेद अ. 25, म. 16, अष्ट 91, अ. 6 वर्ग 1 ।

So here whatever names of *Jaina Tiranthankaras* are spelled out above those are stated to be adorable. This proves that the Vedas were written after the incarnations of *Jaina-Tirthankaras*.

In this way, the superiority and antiquity of *Jaina-faith* is confirmed even by the evidence of the scripture of other (non-*Jaina*) faiths. Moreover, after studying *Jaina-religion* all the other faiths & religions appear to be imaginary. Therefore, one who is desirous of his own benefaction should accept the true *Jaina-religion* by giving up all sorts of preconceived notions.

Further, in other faiths there appear to be contradiction in what is stated earlier and thereafter. In the first *Avataara* (birth) the Vedas are said to be regenerated. In these violence (*hinsa*), etc. is supported in the *Yajnas* (religious ceremonies) and in *Buddhavataara* by censoring *Yajnas*, violence, etc. was prohibited. In *Vrishabhaavataara* the path of passionless continence is supported and in *Krishnaavataara* the path of enjoying others women, etc. sensual pleasures, etc. is advocated. Now the problem is which path this mudane being should accept? And according to whom he should mould his conduct? Further, they describe all these *Avataaras* as to be one and the same. Even if they be one, they at some place support one path and at other places reject the same path and are found to be indulging in contradictory conduct, then how can one believe their words and the mode of conduct preached by them?

Further, at some places they prohibit indulging in passionate acts like anger, etc., and objects of senses; at other places they preach fighting [combating] and enjoying the sensual pleasures; there they regard it as to be the result of destiny (*Praarabdha*). But if fighting or

combating, etc. be possible without indulgence in anger-passion, etc., then one can/may accept this argument; but it does not happen like this. And even on indulging in the acts of fighting or combating, etc. if anger, etc. passions are not believed to have generated then what else are anger-passion, etc., which have been prohibited? Hence, this conception is not possible, for there is contradiction in the earlier and latter expositions. In Geeta while supporting passionlessness (*Veetaraagata*) fighting is preached; this clearly appears to be contradictory. And they also describe the act of cursing by the great sages, etc., so on indulgence in such acts of anger, how is it not a contemptible act?

Further, they also say that “अपुत्रस्य गतिर्नास्ति” (‘The sonless persons do not get good rebirth’) and on the other hand in *Bharata* it is stated thus:-

”अनेकानि सहस्राणि कुमार ब्रह्मचारिणाम् ।  
दिवं गतानि राजेन्द्र अकृत्वा कुलसन्ततिम् ॥ 1 ॥”

Here the bachelor celibates are described to have achieved heaven, so this is contradictory. And in *Rishishwar-Bharat* it is written so:-

“मद्यमांसाशनं रात्रौ भोजन कन्दभक्षणम् ।  
ये कुर्वन्तिवृथास्तेषां तीर्थयात्रां जपस्तपः ॥ 1 ॥  
वृथा एकादशी प्रोक्ता वृथा जागरणं हरेः ।  
वृथा च पौष्करी यात्रा कृत्स्नं चान्द्रायणं वृथा ॥ 2 ॥  
चातुर्मास्ये तु सम्प्राप्ते रात्रिभोज्यं करोति यः ।  
तस्य शुद्धिर्न विद्येत् चान्द्रायणशतैरपि ॥ 3 ॥”

Here in these couplets drinking wine, etc., eating flesh etc., taking food in night: particularly taking food in night during four months of rainy season and eating tuber-roots (sweet-potatoes, onion, squills, etc.) are strictly prohibited and on the other hand, they support drinking wine, etc., and eating meat, etc. by the people of high status; further, they recommended taking food in night and eating tuber-roots, sweet-potatoes, etc. on vow days. Thus, they advocate contradictory things.

Similarly, many self-contradictory statements are found in the scriptures of other faiths (non-Jaina religions); so, what to do?

Keeping in view the old tradition somewhere they have supported good conduct for the sake of creating faith in people and at other places they have supported bad conduct for the sake of fostering passions, sensuous pleasures, etc., so how can their words be treated as authentic when such contradictions are found?

The words of other sects (non-Jaina faiths) which foster forbearance, chastity, contentment, etc., are found in Jaina-faith too and the contradictory statements found in their scriptures are imaginary. Due to faith in their words which are found in accordance with Jainism people start believing their contradictory words also. Therefore, one should not believe in the scriptures of other religions even if they contain some good aspect. As food mixed with poison is not wholesome, similarly one should be vigilant here also.

Further, if any aspect of good conduct is not found in Jaina-faith but is found in other faiths or some prohibited aspect of conduct is found supported in Jaina-faith and is not found in other (non-Jaina) religions, then one can respect the scriptures of other sects, but this never happens so, because nothing is hidden or unknown in the omniscient's knowledge. Therefore, by giving up belief of other religions, one must develop staunchly firm belief in Jaina-faith

### **An Analytical Study of Shwetamber Jaina Sect**

Due to bad times, lot of imaginary scriptures are written by the passionate *Jivas* in the garb of Jaina-faith also. The same is being discussed here:-

Someone, belonging to *Shwetaamber Jain* sect, composed the *Sutras* (aphorisms) but proclaimed them to have been written by *Ganadharas*\*. Our question to them is-"You maintain that *Aacharanga*, etc. *Shastras* (scriptures ethics, etc.) presently available in your sect are written by *Gandharas*. So, whether these were written in the same measure in which they are available or were written in greater measure?" If those were made in the same measure as are available with you then the extent or measure of the words (*Padas*) of *Aacharanga*, etc. in your *Shastras* is described to be eighteen thousand, so can you prove its authenticity?

---

\* The great Ascetics who possess four types of knowledges and translate & compile omniscient's revelation.

What is the measure of *Padas* (words)? If you will call the end of declension to be a *Pada* (word) then the word will become more than the aforesaid measure and if you say that the word itself is an authentic measure then there are more than fifty-one crore couplets of that one *Pada* only. So, in comparison to this measure, your scriptures are of very small measure. Therefore, this is not possible. Moreover, the measure of *Dasha-Vaikalika* etc. is described to be lesser than that of *Aacharanga*, etc., whereas in your sect these are found in greater measure, so how is it possible?

Further, you may say - "Originally the *Aacharanga*, etc. were more in measure but due to bad times, we have prepared these *Shastras* by taking out several *Sutras* (aphorisms) from them". But firstly the incomplete *Shastras* are not authentic. And also there is a rule that if a big book (*shastra*) is written then in that everything is described in detail and if a small book (*Shashtra*) is written then the same things are described there in short but the link is not disturbed and if only some description is extracted from any big book then the link is lost and the sequence of the description is broken. But in your aphorisms (books) the link even of the stories, etc., appears to be inter-connected and the discontinuity is not seen.

Moreover, the intellect of *Ganadharas* (chief ascetics) would definitely be more than that of other composers (writers); there should be more meaning in less words in the books written by them, but in the books of your sect, there is no profoundness even as is found in the works of other composers.

Further, whosoever writes the book, he does not mention his name in the style "so and so says", rather mentions "I say so", but in your *Sutras* "Hey Gautama !" and "Gautam says" - such words are written. But such style of addressing is possible only when someone else is the writer of that book. Therefore, these *Sutras* are not written by the *Ganadharas*, but some other persons have written them. You want to establish authenticity of your imaginary works (scriptures) by the name of *Ganadhara*, but the intelligent persons believe only after investigating; they do not believe in mere statements.

Further, they say thus also - "There have been some saints who according to *Ganadhara-Sutras* possessed the knowledge of ten *Purvas*; they have composed these *sutras*" Here we ask-"If new books were written then new names should have been kept? why



are the names of the *Angas*, etc. are kept? For example- someone pretends to prove his wealth by keeping the name on his residence of some big wealthy person. So, your effort seems to be like this. Had you been truthful you should have named your scriptures in the name of their real author, a practice followed in *Digamber-Shastras*. Why had the fallacy been created by keeping the name of *Angas*, etc. as written by *Ganadharas*? Hence, your *Sutras* (aphorisms) are not the words of *Ganadharas* or of the knowers of the *Purvas*. Further, for creating faith in these *Sutras* whatever description is in line with *Jina's* (omniscient's) religion, that is assuredly correct, the *Digambers* also describe in the same way.

And whatever imaginary compositions are made, in them there appears to be contradiction in the earlier and latter statements and are also found to be incompatible with direct knowledge; the same is being explained hereunder:-

### **Negation of Liberation by Other than *Digamber Jaina-path***

The *Shwetambers* believe that the other sectarians, the householders, the woman and the untouchable low caste persons (*Shoodras* etc.) can attain liberation directly by the same birth, but it is not possible. The unity of right belief knowledge and conduct constitutes the right path to liberation; but they - the *Shwetambers* describe the differentia of right belief as follows:-

“ अरहन्तो महादेवो जावज्जीवं सुसाहणो गुरुणो ।  
जिनपण्णत्तं तत्तं ए सम्मत्तं मए गहियं ॥ १ ॥ ”

So, how is the believing of *Arhanta-Deva*, true monk, preceptor and the *Tattvas* preached by the omniscient *Jina* possible in other sectarians? When even right belief is not possible how would then the direct liberation be possible?

If you will say that by having faith in the inner-self they attain right belief; so, when even praising of the perverse-path followers is described to be a transgression of right belief, then after attaining the right belief, how will one remain the follower of the perverse-path? After attainment of right belief, the right conduct gets generated on accepting the five great vows (*Mahavratas*); how would it be feasible in the follower of other (non-*Jains*) path? If right conduct is

possible even in the followers of perverse-path then *Digamber Jain*-path and the other paths both become equal. It is, therefore, wrong to say that attainment of liberation is possible by the followers of other (non-*Jaina*) paths?

### **The Negation of Liberation to Householders**

They, the *Shwetamberas* describe attainment of liberation even in householder's life; but right conduct is evolved only on giving up all sorts of sinful activities of injury, etc., then on giving up all sorts of sinful activities how is the householder's life possible? If you will say that "the internal renunciation has been achieved", but here in *Jaina*-path renunciation takes place through all the three (mind, body and speech) channels of activities, then how could renunciation be possible through body? Moreover, in *Shwetamberas* even on keeping the external paraphernalias (belongings and possessions) the *Mahavratas* (great vows of observing complete conduct) are possible; but in *Mahavratas* one takes the resolve of renouncing the external things only; without renunciation the great vows (*Mahavratas*) are not possible and without *Mahavratas* the sixth, etc. stages of spiritual development (*Gunasthana*) cannot be achieved, how would then the liberation (*Moksha*) be possible? It is, therefore, wrong to say that *Moksha* is also possible to householders.

### **Negation of Woman Attaining Liberation**

Further, they - the *Shwetamberas* describe direct liberation to woman also; but who cannot commit the sin resulting in the birth in seventh hell, how can she effectuate perfectly pure (passionless) disposition instrumental for attaining liberation? Because one who has firm determination only can effectuate sin or religion of the highest order. Moreover, it is not possible for a woman to meditate fearlessly in lonely place and to renunciate all paraphernalias, etc.

If you will contend - "Attaining of liberation in one unit of time by all the three sexes-male, female and neuter is described in the scriptures; therefore, we believe (direct) liberation to woman also". But here in this context, is he a *Bhava-Vedi* (psychically having the feeling of any of three (sex-passions) or is a *Dravya-Vedi* (physically having any of the three sexes)? If he is a *Bhava-Vedi* then we too believe so, and if he is a *Dravya-Vedi*, then in the world the male and female persons are seen many and the neuter persons are seen

rarely, then the question is that how are so many neuter persons possible attaining the *Moksha* (liberation) in one unit of time? Hence, the interpretation from *Dravya-Veda* (physical sex) point of view is not correct.

Further, you will say that the sex-passions are described to be persisting up to the ninth *Gunasthana*; but this statement is also from the *Bhava-Veda* (psychic-sex feeling) point of view. If the statement would have been from the *Dravya-Veda* (physical-sex) point of view then asserting the existence of sex-passion up to the end of fourteenth *Gunasthana* would also become possible.

Therefore, believing direct liberation to woman is false.

### **Negation of Liberation to *Shoodras***

Further, they - the *Shwetamberas* assert that the untouchable ignoble low caste persons (*Shoodras*) can also attain liberation; but how would the householders offer food, etc. to slaughterers, etc. respectfully? It is against the set public tradition. And the auspicious thoughts are not possible in the ignobles (low caste people). Moreover, the rise of low status determining *karma* is only up to the fifth *Gunasthana*; how would the liberation be attained without ascending the upper *Gunasthanas*? If you will say that after accepting the continence he is said to have attained the high status *karma*. If it be so then rise of low and high status determining *karma* would be governed by accepting continence or not accepting continence. But on believing so the incontinent men even *Tirthankaras*, *Kshatriyas* etc. (of noble high status family) could be found having the rise of low status determining *karma*. If you will believe them to be having the rise of high status *karma* due to birth in high status family then you should accept the rise of low status *karma* in ignoble (slaughterers), etc. due to birth in low status family. In your scriptures (*Sutras*) also the existence or rise of low status *karma* is accepted up to the fifth *Gunasthana* only; so, there will assuredly be contradiction in describing the imaginary things; hence, believing liberation to *Shoodras* (ignoble/slaughterers, etc.) is false.

Thus, they - the *Shwetamberas* have described the attainment of liberation by all human beings; so the purpose of such description is to appear to be benevolent in everyone's eyes and by giving

allurement of liberation to propound their imaginary faith. But on deep thinking all such description appears to be false (fabricated).

### **Refutation of Achheras (fancied peculiarities)**

And in their *Shastras* (*Shwetamberas* scriptures) the *Achheras*, i.e., some fancied peculiarities and acts are described. There they say—"These *Achheras* are created due to the instrumentality of *Hundaawasarpini* period, i.e., a peculiar aeon which comes after innumerable years of time; so these are not to be questioned". But though many uncommon things happen due to bad time, yet nothing happens contrary to nature. If things do happen even contrary to nature then blossoming of flowers in sky and possession of horns by donkey, etc. would also be possible, which is not possible. The *Achheras* that they describe are contrary to the nature i.e., against the nature's law. How is it contrary? Same is being discussed here:-

They describe that *Vardhaman Jina*, for some period remained in the womb of a *Brahmin* lady, then he grew in the womb of a *Kshatriya* lady. But keeping someone's foetus into someone else's womb is not possible; even it cannot be contemplated. And if they describe this to have taken place in case of a *Tirthankara*, then the auspicious ceremony of conception took place at someone's home and the auspicious birth ceremony took place at someone else's home. The shower of gems took place for a few days at someone's home and for a few days at someone else's home. The sixteen dreams were dreamt by someone else and the son's birth took place to someone else; and likewise other things appear to be impossible. Moreover, the mothers became two and the father remained the one *Brahman* only. During the auspicious birth ceremony, he was not honoured and some other imaginary father was honoured. Thus, stating two fathers of a *Tirthankara* appears to be totally contradictory. Even listening to such words about a personage possessed of the highest rank is not worthwhile.

Moreover, if all this is possible even in the case of a *Tirthankar* then everywhere the transferring of foetus from the womb of one lady to that of another lady would become possible. So, as the *Vaishnavas* describe in many ways the birth of son or daughter, similarly, it would become acceptable in *Jaina*-faith also. But when

in such bad times such events are not possible then how can it be thought of there in that era? Therefore, this statement is false.

Further, they describe the *Lord Mallinath Tirthankara* to be a girl. But sitting at one place and giving discourse by a lady in the congregation of the monks and celestial beings, etc. is not possible. Moreover, the woman state of existence is inferior, so it cannot be assumed in a personage who is possessed of the highest rank of *Tirthankara*. And the *Tirthankaras* (embodied omniscients) are always in the naked posture but adopting a naked posture by a woman is not possible. Thus on deep thinking, all such statements appear to be impossible.

Further, they describe the *Jivas* of land of enjoyment, living in *Harikshetra* to have taken birth in hell, but in *karmic bondage* theory the *Jivas* of the land of enjoyment are stated to acquire the bondage of celestial life and age *karma*; how did then they go to hell? In the doctrinal scripture descriptions are available even of events which happen in endless time. The existence of *Tirthankara-Prakriti (nama-karma)* is described to be up to the third hell but the bondage of *Narakaayu* and *Gati* (hellish age *karma* and hellish life) is not described to the *Jiva* of land of enjoyment. So, the omniscient does never commit an error, hence this is false.

Thus, all *Achheras*, i.e., fancied peculiarities, are assuredly impossible.

Further, they say- "Don't raise any question or doubt about these (peculiarities)." So the liar tells like this only.

And if you *Shwetaamberas* will say- "In *Digambara's* scripture too, it is stated that the birth of a daughter to a *Tirthankara* and dishonour of a *Chakravarti* (king of kings) etc. have taken place due to bad times; similarly, we also believe these *Achheras* (peculiarities) to have taken place. But these acts (viz. taking birth of a daughter to a *Tirthankara* and dishonour of a *Chakravarti*) are not contradictory to the law of nature, these were happening to the commoners, so same also could happen to the personages, that is why these are said to be due to bad times. (But) the acts of shifting the foetus from one lady's womb to another lady's womb, etc. are clearly contrary to the evidence and inference; how is happening of such acts possible?



They further make many statements which are also contrary to the law of nature. For example- they say that the heavenly gods of *Sarvartha Siddhi* raise questions through mind only and the omniscient Lord gives answers through mind only; but the object or question existing in the common *Jivas'* mind cannot be known without telepathy (*Manah Paryaya Jnana*), then how would the gods of *Sarvartha Siddhi* come to know the things situated in the mind of the omniscient? Moreover, the *Bhava Mana* (psychic mind) is absent in the omniscient and only the existence of *Dravya-Mana* (material mind) is found in material form; who did then reply there? Hence, this statement too is false.

In this way, many of their (*Shwetambras*) statements are contrary to valid knowledge; therefore, their scriptures are to be known as imaginary only.

### **Contrary Characteristics attributed to *Deva*, *Guru*, *Dharma* in *Shwetambra* sect**

Further, they (the believers of *Shwetambra* sect) describe the characteristics of *Deva* (the omniscient God) *Guru* (the Preceptor) and *Dharma* (the religion) totally false.

### **Attribution of Contrary Characteristics to Omniscient God**

They describe the hunger, etc. blemishes being found in the omniscient Lord, but this is false characteristic of *Deva*, because owing to the hunger, etc. blemishes the restlessness will be caused then how would the infinite bliss be possible? Further, if you will say that the hunger takes place in the body, the soul does not feel absorbed in it; then why do you say that the omniscient takes food, etc. for quenching hunger, etc.? One will take food only when he suffers from hunger, etc. Further, if you will say, as the movement of the omniscient is found due to the rise of *karmic* matter, similarly, the act of taking food is caused. But the movement is caused due to the rise of *Vihayogati Prakriti* and it is not meant for subsidence of any uneasiness feeling; moreover, movement is seen in some *Jiva* even without any desire. And taking of food is not due to the rise of any *Prakriti (Karma)*; rather one takes it only on suffering from hunger. Moreover, when the soul impels the air, etc. then only the

act of swallowing takes place; hence, taking of food is not similar to that of making movement.

You will say that taking of food is caused due to the rise of *Sata Vedaniya Karma* (pleasure-producing *Karmas*); but this too is not correct. If the *Jiva* is suffering from hunger, etc. and after taking food, etc. he feels happy, then his taking of food, etc. are described to have been caused due to the rise of *Sata Vedaniya*. If you say that taking of food, etc. happens automatically due to the rise of *Sata Vedaniya*, this is not correct. If this be correct then the rise of *Sata Vedaniya* is chiefly found in the heavenly gods (celestial beings), why then they do not take food continuously? Moreover, the great ascetics when observe complete fast, etc. then also the rise of *Sata Vedaniya* is possible to them and those who are found taking food continuously the rise of *Asata* is also possible to them.

Therefore, as without desire the movement is possible due to the rise of *Vihayogati Karma*, similarly, without any desire, the act of taking of food is not possible simply due to the rise of *Sata Vedaniya* only.

Again they say- "In the scriptures, the hunger, etc., eleven afflictions, are described occurring to omniscient *Jina*; so, the existence of hunger is possible to him. And without taking the food, etc., how would it get mitigated? We, therefore, believe the taking of food to be possible in the omniscient *Jina*."

**Answer:** The rise of *karmic Prakritis* is found with feeble and intense variation. There, in the omniscient *Jina*, due to extremely feeble rise of *karmas*, the manifestation of the act consequent on the rise of *karmas* is not found; therefore, mainly it is said to be non-existent; but minutely speaking, its existence is accepted. For example- in the ninth *Gunasthanaa* the rise of sex-passion is extremely feeble, the act of copulation is not present there; therefore, the complete celibacy is described there. But minutely speaking, the existence of sex-passion, etc. is accepted there. Similarly, the rise of *Asata Vedaniya* is extremely feeble in the case of omniscient *Jina*; because in each one *Kandakas*<sup>1</sup>, there exists infinitesimal parts and

1. *Kandaka*: The species of *karmas* which are due to rise every moment with certain fruition power and it contains infinitesimal parts and divisions.

divisions; so out of such types of many *Anubhaga-Kandakas* and *Guna Samkramanas* etc., the fruition (potency) of *Asata Vedaniya* in *Satta* (existence state) has become extremely feebled, so in the state of its rise, no such hunger gets manifested which may cause the body to become weak. And also owing to the absence of *Moha* (deluding *karma*) there is no affliction caused by hunger, etc., that is why there in the omniscient state, the hunger, etc. is described to be absent but minutely speaking, its existence is accepted.

Further, you say- "Without taking the food, etc. how would hunger subside?" But if the hunger requiring food for its mitigation be found in the omniscient *Jina* how can then the rise of hunger causing passion be treated as very feeble? Even in the state of feeble rise of *Asata karma* to the *Devas* (celestial beings) and the *Jivas* of *Bhoga-Bhumi* (enjoyment land) very little intake of food is found after a very long interval of time, whereas He- (the omniscient *Jina*) has got extremely feebled rise of *Asata karma*, therefore, the absence of taking of food is possible in the omniscient.

Further, he says that the constitution of the body of *Devas* (celestial beings) and *Jivas* of *Bhoga-Bhumi* (enjoyment land) is such that the feeling of hunger is very feeble and that too occurs after a long interval of time, whereas His (omniscient's) body is the *Audarika* (gross) body of the *Jivas* belonging to *Karma-Bhumi* (land of action); therefore, how does His body remain in the excellent form up to a period a little less than one crore *Purva*<sup>1</sup> without taking food?

**Answer:** Such a constitution of the bodies of *Devas* etc. too is due to the instrumentality of the rise of appropriate *karmas* only. Here on manifestation of omniscience, the rise of *karma* is of such type only due to which the body is transformed into such a state that no hunger is caused to it. As the hair, nails used to grow before the manifestation of omniscience, now they do not grow; the shadow of the body was cast (prior to attainment of omniscience) but now it is not cast; earlier *Nigoda* beings were found in the body but now they are not found. As the condition of the body has turned totally, accordingly, the condition (of the body) has also become such that even without food the body remains as it is. See the tangible proof

---

1. *Purva*- A measure of innumerable years period.

that when the other people are embraced by senility then their bodies become languid whereas His (omniscient's) body does not become languid till the end of *Ayu-karma*; therefore, the comparison between other people's bodies and the omniscient's body is not possible.

Further, if you will say that the *Devas'* food itself is of such type that hunger gets subsided for a very long time but by which thing did the omniscient's hunger get subsided and how body remained sturdy? Our answer is that the hunger got subsided due to very feeble rise of *Asata Vedaniya Karma* and every moment the best quality of gross body particles are sucked, so this is the *Nokarma-Ahar*, i.e., taking of food of particles which forms the excellent gross body; therefore, such kinds of *Varganas* (matter-particles) are sucked owing to which the hunger, etc. are not caused and the body does not get languid. In the scriptures (doctrines) the taking of food by the omniscient Lord is described from this viewpoint only.

Moreover, the cereals food is not the main cause of the sturdiness of the body. The tangible proof is that even if someone takes little quantity of food his body becomes sturdy, while someone takes large quantity of food and still his body remains weak. And people following the *yogic* exercises of respiration control, etc. do not take food for a longer period and yet their bodies remain sturdy; the monks possessed of supernatural powers observe complete fasts, etc., yet their bodies remain strong. The omniscient *Jina* is having the supremeness in all respects, what is the wonder if His body remains strong even without taking cereals food, etc.? Moreover, how would the omniscient *Jina* go for taking food? How would He beg?

And if He- the omniscient *Jina* goes to take food then how would the *Samavasarana* (*Jina's* auditorium or preaching *Arena*) remain vacant? Or if you will support bringing food by others then who will bring? Who will know of His mind? How would the oath of observing the fast, etc. taken earlier be sustained? How would He accept food where obstacle caused by living beings appears to be present all everywhere? Thus in many ways, the contrariety is quite obvious. Further, they say- "the omniscient *Jina* takes food but it is

not visible to any body". Further, they accept that taking of food is censurable act, therefore, they established its non-visibility as glory; but the contemptibility remained present in Him, even if others do not see it, so what? Thus in many ways, contrariety is established.

Further, there are many other things full of imprudence in their scriptures. They mention occurrence of motion to the omniscient *Jina* and say that diseases, etc. are found in Him and further say that someone threw *Tejo Leshya* (effect of electric body) on Him, due to which *Lord Vardhamaan Jina* suffered from the disease of dysentery (colic pain) and because of it He had frequent motions. If there be found the rise of such type of *karma* even to the *Tirthankara Kewali* (omniscient *Jina*) and no glory took place then how could reverence by *Indras*, etc. be treated as graceful? And how does He evacuate the bowels, where does He do it? None of these things are possible. Further, they establish the same type of activities in an omniscient which are found in the non-omniscient mundane beings having attachment, etc. passions.

They (the *Shwetamberas*) believe that *Lord Vardhamaan Jina* addressed *Gautam!* by name several times in His discourses. But in His natural divine speech (called *Divyadhvani*) which takes place in its usual time, the sermons are meant for all; how then addressing *Gautam* is possible? Further, they believe that the omniscient salutes others, but without affection salutation is not possible. Moreover, salutation is done to more meritorious person but none else was more meritorious than Him; so, how then this is possible?

Further, they say that His (omniscient *Vardhamana's*) *Samavasarana* (preaching-arena) alighted in the market place but how would the *Samavasarana* arranged by *Indra* be accommodated in the market place? How such a large arena be accommodated in the market? and why should he (the omniscient) stay in the market? Is *Indra* not capable of creating an organisation similar to a market place, because of which taking shelter in the market would be necessary?

They further say, that the omniscient Lord went to somebody's house for sermonising but sermonising by going to someone's house is possible due to excessive attachment feeling only and such a



feeling is not possible even in a monk, how could it then be imagined in the omniscient Lord? Several such contrarities are found in their scriptures. The omniscient Lord has, in fact, turned into an absolutely passionless and attachment-less state full of pure omniscience and omniperception; only some activity possible due to the rise of non-destructive types of *karmas* takes place in Him. But He is totally free from delusion and passions, etc., hence, such activities which might occur only by diversion of *Upayoga* (attention) are not possible in Him. The fruition of inauspicious *Prakritis* have become extremely feeble, such as is not found in any body else, therefore, the activity which is seen occurring due to the rise of inauspicious *Prakritis* in other *Jivas* is unimaginable in the omniscient Lord.

Thus, they describe the characteristics of omniscient God false by ascribing to Him such activities which are found in ordinary human beings.

### **Attribution of False Characteristics to the Monks**

And they describe the characteristics of preceptor monk contrarily. They mention the clothings, etc. fourteen types of appendages<sup>1</sup> (paraphernalias) permissible to a monk. We ask them- "You describe monk as a *Nirgrantha* (totally possessionless and occupationless saint) and at the time of adopting the monkhood one accepts the great vows by abandoning the nine kinds of all possessions (paraphernalias); so, whether these clothings, etc. are possessions or not? If those are possessions then why do they keep same after abandoning? And if those are not possessions then the clothings, etc. which are possessed by house-holders should also not be called possessions, only gold, etc. should be called possession.

Further, if you will say- "As they (the monks) take food for subsiding hunger, similarly they keep clothings, etc. for the purpose of protecting from cold, heat, etc." But while accepting the monkhood they have not given up taking of food but have relinquished possessions. Moreover, hoarding food, etc. is assuredly possession

---

1.Patra-1, Patrabandh-2, Patrakesarika-3, Patalikas-4, Rajasrana-6, Gochchhaka-7, Rajoharana-8, Mukha-vastrika-9, two cotton cloths-10,11, one woolen cloth-12, Matrak-13, Cholahatta-14 (See Vrihatk, shu. U.-3/3962-3965)

but going to take food is not possession. And hoarding as well as wearing the clothings, etc. is certainly possession all everywhere and is known such in the world.

Further, if you will say- "They (the monks) keep the clothings, etc. for the purpose of maintaining the body, there is no feeling of attachment or mineness, that is why these are not termed possessions." But in belief the moment one becomes a right believer, from the same moment the feeling of attachment or mineness in all kinds of non-self substances is finished; so from that point of view, you should accept the fourth *Gunasthana* itself as a state of possessionlessness. And if the attachment of mineness is not there in the conduct or proclivity then how do they (monks) keep them? Therefore, only when relinquishment of accepting and keeping clothings, etc. would take place then only one will become possessionless.

If you say- "If someone takes away his clothings, etc. then he (the monk) does not become angry and when he feels hungry then he does not sell them and by wearing cloths, etc. he does not become reckless, rather by developing unperturbed state of thoughts engages himself in religious activities, so there is no feeling of attachment or mineness." Though he may not be found to be angry outwardly, yet there will necessarily arise the feeling of dejection in the deprivation of those things, in the possession of which he has feeling of affection and agreeableness. If he does not have the feeling of agreeableness then what for does he beg these commodities? The reason why he does not sell any of these possessions or things is the avoidance of the feeling of inferiority caused due to keeping of money. But keeping of money, etc. is like keeping of cloths, etc. In the world the *Jivas* who long for possessions desire both types of possessions. Hence, keeping both types of possessions are alike from the point of view of fear of stealing by thieves, etc. And if keeping of possessions is allowable for the sake of maintaining unperturbed state of thoughts then some body would follow religious practices by maintaining unperturbedness of thoughts by putting on quilt when he feels severe cold. According to you, such a person should also be called possessionless? Thus, what difference would remain between the householder's religion and the monk's religion? The one who does not have the strength of enduring the

afflictions, he practises the religious activities by keeping the possessions, is called a householder, and on the other hand one whose thoughts are pure so that he does not become perturbed by afflictions, does not keep the possessions and practises the religious activities, is called a monk; this much only is the difference between the two.

Further, you may say- "How will He not become restless due to afflictions of cold, etc.?" But restlessness is caused owing to the instrumentality of rise of deluding *karma* (*Mohaniya*); and in the sixth, etc. *Gunasthanas* of the monk, there is no rise of the three categories of four kinds of passions, and of *Samjwalana* (the fourth category of four passions), the rise of the *Sarvaghati Spardhakas*, i.e., wholly destroying type of *karmic veil* is not found there, only the rise of *Deshaghati Spardhakas* i.e., partially destroying type of *karmic veil* is found there, but these are not powerful. For example- the rise of *Samyag-Mohaniya*, i.e., the mildest form of faith deluding *Darshan Moha Karma* is found to a *Vedaka Samyag-drishti* (a true believer having *Kshayopashamic* form of right belief); but it cannot destroy the right belief. Similarly, the rise of *Deshaghati Samjwalana* cannot perturb the thoughts (i. e., pure dispositions of a monk). Oh! there is no parity of thoughts between monks and ordinary persons. All others have the rise of *Sarvaghati Karmas*, whereas the monks have the rise of *Deshaghati Karmas*; therefore, the type of thoughts found in ordinary persons are never found in the monks. Those who have the rise of *Sarvaghati Kashayas* (intense passions) they remain in the state of householders only and those who have the rise of *Deshaghati-Kashyas* (mildest form of passions) accept the monk's religion; their thoughts are not perturbed by cold, etc.; therefore, they do not keep clothes, etc. possessions.

You might say- "In *Jaina*-scripture it is described that a monk can keep fourteen types of appendages (*Upakaranas*); but this is described in your *shastras* (scripture) only, it is nowhere described in *Digamber-Shastras* (scripture), rather there in the *Digamberas* even on keeping a lion cloth only the votary or observer of the eleventh *Pratima* (pledge) is called a *Shravaka*, i.e., one situated in the highest spiritual grade possible in the house-holder's life.

Now, ponder over here that out of these two whose words (interpretations) are fabulous? Primarily the fabulous compositions

are made by him who is overpowered by passions and the passionate person only pretends to hold an eminent status though he possesses low status. Here in *Digambers* it is not described that by keeping cloths, etc. the religion (or partial purity of thoughts) is not at all evolved but there in that condition *Shravaka-Dharma*- the householder's religion gets evolved; whereas in such status in *Shwetambers- Muni Dharma* the monks religion is said to have evolved. Therefore, he only is the passionate person who pretends to show eminence even on following the conduct of low order. Due to this fabulous statement, the people have started believing themselves as monks even on keeping the cloths, etc., so they have cherished the pride-passion and shown eminence (higher status) in the easy conduct to others; hence, many people got engaged in it. The fabulous sects, which have come up, have prospered this way only. Therefore, in your scriptures persons indulging in passions and keeping cloths, etc. are described as monks. So, this is proved to be contrary in the light of aforesaid logic. Therefore, let it be known that your statements are mere fabulous statements.

Further, you may say- "In *Digambers* too, the *shastra* (book) and *pinchhi* (soft brush of peacock-feathers), etc. are described as the appendages (*upakaranas*) of the monk; similarly, in our scriptures fourteen appendages are stated?"

**Answer:** That by which assistance is rendered is termed *Upakarana* (appendage). So here, if an appendage is allowed for mitigating the affliction caused by cold then all possessions and things would get the name of appendage (*upakarana*). But what is the purpose of keeping them in the practice of religion? Those things are the causes of sin only but in religion those appendages which assist the practice of religion are called the appendages (*upakaranas*). The *shastra* (scripture) is the cause of knowledge, the *pinchhi* of compassion and the *kamandal* (a wooden pot for keeping water) is the cause of cleanness, i.e., the cause of ablution after evacuation of bowels), so these things are helpful in the practice of religion. How would cloths, etc. be helpful in the practice of religion? These are possessed only for the sake of comfort of the body.

If a monk poses to be great by possessing *shastras*, sweeps by *Pinchhi*, drinks water, etc. from *Kamandal* or removes dirt, etc. of the

body, then the *shastras*, etc. also are the possessions only; but the (true) monk does not indulge in such acts. Therefore, the means or appendages which are helpful in the practice of religion are not called possessions; rather the means (objects) of enjoyment only are called the possessions.

Further, you may say- "The monks keep *kamandal* (water-pot) only for ablution after evacuation of bowels" But the monks do not keep the *kamandal* with such desire. Since they engage themselves in reading of *shastras*, if at that time their body remains in impure state then it would amount to disrespect of *shastras* and also will be censured by people; hence, for religious practice he keeps the water-pot (*kamandal*). With the same object keeping of *pinchhi* etc. appendages is desirable but regarding the cloths, etc. as to be the appendages is not possible.

To avoid external manifestation through the body of passions like sex-inclination, disliking, etc. which are caused due to rise of conduct-deluding *karma* and to avoid display of lack of forbearance of cold, etc., they keep cloths, etc. Also due to rise of pride-passion, they desire people to treat them adorable; therefore, they regard cloths, etc. as appendages by fabulous logic.

Further, they approve bringing of food from different houses by begging. Our question to them is - "Is begging (of food) a religious act or sinful practice? If it is the religious act then all beggars would become religious persons and if it is a sinful act then how is it possible by a monk?"

Again if you will say- "If he begs some wealth, etc. out of greed-passion then it is a sin, but for the sake of practising religion he wants to maintain the stability of body, therefore, he indulges in begging of food, etc.?"

**Answer:** Taking of food, etc. is not instrumental for religion, rather it is the cause of bodily happiness; hence, they beg for the sake of bodily happiness due to excessive greed-passion. Had excessive greed-passion not been there then for what purpose would he indulge in begging? Giving or not giving of food is the concern of the householders only. And the excessive greed itself is a sin, then



there remained no monk's religion; so, what other religion would he practise?

Now he says- "If the desire of taking food is existing in the mind and he does not beg then it is deceit-passion and in begging inferiority complex arises, so if he does not beg due to pride then it is pride-passion. The desire of food arose, so he begged it; how is this excessive greed? And how is monk's religion destroyed by this?

We say to him- "For example, some trader has feeble desire of earning, so he runs his shop and has also the desire of trading but he does not request any body to trade with him in the form of transaction of goods; if someone wants to trade with him according to his conditions then his greed-passion is feeble; the deceit and pride passions are not fostered by him. The deceit and pride passions will be there only when he assumes such appearance for deceiving and establishing his superiority. But a good trader does not possess any such objective; therefore, deceit-pride passions are not said to be nourished by him. Similarly, monk's desire of taking food, etc. is feeble. They come in the town for taking food and also have the desire of taking food, but they do not beg food. If someone offers food on his own then he on getting his conditions fulfilled takes food; there his greed-passion is feeble, deceit and pride passions are not found in him. The deceit and pride-passions will be there only when he assumes such disguise for deceiving and establishing his superiority; but no such purpose is found in the monks; therefore, deceit and pride passions are not found in them. If this is regarded to be deceit-pride passions then all those, who commit sins by mind only and do not indulge in sins by words and bodily acts, will be said to be possessing deceit-passion and those holding high status do not indulge in mean acts, they all will be said to be possessing pride-passion; such interpretation would be highly damaging.

And you said- "How begging of food is regarded as possession of extreme greed-passion?" But one wants to accomplish his desire by indulging in publicly censurable acts only when he is overpowered by intense passions. Moreover, begging is a publicly censurable act and if he adopts begging as a means of fulfilling his desire of food, then intense greed-passion is proved to be there.

Further, you asked- "How is monk's religion destroyed?" Because in monk's religion such intense passion is not imaginable. Moreover, someone may not be having the desire of offering food but he entered his house and begged food; there the householder felt embarrassment and offered food under the fear of public-censure, if food was not offered. But this amounted to hurting the inner feelings of the householder and so the monk is deemed to have committed injury (Hinsa). Had he (the *Shwetamber* monk) not entered his house and the householder himself would have offered food of his own, then he would have felt pleasure by offering food. But this act materialised under pressure. Moreover, for fulfilling one's own desire, if he (the monk) utters words of begging then it amounts to be a sinful act; therefore, this is proved to be an act of false utterance also. And he (the householder) was not willing to offer food but he begged food, then he (the householder) offered food unwillingly under pressure. Therefore, this also amounted to accepting without being offered. Further, in the householder's home, ladies were sitting unmindfully and this monk went in; so this amounted to be the breach of fencing of celibacy too. And after collecting food he kept it for some time and for keeping the food he possessed the receptacle (bowls) etc. so this amounted to keeping possessions. Thus, due to breach of five great vows (*Mahavratas*) the monk's religion is destroyed. Hence, collecting food by begging is not proper for a monk.

Further, he argues- "In the twenty-two afflictions which are to be endured by a monk, there is one *Yaachana-Parishaha* (begging-affliction); so how would the enduring of that affliction be possible without begging?"

**Answer:** Begging is not the begging affliction. Rather not-begging is the begging affliction. For example- the attitude of disliking is not the disliking affliction, but not having the feeling of disliking is disliking-affliction. If begging be treated as an affliction then the beggars, etc. indulge too much in begging, as such they will be called highly religious persons. And if you will say that because of reducing pride-passion this begging is termed as an affliction, then also one remains a sinner even on forsaking some kind of passion for the sake of cherishing some other kind of passionate act. For example- if someone due to greed-passion does not mind even

his being insulted then he is said to be possessing intense greed-passion and being insulted in this way also amounts to great sin. If one does not have any desire and someone else insulted him on his own accord then he (the endurer) is said to be highly religious. But in this case he (the *Shwetamber* monk) for the sake of greed of food gets insulted by begging the food; therefore, it is assuredly the sin and not a religious practice. Moreover, he begs for the sake of the cloths, etc. also, but putting on cloth, etc. is not at all any part of the religion, rather it is the cause of bodily pleasure; hence, this too is negated in the aforesaid manner. Let it be known that such practice of begging, etc. bring condemnation to the highly religious status of a monk and so it amounts to disgrace of religion. Likewise in many other ways, begging, etc. is not possible in monk's religion, but they (the *Shwetamberas*) regard the possessor of such sort of impossible acts to be a monk and preceptor. Thus, they describe the preceptor's characteristics contrarily.

### **False Description of the Nature of Religion**

Further, they describe the religion's characteristics contrarily. The oneness of the right belief, knowledge and conduct (these three) is the path of liberation, the same is the religion but they describe its characteristics contrarily. The same is explained hereunder:

In reality, belief in the real nature of substances (*Tattvas*) is right belief but they do not give due emphasis to this. They regard right belief to be the belief in *Arhanta* God, monk-preceptor, compassion religion as per their interpretation. But firstly they describe the nature of *Arhanta* God, etc. contrarily. So, how with this much faith only, would the right belief evolve without faith in the true nature of *Tattvas*? Therefore it is false.

Though, somewhere they describe faith in *Tattvas* to be the right belief, yet they do not emphasise the purpose involved in such belief of *Tattvas*. The nature of the spiritual stages and the quest places, etc. of the *Jivas* (soul), atom and molecules, etc. form of *Ajivas* (non-souls), the dispositions of vice and virtue (*Papa and Punya*), non-restraint (vowlessness) etc. form of infulxes (*Asravas*), observing of vows, etc. form of stoppage (*samvara*), observing of religious penances, etc. form of partial destruction of *karmas* (*Nirjara*) and of

*Moksha* (complete annihilation of *karmas*) through the differentiating characteristics of becoming *Siddha* (liberated state of soul) - knowing all these as described in their *shastras* (scriptures) and believing that the “revelation of the omniscient is authentic”- such belief of the *Tattvarthas* (essential principles) is stated by them (*Shwetamberos*) to be the attainment of right belief.

Here we ask them- “Is such sort of faith found to a *Dravya-lingi Muni*\* who gets birth in the *Graiveyaka* heavens or not? If it is found then why is he called a misbeliever? And if it is not found, although he has accepted the *Jaina*-monkhood with religious feeling and attitude, how has he then not got the conviction of *Arhanta* God, etc? He is also well versed in *shastras* (scriptural studies) then how has he not known the differentia of *Jivas* etc.? Moreover, he does not have the slightest regard in his inner-self about other sects; how then has he not got the conviction of the revelation of *Arhanta* God? Hence, he does possess such sort of faith but the right belief is not evolved in him. And the infernal beings, *Bhogabhumi* beings (*Jivas* of enjoyment land) and the beasts, etc. sub-human beings do not have the instrumental cause of attaining such sort of faith, nevertheless, they are found possessing the right belief for a very long period; therefore, although they are not found having such sort of faith, yet the right belief is possessed by them.

Therefore, what you say is not the characteristic mark of the right belief. The real characteristic mark of right belief will be described later on and the same be known from there.

Further, they say that *Samyag-Jnana* (right knowledge) consists in the study of their *shastras* (scriptures), but the *Dravya-Lingi Muni* is described to be possessing wrong knowledge even though he has studied many *shastras* whereas a vowless true believer’s knowledge of the objects of senses, etc. is described as the right knowledge.

Therefore, this is not the characteristic mark. The right nature will be described later on.

Further, they believe that *Samyak-charitra* (right conduct) consists in observing the householder’s and the monk’s religion (rites)

---

\* Naked possessionless *Divamber monk* who although has not attained the real right belief, practises 28 *Mulguna* (essential rites) without blemish.

in the form of *Anuvratas* (small vows) and *Mahavratas* (great vows) as described by them; but firstly the nature of the vows, etc. is described by them contrarily; this has been discussed earlier in the elucidation of the preceptor's characteristics. Secondly a *Dravyalingi-muni* even after observing the *Mahavratas* (great vows) is not found to be possessing the *Samyak-charitra* whereas according to their belief, the householders, etc. are said to have attained the right conduct even without accepting the *Mahavratas* etc.

This is, therefore, not the characteristic mark, the true nature is different, same will be described later on.

Here they say- "The aforesaid faith, etc. qualities have not evolved internally in *Dravyalingi-muni*, those are observed externally only; therefore, the right belief, etc. are not found?"

**Answer:** If these (faith, etc. qualities) are not evolved internally and are being observed only externally, then this means that he observes them deceitfully. But, if he is engrossed in deceit, how can he then go up to the Graiveyaka heaven? Rather he ought to go in hells, etc.? The bondage of *karmas* is the result of internal thoughts and dispositions, therefore, obtaining birth in Graiveyakas heaven is not possible without evolving internal thoughts and belief according to *Jaina* religion.

Further, they (the *Shwetamberos*) believe that the bondage of *karmas* resulting in heavenly life occurs due to the auspicious thoughts and dispositions in the form of observing vows, etc and the same cause is believed to be the liberation-path by them; but this is false because they believe the same cause to be instrumental for both bondage and liberation.

And in the conventional religion-path, many contrary practices are described. They say there is no sin in killing the calumniator, but the calumniators belonging to other (non-*Jaina*) faith were found in the time of *Tirthankaras* too; the *Lord Indra*, etc. did not kill the calumniators. And they adore the *Jina's* Idols by putting ornaments, etc; but the idol of *Jina* is installed for inculcating the passionlessness; but by adoring with ornaments finery, etc., the *Jina's* idol too become similar to the idols of other (non-*Jaina*) faiths. Likewise, many contrarieties are found in their scriptures.



Thus, the *Shwetambera* sect is to be known as a fabricated sect. Here in this sect, owing to misinterpretations of right belief, etc., the perverse faith, etc. only are fostered; hence, one should not have faith, etc. in it.

### **Analysis of *Dhoondhaka* Sect in *Shwetamberas***

Further, in *Shwetamberas* there is a sub-sect called *Dhoondhaka* and its followers as *Dhoondhiyas*. They proclaim themselves to be the true pious persons; so, this too is a fallacy as discussed here-under:-

Many persons by adopting the outward appearance of a saint (i.e., impersonators) are called saints, but they do not observe even the *Vratas* (vows), *Samitis* (carefulnesses), *Guptis* (control over mind, body and speech) etc. as described in their *Shastras*. Further they take oath of renouncing all sorts of sinful acts by mind, speech and body and also of not performing, nor getting performed, nor supporting such acts, but later on they do not follow and observe the same. They confer monk's initiation on boys of minor age, innocent people and even on *Shoodras* (low cast persons) etc. Thus, they adopt renunciation and while renouncing do not apply thought and mind as to "What is being renounced?"; later on they even do not follow the vows, etc. and still they are treated by all to be the saints.

Further, the *Dhoondhiyas* say- "They will attain spiritual benefit afterwards when religious feeling and attitude is evolved in them, but the preceptor initiated the vow even though he knew that the vow is likely to be broken and the vow-oath-taker after accepting the oath broke it; so, who is responsible for this sin? How did he ascertain that such a person will become the true follower afterwards? And if after accepting the vows of monk's religion one does not follow the same properly should he be believed to be a monk or not? If he is believed to be a monk then all those who are treated to be the monks but are corrupt should be revered as monks by you. If he is not believed to be a monk then all those cannot be treated (as monks) possessing monkhood. Moreover, with whatever conduct you believe one to be a monk, even the observance of the same is rarely found in someone: why then you regard all as monks?

Here someone may say- "We will regard as monks only those persons in whom we will find the proper conduct and will not pay

regard to others". There we ask him- "In a congregation there are many who appear to be monks; but the one to whom you regard monk possessing proper conduct, whether he himself regards others in the congregation as monks or not? If he regards them as monks then he is proved to be a greater misbeliever than yourself, how do you then believe him to be a venerable person? And if he does not regard others as monks then why do you treat him as a monk? Further, if he himself does not regard them as monks, why does he then indulge in the deceitful act of keeping such fellows in his congregation and inducing others to regard them as monks and thus make others misbelievers?

And the one to whom you will not regard as monk then you will advise other colleagues also not to regard him as monk, but due to this, there arises contrariety in the religious tradition. And the one to whom you regard as monk, with him also your relation will be like that of an opponent because he regards the other one as monk. And the one to whom you regard as the follower of proper conduct- you will find on thoughtful consideration that he too is not following the real religion of the monk. If someone says that they (the *Shwetambere* monks) are better than the other impersonators, so we pay regard to them. But in the other sects different kinds of impersonations are possible, because the negation of passions (attachment-feelings) is not found there. Whereas here in *Jaina*-faith one gets the title of a monk only if he follows into the correct path of a monk as described therein.

Here someone argues- "They observe chastity, continence, etc., undergo penances etc., hence to the extent they follow the path of a monk to that extent it is good?"

**Answer:** It is true that in whatever small measure religion is practised, it is good; but if someone takes the oath of high order of religious status and practises less then it amounts to great sin due to breaking of the oath. For example- if someone after taking the oath of observing fast takes food only once, then he is called a sinner even though he has restrained himself from taking food several times. Similarly, if someone having taken the oath of a monk's religion does not observe that religion even in a small measure then he is called a sinner in spite of his following chastity, continence, etc. And as

someone, by taking the oath of one time meal, takes the food once only, then he is assuredly a religious person. Similarly, if someone by accepting the householders status practises religion even in small measure as per his oath, then he is assuredly a religious person. Here sinfulness is possible in observing the conduct of lower status by keeping the name of higher status. But sinfulness is not caused in observing the religious practice by holding the name (or rank) to one's status of conduct; thus to the extent one follows religious practices to that extent it is good.

Someone further argues- "In the scripture it is stated that the existence of the four kinds of religious congregations will be found till the end of fifth era. Therefore, if these are not to be regarded as monks then who are to be regarded as such?"

**Answer:** In the present time the existence of swans is accepted but if in the approachable area the swans are not seen then the other birds cannot be treated to be the swans; only those birds in which the differentia of swan is found can be called swans. Similarly, in the present time the existence of monks is described but if in the approachable area the monks (with their definite characteristics) are not found then the other impersonators cannot be regarded as monks; only those in whom the definite characteristics of a monk are found are to be treated as monks. Moreover, their availability too is found in a limited area only, how to accept the existence of monks in the area farther away from such area? If monkhood is decided by the characteristics of a monk, then here also apply the same principle. And if somebody is to be regarded as a monk even though he does not possess the characteristics of a monk, then the impersonators found there (in those farther areas) should be treated as monks". Thus the contrariness is obvious. Hence your arguments are not correct.

Someone may say- "The monkhood of this type also is found in this fifth era." If it is so, then show the relevant scriptural proof. If you believe so without the scriptural proof, then you are a sinner. Thus in the light of all this logic, the monkhood, cannot be established in them and in the absence of monkhood, if they are regarded as monks and preceptors then it fosters wrong faith, because only by believing true monk (naked possession-less saint) as preceptor right faith can be evolved.

## **Negation of the Belief of not Becoming a *Jaina-Shravaka* following the *Pratimas* (Oaths)**

Further, they (the *Shwetamberos*) encourage contrary practices of *Shravaka-Dharma* (householder's religion). They regard such persons as observers of partial vows in whose life the sins of injury to mobile beings with two or more senses and indulgence in big lies etc. are found, by causing them to accept some meaningless renunciation; and he continues to indulge in such acts in which the injury to mobile beings with two or more senses is caused; but in *Deshavrata Gunasthana* (fifth stage of spiritual development) eleven non-abstinences are mentioned; so, how is the injury to mobile beings with two or more senses possible there? And the eleven kinds of *Pratimas* (oaths) are of the *Shravakas* (*Jaina-householders*), but in your sect no *Shravaka* is found observing the vows of the order of tenth and eleventh *Pratimas* and directly becomes monk.

When asked, they say- "The *Shravakas* observing the vows of *Pratimas* are not possible in this era". Behold! *Shravakas* religion is difficult and the monks' religion is easy" - such contradictory statements are given by them. And they advocate less belongings and possessions to a *Shravaka* of eleventh *Pratima* and more belongings and possessions to a monk, so this is impossible. Further, they say- "The *Shravakas* give up this *Pratima* after observing it for a short period". But, if this pious practice is excellent, then, why will a devout person leave the higher grade of conduct and if it is a low grade practice, then, why will he accept it? All this is not at all possible.

Further, they support that householder's religion is possible even by offering salutation, etc. to the false deities and preceptors, etc. They argue that they do not salute them with some religious attitude; it is merely a worldly formality. But in doctrines even the act of praising and invoking them is stated as the transgression of the right belief and here for pleasing the householders, they do not oppose such practice of salutation.

Further, if you will say- "We salute them because of fear, shamefulness, sport, etc"., then on the ground of these very reasons, you should also not regard sin even in their indulgence in the acts of

unchastity, etc.; only know them to be sin internally. Thus, contradiction will arise in all religious practices.

In this way, no prominence is given to forsaking of indulgence in the great sin like *Mithyatva* (false belief) and prominence is given to the sin of injury to air beings by denying the practice of speaking with uncovered mouth, so this is clearly a non-sequential discourse. Moreover, the aspects of religion are many; out of them, they emphasise only compassion towards other beings, but in this also they do not have any prudentiality. The prominence is not given to the practice of filtering of water, cleaning of food grains, etc., non-eating of impure things, non-indulgence in trading activities involving injury, etc.

### **Negation of *Mukha-Patti* (A Clothpiece for Covering Mouth)**

And they give importance to the acts of tying of a clothpiece over the mouth, using less amount of water in ablution but the organisms are created due to the contact of the spittle with the dirty clothpiece tied over the mouth; they are unmindful of these acts and lay stress on avoiding the injury to air beings, a lot of air is exhaled through the nose but they do not bother about it. And according to their scripture, if care is to be taken while speaking only, then why do they always keep it over the mouth? While speaking they should take care of it. If they say- "We forget, then the question is that when even this much is not remembered how will then other aspects of religion (rituals) be followed? And they advocate use of less amount of water in ablution, etc. but the necessary ablution is done by the monks also; hence, the householders should also do the ablution as per their status. Observing the act of *Samayika* (meditation) etc. without doing ablution after sexual intercourse, etc., sin is caused due to disrespect, madness, etc. Thus, the practices they stress, too, are not strictly followed. And they observe many of the aspects of compassion correctly, forsake eating of vegetables, etc., consume less amount of water; so, we do not negate them.

### **Refutation of the Negation of Idolatry**

And they (a group of *Sarvetambras*) refute *Pratima* (installation of omniscient's idol), *Chaityalaya* (temple of *Arhantadeva*, *Jina*) and



rituals of worshipping, etc. by holding onesided view of *Ahinsa* (non-injury). But in their own *shastras* (scriptures) description of *Pratima* (*Jins's* idol's worshipping) etc. is found; that aspect they hide with bigotry feeling. In their *Bhagwati-Sutra Shastra* there is found the description of a monk possessing supernatural powers; therein it is written that he went to *Merugiri* (mount Meru) and offered salutation to *Jina's* idols (तत्थ चेययाई वंदई). The meaning of this is that there he makes obeisance to the *Chaityas* and the word *Chaitya* is popular in the sense of *Pratima* (*Jina's* idol). And they obstinately hold that the word *Chaitya* is used to denote knowledge, etc., so, it has a different meaning, its meaning is not the *Pratima*. Our question is - "By repeatedly going to the land of *Merugiri* and continent *Nandishwara* he offered obeisance to the *Chaitya*, but how is the meaning of offering obeisance to knowledge, etc. possible there? The obeisance to knowledge, etc. is possible everywhere. The offering of obeisance to the particular adorable *Chaitya* is possible there only where it is found and nowhere else found. So, such possible meaning could be *Pratima* (*Jina's* idol) only, because main meaning of the word *Chitya* is *Pratima* only which is famous. By this meaning only, the name as *Chaityalaya* (*Jina's* temple) is possible, why to hide it by showing obstinacy?

Moreover, adoration by heavenly gods by going to *Nandishwara* continent, etc. has been described in their scripture at several places. And the description of naturally existing *Pratimas* (Idols of *Jina*) in the universe are found in the scripture, so, such uncreated existence is found from beginningless time. That uncreated (self-existing) formation is not for the purpose of sensuous pleasures, etc. and there in the abodes of heavenly gods, *Indras*, etc. the purposeless formation is not possible. What do *Indras*, etc. do to see it? To see the purposeless formation in their temples, either they might be becoming apathetic with it and feeling unhappy but this is not possible; or by seeing such attractive formation they might be fostering the objects of senses but it is not possible that by seeing the *Arhanta's* idol the true believers would foster their objects of senses. Therefore, the only possibility is that they do their adoration, etc. only there.

In their scripture there is a story of *Suryaabha Deva*; there the ritual of worshipping *Pratimaji* (*Jina's* Idol) is specifically described.

For concealing it they say- "*Devas* ' duty is of such type only". So, this is true but there is always found some fruit of the duty or activity (that one does). So, what is its result - religion or sin i.e., virtue or vice. If religion is its result then it would mean that elsewhere there used to be sin and here the result is religion; so, how could this be treated similar to others? This is befitting act. If sin is its result, but he recited the hymn of *Namotthunam*. Why did he then recite the hymn of salutation which is the place of sin?

And one thought arose here is this that in the recitation of the hymn *Namotthunam* there is invocation of *Arhantadeva*; so they recited this hymn before the *Jina's* idol; hence the act of *Arhantas'* adoration done before the *Jina's* Idol is logical.

They further say- "Such act is possible for *Devas* (celestial beings) only and not for human beings because in making idol, etc., injury is caused by human beings." But in their own *shastras* there is such description that Queen *Draupadi* started worshipping the *Jina's* idol as was done by *Suryaabhadeva*; hence, such act is also the duty of human beings.

Another idea arose here that if the tradition of making *Chaityalayas* (*Jina's* temples) and *Pratimas* (*Jina's* idols) was not prevalent, then, how did *Draupadi* queen worship the *Jina's* idol? And if the tradition was prevalent then were the makers of the temples, etc. religious persons or sinners? If they were religious persons then such act of worshipping, etc. is commendable for householders and if they were sinners, why did then they make these things when there was no purpose of enjoying the sensual pleasures? And *Draupadi* recited the hymn of *Namotthunam* there and performed the worship, etc.; was this done for mere fun or religion? If this was done for mere fun, then she was a great sinner. How could there be sportive act in the religion? And if she did this as a religious practice, then others also ought to worship and adore *Jina's* idol.

Further, they put up such false logic- "As by installation of *Indra's* idol, our purpose from *Indra* is not served, similarly by installation of *Arhanta Jina's* idol, our purpose is not served. If the *Arhanta* God does good of some person by considering him as his devotee then what you say can be accepted, but He is totally passionless. The devotee

himself obtains the auspicious fruit by his thoughts and dispositions of devotion. For example, if someone, by seeing the idol of woman made from wood or stone, develops affection by becoming lustful then he will have the bondage of inauspicious *karmas*; similarly, if someone, by seeing the idol of *Jina* made from metal or stone, develops the feeling of devotion by religious attitude, then, why will he not have the bondage of auspicious *karmas*? There they say- "We will develop auspicious thoughts by devotional feelings towards *Arhanta* God even without His idol." Our logic is-"The type of thoughts which arise by seeing the form (idol) do not arise by remembering indirectly (the *Arhanta* God). This is why the lovers of woman make the portrait of woman in this world also; therefore, by taking the recourse to *Jina's* idol, special types of auspicious thoughts and dispositions are generated due to specific devotional feelings.

Further, someone argues- "One may see the idol but what is the purpose in worshipping it?"

**Answer:** For example, if someone after making the effigy of some *Jiva* destroys it, then he commits the type of sin similar to that of killing that *Jiva* and if someone after making the effigy of some *Jiva* spoils it with the feeling of aversion, then he gets the fruit of the type similar to that of actually harming that *Jiva*. In the same way, if someone by making the idol of *Arhanta* God worships it with religious devotion and regard, then in him rises the auspicious thought as similar to that of worshipping the real *Arhanta* God and he gets the same type of fruit; under the feelings of intense devotion and regard one worships the idol of *Arhanta* God due to non-availability of *Darshan* (seeing) of actual omniscient Lord *Arhanta Deva*. This devotional regard results in the bondage of auspicious *karmas* of very high order.

Further, they put up such illogical argument- "It is a mockery of a person to offer him those articles which he has relinquished, therefore, worshipping *Arhanta Deva* by offering sandal, etc. before His idol is inappropriate.

**Answer:** While accepting the monkhood (homeless ascetic life) all kinds of possessions and occupations were renounced (by the *Shravaka*), and after attainment of omniscience Lord *Indra* created

*Samavasarana* (omniscient's preaching arena), *Chhatra* (umbrella) and *Chamvar* (flapper) etc. for adoring *Tirthankara Deva*. Was this a mockery or adoration? If this was a mockery, then the *Indra* committed great sin. But this is not possible. If by all this he adored Lord *Arhanta Deva* then in the worshipping of the idol of *Arhanta Deva* the devotee does the adoration only. And mockery lies in offering to a non-omniscient person the things which he has already forsaken because it may result in upsetting him; but no fault lies in putting before the omniscient or His idol the best faultless articles with devotional feeling. Upsetting is not caused to them. Rather due to religious devotion the devotee is benefitted.

They further say- "The injury (*Hinsa*) is caused in making the idol, in constructing the temple (*chaityalaya*) etc., in doing the worship, etc. whereas the religion is *Ahinsa* (non-injury); therefore, great sin is caused in believing religion by committing *Hinsa* (injury); we, therefore, forbid, these rituals."

**Answer:** There is a statement found in their own *shastras*:-

सुच्चा जाणइ कल्लणं, सुच्चा जाणइ पावणं ।

उभयं पि जाणए सुच्चा जं सेय तं समायर ॥ 1 ॥

Here it is said that an aspirant should know these three things- i) the benediction or virtue, ii) the vice and iii) the mixed or both virtue and vice. So, the mixed disposition is possible by mixing (togetherness) of both virtue and vice, hence occurrence of such kind of act (mixed-disposition) is also established there. Here we ask- "the mixed-disposition is definitely worse than the virtue or benediction alone but is the mixed disposition worse or better than the vice alone? If it is worse, then in this (mixed-disposition) some part of the virtue (religion) is also mixed, how can it be stated worse than the vice (sin) alone? If it is better, then indulging in such mixed acts by leaving only vicious and sinful acts is advisable. Logically also this seems to be correct. No recluse (votary) gets the temple, etc. constructed, rather practices *Samayika* (vow of equanimity) etc. injuriless activities, then by leaving these activities it is not desirable for him to install the idol, etc. and perform worship, etc. But as someone builds house for his own residence, then in comparison to this constructing temple (*chaityalaya*) etc. is not inferior act. Injury

is caused there but in the case of building of house there is increase in greed-passion, which is inauspicious attachment, whereas in the case of building of the temple auspicious attachment is evolved in place of greed-passion. And the activities of worship etc. are in no way inferior to the activities of trading, etc. In trading etc., a lot of injury, etc. is involved, greed, etc. increases, all activities are full of sin only, whereas in worshipping etc. some injury is involved, greed, etc. decreases and the religious devotion increases.

In this way, those who are not recluse (votaries) and spend their wealth in sinful acts are advised to build the *Chaityalaya* etc. And those who cannot engross their *Upayoga* (active consciousness) in the injuriless acts like *Samayika* etc. are not restricted to perform worship, etc.

You may further argue- "Why shall we not keep engaged ourselves in injuriless *Samayika* etc. acts only? Why should we engage ourselves in acts like worship, etc. instead of religious (injuriless) activities like *Samayika* etc.?"

**Answer:** If injuriless religious state could be achieved by giving up sinful acts committed through body only then one should do so only, but injuriless state is evolved on relinquishment of sins from thoughts and dispositions. Hence, whose thoughts do not get engrossed in *Samayika* etc. without recourse to other objects he tries to engross his *Upayoga* (active consciousness) in worshipping, etc. There one's *Upayoga* gets concentrated by taking recourse to different means. If one does not engross his *Upayoga* there (in worshipping acts) then his *Upayoga* will wander in impious acts which will be harmful. Hence, it is proper to engage oneself in such acts (like worshipping, etc.).

And you say- "Great sin is caused by indulging in *Hinsa* (injury) for the sake of religion and less sin is caused by indulging in *Hinsa* elsewhere, i.e., in occupations, etc." But firstly this is not the doctrinal statement and does not seem logical too; because by believing so the Lord *Indra* who performs *Abhisheka* (bathing ceremony of babe *Tirthankara*) by large quantity of water in *Janma-Kalyanaka* (auspicious birth ceremony of babe *Tirthankara*) and *devas* (heavenly gods) who indulge in many activities like pouring of flowers in



*Samavasarana* and waving the whisk (over the head of *Jina*) etc. acts will prove to be the great sinner.

If you will say- "Their demeanour is of such type only," but the activity always bears its fruit. If it is a sin then *Indras* etc. being right believers, why shall they indulge in such act and if it is a pious act then why do you forbid it?

Here we ask you- "The kings, etc. went to offer obeisance and invocation to *Tirthankar*, even they go to far off places for the obeisance of monks, they move on the road for listening to discourses, so injury is involved in the way; food is offered to the co-religionists, necessary rituals (cremation and consecration, etc.) are performed on death of a monk. When a householder becomes monk, celebration takes place. All these practices are seen even today; so in all these acts injury is involved, but these acts are meant for the purpose of religion, no other purpose is there. If great sin is caused here in these acts, then you should negate all such acts done in the past. And now also those householders who perform such acts should relinquish them. And if these are religious acts, then, why do you confuse people by propagating that injury involved in religious acts is a great sin?

Therefore, it is proper to believe that if by spending some money, lot of money can be earned, then it is worthwhile; similarly, if some injury, etc. sin is involved in such activities which lead to the evolution of high degree of religious thoughts and dispositions then such acts are worthwhile. If a greedy, person spoils his work by not spending even a small amount of money, then he is a fool. Similarly, due to fear of some injury, great pious acts are forsaken, then he is assuredly a sinner. And if someone, by sacrificing more money, earns some money or does not earn at all, then he is a fool. In the same way, if someone, by indulging in highly injurious acts, creates lot of sins and engrosses himself somewhat in invocation, etc. religious activities, or does not engross at all, then he is assuredly a sinner. And as someone earns wealth without any sacrifice and afterwards unnecessarily spends money, then he is a fool. Similarly, if one's *Upayoga* remains engaged in religious activities involving no injury, then it is not desirable to engage one's *Upayoga* in the religious activities where injury is involved.

Thus by considering the state of one's thoughts and dispositions, one should engage himself in those acts which are beneficial to him; but one-sided view is not efficacious. Moreover, *Ahinsa* (non-injury) alone is not the only part of religion; the main part of religion lies in lessening of the attachment, etc. passions. Hence, one should engage himself in such acts which result in lessening of attachment, etc. passions in one's thoughts and dispositions.

Further, they (the *Shwetamberas*) encourage the householders to practise chiefly the conventional conduct of *Samayika* (equanimity), *Pratikramana* (repentance), *Proshadha* (fasting) etc. even without adopting the means of *Anuvratas* (small vows of non-killing etc.). But *Samayika* lies in the evolution of the state of equanimity devoid of attachment-aversion; it does not consist in merely reciting the hymns or in standing and sitting postures of the body.

You may, further, say- "This is better than other impious acts". This is true but in *Samayika* he takes a vow of not indulging nor causing others to indulge in any activity involving injury through mind, speech and body, but various undesirable thoughts continue arising in the mind and sometimes undesirable actions take place through speech and body also; there the vow is broken. So, instead of breaking the vow, it is better not to take the vow, because breaking the vow is a big sin.

Further we ask- "Someone does not take a vow even and recites the hymn in his own language and keeps engaged his *Upayoga* in it by knowing its meaning. And someone other takes a vow but does not observe it judiciously and reads the religious text in *Prakrit* (or in Sanskrit) language, etc. but he does not know its meaning. So, without knowing its meaning, his *Upayoga* does not remain fixed there, then the *Upayoga* wanders elsewhere. Who is more religious person in-between these two? If you say that the first one is more religious, then, why, do not preach accordingly? And if you say that the other fellow is more religious, then this could be justified only because of reading hymns but religiosity is not established according to his thoughts, but rather sin is proved due to breach of vow.

Therefore, one should indulge in activities which keep his *Upayoga* pure. That vow which can be followed should be taken.

One should read such religious texts which he can understand. There is no benefit in keeping the name by tradition only.

And *Pratikramana* consists in repenting and not repeating the fault committed in the past, but simply by expressing “मिच्छामि दुष्कृतं” *Michchhaami Dukkadam*, i.e., (“May my wrong deeds be condoned”) the vicious deeds are not nullified; only on evolution of (pure) thoughts capable of making the vicious deeds false, the vicious deeds are falsified; hence, reciting alone is not efficacious.

Further, in the text of *Pratikramana* there is a statement that- “Whatever inappropriateness in the observance of twelve vows, etc. might have been caused be nullified”. But without taking the vow, how is it possible to do *Pratikramana* of them? One who has not observed the fast if he tends to nullify the faults which are deemed to have occurred in the observance of fast then this is mere impossibility. Hence, how can such reading of text be meaningful?

Further, in *Proshadha*\* too, they do not observe properly the vow taken as they do in *Samayika*. Therefore, the aforesaid fault arises. Moreover, *Proshadha* is the name of *Parva*, i.e., an auspicious day but he indulges in sinful activities even on the day of *Parva* for many hours and afterwards he takes the vow of *Proshadha*. There is no harm in keeping engaged in pious activities for as long a time as is possible. But taking the vow of *Proshadha* and not following it properly is not justifiable. The *Proshadha* consists in keeping oneself totally devoid of injury throughout the *Parva* day. If observing the fast even for a few hours could be called *Proshadha* then call *Samayika* also as *Proshadha*, otherwise show scriptural proof that so much is the time of the small *Proshadha*. In all these there appears to be the purpose of keeping people confused under the pretention of real great *Proshadha*.

And the text of taking vow (*Akhadi*) is read by someone and some other takes the vow. But in the text of vow the statement is- “I forsake”, therefore, the one who forsakes, he only should read the text. If he is unable to read the text, then he should speak in the spoken language itself but this custom is for the sake of following the tradition.

\* Thus is concluded the fifth chapter throwing light about different religions and sects in the *Moksha Marg Prakashak Shastra*.

Further, (in *Shwetamberas*) great stress is laid on taking vows and inducing others to take vows but there is languidness in following (the vows) appropriately and there is no prudentiality of keeping one's thoughts pure (passionless). By observing the fasts etc. in painful state of mind and with greed, etc., he believes that religion (passionlessness) is evolved but the fruit is obtained according to one's thoughts and passions.

In this way, they talk of many fabricated things which are not possible in the Jaina-religion.

This is the *Shwetambera* sect found in *Jainas*; that also describes the characteristics of *Deva* (omniscient Lord), *Tattvas* (*Jiva* etc. essential principles) and the path to liberation, etc. contrarily. Hence, it is a nourisher of wrong faith, etc. So, it is worth giving up. The nature of the true *Jina-dharma* will be described later on, one should follow the right path to liberation as shown therein. By treading over the right path of liberation, one will attain the spiritual benediction.

[ Thus is concluded the 5th chapter throwing light about different religions and sects in the *Moksha Marg Prakashak Shastra*. ]



## CHAPTER 6

### REFUTATION OF FALSE DEITY, PRECEPTOR-RELIGION

दोहा — “मिथ्या देवादिक भजें, हो है मिथ्याभाव ।  
तज तिनकों साँचे भजो, यह हित-हेत उपाव ॥”

**Meaning:** Instincts like false belief, etc. are found in mundane being from beginningless time and the cause of their reinforcement is the adoration of false deity, false preceptor and false religion. Stepping in the path of liberation is possible only on their abdication. Therefore, the same are being discussed hereunder:

#### Characteristics of False Deities & Denial of Faith in them

Adoration of those who are not benefactors of the self but are fallaciously treated as benefactors are false deities.

The adoration of false deities is done with three types of purposes: Some adore them with the purpose of attaining *Moksha* (liberation), some for gaining benefit in the next birth and some others for temporal gains in this birth. But no purpose is served, rather some specific harm is caused, that is why their adoration is a fallacy. The same is being explained here:

Many people adore those deities for the purpose of attaining liberation whose adoration is advocated in other (non-*Jaina*) sects as instrumental for liberation, but liberation is not achieved. Their description has already been done in the previous chapter about different non-*Jaina* faiths. And many people adore the deities described in other sects (non-*Jaina* religions) with the purpose of gaining happiness and avoiding 'miseries in the next birth. But fulfillment of this purpose is possible only by engaging in virtuous deeds and avoiding vicious deeds. But they indulge in vicious deeds



and say that the Almighty will do good to us. But this is injustice, because it has not been possible that the Almighty would punish someone and would not punish some others for their vicious deeds; one would obtain the fruits according to his inner instincts. God is not the doer of any body's good or bad.

In the process of adoring such *Devas* (deities) they kill other *Jivas* and foster their sensual pleasures by eating, dancing, etc. in the name of *Devas*. But one cannot escape from suffering the consequences of vicious instincts. Everybody regards *Hinsa* (injury), and passional acts as sin and the consequence of sinful acts (*Papa*) is believed by all to be harmful and in the adoration of false deities there lies the involvement in injury and passional acts only. Therefore, by adoration of false deities no benefit is obtainable in the next birth.

### **Characteristics of Peripatetic *Devas* And Denial of their Worship**

Many people adore false deities (gods & goddesses) with different purposes of ending the misery and obtaining happiness such as killing of foes, etc., eradicating diseases, etc., obtaining wealth and son, etc. related to this present life (*pariyaya*) only. They worship *Hanumana*, goddesses, *Gangaur*, *Sanjhi*, *Chauth*, *Sheetala*, *Dahari*, etc., ghost, goblin, ancestors, peripatetic celestial beings, etc., sun, moon, Saturn, etc. stellar gods, *Peer* (a *Mohammedan* saint), *Paigambera* (prophet) etc., cow, horse, and other animals, fire, water, etc. and weapons (sword) etc. What to describe more, they worship even the pieces of stones, etc. for fulfillment of the aforesaid purposes.

So, this type of adoration of false deities, etc. is done only due to wrong belief, because firstly many of those whose adoration is done are only imaginary gods (deities), how would, therefore, their adoration be purposeful? And many amongst them are the peripatetic gods (*Vyantaras Devas*); they are not capable of doing good or bad to others. If they would be capable (of doing good or bad) then they only would become the doers (of good or bad), but nothing is seen happening by their acts, they cannot give wealth, etc. by becoming cheerful nor can they do harm to anyone by becoming envious.

Here someone says- "They (the peripatetic *Devas*) are seen causing pain and misery and if respected they refrain from causing pain?"

**Answer :** When he (the misbeliever) suffers from the rise of inauspicious *karmas* then they (the *Vyantaras*) too are found having sportive mood of this type only, due to which they indulge in sportive actions and because of their such acts the person becomes miserable. And if out of fun they utter something and this fellow does not act accordingly then they stop teasing him and finding him weak continue making fun. If he has the rise of *Punya* (auspicious *karmas*) then they cannot do anything.

It is also seen, that some persons do not worship them and rather criticize them or they (the *Vyantaras*) also have aversion with him but they (the *Vyantaras*) cannot harm him. They are also found saying that the particular person does not pay regard to us, still we cannot do anything. Therefore, the peripatetic *devas*, etc. are not capable of doing anything, rather happiness-unhappiness is caused due to his own *Punya-Papa* (virtu and vice) *karmas* only; on the contrary by regarding and worshipping them, miseries are intensified, no purpose is accomplished.

Further, it should be known that whatever glory and miracles are found associated with imaginary deities, these all are creations of peripatetic *devas*. Someone was his devotee in the previous birth, after death he became a *Vyantara* (peripatetic *Deva*). In that state owing to some reason such conjecture developed due to which he (*Vyantara*) creates some miracle for inducing people to worship that *Deva* or false deity. The worldly ignorant people indulge in his worship by seeing some miracle (uncommon happening). As we listen and see the miracles associated with *Jina-Pratimas* (Idols), but these are not the acts of *Jina*, rather these are created by some *Jaina-Vyantaras*. Similarly, whatever miracle is found associated with false deities is the creation of their devotees *Vyantaras*, etc.

Further, in the other sects it is stated that the God helped the devotees and gave *Darshan* (sight) directly by appearing before them. But most of these statements are imaginary. Many such acts are performed by their devotee *Vyantara Devas* which are stated to

have been performed by God. If those acts are done by God then the God is omniscient, is capable in all respects; why would He allow the devotees to suffer from miseries. Even today we see that the low caste people inflict afflictions to devotees, destroy religion and break idols. If God is unaware of these acts then He no longer remains an omniscient. Even after knowing if He does not help the devotee then the kindness towards devotees is lost and He is proved powerless. And if He remains only a witness then the earlier statement that He helped devotees in the past is false; because His tendency is equanimous.

Further, if you will say- "The devotion is not of high order;" but in any case the devotee is better than the low caste persons and after all his own idol, etc. was installed, at least He should have not allowed its destruction. And if the low caste wicked people become powerful, so is this an act of God or not? If it is an act of God then what happened to His kind-heartedness towards devotees, because He makes the calumniators happy and produces trouble creators for the devotees? And if it is not an act of God, then the God is proved to be powerless. Therefore, it is not the act of God. Some devotee *Vyantara* only shows the miracle- you should ascertain like this only.

Someone asks here - "Some *Vyantara* narrates his power, tells the imperceivable things, narrates his inferiority by telling his dirty place of habitation, does not reply to our questions, makes confusing statements, causes others to act contrarily, inflicts misery, etc.-- how these astonishing things happen?"

**Answer:** In different *Vyantar*s comparatively more and less power is found, but those who show their inferiority by telling about their dirty place of habitation, etc. do so out of fun. The *Vyantar*s continue indulging in sportive actions like children. As a child for the sake of making fun shows himself inferior, teases and abuses others, cries loudly and afterwards starts laughing. Similarly, the *Vyantar*s also indulge in all such actions. If they are inhabitants of dirty places then when they come into good (clean) places, who brings them there? If they come themselves then having such power why do they live in dirty places? Therefore, their residence where they take birth which is under and above this earth is lovely and attractive. For the

sake of fun, they utter whatever they like. If they have any suffering then how do they start laughing immediately after weeping?

It is true that the *Mantras* (incantations) have unlimited (and unimaginable) power. Some true *Mantra* possesses such instrumental cause and effect relationship that due to it the *Vyantara* is not able to move from a place and also becomes somewhat miserable. If some powerful *Mantra* checks him then he remains stationary or remains stuck up of his own accord; so all this is the power of *Mantra* but burning, etc. is not possible. The knower of *Mantras* (incantator) says that he has burnt the *Vyantara* but the *Vyantara* appears again because it is not possible to burn the *Vaikriyaka* (transformable) body.

The range of clairvoyance knowledge found in some of the *Vyantaras* (peripatetic *Devas*) is of knowing the things of less area and time and in some ones it is more. There, if they have desire to reply and have knowledge of the question asked then they reply to our question related with unknown objects. If they possess less knowledge then they reply after asking from other *Vyantara* possessing more knowledge. It should be known that if they possess less knowledge and have no desire to reply then they do not reply to our question. After taking birth the *Vyantaras* possessing less (clairvoyance) knowledge can know about the events of their previous life for some period only, then afterwards only the remembrance of those events remains. Therefore, if the desire arises then they indulge in various activities and tell about the previous life; but when someone asks something different then, their clairvoyance knowledge being limited, how can then they tell without knowing? The question that they cannot reply and have no desire to reply they do not reply either due to pride or sportive instinct or sometimes tell lies.

The *devas* (celestial beings) possess such power that they can change or turn their own as well as other *Jivas* body and material things according to their desire; therefore, they transform themselves into different shapes and sizes, etc. and indulge in various peculiar activities. They create diseases, etc. in other *Jiva's* body.

It should be remembered that they can turn or transform their own body and other material things to the extent of their power. Therefore, they do not possess the power of doing all kind of acts.

They can change or turn the body, etc. of other *Jivas*, only according to the rise of *Punya-Papa karmas* of that *Jiva*. If that *Jiva* is having the rise of *Punya* (auspicious *karma*) then the *Vyantara Devas* cannot make his body diseased, etc. and if he is having the rise of *Papa* (inauspicious *karma*) then *Vyantara-Deva* cannot do his desired work.

Thus, one should know the power of the *Vyantara devas*, etc.

Someone may ask here- "What is wrong in believing and worshipping those who possess so much power?"

**Answer :** When one is having the rise of *Papa-karma* the *Vyantar*as, etc. cannot cause or bestow happiness and when there is rise of *Punya-karma* they cannot cause misery. Moreover by worshipping them, no bondage of auspicious *karmas* takes place, on the other hand due to increase in attachment passions, etc., only the bondage of inauspicious *karmas* is caused; hence paying regard and worshipping them is not beneficial; rather it is harmful. And the *Vyantar*as' motive in inducing others to believe and worship them is only to make fun and no other specific purpose is there. The one who believes and worships them, with him only they continue making fun. Those who do not believe and worship them, to them they do not say anything. If at all they have any purpose then they should cause more pain and misery to those who do not believe and worship them; but those who have firm determination of not believing and worshipping them, to them they are not seen telling anything. And the purpose would lie only, if they have the suffering of hunger, etc., but such suffering is not found in them. If such suffering be there why do they not accept sweets - oblation which are offered to them? And why do they encourage the followers to serve food, etc. to others only? So, they have simply the objective of fun. If anyone becomes a party to their activity of fun, etc., then he would become miserable and feel inferiority; hence, it is not worthwhile to believe and worship them.

Further, someone asks that the *Vyantar*as say so- "Offer *Pinda-daan* (oblation of cooked rice to the manes in Gaya, etc. then we shall get released and will never come again." What is all this?

**Answer:** The *Jivas* normally carry the impressions and experiences of their previous birth to the next birth. The *Vyantar*as



also by remembrance, etc. possess the specific impressions of their previous birth; therefore, because the *Vyantaras* might be having in their previous birth the conjecture that by doing *Pinda-Daan*, etc. in *Gayà*, etc, one gets better rebirth; that is why they induce people to do such acts. If the *Muslims*, etc. become *Vyantaras* after death, they do not say so, rather they narrate their experiences and impressions of the past life only; hence, if the state of mind of all *Vyantaras* be of uniform type then all will pray in the same manner but it is not so. Therefore, one should know the real characteristics of the *Vyantaras* etc.

Further, sun, moon, planets, etc. are the stellar kinds of celestial beings (*Jyotishi Devas*), some people worship them, that also is a fallacy. Some worship sun, etc. by believing it as the part of God; there in the sun lies the only speciality of excessive light, however gems like diamonds etc. also possess light. No other speciality seems to be there in the sun for treating it to be part of God. And people worship moon, etc. for the sake of acquiring wealth, etc., but if wealth could be obtained by worshipping them then all the paupers should worship; therefore, this is a false notion. And some people worship them with the view of astrology during the advent of bad planets, etc. and give donations, etc. for the same purpose. As the deers, etc. make movement of their own and they are treated to be the indicator of pre-intimation of likely future happiness and sorrow respectively on their crossing from right and left sides, but they are not at all capable of giving pleasure and pain; similarly, the planets, etc. make movement of their own and are treated as pre-indicators of the knowledge of likely future pleasure or pain on rise of appropriate association of *karmas* in *Jivas*, but they, the planets, are not at all capable of giving pleasure or pain. Some people, who worship them, do not get the desired objective fulfilled and some others, who do not worship them, get their desired objective fulfilled. Therefore, worshipping them is not worthwhile and is a fallacy.

Here someone says- "Giving donations is a pious act; therefore, it is good?"

**Answer :** Donating with the objective of religion is a pious act (*Punya*); but in the aforesaid cases donation and worship take place

due to fear of misery and greed of pleasures; hence, it is assuredly vice (*Papa*). Likewise, in many ways, they worship the *Jyotishi Devas* - stellar kinds of celestial goods, which too is a fallacy.

Further, goddesses, *Devees* and *Daharees*, etc. are found there; many of them are *Vyantarees* (peripatetic goddesses and *Jyotishinees* (stellar goddesses). People worship them with contrary belief of their characteristics. Several of them are imaginary goddesses, yet people worship them on the basis of their imaginary characteristics.

Thus, worshipping *Vyantara* gods-goddesses, etc. is forbidden.

### **Denial of Worshipping *Kshetrapal, Padmavati* etc.**

Someone may say here that no fault lies in worshipping the *Kshetrapal, Dahari, Padmavati*, etc. goddesses *Yaksha-Yakshini* etc. because all of them follow *Jainism*?

**Answer :** In *Jina's* religion worshipability is acquired by accepting and following the continence (vows), etc. but continence is not at all found in *Devas* (celestial beings). And people worship these by believing them as true believers; but in *Bhavanatrikas* (residential, peripatetic and stellars – 3 kinds of celestial beings) there is no prominence of possessing right belief. If people worship these *Devas* presuming them to possess right belief then why not to worship the gods of *Sarvartha Siddhi* heaven and *Laukantika Devas* (of fifth heaven) who certainly possess right belief? You may further say- “These *Kshetrapal Padmavati* etc. are excessively engrossed in *Jina's* adoration”. But *Saudharma Indra* also indulges in *Jina's* adoration excessively and also possesses true belief; why then to worship these (*Kshetrapal, Padmavati*, etc.) by ignoring him? Further, if you will say- “As the king has chamberlains as attendants so also the *Tirthankaras* have *Kshetrapalas*, etc. as attendants.” But in *Samavasarana* (preaching arena of omniscient Lord) these *Kshetrapalas*, etc. have no status; hence all such belief is false. Moreover, as the chamberlains help the visitors in meeting the king, similarly, these (*Kshetrapalas*, etc.) do not have any role in arranging meeting with the *Tirthankaras*. In the case of *Tirthankara* whosoever has the desire to worship he can have His *Darshan* (Sighting). There is no question of dependence on any one.

And see the height of ignorance ! Those who have fearful form possessed with sword, spear, etc. arms, are being worshipped by singing and dancing. It is a pity that even in *Jainism* the fearful form has become worshipable. So, this too became similar to other non-*Jaina* faiths. Belief in such contrary practices is possible in *Jaina's* religion only under the influence of the rise of intense delusion.

In this way, worshipping of *Kshetrapalas* etc. also is not worthwhile.

Further, animals like cows, snakes, etc. are clearly found to be inferior to human beings, they are to be disparaged, their culpable condition is clearly seen. And trees, fire, water, etc. are the immobile (one-sensed) beings, those are clearly found inferior than the animals. And weapons, inkpot, etc. are inanimate objects; those things clearly appear to be destitute of all sorts of power; in no way worshipability can be thought in them. Therefore, worshipping of all these things is a gerat fallacy. Nothing seems to be achievable directly or indirectly by worshipping all these things. Therefore, it is useless to worship them.

Therefore, from all angles, believing and worshipping of all kinds of false deities-gods and goddesses, is forbidden.

Behold ! the power of false belief. In public life it is considered censurable and below dignity to bow to persons lower in status than ourselves; whereas under the influence of delusion censurability is not felt even in worshipping the pieces of stone. And in public life people are found serving and attending on only those persons from whom they expect their purpose being fulfilled. But due to fallacious belief- "how will my purpose be accomplished by worshipping the false deities" -without such thinking, the people worship the false deities. And while adoring the false deities, thousands of impediments occur but one does not pay attention to them and if due to the rise of auspicious *karmas* the desired objective is fulfilled then he says and believes that this achievement is the result of adoring false deities. Moreover, if some objective is fulfilled without their adoration, he does not pay any attention to it but if something undesirable takes place then he says that this undesirable has happened because of not worshipping the false deities. He does not think even this much

that if benefitting and harming anybody be in the hands of these false deities then those who worship them would achieve the desirable and those who do not worship will achieve the undesirable; but this does not seem to be happening so. For example, even the sons of those persons who adores' excessively are found to be dieing while in the case of others', sons, etc. are found living without such adoration.

Therefore, believing and adoring of *Sheetals* (an imaginary goddess) is not at all purposeful.

In the same way, believing and adoring of all other kinds of false deities (gods-goddesses) is not at all useful.

Here someone may say- "Let it not be useful but by believing and adoring them no harm is caused?"

**Answer :** If there be no harm then why would we forbid? But firstly due to fostering of false belief the right path of liberation becomes remote and inaccessible; this is a big harm and secondly, owing to the bondage of inauspicious *karmas* (*Papa*), miseries are caused in future; this is another harm.

Further, someone asks that- "The false belief, etc. dispositions are caused by belief in false *Tattoas* and the bondage of inauspicious *karmas* takes place by indulging in evil deeds (vicious acts). Therefore, how would false belief, etc. and the bondage of inauspicious *karmas* be caused by believing in them?"

**Answer :** Firstly, it is a fallacy to believe other objects, to be agreeable and non-agreeable, because no substance is friend or foe of any body, and whatever agreeable non-agreeable substances are found associated with this *Jiva* are caused by the rise of auspicious - inauspicious *karmas* (*Punya-Papa*) respectively; therefore, one should act in a manner by which bondage of auspicious *karmas* occur and the bondage of inauspicious *karmas* do not occur. One may not have conviction even of the rise of one's own *karmas* and may make effort of getting and avoiding the association of external causes of agreeable and disagreeable objects; but by believing and adoring the false deities, the instinct of considering objects agreeable-non-agreeable is not removed, it rather gets intensified. Due to that even the bondage of *Punya* (auspicious *karmas*) is not caused

and instead bondage of *Papa* (inauspicious-*karmas*) takes place. Moreover, false deities are not seen giving or snatching from someone the wealth, etc., therefore, they are not even the external causes. Why then are they adored? When one is extremely puzzled and is in utter confusion, where even a trace of belief and knowledge about *Jiva* etc. essential *Tattvas*, (principles) is not found and attachment-aversion feelings exist in vehement state, then those things which are not the cause are believed to be the causes of agreeable and non-agreeable conditions. Then (in such state of mind) one starts believing and adoring the false deities.

Thus, under such intense false belief, etc. the path of liberation becomes extremely difficult to attain.

### **Characteristics of False Preceptor and Denial of Faith in them**

Those *Jivas* who are found indulging in irreligious activities of satisfying sensual pleasures and believe themselves to be religious persons under the influence of pride passion, induce others to offer salutation, etc. to them by believing them religious persons or, by practising some part of religious ritual, wish to be called highly religious persons, force others to observe all the manners befitting to a big religious person; in this way, under the shelter of religion they persuade others to believe them as superior persons, all such persons are to be known as false preceptors, because in religious tradition after relinquishment of sensual pleasures and passions, one should adopt such status which is in conformity with the actual stage of religion.

### **Negation of Preceptorship from Caste or Family Point of View**

There are many people who believe themselves to be preceptors by inheritance, caste and tradition. Among them are *Brahmanas*, etc. who maintain that because our caste is high, so we are preceptors of all. But the greatness of caste lies in practising religion (virtuous conduct) in life. If someone born in high caste indulges in disgraceful conduct then how can he be treated high? If birth in high caste be the criteria of high status then even people eating meat, etc. would have to be treated as high. But this is not maintainable. In the



book *Bharata* also many (kinds of) *Brahmanas* are described. Therein it is said- "The one born in *Brahmana* caste if performs the acts of a *Chaandal* (sinful person) call him a *Chaandal Brahmana*". If greatness is decided by caste only then why is such low name given herein?

Further, in *Vaishnavas* scripture it is stated that *Vedvyasa* etc. are born from fish, etc. How did there remain the sequence of caste or family? And original creation, they say, is from the Brahma; hence, everybody's caste is one, where lies the caste difference? Moreover, the progeny is seen taking place on copulation to a woman of high caste with the man of low caste and to a woman of low caste with the man of high caste. How did there remain the authenticity of caste or family?

Perhaps you might say- "If it is so then why do you believe in the divisions of high and low castes?"

**Answer :** In the worldly affairs contrary practices too are possible but in religious affairs contrary practices are not acceptable; hence, in religious tradition greatness or preceptorship is not possible on the basis of caste. Preceptorship or greatness is attained only by following religious conduct. The greatness of the caste of *Brahmanas* etc. is due to religious practice (virtuous conduct); how would greatness or preceptorship remain there by giving up virtuous conduct and indulging in sinful acts like injury, etc.?

Further, some people say that- "Our ancestors have been great devotees, *Siddhas* (the possessors of extraordinary talents) and highly religious and since we are born in their progeny, therefore, we are the preceptors. But the elders of those (ancestors or forefathers) were not spiritually so great. Therefore, if in their lineage people are believed to be great by their noble deeds then in the lineage of those noble persons he who does not perform noble deeds, how should be treated as noble person? As per scriptures and in actual life it is well-known that the father may attain high status by doing pious deeds whereas the son gets low status by indulging in impious acts; the father may achieve low status due to impious acts but the son attains high status by pious deeds. It is, therefore, not correct to believe someone great only because of being born in the lineage of noble persons.

Thus, it should be known that it is a fallacy to believe someone to be a preceptor because he belongs to high caste.

Further, some people believe preceptorship to be a matter of succession. Earlier, there might have been some great person and in his succession a tradition of disciples is found. In them if some disciple does not possess the qualities of a noble person even then he is treated as a preceptor. If this be logical then in that tradition some disciple might indulge in the great sinful act of sexual copulation with other's wife, etc. then he also will become the pious person and will attain the heavenly life; but this is not possible. Moreover, if he is a sinner then how can he be treated the rightful occupier of the seat? The one who performs the acts worthy of a preceptorship only can be a preceptor (*Guru*).

And many people earlier were the abdicators of the woman (coition), etc., later on they became debauched and house-holders by getting married; their successors believe themselves to be preceptors (*Guru*); but after debauchery how is preceptorship possible? So, these too are similar to other householders. The only sepciality in them is that they became householders after debauchery; how can these be accepted as preceptor (*Guru*) by the persons who basically are found following householder's religion?

Further, many people are found indulging in all kinds of sinful acts but do not marry and because of this - so-called pious practice - believe themselves to be preceptor (*Guru*). But the unchastity alone is not a sin; injury (*Hinsa*), attachment and hoarding (*Parigraha*), etc. are also sins. How people indulging in such acts could be treated as religious preceptors? Moreover, he has not given up marriage, etc. with religious instincts but he does not marry either for getting some means of livelihood or due to ignominy. Had he any religious instincts, then why would he indulge in increasingly injurious acts? And one who does not have religious attitude cannot be firm in chastity and if he does not marry then he indulges in the great sin of sexual copulation with other's wife, etc. Hence, people who believe persons found involved in the aforesaid (sinful) acts as preceptors (*Guru*) are highly misguided and intellectually bankrupt.

And many people consider such persons as priceptors who put on a particular attire; but by assuming a particular dress what type

of religion is evolved due to which he should be considered a religious preceptor? Someone wears cap, some keeps *Gudari* (patched quilt), some others put on a *Chola* (gown), a few keep their body covered by long cloth sheet, some wear red cloths, some white cloths, some wear *Bhagwa* saffron-coloured cloth, a few put on hessian cloths, some others put on deer-skin, while others rub their body with ash, etc. - in this way different disguises are adopted by them. But if cold, heat, etc. could not be endured and lacked confidence in remaining nude then why did he forsake the commonly worn cloths such as *Pagadi* (turban), *Jama* (shirt), etc.? Leaving the common attire, why did they indulge in aforesaid disguises and what aspect of religion is accomplished? All these disguises are assumed merely to cheat the householders. If they keep their robe like that of a (common) householder, how could then the householders be cheated? Their objective is to earn livelihood, acquire wealth and fulfill pride-passion, etc. by adopting such disguises, that is why they put on such disguises. The ignorant people get cheated by seeing such persons in different disguises and believe that he has followed religion, but this is a fallacy. The same is stated in *Upadesha Siddhanta Ratnamala* as under :-

जह कुवि वेस्सारत्तो मुसिज्जमाणो विमण्णए हरिसं ।  
तह मिच्छवेसमुसिया गयं पि ण मुणंति धम्म-णिहिं ॥ 5 ॥

As some fellow fond of strumpet feels pleasure even on losing his money, similarly, some persons being cheated by false sanctimony do not realise that their religious wealth is being destroyed. The gist is - "By attending on and adoring such false disguised persons, one's religious wealth gets destroyed but alas ! the people instead of feeling distressed feel happy owing to false belief." Some people assume those disguises which are described in false scriptures; but with the perverse intention of establishing their tradition and increasing the number of their followers, the sinful writers of those scriptures have preached in them simple rituals for obtaining higher spiritual status. The thoughtless *Jivas*, ignorant of their tradition, do not even ponder over the fact that there is some deception because they preach obtaining high spiritual status through simple rituals, rather move (follow) thoughtlessly in the path shown by them.

Further, they believe that the tough path suggested in some other *Shastras* (scriptures) will be difficult to follow and people cannot be convinced without keeping high name, with this intention they keep high names like *Yati, Muni, Acharya, Upadhyaya, Sadhu, Bhattaraka, Sanyasi, Yogi, Tapasvi, Nagna*, etc. but are not able to follow the rituals prescribed for these various spiritual ranks; therefore, they assume different disguises according to their free will. And many of them keep new names (aliases) and adopt various disguises according to their own will. In this way, they believe preceptorship by assuming different disguises; so this is false.

One may ask here- "Various types of disguises (*Bheshas*) are found, how would one be able to distinguish as to which is right and which is wrong?"

**Answer :-** Only those outward appearances in which there is not the slightest trace of attachment and passions, are the true ascetic garbs. Those true ascetic garbs are of three types, rest all are false (sanctimonies). The same is described by shri *Kund-Kund Acharya* in *Shat-Pahuda\**

एगं जिणस्स रूवं बिदियं उक्किट्टसावयाणं तु ।

अवरट्टियाण तइयं चउत्थ पुण लिंगदंसणं णत्थि ॥ (दर्शनपाहुड-18)

**Meaning :** One ascetic garb is that of possessionless naked monk *Nirgrantha-Digamber Muni* similar to that of *Jina* (omniscient conqueror), the second one is that of the householder of the highest status of *Shravaka* i.e., a votary belonging to the order of tenth and eleventh *Pratima* or vow, and the third one is that of a *Jaina-nun (Aaryika)* as per *Digamber* scripture; thus, these three ascetic garbs only are to be revered and no fourth ascetic garb is associated with right belief. The gist of above verse is that the one who believes adorable any other posture excepting these three postures or garbs is not a true but a false believer. Moreover, among these disguisers many of the disguisers observe some religious rituals for the sake of inducing people to adore their postures. As for example, someone desirous of making current a counterfeit rupee-coin also mixes some silver in it, similarly, these disguisers

(\* Now known as *Ashta Pahuda*)

proclaim themselves to be possessing high status by practising part of religious rituals.

Here someone says- "Some appropriate fruit will be reaped by whatever religions one has followed?"

**Answer :** As someone having accepted the vow of *Upavasa* (observing complete fast) eats even a particle of food then he is a sinner and if by taking the vow of *Ekaashana* (taking pure meal only once in a day) takes some quantity of food even then he is a religious person. Similarly, if someone by assuming high spiritual status violates it even slightly, he is a great sinner and if by accepting the vow of lower spiritual status practises even some part of religion then he is a religious person. Hence, one should practise religion according to one's capacity, no fault lies in this; but if someone proclaiming one-self to be possessing high spiritual status indulges in mean practice then he is assuredly a great sinner. The same is described in *Shat-Pahuda* by shri *Kund-Kund Acharya* :-

जहजायरूवसरिसो तिलतुसमेत्तं ण गिहदि हत्थेसु ।

जइ लेइ अप्पबहुयं तत्तो पुण जाइ णिगोदम् ॥ 18 ॥ (सूत्रपाहुइ)

i.e., the bodily posture of a true saint (*muni*) is found to be always naked just like the naked state of a child at his birth. He does not accept the slightest material possession; but if a saint accepts even the slightest material possession he assuredly goes to *Nigoda* (the lowermost one-sensed state of downfall of *Jivas* existence where one dies and rebirths 18 times per respiration of time).

Let it be kown that- "In the householder's status, if someone keeping a lot of possessions, makes some limitation (with a vow not to increase it any further) then also he deserves the right of attaining the heaven and subsequently liberation; but by adopting monk's status if one keeps the slightest possession even then he attains *Nigoda* state. Hence, keeping big name and practising lower order of conduct is not correct.

It is to be known that in *Hundaavasarpini*<sup>1</sup> aeon this the present running time is *Kalikala*<sup>2</sup> In *Jina's* religion the characteristics of a

1. The aeon of descendency in all respects.
2. The period of ill-conduct and religious downfall is called 5th era in *Jaina* scripture.



monk are such that there should be no attachment with either external or internal possessions; he should keep engrossed in the self soul with the feeling of I-ness in it and should keep himself detached from pious and impious thoughts and dispositions; but now due to dawn of this bad time (i.e. fifth era) the people who are passionate and fond of sensual pleasures accept monkhood by taking the vow of forsaking all sorts of injury and adopting the five great vows, etc. but such persons in monk's disguise are found wearing white or saffron-coloured cloths and have become voracious of food, etc., make efforts of increasing their tradition; many of them keep money, etc. also; commit injury, etc. and indulge in various unbecoming acts. But the consequence of accepting even the slightest possession is described to be *Nigoda*; therefore, it is certain that the consequence of such sinful acts would assuredly be unending transmigration.

See the ignorance of the people ! If someone breaks even a small vow, he is called a sinner; but one who breaks such a great vow he is believed to be the *Guru* (preceptor) and revered as a monk. In the scripture it is stated that one who performs an act, gets it performed or praises the performer - in all these three states the same consequence results.

The prescribed sequence of accepting monkhood is that one should first of all obtain the knowledge of true *Tattvas*, thereafter, should develop apathy (towards sensual pleasures) and acquire power of enduring the afflictions, etc., after all this he should himself express the desire of becoming a monk and then the *Acharya* (head of monks' congregation) should confer monkhood on him as per rules.

It is a pity to see this contrariness that conferring of monkhood on sensual and passionate persons through deception and greed has become prevalent. Later on such persons are encouraged to follow wrong conduct; so, this is a great injustice.

Thus ends the negation of false preceptor and their adoration.

Now starts the evidence from *Shastras* (scriptures) in reinforcement of the aforesaid description.

There in *Upadesha Siddhanta Ratnamala* it is said so-

“ गुरुणो भट्टा जाया सद्दे शुणि ऊण लंति दाणाई ।  
दोण्णवि अमुणियसारा दुसमिसमयम्मि बुद्धंति ॥ 31 ॥”

**Meaning:-** Due to bad times the preceptors (*Gurus*) have become minstrels. They accept gift and donation, etc. by praising the donors in the words of a minstrel. So, in this distressful era (*Dukhama-Kal*) both the donor and the recipient are to drown in the ocean of worldly transmigration. It is further stated there :-

“ सप्पे दिट्ठे णासइ लोओ णहि कोवि किंपि अक्खेइ ।  
जो चयइ कुगुरु सप्पं हा मूढा भणइ तं दुट्ठं ॥ 36 ॥”

**Meaning :** If after seeing a snake, somebody runs away from it, people do not say anything to him. But alas ! Behold ! To him who quits the company of snake-like false preceptors the ignorant ones call him wicked and speak ill of him.

“ सप्पो इक्कं मरणं कुगुरु अणंताइ देह मरणाई ।  
तो वर सप्पं गहियं मा कुगुरु सेवणं भदं ॥ 37 ॥”

**Meaning :** Oh ! by snake-bite death is caused only once, whereas, the false preceptor causes infinite deaths, is an instrumental cause of infinite times births and deaths. Therefore, O ! Judicious person! it is better to keep company with a snake but never adore or keep company with a false preceptor.

Further, many more verses are quoted there for strengthening right belief, same may be studied from that book.

And in *Sanghapatta* it is said so :-

“ क्षुत्क्षामः किल कोपि रंकशिशुकः प्रवृज्य चैत्ये क्वचित्  
कृत्वा किंचनपक्षमक्षतकलिः प्राप्तस्तदाचार्यकम् ।  
चित्रं चैत्यगृहे गृहीयति निजे गच्छे कुटुम्बीयति  
स्वं शक्रीयति बालिशीयति बुधान् विश्व वराकीयति ॥”

**Meaning :** See ! some poor man's boy weakened by starvation took the oath of a monk in some temple and without forsaking sins he got installed as *Acharya* by some group. He now lives in the temple as one lives in his own house, treats the monks of his congregation as members of his own family, thinks himself to be

very great like *Indra*, considers knowledgeable persons as ignorant ones like children and treats other householders as paupers. So, this is all a great wonder.

Further, there is a poetical composition “यैर्जातो न च वर्द्धितो न च न च क्रीतो”, etc., its meaning is as follows. The householders with whom he (the so-called monk) has relation neither by birth nor by being nourished, nor has he any business relation and also has not to pay anything, treats them all like bullocks and forcibly takes gifts, donation, etc., none is there to administer justice.

Thus, there are many verses supporting the right faith and the same should be known from that book.

Here someone says- “These are the sermons quoted from *Shwetambra's* scriptures, why did you quote them as evidence?

**Answer :** For example, if something which is forbidden by a degraded person then the same is naturally forbidden for a high status person. Similarly, something which is forbidden even by those people for whom appendages of cloths, etc. are allowed then in *Digamber* religion such contrary practices are naturally forbidden.

Moreover, in *Digamber Shastras* (scriptures) also there are several verses supporting right faith. There in *Shat-Pahuda* composed by *shri Kund-Kund Acharya*, it is said so:-

“ दंसणमूलो धम्मो उवइट्ठो जिणवरेहिं सिस्साणं ।  
तं सोऊण सकण्णे, दंसणहीणो ण वंदिच्चो ॥ 2 ॥ ” (दर्शनपाहुड़)

**Meaning :** Jinendra Deva's exhortation to disciples is that the root cause of religion is right belief. Therefore, let the disciples of Jinendra Deva possessing ears be aware that the man without right belief is not adorable.

How can a false preceptor be instrumental in invoking right belief in a person who believes in that false preceptor? Without right belief no other aspect of religion is possible. How could one be adorable without religion?

Further, it is mentioned :

“ जे दंसणेसु भट्टा, णाणे भट्टा चरित्तभट्टा य ।  
एदे भट्ट वि भट्टा, सेसं पि जणं विणासंति ॥ 8 ॥ ” (दर्शनपाहुड़)

**Meaning :** Those, who have fallen from right belief, right knowledge and right conduct, are the worst polluted (led astray) amongst the polluted. Such persons being themselves spoilt spoil other persons also who follow their preachings.

Further, it is mentioned:

“ जे दंसणेसु भट्टा पाए पाडंति दंसण धराणं ।  
ते होंति लल्लमूआ, बोही पुण दुल्लहा तेसिं ॥ 12 ॥” (दर्शनपाहुड़)

**Meaning :** Those people who have themselves fallen from right belief, but seek adoration from other right believers will become crippled and dumb in the next birth i.e., they will be born as one-sensed immobile beings like trees or plants and achievement of self-knowledge will become extremely difficult, a rarity to them.

“ जे वि पडंति च तेसिं जाणंता लज्जागारवभयेण ।  
तेसिं पि णत्थि बोही पावं अणुमोयमाणं ॥ 13 ॥” (दर्शनपाहुड़)

**Meaning :** “These saints have fallen from right belief” - even after knowing this thing, those persons also who out of shyness, false prestige and fear bow to them, being supporters of evil, are devoid of i.e., not able to attain right knowledge. What types of *Jivas* are these? They support the vice (sins) ! Even by honouring the sinners one has to suffer from the consequence of supporting the sins.

Further, it is mentioned :-

“ जस्स परिग्गहगहणं अप्पं बहुयं च हवइ लिंगस्स ।  
सो गरहिउ जिणवयणे परिगहरहिओ णिरायारो ॥ 19 ॥” (सूत्रपाहुड़)

**Meaning :** That outward posture of a monk in which even a little or more possession is found is censurable in omniscient's preachings. Only possessionless naked saint is to be revered as true monk.

Further, it is said-

“ धम्ममि णिप्पवासो दोसावासो या उच्छुफुल्लसमो ।  
णिप्फलणिग्गुणयारो णडसवणो णग्गुरूवेण ॥ 71 ॥” (भावपाहुड़)

**Meaning :** “The one who is indolent in practising religious conduct, is full of blemishes, is worthless like flowers of sugarcane, is devoid of virtuous conduct, he is an acrobat monk in the garb of

nakedness, is a disguiser like a buffoon.” Here in the naked posture the example of a buffoon is possible, but if someone is found with possessions then this comparison too is not sustainable.

“ जे पाव मोहियमई लिंगं घेतूण जिण वरिदाणं ।  
पावं कुणति पावा ते चत्ता मोक्खमग्गम्मि ॥ 78 ॥ ” (मोक्षपाहुड़)

**Meaning :** Such *Jivas* whose intellect is infatuated by sins, if they indulge in sinful acts even by adopting the naked posture of *Jina* (omniscient) are to be known as the idols of sins and fallen from the right path of liberation.

It is further stated :-

“ जे पंचचेलसत्ता गंथग्गाही य जायणासीला ।  
आधाकम्मम्मि रया ते चत्ता मोक्खमग्गम्मि ॥ 79 ॥ ” (मोक्षपाहुड़)

**Meaning :** Those who have excessive love in cloths of five kinds\*, keep possessions, indulge in begging and are engaged in *Adhah-karma* - type of faults concerning preparation and taking of food - all such persons (so-called monks) are to be known as fallen from the right path of liberation.

Many such *Gatha-Sutras* (couplets, verses) are found in *Ashta-Pahuda* for reinforcement of right belief; one should read them. And in *Linga-Pahuda* composed by shri *Kund-Kund Acharya*, very strong criticism is found written about such so-called monks who having adopted the naked posture of *Jina* indulge in injury, householder's acts and acts of incantations etc.

And in *Atmaanushasana* written by *Gunabhadra Acharya*, it is stated :-

“ इतस्ततश्च त्रस्यन्तो विभाववर्य्या यथा मृगाः ।  
वनाद्दसन्त्युपग्रामं कलौ कष्टं तपस्विनः ॥ 197 ॥ ”

**Meaning :** It is a great pity that in this *Kalikala* (5th era) the ascetics after wandering here and there out of fear like a deer come near the town in the night from the forest. Here even staying near the town is prohibited, therefore, living in the town is assuredly forbidden.

\* Cloths of tree-bark/leaves, cotton, jute, leather, silk, wool.



“ वरं गार्हस्थ्यमेवाद्य तपसो भाविजन्मनः ।  
सुस्त्रीकटाक्षलुण्टाकलुप्तवैराग्यसम्पदः ॥ 200 ॥”

**Meaning :** Here it is stated that “A householder’s status is better than holding such ascetic posture which may result in infinite births. What kind of ascetic is this whose wealth of non-attachment gets robbed in the morning by the robbers in the forms of beautiful women’s side-long glances.”

And in the *Paramatma-Prakash* composed by Monk *Yogindra Deva*, it is stated :-

“ चिल्लाचिल्लीपुत्थियहिं, तूसइ मूढु णिभंतु ।  
एयहिं लज्जइ णाणियउ, बंधहं हेउ मुणतुं ॥ 215 ॥”

**Meaning :** The foolish saints (so-called monks) only take pleasure in the congregation of pupils - male & female, and in books but the wise saints (real monks), devoid of fallacy, feel ashamed in keeping them knowing that these are the cause of bondage.

“ केणवि अप्पउ वंचियउ, सिरूळुंचिवि छारेण ।  
सयलवि संग ण परिहरिय जिणवरलिंगधरेण ॥ 217 ॥”

**Meaning:** Who is he whose soul is cheated by himself ? He is that *Jiva* who having adopted the naked *Digamber* posture of great *Jina*, pulls out his hair with ashes but does **not** give up all possessions.

“ जे जिणलिंगु धरेवि मुणि, इट्टपरिग्गह लंति ।  
छद्दि करेविणु ते जि जिय, सा पुणु छद्दि गिलंति ॥ 218 ॥”

**Meaning :** Oh *Jiva* ! those ascetics who having adopted the naked posture of *Jina* keep agreeable possessions are eating the same vomit which they have vomitted earlier, i.e., they are censurable.

Such many statements are found therein.

Thus, in the *Shastras* (*Jina*’s preachings) the false preceptors, their false conduct and attending on them is totally forbidden.

And wherein the scriptures *Dhatri Doṣa*, *Duta Dosa*, etc. forty-six faults concerning the activity of preparation of food by householders

and taking of food by a monk (*Muni*) are described, there pleasing the children of householders, conveying messages, indulging in the acts of teaching *Mantras* (incantations), prescribing medicines, foretelling future, etc. and taking the food that has been prepared by self or got prepared by others and approved by self, etc. - all such activities are totally forbidden for a monk but now due to bad times the monks take food, etc. by indulging in the aforesaid faults.

Further, the corrupt monks of the category of *Parshwastha*, *Kusheela*, etc. are forbidden; and now so-called monks are found possessing such Characteristics. It is to be noted that those *Parshwastha*, etc. kinds of monks live naked and possessionless physically whereas these - the present so-called monks keep different types of paraphernalias. And there in the scriptures the *Bhramari* etc. method of taking the food is described for the monks; but this so-called saint having excessive desire takes food, etc. by afflicting the vitality of the donor. And they are clearly seen indulging in the injudicious, censurable and sinful acts which are unbecoming of even the householders.

Further, they disrespect the most venerable *Jina-Bimba* (*Jina's* installed idols) and the *Shastras* (scriptures), etc. and rather considering oneself to be superior to them they sit at a higher level (seat) and likewise many perversities are apparently seen and yet they consider themselves to be true monks and like to be called the possessors of the *Mulgunas* (basic virtues). In this way, they get their importance (venerableness) established and the innocent householders getting cheated by their praise do not ponder over the real religion, rather remain engrossed in their eulogy; but how will the great sin of perverse-belief in terms of treating great sin as great religion not result in infinite transmigration? In *Shastras* the one whom misbelieves even a single word of *Jina's* preachings is stated to be the great sinner, whereas here (in such behaviour of a monk) there is total disregard of *Jina's* preachings. What else could be a greater sin than this?

## Arguments Supporting Negligence in Conduct and their Refutation

### Refutation of those false arguments by which worship of false preceptors is established :

Here someone argues- "In the absence of preceptor (*Guru*) we shall be treated as having no preceptor (*Nigura*) and the real preceptors are not found in the present times, should we, therefore, not believe these (monks) as preceptors?"

**Answer :** Those persons only can be treated as *Niguras* (preceptorless) who do not believe in preceptors. And the one who has belief in the true preceptor but not finding the true characteristics of a real preceptor in the so-called *Gurus* in this region, does not believe in them, he cannot be treated as a *Nigura* (preceptorless). For example, one who does not believe in God is called an atheist and one who believes in God but not finding the true characteristics of real God in the so-called Gods in this region, does not believe in them, then he does not become an atheist.

He further argues- "In *Jaina* scripture, the absence of omniscient (*Kewali-Jina*) is described in the present time, but the presence of a real preceptor (possessionless naked ascetic) is not denied?"

**Answer :** It is not stated that the true preceptor monks will be found in particular regions but it is stated that they will be found in *Bharat-Kshetra*. *Bharat-Kshetra* is very vast region, the existence of true monks may be found in some part of it, that is why absence of true monks is not described. If you believe the existence of true monks in the same region where you live, then if you go in a region where even such kind of monks will not be available, then whom shall you regard as preceptor (*Guru*)? For example, the availability of swans is described in the present time, but if the swans are not actually seen then the other kind of birds cannot be treated to be swans. Similarly, the availability of true monks is described in the present time, but if the true monks are not actually found then others (so-called monks) cannot be treated to be true monks.

Further, he says- "Even the imparters of knowledge of one syllable is believed to be the *Guru* (preceptor), how should then one

not be believed to be a *Guru* who teaches us *Shastras* and gives discourses on them?"

**Answer :** The word *Guru* denotes a highly respected person. So, in whomsoever whatever type of greatness be possible he is respected as *Guru* in that sense. For example, from the family status point of view the parents are termed as *Guru*, similarly the teacher who imparts education is termed as *Guru* in that sense. But here the issue is that of religion, therefore, in the context of religion he who is great from the conduct (*Dharma*) point of view is to be treated as *Guru*. But *Dharma* is the name of *Charitra* (true passionless conduct). In the scripture it is stated that (चारित्तं खलु धम्मो)<sup>1</sup> true conduct only is religion (*Dharma*), therefore, the possessor of true conduct can only be termed as *Guru*. For example, the *Bhutas* (demons) etc. are also called *devas* (Gods), but here in the context of true belief of *deva* only *Arihanta Deva* (omniscient God) is accepted as *Deva* (God). Similarly, the term *Guru* though used in various contexts, yet here with reference to true belief the *Nirgrantha Guru* i.e., totally possessionless naked homeless ascetic monk only is to be believed as *Guru*. In *Jaina* religion the terms *Arihanta Deva*, *Nirgrantha Guru* are profusely used.

Here someone asks- "What is the reason that none else except that *Nirgrantha* (naked possessionless monk) is believed to be the *Guru*?"

**Answer :** Excepting the *Nirgrantha*, no other *Jiva* possesses the supremacy in all respects. For example, if a greedy person delivers lectures on *Shashtra* then the listeners regard him superior because he delivers discourses whereas the discourser regards the listeners superior because they offer him wealth, cloths, etc. Although outwardly the discourser is superior yet being greedy internally he does not possess superiority in all respects.

**Question :** "The *Nirgranthas* also take food."

**Answer :** The *Nirgranthas* do not take food with inferiority complex and greed passion by praising the donor; so, their supremacy is not affected. The greedy only suffers from complexes.

1. Pravachanasara verse 7.

Therefore, the *Nirgranthas* only possess supremacy in all respects; no other *Jivas* excepting the *Nirgranthas* are meritorious in all respects; therefore, superiority and inferiority are to be considered only from the viewpoint of possession of merits and demerits respectively. Therefore, dauntless adoration is not possible.

Moreover, excepting the *Nirgranthas* whatever religious conduct is observed by other *Jivas* (so-called monks) can be followed in the same degree or of higher degree even by the householders, then in such a case who should be regarded as *Guru*? Therefore, only those *Nirgrantha* monks who have no external and internal possessions and attachments are to be known as true *Gurus* (real preceptors).

Here someone may ask- "Such *Gurus* are not found here in the present time, hence as the installation of *Arihanta* God is his idol, similarly, the installations of the *Gurus* are these sanctimonious persons?

**Answer:** For example, if someone treats the portrait of a king to be the king then that portrait is not a rival of the king but if some ordinary person wants himself to be treated as king then that person is the rival of the king; similarly, if someone makes the installation of *Arihanta* God etc. in stone, etc. then that idol is not a rival of him, but if some ordinary person wants himself to be treated as monk then such a person is the rival of the monks. If even in this way, the installation be possible then get yourself be treated as *Arihanta* also. And if an ordinary person is installed as a true monk then at least outwardly he must possess the characteristics of a true monk but the true monk (*Nirgrantha*) is totally possessionless naked homeless ascetic whereas the so-called monks (*Gurus*) are having lot of possessions - how such installation is possible?

**Question:** In the present time the *Shravakas* (*Jaina* householders) too are not found as they ought to be; therefore, the monks are also not found as they ought to be. (So, we worship them).

**Answer:** In the scripture the term *Shravaka* is used for all *Jaina* householders (irrespective of whether he is a votary or a non-votary). King *Shrainika* also was an incontinent (non-votary) but in *Uttar-Purana* he has been stated as the best *Shravaka*. In the twelve kinds of assembly halls (in omniscient *Jina's Samavasarana*) one arena is



meant for *Shravakas* but all of them were not votaries. If all were votaries then the number of the non-votaries (incontinent persons) should have been specified separately, but it is not specified; hence, all *Jaina* householders are given the name of *Shravaka*. But the term monk (*Guru*) has nowhere been used for any person except the *Nirgranthas*.

Further, the *Shravakas* (all *Jaina* householders) are stated to possess eight basic right, i.e., eight primary moral characters called *Mulgunas*. Therefore, the eating and taking of wine, meat, honey and five types of *Udumberas* figs-fruits (which contain *Trasa Jivas*) is not found in the *Shravakas*; so, somehow *Shravakaship* is possible, but the monk's basic rites (*Mulgunas*) are twenty-eight which are not seen in the sanctimonious persons; hence, the monkship is not at all possible from any point of view. Further, in the householders state *Jambu-Kumar*, etc. are described to have indulged excessively in the acts of injury, etc., but after accepting monkhood (asceticism) none indulged in any acts of injury, etc., nor kept any possessions and attachment; therefore, your above-stated argument cannot be maintained.

Further, it is stated in the scripture that four thousand kings after adopting asceticism (monkhood) along with Lord *Adinathji*, became corrupt later on; Then *Devas* (gods of heaven) warned them—"If you will follow wrong conduct after accepting *Jina-Linga* (*Nirgrantha* monkhood), we will punish you. After giving up *Jina-Linga* you may indulge in whatever practice you like." Therefore, those who follow wrong conduct after accepting *Jaina*-monkhood are punishable. How could such persons be revered?

What more to say ! those who indulge in perverse practices after accepting *Jina-Linga* (*Nirgrantha* monkhood) they are great sinners. Other *Jivas* who attended on them and worship them are also great sinners. There is a story in *Padma-Purana Shastra* that one devout *Shravaka* (named *Shreshthi*) did not offer food to the monks possessed of supernatural power (of moving in sky) by believing them corrupt under suspicion. How is then offering of food, etc. possible to those who are clearly corrupt?

One may say- "In our inner-self we have true belief, but outwardly due to fear of public censure we respect them, therefore, we will reap the fruit according to our inner belief?"

**Answer:** In *Ashta-Pahuda Shastra* paying regard due to shyness is negated, this was stated earlier. If someone forcibly makes you bow your head with folded hands then one can argue that it is not according to our inner-self. But if you yourself offer salutation, etc. due to pride-passion, etc., then how not to attribute involvement of inner conscious in such act? For example, if someone internally believes meat-eating as bad but for the sake of pleasing the king, etc. he eats the meat, then how could he be treated as a voluntary (continent)? Similarly, if someone internally believes adoration etc. of false preceptors as bad but for the sake of pleasing them and other persons he adores them then how could he be called a true believer? Hence, on outward renunciation only the internal renunciation is possible. Therefore, for the true believer the adoration, etc. of false preceptors, etc. is not justifiable from any point of view.

In this way, the adoration of false preceptors is prohibited.

One may ask here- "How can false belief be attributed to a true believer of *Tattvas* if he adores the false preceptors?"

**Answer:** As a chaste woman never cohabits with any other man except her husband; similarly, a true believer of *Tattvas* never offers salutation, etc. to a false preceptor as he does to a true preceptor. Because he has firm belief, in *Jiva* etc. *Tattvas*, i.e., in his belief, there is total negation of attachment, etc. passions, and highest regard for passionlessness. Therefore, he offers salutation, etc. to those monks (true preceptors) only who possess passionlessness knowing them adorable and never offers salutations, etc. to those so-called monks who possess attachment, etc. passions knowing them unadorable.

Someone may say- "We offer salutations, etc. to the so-called monks with the same view with which we offer salutations, etc. to the kings, etc.

**Answer:** The kings, etc. have no place in religious tradition, but the preceptor's adoration is a part of religious tradition. Reverence

to the kings, etc. is done with the motive of greed, etc. where the rise of *Charitra Moha* (conduct-deluding *karma*) only is possible, but the adoration of false preceptors in place of true preceptors is a contrary practice, because the instrumental cause of right belief in *Tattvas* is the true preceptor. Therefore, due to shyness if someone adopts perverse instrumental cause then how could he attain staunch belief in *Tattvas* which is the desired result? Hence, the rise of *Darshan Moha* (faith-deluding *karma*) is possible there.

Thus ends the discussion of the characteristics of a false preceptor.

### **Exposition of False Religion and Denial of Faith in it**

Now the false religion is being discussed:-

Believing such acts and dispositions to be religion which involve injury, etc. sins and which cause increase in carnal desires, etc. is to be known as false religion. Indulging in the activities of oblation wherein great injury is involved, killing of big animals is caused, sensual pleasures are fostered, cruel concentration is developed due to injurious attitude towards *Jivas*, desire of fulfillment of selfish ends arises by harming others due to intense greed, believing all such acts to be religious acts is false religion.

Further, people take bath, etc. in (so-called) holy places which causes injury to innumerable big and small living beings; it provides relaxation to the body, therefore, it fosters sensual pleasures and increases carnal desires. Thus, one increases his passions out of sport and wrongly believes all such activities to be religion. But all this is the false religion.

Further, he gives donation during the period of transition (*Samkranti*), eclipse and great calamity, etc. and gives donation for the purpose of (neutralizing the effect of) the planets of bad omen, gives donation to the greedy persons by knowing them worthy recipients. In donation he gives gold, elephant, house, sesame, etc. articles. But *Samkranti*, etc. are not the religious festivals. By movement of the planets, etc. stellars, the *Samkranti* (transition), etc. are caused. And donation given for the mitigation of the effect of bad

planets, etc. is not religious donation because it is given due to fear and excessive greed, etc. Moreover, the greedy persons are not worthy recipients of donation because the greedy persons cheat through many false tactics, they do not do even a little good. Benefaction is actually caused only when the donee practises religion with the help of the donation received (But) on the other hand he indulges in sinful conduct. How would benefaction be caused to a person who helps in sinful acts?

The same thing is stated in *Rayanasara-Shastra*:-

“ सप्युरिसाणं दाणं कप्पतरूणं फलाणं सोहं वा ।

• लोहीणं दाणं दइ विमाणसोहा सवस्स जाणेह ॥ 26 ॥”

**Meaning:** Giving charity to pious persons is like the splendour of the fruits of *Kalpa-Vrikshas*\*. This act is splendid as well as pleasure-giving. And the charity given to greedy persons is like decorating the bier of a dead-body. Though splendour results, yet it causes extreme distress to the owner (kinsmen). Hence, there is no religion in giving charity to the greedy persons.

Moreover, such things should only be given in charity which foster religion in the donee, but the donation of gold, elephant, etc. creates injury, etc. and increases pride-greed etc. passions which result in great sin. How could virtue (*Punya*) be caused to the donor of such things?

Moreover, the passionate persons claim that there is virtue (*Punya*) in providing the objects of sexual pleasure; but how could virtue be claimed in the acts of unchastity which are sinful? And they put up false logic by saying that this gives satisfaction to a lady. Though a woman gets pleasure by fulfillment of sexual desire, why is then the observance of chastity preached? Even after sexual pleasure if her other desires are not fulfilled then she feels distressed. Therefore, such false logic is fabricated only for gratifying the carnal desires.

Similarly, believing religion in the activities other than compassion and donation to worthy recipients is all false religion.

---

Moreover, by observing the vows, etc., they foster injury and objects of sensual pleasures, etc. but the vows, etc. are observed for decreasing them. And people forsake eating food grains and instead eat the tuber roots. In such acts, greater injury is caused and relishment of sensual objects increases.

Further, such people do not take meal in the day time and instead take food in the night. So, in this act of taking meals in the night instead of taking food in the day, greater injury is caused and recklessness increases. And by observing the vows (fast), etc. people indulge in excessive adornment of the body, sportive acts, gambling, etc. - all these are sinful acts. But they desire that the fruit of observing vows should be obtained in the form of attainment of worldly agreeable objects and destruction of disagreeable objects; all this results in increasing passions.

Thus, believing religion to consist in the observance of vows (in above-said manner) is false religion.

Further, many people increase injury, etc. sins through adoration, etc. They foster the objects of senses by way of songs, dancing, singing and taking the desired food, etc. and other articles. They indulge in sportive acts and pass time recklessly. In such acts, they create lot of sin but do not have even a little recourse to religion and yet believe it to be religion. So, all this is false religion.

And many people produce affliction to the body and indulge in injury and passionate acts. For example, they observe penance by heating their body in five types of fires. In this process, small and big living beings get burnt by fire, lot of injury is caused. How is religion possible in such acts? And some persons swing by keeping the body turned upside down; some keep the arms raised upwards. Thus, in different ways they practise the (false) religion; but anguish only is caused by such acts. These are not the parts of religious practices.

Further, some people control respiration and practise *Neti-Dhoti* etc. *Yogic* exercises. In such acts, lot of injury, etc. are caused by consumption of water, etc. If some miracle is produced then pride and other passions increase in him. Hence, in no way, such acts can be called religious acts. Thus, they involve themselves in acts causing distress, but do not bother about reducing indulgence in passionate



acts. Internally, they possess the intention of anger, pride, deceit and greed passions; they uselessly engage themselves in painful acts and believe them to be religious acts. This too is false religion.

And many people commit suicide because they cannot endure miseries in this world or desire to get agreeable objects in the next birth. Many kill themselves for earning name and fame or under pressure of anger passion, etc. For example, many women burn themselves in the pyre-fire on account of bereavement of their husbands and are called *Sati* (chaste lady). Some people get dissolved in the snow of *Himalaya* mountain, some others get sawed in the *Kashi* (Benaras) city, some people die willfully; thus, these acts are believed to be religious acts; but committing suicide is a great sin. If attachment in body, etc. was lessened then one should have accepted real penances. But what part of religion is evolved in dying in the aforesaid manner? Therefore, committing suicide is false religion.

Likewise, there are many facets of false religion. How long to describe ! Believing to be religious all such acts which foster passions and sensuousness is false religion.

Behold ! Due to bad times in the *Jina's* religion also the practice of false religion has started. Whatever religious festivals are described, in all those festivals it is desirable to observe continence by giving up passional acts. But they do not adopt this practice and instead in the name of vows, etc. adorn the body in various ways, take relishing food, indulge in sportive acts and in the acts which increase the passions and indulge in great sinful acts like gambling, etc.

Further, in the acts of worshipping, etc., this was the preaching that “सावद्यलेशो बहुपुण्यराशौ दोषायनालं”, i.e., “In the acts producing excessive virtue (*Punya*) if some little sinful acts are involved then the same are ignorable”. Under this pretext in the name of worship and propagation of religion (*Jina's* teachings) people burn the lamps in the night, collect the objects containing infinite living beings (such as flowers, vegetables, etc.) and indulge in practices involving injury and other sins (before the *Jina's* idol). They pay scant respect to virtuous acts, like that of worship, invocation, etc. In all these

acts, loss is more, profit (gain) is less or even nil. All such acts are clearly irreligious.

Moreover, the temple of *Jina* is abode of religion. In the temple people engage themselves in various irreligious talks, sleep and behave indolently; and they foster passions and sensual pleasures by developing orchard and flower garden, etc. (inside temple premises). Further, they give charity, etc. to the greedy persons believing them to be preceptors (*Gurus*) and feel exalted by their false praise. Thus, in various ways they increase their passional desires and believe same to be religion, but the emblem of *Jina's* religion is passionlessness. Entry of such perverse practices in *Jaina* religion is due to bad times.

In this way, the adoration and practising of false religion is forbidden.

Now the involvement of false belief in such practices is being explained:-

The one basic objective in the right belief of *Tattvas* is to give up passions. This very disposition is called religion. If by increasing passional dispositions one believes that religion is evolved then where remains the right belief in *Tattvas*? This is against the *Jina's* commandment. Passions are sinful dispositions; believing these to be religion is false belief. Therefore, in the practice of false religion false belief is invariably involved.

In this way, know well that the adoration and believing false deity, false preceptor and false scriptures (false religion) results in strengthening false belief. Therefore, this is described here. The same is stated in the *Ashta-Pahuda* :

“ कुच्छियदेवं धम्मं कुच्छियलिंगं च बंदए जो दु ।  
लज्जाभयगारवदो मिच्छादिट्ठी हवे सो हु ॥ 92 ॥ ” (मोक्षपाहुड़)

**Meaning :** If someone adores false deity, false religion and false preceptor out of shyness, fear and false prestige, he is assuredly a false believer.

Therefore, those who want to forsake false belief, first of all they should forsake adoring false deity, false preceptor and false religion.

In the abdication of twenty-five types of faults of right belief, under *Amoorhadrishti* (folliness) and six places of misbelief, the renouncement of these false deity, etc. only has been preached. Hence, one must invariably forsake them.

Further, false belief resulting from adoration of false deity, etc. is a bigger sin than the sins of injury, etc. In its fruition one gets birth in *Nigoda* and hell, etc. In such births intense agonies and afflictions have got to be suffered for infinite period and attainment of right knowledge becomes extremely difficult.

The same is stated in *Ashta-Pahuda* :

“ कुच्छियधम्मम्मि रओ कुच्छियपासंडिभत्तिसंजुतो ।  
कुच्छियतवं कुणंतो कुच्छियगइभायणो होई ॥ 140 ॥ ” ( भावपाहुड )

**Meaning:** One who is engrossed in the practice of false religion, adores the hypocrites and false preceptors, observes false penances, he has to suffer from the miseries of evil state of existence.

So oh ! *Bhavyas* ! by adoring the false deities, etc. even with the slightest greed and fear, one has to suffer from intense agonies for infinite period; therefore, false belief is in no way worth harnessing.

In *Jina's* religion it is an eternal tradition that first of all the bigger sin is advised to be forsaken before a smaller sin. Therefore, believing the false belief to be a greater sin than indulgence in seven evil habits, it is to be forsaken first of all. Therefore, those who are afraid of the fruits of sinful acts and do not desire to sink their soul in the ocean of agony should invariably give up false belief. It is not desirable to be of fickle mind due to fear of censure or desire of praise. Because in ethics also, the same is stated as follows:

“ निन्दन्तु नीतिनिपुणा यदि वा स्तुवन्तु  
लक्ष्मीः समाविशतु गच्छतु वा यथेष्टम् ।  
अद्यैव वास्तु मरणं तु युगान्तरे वा  
न्यायात्पथः प्रविचलन्ति पदं न धीरा ॥ 184 ॥ ( नीतिशतक )

If someone criticizes, let him criticize; someone praises, let him do so; wealth is obtained or lost, death is instant or comes after long time - in all such contradictory situations the wise persons do not budge an inch from the path of justice.

Remembering this doctrine, it is not proper to indulge in unjustifiable forms of false belief under pressure of censure, praise, fear or greed.

Oh ! the true omniscient God, true preceptor and true religion are the supreme objects; the religion rests on them. How could religion be evolved by fickleness and indecision about them? What more to speak? It is extremely necessary to forsake in every way, the company of false deity, false preceptor and false religion.

By not abdicating the false deity, etc., the false belief is greatly strengthened and in the present times, the tendency of adoring them is found specifically more here. Therefore, their abdication is forcefully described here. Knowing all this, one should adopt the path of liberation by forsaking false belief.

Thus ends the 6th chapter of the treatise *Moksha Marg Prakashak* in which the description of false deity, false preceptor, false religion is done for abdicating them.





## CHAPTER 7

### X-RAY OF JAINA-MISBELIEVERS

दोहा : इस भवतरुका मूल इक, जानहु मिथ्याभाव ।  
ताकौ करि निर्मूल अब, करिए मोक्ष उपाव ॥

**Meaning:** Oh ! *Bhavya Jiva* ! the false belief is to be known as the only root cause of this world-tree (the ocean of transmigration). You should immediately uproot it and must make effort for attaining liberation.

Now such false belief which is found in *Jivas* who are Jains and obey the commandments of omniscient *Jina* is being described; because even the slightest trace of this false belief is suicidal; hence even the subtle and latent false belief too must be forsaken.

In *Jina's* scripture (*Agama*) descriptions are found from two angles - the one is *Nishchaya* (the real standpoint) and the other *Vyavahara* (the unreal and conventional standpoint). In them the real standpoint (*Yathartha*) is called *Nishchaya* and the unreal or conventional standpoint (*Upachara*) is called *Vyavahara*. Without knowing their real nature people indulge in contrary practices, the same is being described here:

#### The Misbelievers Possessing Wrong Concept of *Nishchaya*

Many *Jivas* believe themselves to be the true followers of the path of liberation although they have misconception about *Nishchaya* and do not know its real nature. They believe as if they have realised the self-soul like *Siddhas*<sup>1</sup>. Actually, they are worldly people but due to delusion they believe that they are like *Siddhas*. This is their wrong conception.

---

1. *Siddha*= Non-corporeal omniscient God or liberated soul

In *Shastras* wherever the soul has been described to be like *Siddha* Gods is from the substantial (*Dravya-drishti*) point of view; but from the modificational (*Paryaya*) point of view it is not like *Siddha* Gods. For example, a king and a pauper man both are alike from the manhood point of view but they are not alike from the kingdom and poorness point of view. Similarly, the *Siddhas* and the mundane beings are alike from the sentience (*Jivatva*) point of view but from the *Siddhahood* and the *Mundaneness* point of view they are not alike; yet these misbelievers believe themselves to be as pure as are the *Siddhas*. But the pure and impure state is a modification. If alikeness is believed from the modificational (*Paryaya*) point of view then it is false belief.

Further, they believe themselves to be possessing omniscience (*Kewal-Jnan*, i.e., *Kshayik-Jnan*) but clearly they are found possessing the sensory and scriptural knowledge (*Mati* and *Shrut-jnan*) only which is of *Kshayopashamic* form of knowledge only. But the *Kshayik-Bhava* is evolved on destruction of its obscuring *karma* and these people under fallacy believe evolution of *Kshayik-Bhava* even without the destruction of *karmas*, so, this is their false belief.

Wherever in the *Shastras* omniscience is stated to be the nature of *Jivas*, it is from the potentiality point of view; because all *Jivas* possess the potentiality of the evolution of omniscience (*Kewal-Jnan*). But only on its manifestation in the present state its existence is accepted.

Someone believes that "In the spatial units (*Pradeshas*) of the soul the omniscience (*Kewal-Jnan*) always exists manifested, but it is not clearly visible being hidden under the veil of *karmas*." But this is a fallacy. If omniscience is found manifested then it knows the things clearly even on getting obstructed by the layers of adamant-like things. How could it be obstructed by barricade of *karmas*? Therefore, due to instrumentality of *karmas* the omniscience is non-existent. If omniscience were found in all states of *Jivas* then it would have been termed as *Parinamik-Bhava* but it is a *Kshayik-Bhava*. Such *Chaitanya-Bhava* (eternal consciousness) in which all kinds of qualities are found existing is termed as *Parinamik-Bhava*. Its various states are of the form of sensory & scriptural knowledge

(*Mati-Shrut Jnan* etc.) and of omniscience (*Kewal-Jnan*) form; these states are not *Parinamik-Bhava*. Therefore, the existence of the state of omniscience (*Kewal-Jnan*) is not found always.

Moreover, in the *Shastras* the example of sun (with reference to omniscience) is to be interpreted to mean that as due to the obstruction caused by clouds the light of sun is not visible, similarly, due to the rise of *karmas* omniscience is not manifested. But it should not be understood to mean that omniscience always remains in the soul in all states as the light remains in the sun; because the example is not found fit in all respects. For example, the colour attribute is found in the matter (*Pudgal*) substance; green-yellow, etc. are its various states but if any one of these states is found in the present, the other states are absent. Similarly, the *Chaitanya Guna* (consciousness-attribute) is found in the soul; sensory knowledge, scriptural knowledge, etc. are its states but if any one of these states are found in the present, the other states are absent only.

Here someone argues- "The word 'veil' is used in the sense of 'covering some object'; if the existence of *Kewal-Jnan* (omniscience) is not there in the present state why then use the word *Kewal-Jnanavarana karma* (omniscience obscuring *karma*)?"

**Answer:** Here the word 'veil' is used to denote creation of obstruction in the manifestation of the power which always exists. For example, the existence of the rise of *Apratyakhyaanavarana-Kashaya* (the passion which hinders partial abstinence) is meant to describe the creation of obstruction in the manifestation of the power of partial conduct. The same logic applies here.

It should be further known that the disposition or modification produced in a substance due to instrumentality of other substance is termed as *Aupadhik-Bhava* (alienated or impure disposition) and the disposition or modification which is produced without the instrumentality of other substance is termed as *Swabhava-Bhava* (natural or pure disposition). For example, water becomes hot due to instrumentality of fire; here the state of coldness is absent but on removal of the instrumentality of fire coldness gets manifested (automatically). Therefore, always the nature of water is said to be cool, because it possesses such power always and on its manifestation the

nature is said to have been manifested. Sometimes it is found manifested. Similarly, due to the instrumentality of (rise of) *karma* the soul assumes alienated (contrary) disposition. In such a situation, there is only absence of omniscience (*Kewal-jnan*); but on the removal of the instrumentality of *karmas* omniscience is evolved for ever. Therefore, omniscience is said to be the nature of the soul for all times, because such power is always found. On its manifestation, the nature is said to have been manifested.

For example, however, if someone drinks hot water due to the belief that the nature of water is always cool, then burning (of mouth) only will be caused. Similarly, if because of the omniscience nature of the soul, someone (due to misconception) believes that he is realising the pure soul though his soul is in an impure state, he himself becomes miserable-only. In this way, those who realise the soul to be possessing the omniscience state are misbelievers.

Moreover, due to misconception they believe their soul to be devoid of passional dispositions, though the passional dispositions are clearly found in them. To such persons our question is - "The passional dispositions (feelings) are clearly seen in you; tell us as to in which substance's existence these are found? If these are found existing in the body or *karmic*-matter, then these dispositions should either be insentient or of material form; but these passional dispositions are clearly seen to be of immaterial form with sentience. These dispositions are, therefore, of the soul substance only. This is what is stated in the *Samayasara Kalasha* also:

“ कार्यत्वादकृतं न कर्म न च तज्जीवप्रकृत्योर्द्वयो—  
रज्ञायाः प्रकृतेः स्वकार्यफलभुग्भावानुषंगात्कृतिः ।  
नैकस्याः प्रकृतेरचित्त्वलसनाज्जीवोऽस्य कर्ता ततो  
जीवस्यैव च कर्म तच्चिदनुगं ज्ञाता न यत्पुद्गलः ॥ 203 ॥”

The meaning of this verse is this:

As the psychic passional dispositions (*Bhavakarma*) are found existing, therefore, it cannot be said that they are not generated by some body, because these are definitely deeds of some doer. Further, these cannot be treated as being produced by both *Jiva* and *karmic*

matter; because if it be so, then the material *karmas* should also bear the consequence of psychic dispositions in the form of happiness and misery, which is impossible. Further, it is not the act of *karmic* matter alone, because it obviously possesses insentient nature. Therefore, the producer of these psychic passional dispositions is soul only and these possional dispositions are the deeds of soul only; because the psychic dispositions are sentient by nature, these cannot be produced without sentience and matter does not possess sentience.

Thus, the psychic passional dispositions are found in the existence of *Jiva*.

Now, those *Jivas* who believe that passional dispositions are produced only by the instrumentality of *karma* maintain that they are non-doers of the same; although they are the real doers. But because they want to remain reckless and irresponsible, therefore, they put the full blame for these dispositions on *karmas*. So, this is their distressing delusion.

The same is stated in *Samayasara Kalasha* also:

“ रागजन्मनि निमित्ततां परद्रव्यमेव कलयन्ति ये तु ते ।  
उत्तरन्ति न हि मोहवाहिनीं शुद्धबोधविधुरान्धबुद्धयः ॥ 221 ॥ ”

The meaning of this is:

Those *Jivas* who believe in the instrumentality of other substance only in the evolution of passional dispositions are devoid of right knowledge and are blindwitted, being so, they are incapable of crossing the river of delusion.

Further, in the *Sarva Vishuddha Jnana Adhikara* of *Samayasara* such a person who believes the soul to be the non-doer (*Akarta* and says that “*Karmas* alone make *Jivas* sleep and awake, injury is caused by *Parghata-Karma*, unchastity by *veda-karma*, therefore, the *karma* alone is the doer,” - a Jain having such belief is a *Sankhyamati* (believer of *Sankhya* faith) because like that of a *Sankhyamati* he too lives unrestrained treating the soul to be always pure.

Moreover, such a faith resulted in the fault of disowning passional dispositions and one considered oneself as non-doer. Therefore, one



became fearless in indulging in passional acts and so did not make any effort for removal of such feelings of attachment, etc. Due to such belief, one becomes unrestrained and indulges in evil acts which cause bondage of *karmas* and result in infinite transmigration in the world.

Here one argues that in *Samayasara* too it is stated so:

“वर्णाद्या वा रागमोहादयो वा भिन्ना भावाः सर्व एवास्य पुंसः ।  
तेनैवान्तस्तत्त्वतः पश्यतोऽमी नो दृष्टाः स्युर्दृष्टमेकं परं स्यात् ॥ 37 ॥”

**Meaning:** “The colour, etc. and attachment aversion, etc. are the dispositions which are separate from the soul.” Further it is stated there that attachment, etc. dispositions bear the imprint of matter and in the other *Shastras* also the soul is described as unconcerned with attachment, etc. How this is so?

**Answer:** The attachment, etc. feelings are evolved as impure dispositions (*Aupadhik-Bhavas*) due to instrumentality of other substance and this *Jiva* believes them to be his natural dispositions. Why would one believe as bad and try to uproot such feelings which he believes to be natural instincts? Therefore, this faith also is perverse. To extricate one from such belief, the attachment, etc. impure dispositions are described to be different from the nature of the soul and the same are described to be of material by laying emphasis on instrumental cause. For example, a physician wants to cure the disease; if he finds excess of cold then he prescribes hot medicine and if he finds excess heat then he prescribes cold medicine. Similarly, the true preceptor wishes to extricate the attachment, etc. passional feelings. To such *Jivas* who become unrestrained and indolent by believing the attachment, etc. feelings to be the product of other substance, the true preceptor makes them believe, by laying emphasis on the substantive cause (*upadan karan*), that the attachment, etc. feelings are of the soul; and to such *Jivas* who do not try to uproot the impure dispositions, believing them to be the nature of the soul, the true preceptor make, them believe by laying emphasis on instrumental cause, that the attachment, etc. impure dispositions are the products of other substance.

The true belief would be evolved only on forsaking both the contrary types of faiths. Then one would believe that these passional

feelings are not natural dispositions of the soul but get evolved in the soul in the form of contrary dispositions due to the instrumentality of the *karmas*. On removal of the instrumental cause, 'soul's true nature remains as it is. Therefore, one should make effort for uprooting them.

Here the question arises that "If these attachment, etc. impure dispositions are produced due to the instrumentality of *karmas* then how could these impure dispositions be eliminated in the continued rise of *karmas*? Therefore, making effort for their removal is useless.

**Answer:** In the accomplishment of one act several causes are required. In them, those causes which are consciously gathered, should be gathered and on meeting of those causes which cannot be consciously gathered but are met with on their own, the act gets accomplished. For example, for the birth of a son the conscious causes are marriage, etc. and the unconscious cause is the destiny. Therefore, one who wishes to have a son should consciously get married and when fortune also favours, the son will be born. Similarly, for uprooting impure dispositions, the conscious causes are pondering over and ascertaining the *Tattvas* and unconscious causes are the subsidence, etc. of *Moha* (deluding) *karma*. Therefore, one who wishes to eliminate one's impure dispositions should consciously ponder over and ascertain the *Tattvas* and when the subsidence, etc. of *Moha* (deluding) *karma* takes place, the impure dispositions get eliminated.

**Question:** As marriage, etc. are dependent on destiny, similarly, ascertaining of *Tattvas* (reality) too is dependent on *Kshayopashama*<sup>\*1</sup> etc. of the *karmas*, hence making effort is useless.

**Answer:** You have got *Kshayopashama* of *Jnanavarana karma* (knowledge obscuring *karma*) so you can ascertain the *Tattvas*. Therefore, you are advised to make effort of engaging your knowledge there. The irrational beings do not possess such *Kshayopashama*; so, how can they be preached?

Then he further says- "If fortune favours then only one's *Upayoga* (attentive consciousness) can get engrossed there. How would *Upayoga* be engrossed without such fortune?"

---

\*1. Destruction cum subsidence state of knowledge, perception & energy obscuring *karmas*.

**Answer:** If your belief be so then you should not make effort for any work anywhere. You willfully engage yourself in eating-drinking and doing business, etc. and here you put up the excuse of the destiny. This shows that your interest does not lie here and only due to pride you are putting up such false excuses.

In this way, such people should be known as false believers who, in spite of being absorbed in passional acts, believe, their soul to be free from them.

Further, the people who although are having the bondage of *karmas* and *Nokarmas* (body, etc.), yet believe the soul to be free from bondage, but their bondage is clearly seen. The *Jnanavarana*, etc. *karmas* are seen obscuring the knowledge, etc. and according to their rise, etc., the conditions of the soul are seen changing through the medium of body. How is then the bondage not there? If there be no bondage why should then the aspirants of liberation make efforts for destroying them?

**Question:** How is then the soul described in the *Shastras* as separate from and unbonded & untouched by *karmas* and *Nokarmas*?

**Answer:** The relationships are of several kinds. From one identity relationship (*Tadatmya-Sambandha*) point of view, the soul is described to be separate from *Karmas* and *Nokarmas*, etc., because the different substances do not become one by trans-forming (into one another) and it is from this point of view that the soul is described as unbonded and untouched. But from the instrumental cause and effect relationship point of view, bondage is obvious. Due to instrumentality of such bondage the soul assuredly assumes different forms. Therefore, believing the soul as having no bondage is false belief.

Someone may argue here that we do not want to ramble our attention in thoughts of bondage and liberation because in scripture (*Yogasara*) it is stated so:

“ जइ बद्धउ मुक्कउ मुणहि तो बंधियहि णिभंतु ।  
सहज-सरूवइ जइ रमहि तो पावहि सिव संतु ॥ 87 ॥”

**Meaning:** “That *Jiva* who believes himself to be bonded or liberated he undoubtedly gets bonded.”

Our answer to him is- "There are *Jivas* who always hold the modificational view point (*Paryaya Drishti*), believe only in the bonded - liberated states of the soul but do not know the intrinsic nature (*Dravya-Swabhava*) of the soul. Such *Jivas* are preached to remember that those, who do not have belief in the intrinsic nature of the soul and believe only in the bonded - liberated states, are always bonded. And if bondage - liberation be totally not there then why is it described that the *Jiva* gets bonded? And why should one make efforts to destroy the bondage and get liberated? And why should one exert for self realisation? Therefore, one should believe that from substantial (*Dravya-Drishti*) point of view the soul holds one unchanged form and from modificational (*Paryaya Drishti*) point of view it assumes different states.

Thus, in various ways he holds perverse belief due to wrong understanding of *Nischaya-Naya* (real standpoint) only.

In *Jina Vani* (omniscient *Jina's* preachings) different types of descriptions are found from different angles of different *Nayas* (standpoints) in different contexts. But this person (misunderstanding *Nischaya-Naya*) holds misbelief by accepting as per his imagination such descriptions which are stated chiefly from realistic standpoint.

Moreover, in *Jina's* preachings, the path of liberation is described to be in the union of right belief, knowledge and conduct. So, in his belief and knowledge he should hold the faith and knowledge of seven *Tattvas* but he does not think of them. In his conduct he should make effort for uprooting attachment, etc. passions but he does not exert for it; and instead he remains contented by knowing the liberation path to consist in the pure realisation of his own soul only. For practising the same he internally continuously thinks- "I am pure like *Siddha* God, I possess omniscience, etc., I am devoid of *Dravya-karmas* and *No-karmas*, I am full of beatitude, the miseries of birth-death, etc. are not in me".

So, here we ask him "If you contemplate in this way from the substantial (*Dravya-Drishti*) point of view, then the substance (soul) is a mass of all sorts of pure and impure modifications, why do you then contemplate the soul as pure only? And if you contemplate

from the modificational (*Paryaya-drishti*) point of view, then presently you are having impure modifications; how do you then believe yourself to be pure?

Further, if you believe yourself to be pure from the potentiality point of view then you should believe that "I am capable to become so." Why do you believe "I am so"? Therefore, contemplating oneself to be in pure form is a fallacy. Because, if you consider yourself to be like *Siddha* God then whose is this mundane state? And if you possess omniscience, etc. (presently) then whose are these states of sensory knowledge, etc.? And if you consider yourself to be devoid of *Dravya-karma* and *No-karmas* (body, etc.) then why is not the full manifestation of knowledge, etc. (in you)? And if you are having beatitude then what else remains to be done? If you do not have the miseries of birth-death, etc. then why do you experience misery? Therefore, believing the existence of some other states when other different states are found is fallacy.

**Question:** How is then the discourse of meditating on the pure soul given in the *Shastras*?

**Answer:** Purity of soul is described in *Shastras* from two angles - the substantial point of view and the modificational point of view. There, from the substantial point of view the separateness from other non-self substances and inseparability from one's own intrinsic attributes (qualities) is termed as purity. And from the modificational point of view the elimination of alienated (impure) dispositions is termed as purity. So, in the meditation of soul's purity, the purity from the substantial point of view is admonished. The same is described in the exposition of *Samayasara*: "एष एवाशेषद्रव्यान्तरभावेभ्यो भिन्नत्वेनोपास्यमानः शुद्ध इत्यभिलष्यते ।"<sup>1</sup> This means that the soul is neither passionate (*Pramatta*) nor dispassionate (*Apramatta*). So, this alone is described to be pure being adored to be as separate from the attributes of all other non-self substances. Further, in *Samayasara* itself it is stated so: "समस्तकारकचक्रप्रक्रियोत्तीर्ण-निर्मलानुभूतिमात्रत्वाच्छुद्धः।"<sup>2</sup> This means-"Such unpolluted realisation is pure which is unaffected by all forms of cases (*karakas*) like doer (*karta*), deed (*karma*), etc. and is one with the indivisible knowledge form of self-soul". Hence, you should

1. *Samayasara* Gatha 6 *Atmakhyati* Tika.

2. *Samayasara* Gatha 73 *Atmakhyati* Tika.



know such meanings of the word 'pure'. Similarly, one should know the meaning of the word *Kewal* (only) to be "That which is separate from the attributes and modifications of all other non-self things and is purely solely the self-soul". Similarly, you should grasp the true meanings of other words.

Believing oneself to be pure and omniscient from modificational stand-point, results in great perverseness; therefore, one should perceive oneself in both substance and modification forms. From substance form point of view one should perceive the one general undivided identity and from the modification form point of view one should perceive the particular existing state of the self.

By meditating in the aforesaid manner only one becomes the true believer, because without perceiving the true nature how can one be called *Samyagdrishti* (true believer)?

### **The Unrestrained Conduct of *Nishchayaabhasi* and Refutation of the same**

Further, in the path of liberation, the faith-knowledge and conduct are to be directed towards uprooting the feeling of attachment, etc; but his attention is not on this, instead, emphasizing realisation of pure self only, he neglects all other external means of liberation by believing himself a true believer.

He advocates study of the *Shastras* as useless, considers contemplation about substances, etc., spiritual stages (*Guna-Sthanas*), quest-places (*Margana-Sthanas*) and the three worlds (universe), etc. as *Vikalpa* (rambling of *Upayoga* attention); believes observing of penance to be useless exercise, treats observance of vows, etc. as falling in bondage and knowing the acts of worship, etc. as pious influx, describes them to be worth giving up; in this way, by discarding all sorts of external means, he lives indolently.

If studying of *Shastras* be useless then for the monks also meditation and study, only these two, are the main activities. When they are not able to engage their *Upayoga* (attention) in meditation then they engage it in study only, because no other act than these two is worthy of their attention. Moreover, by knowing the intricacies of *Tattvas* in detail through study of *Shastras*, the right belief and

knowledge become purer. And so long as *Upayoga* remains engrossed there, passions remain feeble and it results in increase of passionlessness. How could then such activities be believed as useless?

He further says that only those *Shastras* should be studied in which the spiritual discourse is found. Nothing is achieved by study of other *Shastras*.

Our answer to him is- "If you have attained the right vision (right belief) than all *Jain-shastras* are useful. There also, chiefly in the spiritual *Shastras*, the nature of the soul is mainly discussed. But on evolution of right belief, the true nature of the soul has been ascertained. Thereafter, for the sake of purity of knowledge and for keeping the *Upayoga* engrossed in pious acts (of feeble-passion), study of other *Shastras* is chiefly desirable. And if you have ascertained the nature of the soul then for maintaining it you should study the spiritual *Shastras* also; but you should not have disliking for other *Shastras*. One who has disliking of other *Shastras* does not possess true liking for the soul. For example, one who is a sensualist, he listens to the stories of sensual persons also with interest and also knows the details of sensual pleasures and believes to be useful all those means which are instrumental in sensual pleasures and also understands well the nature of sensual pleasures. Similarly, he who has developed liking for the soul, should also know the mythology of the *Tirthankaras*, etc., personages who have realised the soul, and for knowing the various details about the soul, he should know the *Guna-Sthanas* (stages of spiritual development), etc. also. Further, he should believe vows, etc. which are the means of soul's pure conduct to be useful and should also understand well the distinct nature of the soul. Therefore, all the four *Anuyogas* (branches of scriptures) are useful.

Further, for the sake of gaining thorough knowledge of them one should also study the books of etymology and logic. Therefore, it is desirable to study in small or big measure all relevant *Shastras* according to one's own capability.

He further argues- "In *Padmanandi Pachchisi\** it is stated that the *Upayoga* which comes out of the soul and rambles in the study of *Shastras* is unchaste."

**Answer:** "This statement is true. The *Upayoga* is of the soul; if it becomes enamoured of the other non-self substance, i.e., *Shastras* by leaving the self-soul then it is assuredly unchaste. However, if a woman maintains her chastity, it is praiseworthy and if she is not able to remain chaste then leaving a noble person if she develops sexual relationships with a low caste person then she is extremely censurable, Similarly, if the *Upayoga* remains engrossed in the self-soul then it is praise-worthy and if it does not remain so then leaving the study of pious *Shastras*, etc., non-self substances, if it gets engaged in the inauspicious sensual objects, etc., then it is extremely, censurable. How could your *Upayoga* remain engrossed in the self-soul (for a long time) when even the monks' *Upayoga* does not remain engrossed in the self-soul for a long time?

It is, therefore, desirable to engage one's *Upayoga* in the study of scripture (*Shastras*).

And if you consider deliberating on substances, etc. and *Guna-Sthanas* etc. to be the *Vikalpa* (rambling of mind), it is no doubt *Vikalpa* but so long as the *Upayoga* does not remain *Nirvikalpa* (free from *Vikalpas*), till then if one does not cherish these *Vikalpas* then other types of *Vikalpas* will arise which will be full of excessive attachment, etc. passions. Moreover, the unrambling state of *Upayoga* (*Nirvikalpa-Dasha*) does not remain always, because the *Upayoga* of a non-omniscient can remain fixed only for an *Antarmuhurta\*\**"

And if you say that you will continue meditating on the nature of self-soul only in different ways, then our answer is that in ordinary meditation different ways are not possible and if you wish to meditate from various angles then the deliberation on the substance,

---

\*\* "बाह्यशास्त्रग्रहणे विहारिणी या मतिर्बहुविकल्पधारिणी ।  
चित्स्वरूपकुलसन्ननिर्गता सा सती न सदृशी कुयोषिता ॥ 38 ॥"

सद्बोधचन्द्रोदयः अधिकार

\*\* One *Muhurta* is called the period of 48 minutes and any period less than 48 minutes is termed as *Antar-muhurta*.

attribute, modification, spiritual stages, quest places and the pure-impure states, etc. of the self will be invariably involved.

Further listen ! the path of liberation does not consists in knowing the self-soul only. The liberation path is attained on evolution of the right belief-knowledge of seven *Tattvas* (essential principles) and on eliminating the feelings of attachment, aversion, etc. passions. Therefore, for knowing the specialities of seven *Tattvas* the specialities of soul-non-soul, influx and bondage of *karmas*, etc. are to be known inevitably which are instrumental in attaining right faith and knowledge.

And thereafter you should make effort for uprooting the attachment, etc. passions. So, by forsaking those causes which are instrumental in increasing the feelings of attachment, etc. you should engage your *Upayoga* in the causes which are instrumental in reducing the attachment, etc. Deliberating on substances, etc. and *Gunasthanas* etc. are the causes of reducing the attachment, etc. None of these is instrumental cause of attachment, etc. Hence, even after becoming a true believer you should concentrate your *Upayoga* in their deliberation only.

Further, he agrees that *Upayoga* should be engaged in those causes which are instrumental in uprooting the feelings of attachment, etc., but questions as to what is the utility of deliberating on states of existence of all living beings in the universe and on specialities of *karmas* like bondage, rise, existence, etc. and also on the shape, magnitude, etc. of the universe?

**Answer:** By deliberating on these also the attachment, etc. are not fostered because those knowables are not agreeable-disagreeable to him; therefore, are not the causes of attachment, etc. presently. Moreover, by knowing these in detail the *Tattva-jnana* (knowledge of *Tattvas*) becomes clearer, hence, these are causes only of reducing the attachment, etc. passions in future. Therefore, deliberation on them is beneficial.

Further, he argues that knowing of heaven, hell, etc. does cause attachment-aversion feelings?

**Answer:** Such feelings do not arise in a true believer but arise in the mind of a deluded person (misbeliever). By leaving sinful acts,

one engages himself in virtuous acts then the attachment, etc. are assuredly partially reduced.

**Question:** In *Shastras* it is advised that knowing even in a smaller measure the purposeful object is fruitful; therefore, why should one involve oneself in different *Vikalpas*?

**Answer:** Such advise is given to those *Jivas* who either know much about other things and do not know the purposeful things or whose capacity of knowing is limited. But whose capacity of knowing is more, he is not advised that knowing more would be harmful. The more he would know about the aforesaid objects the greater will be the clarity in his knowledge of purposeful things; for in the *Shastras* it is stated thus: “सामान्यशास्त्रतो नूनं विशेषो बलवान् भवेत्” This means that “The detailed (comprehensive) knowledge of *Shastras* is more efficacious than their general knowledge”. A detailed (comprehensive) knowledge alone is good for right ascertainment; therefore, one should know in detail.

Further, he considers observing of penances as useless torturing of the body. But on becoming a true believer of liberation path one's conduct must be just opposite to that of a mundane being. The mundane beings develop feelings of attachment-aversion in agreeable-disagreeable objects. But this person (so-called true believer) should not develop the attachment-aversion feelings. For giving up the feelings of attachment (*Raaga*) he, the true believer, forsakes agreeable things like food, etc. and for freeing himself of the feelings of aversion (*Dweshha*), he accepts disagreeable things like fasting, etc. If such means are adopted independently with self-control then even on coming across with unwanted agreeable-disagreeable things the attachment-aversion feelings would not arise. This is what should be; but you have malice towards fasting, etc., that is why you regard it as distressing. If this is distressing then automatically taking food is regarded as pleasant. This generates *Raaga* (attachment). So, such kind of proclivity is already existing in mundane beings, what did you achieve by becoming a true follower of the liberation path?

If you argue- “many true believers also do not observe penance”.



**Answer:** Due to some particular reason, penance may not be possible but they believe and know the penance as beneficial and make efforts towards adopting it. But you hold the belief that observing penance is distressing and further no inclination is found in you for adopting penance. Therefore, how can you be a true believer?

He further pleads- "In *Shastras* it is stated that one may undergo the misery of penance, etc. but without right knowledge desired object cannot be obtained?"

**Answer:** Such *Jivas* who are averse to obtaining the knowledge of *Tattvas* (reality) and believe *Moksha* (liberation) achievable by penance only, are admonished that without the knowledge of *Tattvas*, merely by observance of penance only, the path of liberation is not attainable; and on attainment of *Tattvas-Jnan*, for uprooting the attachment, etc., the observance of penance is not prohibited. If it be prohibited, then why would the *Ganadharas* (chief monks) undergo penance, etc. Hence, it is desirable to observe penance according to one's capability.

Further, he believes observance of vows, etc. to be a bondage; but the unrestrained proclivity was already there in the state of ignorance; on attainment of knowledge, one definitely controls his unrestrained tendencies. And for controlling that tendency one must abandon causes of outward injury, etc.

He further maintains- "My intentions are pure, how does it matter if outward abstention is not observed?"

**Answer:** If the acts of injury, etc. take place on their own without your intentions, then we would believe what you say. And if you indulge knowingly in some act, how could then your intentions be called as pure? How can indulgence in sensual pleasures, etc. and negligent movement, etc. be possible without intentions? But you make efforts for such acts knowingly and when injury, etc. sins are caused, you do not pay attention on them but still maintain that my intentions are pure. So, by such belief, your intentions will remain impure (aliented) only.

He further argues- "Though thoughts may be restrained and indulgence in outward injury, etc. also be reduced but because taking

oath creates bondage; therefore acceptance of vows by oath is not desirable.”

**Answer:** So long as the chance of involvement in a particular act remains, till then, the oath of abstaining from it is not taken. And because of such chance, attachment in that act persists. Due to existence of this attachment feeling bondage of relevant *karma* continues because of non-abstention even without indulgence in that act. It is, therefore, necessary to take oath. How could the relevant thoughts be checked without accepting the bondage (oath) of not indulging in that act? Under the pressure of circumstances, the relevant thoughts do arise and even without the force of circumstances, the inner intension of indulging in it persists. Therefore, it is necessary to take oath.

He further argues-“The rise of *karmas* in future is unpredictable and if later on oath is broken, then it would result in great sin. Let the act take its own course as per providence. One should not think in terms of taking oath.”

**Answer:** While taking oath if one thinks that this oath is not likely to be strictly observed, one should not take such oath; but if at the time of taking oath the inner intention be- “I will breach it during the hour of necessity”, then what is the effectiveness of such oath? At the time of taking oath, one’s intention should be such that even if death occurs he will not give it up. So, taking such oath is assuredly commendable. Without taking oath, the bondage of *karmas* resulting from vowlessness is not stopped.

Further, if the oath is not taken due to fear of rise of relevant *karmas* in future, then by giving thought to the rise of *karmas* all kinds of duties and actions are lost. For example, one should take as much quantity of food as could be digested. If someone gets indigestion by taking food and because of fear of indigestion if he gives up taking food then death only will result. Similarly, one should take only such an oath which he believes that he will be able to maintain. If by chance some body became corrupt by breaching the oath and due to such fear if one does not take any oath at all, then incontinence will only result. Therefore, one should take such oath which he can maintain.

Moreover, events do occur as destined, why then do you make effort for taking food, etc. If effort is necessary there, then the effort for renunciation is also desirable. When you will attain the state like that of an idol then we would accept the logic of destiny and will not attribute it to you. Therefore, why do you put up logic supporting unrestrained conduct? It is desirable to take the oath of the vow which one can maintain.

Further, he believes worshipping, etc. to be useless by knowing them as cause of auspicious influx of *karmas*. So, this infact, is true, but if by giving up these acts one keeps-oneself engrossed in *Shuddhopayoga* (pure passionless conduct), then it is assuredly beneficial and if one indulges in inauspicious acts like sensual pleasures, etc., then one would only harm oneself.

By engrossing one's *Upayoga* (attentive consciousness) in auspicious acts, one may get birth in heaven or if by pious intention or due to instrumentality of pious acts, the duration and fruition of *karmas* get reduced, then one may even evolve right belief. And by engrossing in inauspicious acts, one may get birth in hell or *Nigoda*; or if by impious intention or due to instrumentality of evil acts, the duration and fruition of *karmas* get increased, then the evolution of right belief, etc. may become extremely difficult.

Moreover, in *Shubhopayoga* (engrossing in virtuous conduct) one's passions become feeble and in *Ashubhopayoga* (engrossing in vicious conduct) the passions become intense; hence, indulging in the acts of intense passions by giving up the acts of mild passion is comparable to that of eating poison by leaving bitter objects. So, this is ignorance.

Further, he pleads- "In *Shastras*' (scriptures) the *Shubha* (pious) and *Ashubha* (impious) both types of acts are treated alike; therefore, it is not worthwhile to go into their details."

**Answer:** The *Jivas* who, considering the *Shuddhopayoga* to be the cause of liberation (*Moksha*), believe it worth adopting (*Upadeya*) and are not able to identify *Shuddhopayoga* (passionless conduct), to them, from the impurity point of view and from the bondage causation point of view, both *Shubha* (pious) and *Ashubha* (impious) are advocated to be alike.

But on considering the difference between *Shubha* and *Ashubha* thoughts & acts, it becomes clear that passions become feeble in *Shubha-bhavas* (auspicious thoughts) and therefore bondage of *karmas* also gets reduced. In *Ashubha-bhavas* (inauspicious thoughts) the passions get intensified and therefore, the bondage of *karmas* also gets increased. Thus, deliberating from this angle, *Shubha* (pious thoughts & acts) is stated to be better than *Ashubha* (impious thoughts & acts) in the scripture. For instance, the disease is harmful only whether it is less or more severe; but in comparison to more severity less severity is said to be better also.

Therefore, so long as *Shuddhopayoga* (state of pure passionless conduct) is not attained it is desirable to keep oneself engaged in *Shubha* (virtuous conduct) by getting rid of *Ashubha* (vicious conduct). But it is not desirable to engross oneself in the *Ashubha* (vicious conduct) by forsaking *Shubha* (virtuous conduct).

Again he says- "The inauspicious tendency of satisfying the desire of lust or hunger, etc. cannot be avoided and one has to indulge in auspicious proclivity willfully; but the true believer wants to avoid desires, therefore, making effort of *Shubha* (pious conduct) is not desirable.

**Answer:** Engagement of *Upāyoga* in auspicious acts increases the feeling of renunciation which in turn reduces passionate (sexual) feelings and restlessness caused by hunger, etc. Hence, one should practise *Shubhopayoga*. If in spite of making such effort, lust and hunger, etc. cause distress, then for their remedy, one should engage oneself in those acts which are less sinful. But indulging freely in sinful acts by forsaking the *Shubhopayoga* is not desirable.

Further, your argument is that the true believer does not want to have any desire and *Shubhopayoga* is practised willfully. Our reply is that though a person does not want to give even a little amount of his money yet wherever he feels that great amount of money is likely to be lost, he makes effort willfully to give some quantity of money. Similarly, the true believer does not want to engage even in an act involving slightest amount of passion but wherever he feels possibility of involvement in inauspicious acts causing great passion, he willfully makes effort to engage his *Upayoga* in acts involving less passions.

Thus, it is proved that wherever there is possibility of evolution of *Shuddhopayoga* (pure, passionless conduct), there, of course, involvement in asuspicious acts is forbidden but where *Ashubhopayoga* (impious conduct) seems to persist, in such situation, one should make effort to engage oneself in *Shubhopayoga* willfully.

In this way, the one who establishes practice of unrestrained conduct by refuting all kinds of conventional religious practices, has been contradicted.

### **The Conduct of *Nischayaabhasi Jivas***

Now the conduct of a *Nischayaabhasi Jiva* is being discussed: He believes that only by knowing one's pure soul one becomes the true believer and nothing else is to be done. Knowing this, he sometimes sits in solitude in meditation posture and feels contented contemplating "I am soul like *Siddha* devoid of all karmic bondage"; but he never contemplates as to how such a quality is possible. Sometimes he meditates upon self soul through the medium of qualities like immovable (*Achala*), indivisible (*Akhanda*) and unrivalled (*Anupama*), etc. So, these qualities are possible in other substances also. Further, he does not think as to from what point of view these qualities are possible. And sometimes while sleeping or sitting, in whatever state he is, he believes himself to be true believer due to such thoughts.

It is stated in scriptures that a true believer is free from influx and bondage. Therefore, (under the veil of this statement) he sometimes indulges in sensual pleasures and passion acts. There he has no fear of bondage and indulges in passion acts unrestrainedly.

But the sign of evolution of the knowledge of 'self' and 'non-self' is the spirit of renunciation. The same is stated in *Samayasara*: "सम्यग्दृष्टे भवति नियतं ज्ञानवैराग्यशक्तिः"<sup>1</sup> i.e., "A true believer assuredly possesses the power of right knowledge and renunciation."

1. "सम्यग्दृष्टे भवति नियतं ज्ञानवैराग्यशक्तिः, स्वं वस्तुत्वं कलयितुमयं स्वान्यरूपाप्तिमुक्तया । यस्माज्ज्ञात्वा व्यतिकरमिदं तत्त्वतः स्वं परं च, स्वस्मिन्नास्ते विरमति परात्सर्वतो रागयोगात् ॥"

— समयसार कलश ॥ 136 ॥



Further, it is stated there:-

“सम्यग्दृष्टिः स्वयमयमहं जातु बन्धो न मे स्यादित्युत्तानो-  
त्तुलकवदना रागिणोऽप्याचरन्तु ।  
आलम्बन्तां समितिपरतां ते यतोऽद्यापि पापा  
आत्मानात्मावगमविरहात्सन्ति सम्यक्त्ववशून्त्याः ॥”

— समयसार कलश ॥ 137 ॥

“Here I myself am a true believer (*samyagdrishiti*, in no way, I have any bondage” - the passionate persons who talk in terms of such pride may indulge in acts devoid of renunciation power, may practise five *Samitis*<sup>1</sup> (regulations) attentively, yet being devoid of the power of true knowledge, they are, even presently, sinful persons only. They are assuredly without true belief because they do not possess the right knowledge of soul and non-soul.

Again we ask you- “What is the purpose of indulgence in attachment, etc. passions in other substances after knowing the other substances as separate?” There he says- “The attachment, etc. feelings are produced due to rise of *Moha* (deluding *karma*). It is well-known that in the past even true believers like *Bharata* etc. are stated to have indulged in sensual pleasures and passionial acts.”

**Clarification:** It is true that even a true believer indulges in passionial acts due to rise of *Moha Karma* but he does not indulge in such passionial acts wishfully. The same will be explained in detail later on.

Further, the one, who does not feel sorry while indulging in passions, makes no effort for uprooting them. Even the belief that the attachment, etc. feelings are harmful is not possible in him. How can one become a true believer without such understanding. The purpose of the knowledge of *Jiva*, *Ajiva*, etc. *Tattovas* is only to evolve such right belief.

Further, the type of indulgence in sensual pleasures and passionial acts found in true believers like *Bharat* etc. will be described later on in detail. By following their example, if you become unrestrained then you will undergo intense influx and bondage of *karmas*. The same is stated in (*Samayasara*).

“मग्ना ज्ञाननयैषिणोऽपि यदतिस्वच्छन्दमन्दोद्यमाः ।”

**Meaning:** Even the followers of the standpoint of knowledge who become unrestrained and tardy get drowned in the ocean of transmigration (*Samsara*).

Furthermore, there in the verse “ज्ञानिन् कर्म न जातु कर्तुमुचितं<sup>2</sup>” and in the verse “तथापि न निरर्गलं चरितुमिष्यते ज्ञानिनां<sup>3</sup>” etc., the unrestrained conduct has been prohibited. An action which is not done willfully is not the cause of bondage of karma. Indulging in an act willfully by becoming its doer and claiming to remain its knower only is not possible. So is described in above verses. Therefore, knowing attachment, etc. passions as bad and harmful, one must make effort to uproot them.

There, step by step, first of all, one should give up inauspicious acts for forsaking intense passions, etc. and should engage oneself in auspicious acts. Thereafter, even for forsaking feeble passions, one should give up auspicious acts also and evolve the state of passionless conduct (*Shuddhopayoga*).

Further, many people reduce activities relating to business, etc. as well as cohabitation etc. feeling anguish in the inauspicious acts, and knowing the auspicious conduct to be worthless, do not study the scripture, etc. and have also not attained passionless form of pure conduct of self absorbedness (*Shuddhopayoga*). Therefore, they become idle, inactive by forsaking endeavour for wealth, sex, piety and liberation.

1. मग्नाः कर्मनयावलम्बनपरा ज्ञानं न जानन्ति यन्,  
मग्ना ज्ञाननयैषिणोऽपि यदतिस्वच्छन्दमन्दोद्यमाः  
विश्वस्योपरि ते तरन्ति सततं ज्ञानं भवन्तः स्वयं,  
ये कुर्वन्ति न कर्म जातु न वशं यान्ति प्रमादस्य च ॥ 111 ॥
2. ज्ञानिन् कर्म न जातु कर्तुमुचितं किञ्चित्थाप्युच्यते  
मुक्षे हंत न जातु मे यदि परं दुर्भुक्त एवासि भोः ।  
बंधः स्यादुपभोगतो यदि न तत्किं कामचारोऽस्ति ते,  
ज्ञानं सन्वस बंधमेष्यपरथा स्वस्यापराधाद्ध्रुवम् ॥ 151 ॥
3. तथापि न निरर्गलं चरितुमिष्यते ज्ञानिनां तदायतनमेव  
सा किल निरर्गला व्यापृतिः ।  
अकामकृतकर्म तन्मतमकारणं ज्ञानिनां द्वयं न हि विरुध्यते  
किमु करोति जानाति च ॥ 166 ॥ — समयसार कलश

They have been censured in the commentary of *Pancha-stikaya*<sup>1</sup>. The example given with regard to them is this - as a person becomes idle by eating huge quantity of *kheer* (rice cooked with milk and sugar) and a tree stands effortless, similarly, these *Nishchayaabhasis* have become idle and inactive.

Now we ask them, "though you have reduced the external acts of *Shubha* (virtuous) and *Ashubha* (vicious) acts but the *Upayoga* (active knowledge) cannot remain engaged without engrossing it in some object. So, tell us, where do you engage your *Upayoga*?"

If you say that I meditate on soul then you have earlier maintained that contemplation on soul through study of scriptures is involvement in *Vikalpa* (rambling of *Upayoga*) and much time is not required in knowing any quality of the soul. The *Upayoga* of a non-omniscient cannot remain fixed by repeatedly meditating in one way. Even the *Upayoga* of *Ganadharas* (chief monks), etc. cannot remain fixed in this way; therefore, they too engage themselves in the study of scriptures, etc. How could we believe your *Upayoga* to be purer than that of the *Ganadharas*, etc.? Therefore, your statement is not authentic.

As someone in business remains idle and indolently passes time somehow, similarly, *Nishachayaabhasi* also by remaining idle in religious conduct, uselessly wastes time indolently. Sometimes he pretends contemplating on some-thing, sometimes indulges in worthless talks, at other times takes food, etc., but for purifying his *Upayoga* he does not engross it in the study of *shastras* (scriptures), penances, worship, etc. Remaining inactive and idle, he says he is engrossed in *Shuddhopayoga* (pure passionless conduct). In such a state, there being less anguish, he believes that he is happy, in the same way as an idle person feels pleasure in idleness.

Or, as someone in dream, feels happy considering himself to have become a king, similarly, he feels pleasure by believing himself fallaciously to be pure like *Siddha* God. Or, as someone feels pleasure considering himself in an agreeable state, similarly, by engrossing himself in some agreeable thought, he feels happy and treats it to be happiness evolved by self-realisation. Further, as someone believing some state to be unagreeable, feels dejected, similarly, considering

business, etc., son, etc. to be the cause of sorrow, he remains dejected from them and treats it to be the renunciation - so all such type of knowledge and renunciation is full of passions. The feeling of unperturbed tranquility which results from attachmentless form of dispassionate state, that true bliss, knowledge and renunciation is evolved only to right believers in the state of feeble rise of *Charitra Moha* (conduct-deluding *karma*).

Further, by giving up business, etc., afflictive acts, and by taking agreeable food, etc., he remains inactive and feels pleasure. In such a state he believes as if he has become passionless but the feeling of happiness in such a state causes cruel meditation (*Raudra-Dhyana*). Wherever by renunciation of objects of pleasure and association of objects of misery, one does not feel afflicted and also does not become happy or miserable, then in such a state passionless disposition is evolved.

Thus, the *Nischayaabhasis* are found having the aforesaid types of deluded conducts. Therefore, all such *Jivas* who are followers of *Nischayaabhasa* (perverse knowledge of real stand-point) only, are to be known as misbelievers. Such *Jivas* are to be known like *Vedantins* and *Sankhyamatis* who believe the soul to be pure only. Because due to similarity of faiths, the *Nishchayaabhasis* find their precept agreeable and these people find the approach of *Nishchayaabhasis* to be agreeable.

Further, those *Jivas* possess such type of faith that only by contemplation of pure soul, *samvara* (stoppage of influx) and *Nirjara* (partial dissociation of past *karmas*) are caused and in such a state, a part of bliss like that of liberated soul is manifested; and by contemplation on impure dispositions of *Jiva* like *Gunasthanas* etc., and by thinking about other *Jivas*, *Pudgalas* (matter) etc., excepting the self, *Asrava* (influx) and *Bandha* (bondage) of *karmas* are caused. Therefore, they remain averse to other kind of thoughts.

So, such type of belief is also not correct, because whether one contemplates on pure self-soul or on other non-self objects, if this contemplation be free from attachment, etc., then only *Samvara-Nirjara* result. However, if such meditation be full of attachment, etc., then *Asrava-Bandha* only are caused. If the *Asrava-Bandha* be

caused only by knowing the other objects then the omniscient (*Kewali*) will also be found having *Asrava-Bandha* (influx & bondage), because all other substances are known to them.

He further says- "*Asrava-Bandha* is caused to non-omniscients by the contemplation of other non-self objects." But this is not so, because in scriptures it is stated that in the state of *Shukla-Dhyana* (pure meditation) even monks contemplate on all six substances, their attributes and modifications. Moreover, in clairvoyance and telepathy type of knowledge, only knowing of other substances specially is found. And in fourth *Gunasthana* one who contemplates on self-soul, to him also the *Asrava-Bandha* is more and the *Guna-Shreni Nirjara*<sup>1</sup> is not found, whereas in the fifth and sixth *Gunasthanas* in the process of meditation on other non-self objects *Asrava-Bandha* is less in spite of involvement in the activity of taking food and movement, etc. and the *Guna-Shreni Nirjara* continuously takes place. Therefore, *Nirjara* (dissociation) and *Bandha* (bondage) of *karmas* are not caused by contemplation on either self-soul substance or other non-self substances; rather by decrease in passions, attachment, etc., *Nirjara* is caused and by feeling of attachment, etc., *Bandha* is caused. But the *Nishchayabhasia* does not possess the true knowledge of the nature of attachment, etc.; therefore, he believes contrarily.

Now he asks- "If it is so, then how is it that in the *Niroikalpa Anubhav Dasha* (rambleless state of self-realisation) the thoughts (*Vikalpas*) relating to *Naya-Pramana-Nikshepas*<sup>2</sup> etc. and even of perception knowledge, etc. are forbidden?"

**Answer:** The *Jivas* who are engrossed in these thoughts (*Vikalpas*) only and do not realise the one indivisible self-soul, they are advised that all these thoughts are instrumental in true ascertainment of substances. But after such ascertainment these thoughts have no role to play; hence, by giving up these *Vikalpas* also one should engross himself in the realisation of one indivisible self-soul; it is not desirable to remain engrossed in these thoughts only.

- 
1. Dissociation of *karmas* from soul in geometrical progression is termed *Guna Shreni Nirjara*.
  2. *Naya*=Stand-point, *Pramana*=Comprehensive knowledge, *Nikshepa*=Installation.



Further, after ascertainment of the true nature of the substances it is not possible to remain engrossed in the contemplation of self-soul in a general way. Knowledge of self-soul and other objects persists in both general and specific (detailed) forms but with the feeling of passionlessness. The same is called *Nirvikalpa-Dasha* (rambleless state of *Upayoga*).

There he asks- "All this means generation of various thoughts; how can this be called the *Nirvikalpa* (unperturbed) state of *Upayoga*?"

**Answer:** Thoughtlessness is not called the *Nirvikalpa* (unperturbed) state of mind, because all knowing of non-omniscients is found with thought. Believing *Nirvikalpa-Dasha* to be devoid of thoughts would mean absence of knowledge itself, that is to say, the state of senselessness which is not possible in case of soul. Therefore, thought always exists.

One may say here that "(In such state) the concentration of thought is only on the indivisible self-soul and on its specialities". But the concentration of thought on the indivisible soul cannot continue for long time and without the knowledge of its specialities the real nature of the indivisible soul cannot be realised.

And if he says that "(In such a *Nirvikalpa* state) the thought of the self-soul only continues and not of other non-self objects", then (we ask him) how can the I-ness feeling be evolved in the self-soul without developing non-self feeling in non-self substances?

There he says that in *Samayasara* it is stated as follows:

“ भावयेद्भेदविज्ञानमिदमच्छिन्नधारया  
तावद्यावत्पराच्युत्वा ज्ञानं ज्ञाने प्रतिष्ठते ॥” (कलश 130)

It means that the discriminating knowledge should be persisted with so long as the *Upayoga* does not become free from the thoughts of other substances and gets engrossed in self-soul only. Therefore, on disengagement of *Upayoga* (discriminating knowledge) from thoughts of self-nonsel, the knowing of other substances stops and knowing of the self-soul only continues.

**Answer:** (This is not the correct sense of above verse). What is stated here is that formerly he was knowing the self and non-self to

be one, then for knowing them separate the discriminating knowledge should be persisted with till one's knowledge (*Upayoga*) gets engrossed in the knowing nature of self-soul only by knowing the non-self objects to be separate from the self. Afterwards no role remains for discriminating knowledge, it naturally continues knowing the non-self objects to be non-self and the self to be the self. It is not so that the knowing of the other non-self substance stops. Therefore, knowing of other non-self objects or knowing the details (specialities) of self-soul substance is not termed *Vikalpa* (rambling state of mind).

How is it then? The same is explained: Due to attachment-aversion feeling, engaging one's *Upayoga* in knowing some particular object (knowable) and withdrawing it from knowing some other object (knowable) thus diverting one's *Upayoga* (attention) repeatedly is called *Vikalpa* (rambling of *Upayoga*). And where whatever one knows dispassionately, knows it correctly and does not ramble his *Upayoga* for knowing different-different knowables, there lies *Nirvikalpa Dasha* - rambleless state of *Upayoga*.

Here someone may say that the non-omniscient's *Upayoga* assuredly rambles in the several knowables; how is the *Nirvikalpa* state possible there?

**Answer:** So long as the *Upayoga* remains engaged in one object, till then it is termed as *Nirvikalpa*. In scriptural doctrine the differentia of meditation (*Dhyana*) also is stated thus: "एकाग्रचित्तानिरोधो ध्यानम् ।" (तत्त्वार्थसूत्र-9/27) which means "Where the concentration of thought be mainly in one object only and the other thoughts stop"- it is termed as meditation (*Dhyana*). In the commentary *Sarvartha-Siddhi* of *Tattovartha Sutra* book, this is specifically described- "If meditation be the name of stopping all sorts of thoughts then it would amount to senselessness. And there is another aspect also that (in meditation state) from the continuance point of view the knowing of several knowables (objects) can also be there but so long as the state of passionlessness exists and one does not ramble *Upayoga* by attachment-aversion, etc. feeling, till then, it is called *Nirvikalpa-Dasha*.

Further, he says- "If it is so, then why is the discourse given of engrossing the *Upayoga* into the intrinsic nature of the self-soul by withdrawing it from other non-self substances?

**Answer:** The *Jivas* who develop attachment-aversion feelings by engaging their *Upayoga* in substances which are the instrumental cause of auspicious and inauspicious dispositions and if they contemplate on the nature of the self-soul then their attachment-aversion feelings are reduced - such *Jivas* of lower spiritual state are admonished to meditate in the aforesaid way. For example, some woman used to go to other person's house with carnal desire; she was forbidden to go to other's house and was advised to remain at her own house. But if a woman visits some other person's house without any lustful desire and behaves in a befitting manner then there is no fault. Similarly, the state of *Upayoga* which used to indulge in other substances with attachment - aversion feelings is forbidden to engage itself in the other substances and advised to remain engrossed in self-soul. But that disposition of knowledge (*Upayoga*) which engages itself in the other non-self objects with the feeling of passionlessness and behaves righteously is not censurable.

Again he says, "If it is so then why do the great ascetics renounce thoughts of possessions etc.?"

**Answer:** As a chaste woman avoids going to others' houses which are the cause of unchastity, similarly the passionless disposition of *Upayoga* avoids engaging in other non-self substances which are the cause of attachment - aversion feelings. And visiting of such houses which are not the cause of adultery is not forbidden. Similarly, knowing of other substances which are not the causes of attachment-aversion feelings is not prohibited.

Again he says, "For example, if a woman goes to her father's house with some purpose, she may go; but going to this or that person's house purposelessly is not desirable. Similarly, one should engage his *Upayoga* in contemplation of seven *Tattoas* with some purpose but engaging one's *Upayoga* purposelessly in contemplation about *Guna-Sthanas*, etc. is not desirable ?

**Answer:** For example, a woman can go to her father's or friend's house with some purpose; similarly, for knowing the specialities of *Tattoas* the *Upayoga* can remain engrossed in contemplation about *Guna-Sthanas* and *Karmas*, etc. also. Further, it should be known here that as a chaste woman willfully should not go to the house of

wicked men but being compelled by circumstances if she has to go there but does not indulge in adultery then she is assuredly chaste. Similarly, the passionless state of *Upayoga* should not be engaged deliberately in the other objects which are the causes of attachment-aversion, etc. and if effortlessly such objects are known and feelings of attachment, etc. are not developed then such state of *Upayoga* is pure only. Therefore, believing that on undergoing the afflictions of woman, etc., the monks do not know them at all and remain engrossed in the self-soul only, is wrong. They do know them but do not develop attachment, etc.

Thus, it should be known that the passionless disposition of *Upayoga* can persist even on knowing the other non-self substance.

Further, he says- "If it is so, then how is in the *Shastras* stated that the belief - knowledge - conduct of self-soul is the right- belief - knowledge - conduct?"

**Answer:** Above discourse is meant for getting rid of the belief - knowledge - conduct of oneness in other non-self substances persisting in *Jivas* from times immemorial. On evolution of belief - knowledge - conduct of the self in the self - soul only when the belief-knowledge-conduct of keeping proclivity of attachment-aversion, etc. in the non-self substances get mitigated then the right belief, etc. are produced. If the right belief, etc. are not evolved by believing the other non-self substances to be the non-self substances then the *Kewali* (omniscient) also would not be found possessing these. So long as one believes the non-self substances to be bad and self-soul substance to be good till then the attachment - aversion feelings are obviously found persisting. But when one knows the self-soul to be the self and the non-self to be the non-self and believes and acts accordingly, then only the right belief, etc. are evolved.

Therefore, what more to state- "By whatever way, the faith of uprooting the attachment, etc. passions is evolved, the same faith is the right belief; by whatever way knowledge of uprooting the attachment, etc. passions is evolved, the same is the right knowledge and by whatever way the attachment, etc. passions are uprooted, the same very conduct is the right conduct - believing the path of liberation to be this only is desirable.

In this way, the false belief of the so-called *Jainas* possessing one-sided view with wrong concept of *Nishchaya Naya* (real standpoint) has been described.

### **The Vyavaharaabhasis (Misbelievers of Conventional Standpoint & Religion)**

Now the false belief found in so-called *Jainas* possessing one-sided view about the conventional standpoint is being described :-

In *Jina's* scripture, at many places, the preachings are found giving prominence to conventional standpoint. The *Jivas* who consider the conventional standpoint to be true, believe religion to consist only in external practices. All of their such religious practices, being contrary to the spirit of real religion, become false. The same is being described in detail.

Here it should be known that by following conventional religious practices the auspicious bondage is caused; therefore, in comparison to indulgence in sinful acts, such conventional religious practices are not prohibited. But the *Jivas* who feel satisfied by mere observance of such conventional practices and who do not make effort for attainment of right path of liberation, for diverting their attention towards the right path of liberation, their pious practices in the form of false conduct are also described as worth forsaking.

Listening to such description, if someone gives up pious practices and indulges in impious acts, he would harm himself. On the other hand, if one engages himself in the path of liberation by evolving right belief then he will be benefitted. For example, by listening to the advice of forsaking ineffective medicine, if some patient gives up taking medicine and takes unwholesome diet, he will die. Physician is not to be blamed for this. Similarly, listening to the advice of forsaking conventional religion in the form of pious practices, if some mundane being gives up real religious practices and starts indulging in passional acts then he himself will suffer from the miseries of hellish birth, etc. The preceptor is not to be blamed for this. The intention of the preceptor is to advise such persons to give up wrong belief, etc. and to adopt the right path of liberation.

With this intention only the following description is made:



## The Vyavaharaabhasis Observing Hereditary Religion

Many people are *Jainas* only because of birth in a *Jain* family. They do not know the differentia of *Jain* religion but follow the hereditary religious practices. Such *Jainas* adopt hereditary religious practices as do other people of non-*Jaina* faiths about their religious practices. If religion lies in observing hereditary practices then the *Mohammedans*, etc. would also be treated as religious persons. Where then lies the speciality of *Jain* religion?

The same is stated thus in *Upadesh Siddhant Ratnamala*:

“ लोयम्मि रायणीई णायं ण कुलकम्मि कइयावि ।  
किं पुण तिलोय पहुणो जिणंदधम्माहिगारम्मि ॥ 7 ॥”

**Meaning:** In the world, in government policy also, justice is never administered on the basis of heredity. If a person is caught being involved in theft then he is not set free because he belongs to a family of thieves by heredity. He is definitely punished. How is it possible then to administer justice with reference to religious practices in the religion of omniscient *Jina* God on the basis of heredity?

And if the father be a pauper and the son becomes rich then son does not remain a pauper by considering heredity. What then is the purpose of heredity in religion? And the father may obtain hellish birth and the son may attain *Moksha* (liberation), how is heredity maintained here? If the heredity be the determining factor the son also should have a hellish birth. Therefore, heredity has no role to play in religion.

If due to bad times, even in *Jain* religion, sinful persons have started the contrary practices of fostering objects of sensual pleasures by adoration of false deity - preceptor - religion then by interpreting the *Shastras* correctly one should give up such practices and act according to *Jina's* commandments.

Here someone may say that it is not justifiable to give up traditions and start new path of religion?

**Answer:** If one starts following a new path by his own understanding then it is not proper. By abandoning the eternal tradition of *Jain* religion described in *Jain Shastras* the sinful persons

have in-between started contrary tradition; how can such sinful practices be termed as traditional religious path? And by forsaking such new practices if someone follows the old traditional practices as described in *Jain Shastras*, how can this be called a new path?

Further, if the religious practices followed in the family tradition are in accordance with *Jina's* commandment then one should also follow such practice. But it should be adopted not knowing it to be traditional but believing it to be religious and after ascertaining its nature, fruit, etc. The one, who follows even the real religion knowing it to be hereditary, cannot be called a religious person because if his family members give up such practices he will also do so. His such conduct is not with a religious instinct but by fear of heredity. Therefore, he is not a religious person.

Therefore, one may consider heredity as a determining factor in the activities of marriage, etc. but in activities pertaining to religion one should not consider heredity. One should follow practices in accordance with the true religion.

### **The Vyavaharaabhis Following Conventional Religious Practices Blindly**

Further, many people are *Jina's* because they follow *Jaina's* commandment. They obey the commandments as described in *Shastras* but do not examine the truth involved in the commandments. If following the commandments only is religion then the followers of different faiths would be called religious persons because they follow the commandments of their own *Shastras*; therefore, following *Jina's* commandments by verifying the truth involved in *Jina's* preachings is desirable.

Without examining it, how is the ascertainment of right or wrong possible? Such persons obey the commandments of Jain scripture without ascertaining the true meaning as do the followers of other religions about their *Shastras*. This is nothing but obeying the commandments with partisan spirit.

**Question:** In (*Jaina*) *Shastras* there is described *Aajna-Samyaktva*<sup>1</sup> as one of the ten types of right belief and *Aajna-Vichaya*<sup>2</sup> as a type of

---

1. Aajna-Samyaktva = Belief based on precepts.

2. Aajna-Vichaya = Contemplation on *Jina's* preachings.

*Dharma-Dhyana* (virtuous meditation). Further, in the description of *Nih-shankit Anga*<sup>3</sup> it is forbidden to raise any query in *Jina's* preachings; how is it so?

In the *Shastra* many statements are such, the truth of which can be verified by direct (*Pratyaksha*) and deductive (*Anumaan*) knowledge. And many statements are such which are not cognizable through direct or deductive knowledge. These are to be believed to be valid as per the commandments. There the statements which are similar in different *Shastras* need no verification but the statements which are mutually contradictory, out of them the statements which are cognizable by direct and deductive knowledge should be verified by examination. Such statements also should be treated to be valid which are not verifiable by direct or deductive knowledge and are found in those *Shastras* whose statements are found to be valid. And all statements of such *Shastras* should be treated as invalid whose (some) statements are found invalid (on verification).

Here one may say that on examination some statements may be found to be valid in one *Shastra* and some other statements are found to be valid in another *Shastra* then what should one do?

**Answer:** The *Shastras* which are based on omniscient's preachings do not contain any invalid statements. Because false statement results only when either one is not having the true knowledge or is influenced by attachment-aversion feelings; but the omniscient God is not of that type. You have not examined properly that is why delusion persists.

Further he says- "What should be done if the verification by non-omniscient is not done correctly?"

**Answer:** On assaying both true and false objects and by examining them carefully true examination takes place. Where due to partisan spirit one does not verify properly there only contrary examination takes place.

**Question:** In the *Shastras* mutually contradictory statements are many; which are to be verified?

---

3. Nih-Shankit Anga = Unshakable faith being one of the eight qualities of right belief.

**Answer:** In the path of liberation *Deva, Guru & Dharma* (i.e., omniscient God, naked possessionless monk and non-violence religion), the *Jiva*, etc. *Tattvas* and the bondage & liberation path are purposeful; so, these are to be examined. In whichever *Shastras* these are described truly their all commandments should be accepted and in whichever *Shastras* these are described contrarily, their commandments are not to be obeyed.

In the world, if a person does not tell lie in purposeful acts, why will he tell lie in purposeless acts? Similarly, the *Shastras* in which the differentia of the purposeful *Deva* (omniscient God), etc. is not described contrarily, how then would the statement about purposeless islands, oceans, etc. be described contrarily; Because by describing the differentia of *Deva* etc., contrarily. Only the passional desires of speaker are fostered.

**Question:** In such *Shastras* even if the nature of *Deva*, etc. is contrarily described under the influence of passional desires but why in the same *Shastras* other statements are found contrary?

**Answer:** If only one statement is contrary then its contrary character would be discovered soon and different tradition would not be established; therefore, by making many contrary statements different tradition would be established. There, the ignorant persons are confused and believe mutually contrary statements to be true. Hence, for establishing the contrariety of purposeful things many purposeless statements are intermixed contrarily. And for making people believe, some true statements are also made. But the intelligent people cannot be misguided; by verifying the purposeful statements and being convinced about its truth, one should believe all statements of that tradition.

So, on verification, no other tradition except the *Jaina* tradition only, is realised to be true because the preacher of this tradition is a passionless omniscient, why would he tell a lie? In this manner, the right belief which is evolved by believing the *Jina's* commandments is termed as *Aajna-Samyaktva*. And concentration of thought on one particular object (as per *Jina's* commandments) is called *Aajna-Vichaya* type of *Dharma-Dhyana* (virtuous meditation).

If not believing in this manner and simply by believing the commandments without examination, right belief and virtuous meditation are evolved, how then the *Dravya-lingi* monks who became ascetics by obeying the *Jina's* commandments and obtained birth in *Graiveyaka* heavens by adopting monk's ritual practices as per *Jina's* commandments, still remained misbelievers? Therefore, only on believing the commandment by some verification, the right belief and virtuous meditation are evolved. In worldly affairs also the true character of a person is ascertained only after some verification.

Further, you have stated that by raising doubt in *Jina's* preachings, the transgression of right belief termed *Shanka* (doubting) is caused. But "I do not know how is it so?" Under such doubtful state of mind no ascertainment takes place; there the transgression termed "doubting" (*Shanka*) is caused. And if the transgression of right belief consists in the process of ascertainment only then why is in *Ashta-Sahasri* (a great book on *Jain* logic) the person believing after verification described to be better than the person who believes the commandments without verification? How are the *Prachchhana* (putting questions for clarification), etc. described as part of study (*Swadhyaya*)? Why is the discourse for ascertaining the nature of *Tattvas* and substances by means of *Pramana*<sup>2</sup> - *Nayas*<sup>3</sup> given? Therefore, believing the commandments after verification is desirable.

And many wicked persons have made imaginary statements (in the *Shastras*) and propagated them to be the *Jina-Vachana* (*Jina's* preachings); one should not consider them to be authentic by knowing them to be the *Shastras* of *Jaina* faith. There also, after examining through *Pramana - Naya*, etc., by comparing them with other *Shastras* and by reflecting on the possibility of truth involved in them, one should know the contradictory statements to be false only.

- 
1. *Dravyalingi* monk = The naked possessionless monks who have not attained right belief.
  2. *Pramana* = Comprehensive knowledge (knowing a thing from all angles)
  3. *Naya* = Standpoint (knowing a thing from some particular angle)



For example, some cunning fellow himself wrote a letter and mentioned the name of some wealthy person as its writer; if somebody loses wealth by being cheated by the name then he would become a pauper. Similarly, the wicked persons have themselves written some *Shastras* and the author's name is mentioned to be that of some *Jina*, *Ganadhara* or *Acharya* monk, etc.; if someone develops wrong belief due to delusion created by such name then he would remain a false believer only.

Further, he says- "In *Gommatasara* it is stated that if a true believer believes contrarily something due to the instrumentality of the commandments of ignorant teacher (preceptor) even then he remains a true believer. How is this statement made?"

**Answer:** This statement is made from the point of view of such objects which are not cognizable by direct and deductive knowledge, etc. and which can not be ascertained minutely; but one should know this clearly that true belief cannot be substained at all by having wrong knowledge and belief about the true nature of *Deva-Guru-Dharma* (God - preceptor and religion) & basic *Tattvas* (*Jiva-Ajiva*, etc.). Therefore, those persons who are called *Jains* simply by obeying the commandments of *Jina* without verifying them are also to be known as false believers.

And many persons accept *Jainism* even after verification but do not examine fundamentally. They become *Jains*, with hearty pleasure, knowing the *Jina's* religion to be the best of all by virtuous acts of compassion, chastity, penance, continence, etc. or by the acts of worship and magnanimity, etc. or by glories and miracles, etc. or by treating it to be the cause of obtaining agreeable objects. But such virtuous acts are advocated in other religions also. Therefore, these differentias involve the fault of general commonness (*Ati-Vyapti*).

Someone may say that the pious acts as are found in *Jain* religion are not found in the same measure in other religions; therefore, *Ati-Vyapti* (the fault of general commonness) is not there?

**Answer:** This is, of course, true and it is so also. But as you believe the differentia of compassion, etc., in the same way they also describe it. You regard compassion to consist in the protection of

other *Jivas*; they too say the same thing. Similarly, one should know about other aspects of various pious acts.

Again he says- "Their standpoint is not correct, because sometimes they lay emphasis on compassion and sometimes support injurious acts?"

**Answer:** However, in their religions, advocacy of only some aspects of compassion, etc. is found; therefore, the character of general commonness is found in these differentias. Through these differentias, correct verification cannot be done.

How then to verify correctly?

**Answer :** In *Jina's* religion the oneness of right belief, knowledge and conduct is described as the path of liberation. The right belief is evolved by having firm faith in true *Deva* (omniscient God), etc. and *Jiva* etc. *Tattvas*; by knowing them correctly the right knowledge is attained and the right conduct is evolved by virtual destruction of inner attachment, etc. passions. So, the correct description of these is not found in other religions as is found in *Jain* religion. And besides *Jains*, the followers of any other religion cannot evolve and practise these correctly. Therefore, this\* is the true differentia of *Jina's* religion. Those only who by identifying this differentia examine the truth, are only true believers. Except in this way, those who examine in a different way, remain misbelievers only.

And many persons accept *Jain* religion by company of others, several persons adopt it by seeing great persons following *Jina's* religion, many others adopt correct or incorrect practices of *Jain* religion by seeing others observing them. Likewise, many types of persons without themselves recognizing the mystery involved in *Jina's* religion, follow it and are called *Jains*. So, all such persons are to be known as false believers only.

This much speciality is, of course, there that in the *Jina's* religion the tendency of sinful acts cannot be found chiefly and the instrumental causes of virtues (*Punya*) are many, And the environment for the true path of liberation also remains available there. Hence, those who are *Jains* even by heredity are much better than others.

---

\*The oneness of right belief, knowledge & conduct constitute the path of liberation.

### **The Vyavaharaabhis Observing Religion for Temporal gains**

Further, those persons who become *Jains* or follow *Jainism* deceitfully with the object of earning livelihood or for gaining name & fame or with the purpose of achieving some object pertaining to sensual pleasures, are assuredly the sinners only. On the rise of extreme intense passions only such an intention is found. Their disentanglement also is difficult.

*Jain* religion is followed only for bringing an end to the worldly transmigration; those who wish to accomplish the worldly objects through it do a great injustice to it. Therefore, they are obviously false believers only.

Here someone argues- "The objectives which are fulfilled through injury, etc. if achieved by adopting religious practices then what is wrong in it? Both the purposes are attained?"

**Answer:** By adopting only one and the same means for fulfilling sinful and religious objects vice alone is caused. For example, if someone constructs a temple (*chaityalaya*) for religious practices and uses it as a means of indulging in vicious acts like adultery, etc., then the sin alone will be caused. If he constructs a separate house for the purpose of enjoying sensual pleasures, etc., by involvement in injurious acts, he may do so, but indulging in acts of sensuous pleasures in the temple (*chaityalaya*) is not desirable. Similarly worshipping *Jinas*, studying the *Shastras* etc. are means of religious practices. If these are also used as means of sinful acts like earning livelihood, etc., then such a person is a sinner only. By adopting injurious means, if one indulges in business, etc. for earning livelihood, etc. he may do so, but it is not at all worthwhile to think of earning livelihood, etc. through religious acts like worshipping, etc.

**Question:** If it is so, then the monks too take food at other's house for observing religious practices and the coreligionists mutually help each other. How is it justifiable?

**Answer:** They do not observe religious practices with the intention of earning livelihood, etc. Knowing them religious persons, many householders of their own help them by offering food, etc. No

fault lies in it. And if they practise religion for fulfilling the object of getting food, etc., then they are assuredly sinners. Those who accept monkhood after renouncing worldly pleasures do not have the purpose of obtaining food, etc. For maintenance of the body if someone offers food etc. of his own then they take it, otherwise remain unperturbed and do not become agitated. Further, they practise religion for their own benefit. They have no intention of getting help from others and accept only such help which they have not renounced. If some coreligionist offers some help of his own, he may do so, and if someone does not help then they do not feel distressed. So, this is as it should be. But if one adopts external religious practices with the intention of fulfilling the objective of earning livelihood, etc. and if some other person does not offer help by giving food, etc. then he feels distressed, begs for help, makes other efforts or develops negligence in religious practices, then he is to be known assuredly as a sinner only.

In this way, those who practise religion with temporal purpose are sinners only besides definitely being the false believers.

As stated above, even such followers of *Jain* religion are also to be known as false believers.

### **General Conduct of Above-said Vyavaharaabhasis Religionists**

Now we deliberate specifically on the religious practices followed by such persons:

There, many *Jivas* motivated by greed passions, follow religious practices either due to heredity or by seeing others following them; so, they have no religious intention.

If they indulge in adoration (*Bhakti*) etc. then their attention is somewhere else, the eyes are moving here and there, mouth is busy in chanting invocation, etc. and the head is in the state of salutation, etc. But this is not proper. "Who am I, whose invocation I do, for what purpose I pray, what is the meaning of the hymn, etc." -thus nothing is known (to *Vyavaharaabhasi*).

And sometimes he indulges in the adoration even of false gods etc. He does not know the distinctive characteristics of true and false *Deva* (God), *Guru* (preceptor monk), *Shastra* (scripture).

Further, if he gives donation, he gives with the intention of getting name and fame without discriminating between worthy-unworthy recipients. And if he observes penance then by remaining hungry he wishes to be recognized as a great person; attention is not on inner motives. And if he accepts vows, his attention is on external activities; even here he follows some correct activity and some false activity but does not pay attention on the inner feelings of attachment, etc. and outwardly also he engages himself in activities fostering attachment, etc.

And when he busies himself in acts of worship and outward show of religion, he adopts such practices which bring him praise in the world and foster sensuous pleasures. Further, he indulges in lot of injurious acts.

The aforesaid religious practices are meant for purifying one's own thoughts and those of others. In such practices though some injury is involved, yet those practices are to be adopted which involve less sin and produce more virtue. But the inner intentions are not identified by him and he does not know the degree of transgression involved and the virtue attained. The knowledge of this type of profit and loss and the correct-incorrect manner of practising vows, etc. is not possessed by him.

In study of scripture (*Shastra*) he simply follows the prevalent tradition. He reads it only for making others to listen; when he studies it he simply goes through it; if he listens to it then merely listens whatever is being said. But the real object of studying scripture is not grasped internally; thus he is not able to identify the inner purpose involved in all these activities.

Many *Jivas* follow the unreal conventional religion (*Abhootartha-Dharma*) thinking that we should follow the traditional practice which our elders have been following or we should follow the practices as others do or that by following these our greed, etc. passions would be fulfilled.

Further, there are many other *Jivas* some of whom willfully follow the hereditary practices and some others follow the practices with religious attitude also. Thus, they practise religion in the aforesaid manner and there are who lay emphasis on the improvement



of thoughts and feelings also which will be described later on, such mixture of thoughts and and practices is found in many *Jivas*.

### **The Vyavaharaabhasis Observing Religious Practices with Religious Attitude**

Many *Jivas* practise religion with religious aptitude but they do not know the real religion (*Nishchaya Dharma*), therefore, they practise the unreal conventional religion (*Vyavahara-Dharma*). Knowing the conventional (*Vyavahara*) form of right belief, knowledge and conduct to be the path of liberation, they practise them.

### **Contrary Form of Right Belief**

In the *Shastras* (scripture) it is stated that the right belief is evolved by having faith in *Deva-Guru-Dharma*. Obeying such commandment they have given up bowing to others excepting *Arhant Deva*, *Nirgrantha-Guru* and *Jain Shastras*; but they do not verify their merits-demerits, or even if they verify them then they do not verify correctly with true knowledge of *Tattvas*, rather verify by external differentias. With such faith they indulge in *Bhakti* (adoration) of true *Deva-Guru-Shastra*.

### **Contrary Form of Deva's Adoration**

Numerous special qualities are described as possessed by *Devas*. For example, he is adorable by *Indra*, etc., is possessed of many glories and wonders, is free from demerits like hunger, etc., possesses beautiful body, is devoid of the company of women, etc., gives sermons through divine speech (*Divya-Dhawani*), knows universe and non-universe through omniscience, has destroyed lust, anger, etc. Amongst these qualities many are related with *Pudgalas* (matter substance) and many others with *Jiva* (soul-substance); they do not discriminate them separately-separately. As someone not knowing distinctively the attributes of soul and matter in the dissimilar embodied state of human being etc. holds false faith, similarly, this (*Vyavaharaabhasi*) too not knowing distinctly the attributes of soul and matter in the dissimilar embodied state of *Arihanta*, possesses false faith.

Moreover, knowing the external qualities he believes *Arihanta Deva* to be great by such qualities but, not knowing correctly the

special qualities related with *Jiva* (soul), he believes *Arihanta Deva* to be great through commandments or believes contrarily. Because if he knows *Jiva's* qualities correctly he would not remain a misbeliever.

Further, he believes those *Arihantas* to be bestowers of heaven and salvation, bountiful to miserables, saviour of ignobles and uplifter of the downtrodden. As the follower of other faiths believes God having doership quality, this (*Vyavaharaabhasi*) too believes *Arihanta Deva* similarly. He does not know that he will reap the fruit of his own dispositions. *Arihanta* is a mere instrumental cause, therefore, those qualities are possible only conventionally.

In the absence of purity in our disposition *Arihanta* alone is not the bestower of heaven and salvation. It is said that dog, etc. attained heaven by hearing the name of *Arihanta*. Here he believes that this wonder is caused by remembering the name etc. only, but without purification of thoughts merely by chanting *Arihanta's* name heaven cannot be attained, how could then the listener attain it? By means of listening the name of *Arihanta* some disposition of feeble passion is produced in the dog, etc.; heavenly birth is caused by such dispositions; conventionally prominence is given to the chanting of *Arihanta's* name only.

Further, believing that "by chanting *Arihanta's* name and worshipping, the disagreeable associations (harmful things) are destroyed and agreeable (desirable) things are obtained," he remembers and worships *Arihanta* for eradication of disease etc. and attaining wealth, etc. But the cause of association of agreeable-disagreeable things is the rise of one's own past *karmas*. *Arihants Deva* is not the doer. By virtue of *Arhanta's* adoration, etc., forms of auspicious thoughts (*Shubhopayoga*), the transformation, etc. of the past inauspicious *karmas* take place; hence, the adoration of *Arihantas* etc. is conventionally said to be the cause of ending disagreeable things and gaining agreeable (desirable) things. But the *Jiva* who initially adores with the purpose of temporal gains has only a sinful intention. How could the transformation, etc. of the previously bonded inauspicious *karmas* be caused by the thoughts evolved in the form of craving and repugnance feelings? This is why his objective is not achieved.

Further, many *Jivas* knowing adoration (*Bhakti*) to be the cause of liberation (*Mukti*) indulge in it with deep interest. As the people of other faiths believe liberation (*Mukti*) by adoration (*Bhakti*), so these *Vyavaharaabhasis* too hold similar belief. But the adoration of *Arihanta* etc. is an attachment feeling and attachment causes bondage. Therefore, it is not the cause of liberation. When the rise of attachment *karma* takes place then if one does not do adoration then he will indulge in sinful pleasures. So, for giving up sinful attachment the true believers engage themselves in adoration and know it to be merely an external instrumental cause of liberation path, but they never feel satisfied by believing such acts only to be beneficial, rather they continue making efforts for *Shuddhopayoga* (pure passionless conduct of the self).

Same thing is stated in the commentary of *Panchastikaya* - “इयं भक्तिः केवलभक्तिप्रधानस्याज्ञानिनो भवति। तीव्ररागज्वरविनोदार्थमस्थानरागनिषेधार्थं क्वचित् ज्ञानिनोऽपि भवति<sup>1</sup>” which means this adoration only is observed by such ignorant persons who chiefly indulge in adoration only. And sometimes true believers also are found indulging in adoration, etc. for mitigating the fever of intense attachment or for avoiding involvement of attachment in unworthy acts.

Here he asks- “If it is so, then engrossment in adoration will be found more in the ignorant person in comparison to that of a true believer?”

**Answer:** From the realistic point of view, the spirit of true adoration is found in the true believer and not in the ignorant person. And from the attachment disposition point of view, the ignorant is found having excessive interest in adoration because he believes it to be the cause of liberation. But the true believer knowing it to be the cause of bondage of auspicious *karmas*, does not have such deep interest in it. Externally sometimes the true believer seems to have more attachment in it and sometimes the ignorant is found having deep interest in it.

Thus, the discussion about the differentia of adoration of *Arihanta Deva* is concluded.

1. अयं हि स्थूललक्षतया केवलभक्तिप्रधानस्याज्ञानिनो भवति। उपरितनभूमिकायामलब्धास्पदस्यास्थानराग निषेधार्थं तीव्ररागज्वरविनोदार्थं वा कदाचिज्ज्ञानिनोऽपि भवतीति। — (पंचास्तिकाय गाथा 136 टीका)

### **Contrary Form of *Guru-Bhakti* (Preceptor Monk's Adoration)**

Now the type of *Guru-bhakti* (preceptor monk's adoration) which a *Vyavaharaabhaasi* practises is being described.

Many *Jivas* are the followers of the word of commandment. "These are Jain monks, they are our *Guru* (preceptor monk), so, we should adore them"- with these feelings they adore them. And many others do verify their conduct. They adore them considering the following traits found in them: "These monks observe compassion, maintain chastity, do not keep wealth, etc., undergo the penances like fasting, etc., endure afflictions like hunger, etc., do not become angry with any body, encourage others to follow religion through preachings". But such virtues are found also in the *Paramahansa*, naked saints of other faiths and also in Jain-misbelievers; therefore, in these virtues lies the fault of general commonness (*Ati-Vyapti*). True verification is not possible through these virtues.

On consideration, some of the aforesaid qualities are found related with *Jiva* (soul) and some others with the *Pudgalas* (matter); without knowing this difference such *Jivas* remain misbelievers only by developing the feeling of oneness in the dissimilar embodied monk state. The oneness of right belief, knowledge and conduct constitutes the path of liberation and this alone is the real characteristic of the monks but they do not identify it. Because if this identification is evolved then they cannot remain misbelievers. How would they engross themselves in true adoration without knowing the characteristics of the monks? By knowing the virtuous practices and qualities which are instrumental causes of bondage of auspicious *karmas* and by believing that by their adoration they will be benefitted, they indulge in their adoration with deep interest.

Thus, discussion about *Guru-bhakti* (preceptor monk's adoration) is concluded.

### **Contrary Form of Scriptures Adoration (*Shastra-Bhakti*)**

Now the type of *Shastra-bhakti* (scriptures adoration) found in such persons (*Vyavaharaabhasis*) is being discussed:

Many *Jivas* adore *Shastras* (scriptures) knowing that “these contain the preachings of omniscient, therefore, due to omniscient’s adorableness these *Shastras* also are adorable”. And many other *Jivas* adore them by verifying that the practice of passionlessness, compassion, forgiveness, chastity, contentment, etc. is advocated in them, hence these are supreme. But such type of description is also found in the *Shastras* of other faiths like *Vedanta*, etc.

Further, in these *Shastras* the description of universe, etc. is highly deep and detailed, therefore knowing this supremeness they adore them. But in these things there is no scope for verification by means of inference, etc. How could, therefore, the greatness of these descriptions be ascertained without verifying their truth-untruth? Therefore, real examination is not possible in this way.

In these *Shastras* the description of real *Jiva* etc. *Tattvas* (elements) with their multifaced nature is found and the real path of liberation of the order of triple jewels-form, i.e., oneness of right belief, knowledge & conduct is advocated. Because of this fact only, the *Jain Shastras* possess supremeness. But they do not identify this. Because if this identification is done then the misbelief will not remain.

Thus, the discussion about the differentia of *Shastra-bhakti* (scriptures adoration) is concluded.

In the aforesaid manner, the *Vyavaharaabhasi* has ascertained the characteristics of *Deva-Shastra-Guru* and therefore, he believes that he possesses *Vyavahara Samyaktva* (conventional right belief). But their true characteristics are not grasped by him, therefore, his belief is also not true. Without true ascertainment, the right belief can-not be attained, hence he is a misbeliever only.

### Contrary Form of Seven *Tattvas* (Elements)

Further, in the *Shastra Tattvartha Sutra* 1/2- “तत्त्वार्थश्रद्धान् सम्यग्दर्शनम्” -such maxim is described. Therefore as per the description of *Jiva* etc. *Tattvas* written in the *Shastras*, he learns their characteristics, engrosses his *Upayoga* (thoughts) in them and preaches others accordingly, but the true nature of these *Tattvas* is not grasped by him and here the true nature of the substance is termed as *Tattva*.



So, how would the real belief in *Tattvas* be evolved without grasping their true nature? As to what is meant by “grasping the true nature, is explained hereunder :

As for becoming an expert (in music) some person learns through *Shastras* the accent, gamut, modulation, characteristic of melodies and kinds of rhythm and tune. But he does not identify the true nature of the tune of gamut, etc. Without identification of characteristic of melodies, etc. he assumes one particular form of accent or rhythm, etc. to be the different form of accent or rhythm, etc. or even if he discriminates them correctly he does not do so by ascertaining them properly; therefore, he does not possess expertise. Similarly, for becoming a true believer some person learns through *Shastras* the differentias of *Jiva* etc. *Tattvas* but he does not identify their true nature correctly. Without identifying their true nature, he assumes one particular *Tattva* to be a different *Tattva* or even if he understands them correctly he does not believe after ascertaining them properly; therefore, he does not attain right belief. Further, as someone who has studied or has not studied the *Shastras* but knows and identifies correctly the differentias of accent or rhythm, etc. then he is assuredly an expert. Similarly, someone who has studied or has not studied the *Shashtra* if he knows and identifies the differentias of *Jiva* etc. *Tattvas* correctly then he is assuredly a true believer. As a deer does not know the name, etc. of the accent & melodies, etc. but grasps their true nature, similarly, an uneducated person though does not know the names of the *Jiva* etc. *Tattvas* yet he grasps their nature correctly that “I myself am a soul and the rest all are different from me, these feelings or thoughts are bad and these other feelings are good - identifying the true nature in this way is called correct grasping of *Tattvas*’ nature (*Bhava-Bhasna*). The monk *Shivabhuti* was not knowing the name of *Jiva* etc. *Tattvas* and continued reciting “तुषमाणभिन्नः”. So, this was not a doctrinal word, but he became an omniscient by concentrating his meditation on the true nature of the self and non-self. On the other hand, the scholarly monk (*Dravyalingi*) learns and memorises eleven *Angas* of Jain scripture and also knows the specific details of *Jiva* etc. *Tattvas* but does not grasp correctly their true nature, therefore, remains a misbeliever only.

Now the type of belief in *Tattvas* as attained by him is being explained here:

### **Contrary Concept of *Jiva-Ajiva Tattvas***

Through *Jaina's* scripture the *Vyavaharaabhasi* gains the knowledge of various states of *Jivas* like mobile-immobile beings, etc., stages of spiritual development, quest places, etc., the kinds of inanimate substances like matter, etc. and their specialities like colour attributes, etc., but he does not ascertain their true nature as described in *Adhyatma Shastras* (metaphysics) which is the instrumental cause of attaining *Bheda-Vijnana* (discriminating knowledge between the self & non-self) and *Veetaraaga-Dasha* (passionless pure state of the soul).

And if by some chance he gains their knowledge correctly then knows only on the basis of *Shastras*, but "identifying oneself to be the self and not to intermix any disposition or quality of other non-self substances in the self and any disposition or quality of the self in other non-self substances"- such true belief is not attained by him. As the other misbelievers, without ascertainment, hold I-ness feeling in knowing activity as well as in complexion (body) etc. due to *Paryaya Buddhi* - mineness instinct in the knowing activity of the soul and discoursing-fasting, etc. activities of the body, Similarly, he also holds I-ness feeling in knowing activity of the soul and observance of vows etc. which are the activities of the body.

Though sometimes he narrates truly also as per the *Shashtra*, but he does not possess true belief by internally ascertaining their differentias. Therefore, as an insane person calls his mother as mother also, even then he is not a wise man; similarly, this *Vyavaharaabhasi* is not a truebeliever.

Further, he talks about the soul in the same way in which he talks about other things but "I myself am this soul" - such inner sense is not grasped by him.

Further, he explains to others the difference between the soul and the body in the same way in which he explains to others the difference between them and someone else; but "I am distinctly different from these body, etc. things"- such inner sense is not grasped by him.

Further, in the embodied form many activities take place in the *Jiva* (soul) and the body (at one and the same time) due to mutual instrumentality; he knows them to have taken place by the combination of both the substances; "this is *Jiva's* activity and the *Pudgala* (matter) is the instrumental cause of it, this is *Pudgala's* activity and the *Jiva* is the instrumental cause of it"- such inner sense, of their separate activities is not realised by him. Without evolution of such inner sense he cannot be called a true believer of the real nature of *Jiva-Ajiva*, because this only was the purpose of knowing *Jiva-Ajiva*, which he has not attained.

### Contrary Concept of *Asrava-tattva*

And in *Asrava-tattva* (Influx of *karmas*), he knows the inauspicious influx (*Papaasrava*) like committing *Hinsa* (injury), etc. as worth giving up and auspicious influx (*Punyaasrava*) like *Ahinsa* (non-violence) etc. as worth adopting. But both of these influxes are the causes of *karmic* bondage; believing them to be adoptable is false concept only. The same is described in *Bandhaadhikara* Chapter of *Samayasara*<sup>1</sup>

The instrumental cause of life & death, happiness & sorrow for all mundane beings is their own *karmas*. When someone believes that these are caused to one *Jiva* by another *Jiva*, his such false concept is the cause of bondage. The false concept of making other beings happy and helping them to remain alive is the cause of *Punya-bandha* (bondage of auspicious *karmas*) and the misconception of killing or causing sorrow is the cause of *Papa-bandha* (bondage of inauspicious *karmas*).

Thus like *Ahinsa* (non-violence), speaking truth, etc. are the causes of auspicious bondage and like *Hinsa* (violence) telling lies, etc. are the causes of inauspicious bondage. All these fallacies are to be renounced. Hence, knowing *Ahinsa* etc. (virtuous acts) also as the cause of bondage like *Hinsa* etc. (vicious acts), one should believe these (virtuous acts of *Ahinsa* etc.) worth giving up only.

1. *Samayasara* Gatha No. 254 to 256 and following verses from its commentary:

सर्वं सदैव नियतं भवति स्वकीयकर्मोदयान्मरणजीवितदुःखसौख्यम् ।  
अज्ञानमेतदिह यत् परः परस्य कुर्यात्पुमान्मरणजीवितदुःखसौख्यम् ॥ 168 ॥  
अज्ञानमेतदधिगम्य परात्परस्य पश्यन्ति ये मरणजीवितदुःखसौख्यम् ।  
कर्म्मण्यहं कृतिरसेन चिकीर्षवस्ते मिथ्यादृशो नियतमात्महनो भवन्ति ॥ 169 ॥

In *Hinsa* (violence) one has the tendency of killing other *Jivas*, but no *Jiva* dies without the end of his age *karma*; this person due to his own malicious feelings binds himself by inauspicious *karmas*. In *Ahinsa* (non-violence) one has the tendency of protecting the other *Jiva* but no *Jiva* remains alive without existence of his age *karma*. This person due to his own auspicious attachment feeling binds himself by auspicious *karmas*. Thus both of these are worth giving up. When one remains a seer-knower only by evolving passionless state no bondage is caused - such a state is worth evolving.

Therefore, till such a state of passionless is not attained, one should engage himself in auspicious form of conduct but at the same time he should maintain his belief that this too is the cause of bondage and hence worth giving up; if in his belief he treats it to be the path of liberation then he assuredly is a misbeliever.

Further, wrong belief (*Mithyatva*), non-abstinence (*Avirati*), passions (*Kashayas*) and *Vibrational* activity of soul (*Yoga*) all these are the causes of *Asrava* (influx). The *Vyavaharaabhasi* believes these apparently but he does not identify correctly their inner nature.

He believes *Graheeta-Mithyatva* (newly acquired misbelief) in the form of adoration of false gods, etc. only to be the *Mithyatva* (wrong belief), but he does not identify the *Agraheeta-Mithyatva* (misbelief not acquired newly) which is found existing from beginningless time.

Further, he understands *Avirati* (vowlessness) to consist in external indulgence in injury of mobile and immobile beings and the objects of senses and mind. "But in injury (*Hinsa*) the basic factor is inattentiveness and in indulgence in sensual pleasures the basic factor is inner attachment", he does not pay attention on these. Further, he knows that passions (*Kashayas*) consist in external acts of anger, etc. but the attachment-aversion feelings which are persisting in the inner-self, he does not identify them. He considers the external actions of body, mind & speech to be *Yoga* (vibrational activity), but he does not identify the vibrations (*Yogas*) existing in the soul potentially.

In this way he knows contrarily the nature of *Asravas* (influx).

And the psychic influxes which are existing in the form of delusion, attachment-aversion, he does not bother to exterminate

them, rather makes effort for controlling external actions or for removing the external instrumental causes. But by removing them the psychic influx (*Bhavaasrava*) is not uprooted. The *Dravyalingi* monk does not adore other *Devas* etc., does not indulge in injury, etc. and sensuous pleasures, does not become angry, controls mind - speech and body; nevertheless all the four kinds of *Asravas* (influxes) i.e., false belief, vowlessness, etc. are found in him. He does not indulge in these acts even deceitfully; if he indulges deceitfully then how would he attain birth up to *Graiveyaka*-heaven? Therefore, the attachment, etc. dispositions found along with false belief in the inner-self are the real *Asravas* (psychic influxes). But he does not identify them; therefore, he does not have the true belief of *Asrava-tattva* also.

### **Contrary Form of *Bandha-tattva* (Bondage)**

As regards *Bandha-tattva* he understands the bondage of *Papa* (inauspicious *karmas*) in the form of hellish life, etc. caused due to inauspicious dispositions as harmful and bondage of *Punya* (auspicious *karmas*) in the form of heavenly life, etc., caused due to auspicious dispositions, as beneficial. But all *Jivas* are found having malice towards distressing objects (disagreeable associations) and attachment-feeling in pleasant objects (agreeable associations). He too possesses the same type of belief of indulging in attachment-aversion feelings. As he indulges in attachment-aversion feelings pertaining to agreeable-disagreeable objects in the present embodied state, similar type of aptitude is found about indulgence in attachment-aversion feelings pertaining to agreeable-disagreeable objects regarding future embodied existence.

Further, the specific difference of *Punya* & *Papa* (virtue & vice) is caused in the *Aghati* (non-destructive) *karmas* only due to auspicious and inauspicious thought activity; but the *Aghati-karmas* are not the destroyers of soul's attributes. Moreover, by auspicious-inauspicious thoughts, the continuous bondage of *Ghati* (destructive) *karmas* takes place, all of which are of vicious nature only and the same are the destroyers of soul's attributes. Thus *karmic* bondage results from impure thoughts, therefore, differentiating them as good or bad is false belief only.



So, by having such faith, he does not have true belief even of the *Bandha-tattva* (bondage).

### **Contrary From of *Samvara-tattva* (Stoppage of Influx)**

And in *Samvara-tattva* he knows the *Ahinsa* (non-injury), etc. forms of auspicious influxes to be *Samvara*. But believing both *Punyabandha* (auspicious bondage) as well as *Samvara* (stoppage of influx) also by one and the same single cause only is not possible.

**Question:** The monks have only one disposition in one unit of time; there, both bondage as well as stoppage and shedding of *karmas* (*Samvara* & *Nirjara*) also are caused to them; how is it so?

**Answer:** That disposition is of mixed form. Partly it has become passionless and partly it contains passions. The parts which have become passionless cause *Samvara* (stoppage of influx) and the parts which contain passions cause *Bandha* (bondage). Thus, by one disposition two types of actions are caused but believing that both *Punya-asrava* (auspicious influx & bondage) and *Samvara-Nirjara* (stoppage & shedding of *karmas*) also are caused by one and the same disposition of auspicious attachment only is a fallacy. In the mixed state of a disposition also “this part consists of passions and this part consists of passionlessness” – such identification is possessed by a true believer only; therefore, he believes the remaining part of passion as worth giving up. The misbeliever does not have such discrimination, therefore, fallaciously understanding *Samvara* to consist in passional disposition, he believes the acts of auspicious attachment as worth adopting.

Further, in the scripture, it is described that *Samvara* is effected by *Gupti* (control), *Samiti* (carefulness) *Dharma* (virtue), *Anupreksha* (contemplation) *Parishaha-Jaya* (conquest over afflictions) and *Charitra* (conduct)<sup>1</sup>. But he does not have right faith of these also. The same is explained here-under :

(a) ***Gupti* (Control):** He believes *Gupti* to consist in controlling external activities of mind, speech and body, not contemplating on sinful activities, observing silence and not making movement, etc.

1. स गुप्तिसमिति धर्मानुपेक्षापरिषहजयचारिभैः। (तत्त्वार्थसूत्र 9-2)

But here different kinds of thoughts (ruminations) are found arising in the mind due to auspicious attachment in the form of *Bhakti* (adoration) etc. There is willful control of speech and body. But all this is nothing but indulgence in auspicious activities and indulgence in activities is not *Gupti* (control). Therefore, on evolution of passionless disposition when no indulgence is found in the activities of mind, speech and body, that very state of the soul is real *Gupti*.

**(b) Samiti (Carefulness):** He believes *Samiti* to consist in careful movement, etc. for protecting other *Jivas*. But sin is caused due to injurious thoughts and if *Samvara* (stoppage of influx) is believed to consist in thoughts of protection then what will be the cause of auspicious bondage? And in the observance of *Eshana-Samiti* (carefulness in taking of food) he avoids transgressions but there the purpose is not that of protection; therefore, the *Samiti* does not consist merely in protection.

Then what is the differentia of *Samiti*? On evolution of slight attachment feeling in monks, movement, etc. activities are found. But due to absence of excessive attachment feelings careless indulgence in those activities is not found. Moreover, the monks do not attain their purpose of movement, etc. by causing misery to other *Jivas*. Therefore, the compassion is automatically observed. Such is the differentia of real *Samiti* (carefulness).

**(c) Dharma (Virtue):** Further, they, - the *Vyavaharaabhasis* do not indulge in anger, etc. externally due to fear of *karmic* bondage, etc. or due to desire of heaven and liberation; but the intention of internal indulgence in anger, etc. is not uprooted. For example, if someone does not cohabit with other's wife due to fear of king, etc. or due to greed of one's name & fame, then he is not a renouncer (*Tyagi*). Similarly, this *Vyavaharaabhasi* is not a real renouncer of anger, etc. passions.

**Question:** How then one becomes a real renouncer?

**Answer:** Anger, etc. passions are caused due to the feeling of agreeableness and disagreeableness in other objects. On evolution of true knowledge of *Tattvas* when no object appears to be agreeable or disagreeable then automatically anger, etc. passions are not evolved and real virtue (*Dharma*), i.e., pure passionless state of the soul is thus produced.

(d) **Anupreksha (Contemplation):** Through contemplation on transitoriness, etc. knowing the body, etc. to be bad and non-beneficial he becomes apathetic towards it. This he believes to be *Anupreksha* (contemplation). So, this is analogous to the example, that there was some friend with whom one had affection and after knowing his demerits he became dejected towards him. Similarly, one had attachment feelings towards the body, etc., but afterwards realising the demerits like perishableness, etc., he became apathetic towards it; but such an apathy is malicious only. "By identifying the true nature of the self (soul) and the body, etc. and thus uprooting delusion about them neither to develop attachment feeling nor aversion feeling towards body, etc. by treating them to be good or bad respectively" – thus, for the sake of evolving true apathy, reflecting on transitoriness, etc. is only the real *Anupreksha* (contemplation).

(e) **Parishaha-Jaya (Conquest Over Afflictions):** Further, he believes enduring of afflictions to consist in not making effort for pacifying hunger, etc. on their rise. Though he did not make effort yet on rise of feelings of hunger, etc., disagreeable things, he felt afflicted internally and on meeting the objects causing sensual pleasure, etc., he became happy. But these feelings of distress and happiness are nothing but the sorrowful and cruel meditation only. How can *Samvara* (stoppage of influx) be evolved by such thoughts? Therefore, not feeling distressed on meeting the cause of misery and not becoming happy on meeting the cause of pleasure but remaining only a knower, treating them as knowables, is the real enduring of afflictions.

(f) **Charitra (Conduct):** And he (the *Vyavaharaabhasi*) believes renouncing of indulgence in sinful activities like violence etc. to be the *Charitra* (conduct). There, he believes the auspicious activities like observance of great vows, etc. to be worth adopting, treating them beneficial. But in *Tattvartha-sutra* under the description of *Asrava-Pathartha* (influx element) even the great vows (*Mahavratas*) and small vows (*Aunvratas*) are described to be the forms of *Asrava*. How can those be worth adopting? Moreover, *Asrava* (influx) is the cause of bondage whereas *Charitra* (conduct) is the cause of liberation. Therefore, treating as real conduct the observance of great vows, etc. which are forms of influx, is not possible. Only the

nonchalant state of the self, devoid of all sorts of passions, is termed *Charitra* (right conduct).

The extremely feeble form of auspicious attachment which is evolved due to the rise of partially destructive type of conduct-deluding *karmas* is the impurity in *Charitra* (conduct). Knowing that its renunciation is not possible presently, the (true monks) do not renounce it and renounce sinful activities only. But as some person forsakes tuber roots etc. kind of vegetables which involve lot of injury and eats many other types of vegetables but does not believe such eating to be virtuous, Similarly, the monks renounce the thoughts of intense passions like injury, etc. and observe great vows, etc., acts of mild passion, but do not believe it to be the true path of liberation.

**Question:** If it is so, then how are the great vows etc. mentioned under the thirteen kinds of conduct (*Charitra*)?

**Answer:** That is described as *Vyavahara Charitra* (conventional conduct) and the *Vyavahara* means conventional name (*upachara*). And only on true observance of great vows, etc., the passionless (pure) conduct is evolved - knowing such relationship, the great vows are conventionally described as *Charitra*; but from the realistic standpoint, the passionless disposition of the soul only is the true conduct.

In this way, knowing the causes of *Samvara* contrarily, he, the *Vyavaharaabhasi*, does not become a true believer of *Samvara*.

### **Contrary Concept of Nirjara-tattva (Shedding of Karmas)**

Further, he believes that the *Nirjara* (shedding of *karmas*) consists in practising penance like fasting, etc. but merely by practising external penances only, shedding of *karmas* does not occur. External penances are practised for increasing the *Shuddhopayoga* (pure passionless conduct of self absorption). *Shuddhopayoga* is the (direct) cause of *Nirjara*; therefore conventionally the penance is also described as the cause of *Nirjara*. If enduring of the external afflictions only be the cause of *Nirjara* then the *Tiryanchas* (animals) etc. also endure hunger, thirst, etc. (afflictions).

Then he argues- "They (the animals) endure the afflictions due to helplessness but *Nirjara* is caused to him who practises fasting, etc. penances willfully with religious feeling."

**Answer:** One may practise external fasting, etc. with religious feeling and *Upayoga* (attention) may be found engrossed in inauspicious, auspicious or pure (passionless) state. If the rule be that "by practising more fasts, etc. more *Nirjara* (shedding of *karmas*) is caused and by practising less fasts, etc. less *Nirjara* is caused", then fasting, etc. only would be proved to be the main cause of *Nirjara*. But this is not correct (valid). How is *Nirjara* possible by practising fast, etc. with vicious thoughts?

If it is said that bondage and shedding of *karmas* occur in accordance with inauspicious, auspicious & pure states of *Upayoga*, then how could fasting, etc. penances be treated as the main cause of *Nirjara*? The inauspicious and auspicious thoughts are proved to be the cause of bondage and the pure thought activity (*Shuddha Bhava*) the cause of *Nirjara*.

**Question:** Why then in *Tattvarthasutra* this maxim - "तपसा निर्जरा च" (9/3) i.e., *Nirjara* is caused by penance is stated?

**Answer:** In the *Shastra* it is also stated "इच्छानिरोधस्तपः<sup>1</sup>" which means restraining the desire is penance. So, if on mitigation of auspicious and inauspicious type of desires, the *Upayoga* becomes pure (passionless), there *Nirajara* is caused. Therefore, *Nirjara* is said to be caused by penance.

Here he says- "The penance is possible only on giving up the inauspicious desires of taking food, etc. but the desire of auspicious acts like fasting and expiation still persists?"

**Answer:** The true believers have no desire of fasting, etc., they have only the desire of *Shuddhopayoga* and because *Shuddhopayoga* increases by observing fast, etc., therefore, they observe fast, etc. And if they feel that *Shuddhopayoga* is likely to become weak due to weakness in the body or lack of enthusiasm in thoughts by observing fast, etc., then they take food, etc. If the purpose (of *Shuddhopayoga*) is achieved only by fasting, etc., then why did *Ajitnatha* etc., twenty-

1. *Dhawla*, vol.13, Chapter 5, Part 4, *Sutra* 26, Page 54.



three *Tirthankaras*, after accepting asceticism, took the oath of fasting two days only? They had immense power, but they practised *Veetaraaga Shuddhopayoga* (passionless pure state of *Upayoga*) by adopting such external means which were suitable to the state of their inner feelings.

**Question:** If it is so, why then fasting, etc. are termed as 'Penance'?

**Answer:** Those are described as external penances. The meaning of the word 'external' here is - "It should be visible outwardly to the others that he is an ascetic"; but one will reap the fruit according to his internal thoughts because the thoughtless activity of the body does not bear fruit.

Here he asks- "In scripture *Akama-Nirjara* i.e., shedding of *karmas* effected by enduring afflictions with patience, is also stated, which means that *Nirjara* is caused by enduring hunger, thirst, etc. without desire of any fruit. How then the *Nirjara* is not caused by enduring afflictions through fasting, etc.?"

**Answer:** In *Akama Nirjara* also, the external instrumental cause is enduring of hunger, thirst, etc. without any desire and if, there, the inner thoughts are of the order of feeble passion then the shedding of the inauspicious *karmas* takes place and the bondage of auspicious *karmas* like birth in heaven, etc. is caused. But if auspicious bondage be caused by enduring the afflictions even in the state of intense passions, then all *Tiryanchas* (animals) etc. would definitely get heavenly birth. But this is not possible. Similarly, someone endures the afflictions of hunger, thirst, etc. by observing fast, etc. willfully which is an external instrumental cause, but the fruit is obtained in accordance with inner feelings. This is analogous to calling grain as life (vitality) itself. By adopting such external means the internal penance gets boosted; therefore, conventionally fasting, etc. are called penance. But if someone observes external penance only and internal penance is not evolved then even conventionally it cannot be termed as penance.

Also it is stated:

“ कषायविषयाहारो त्यागो यत्र विधीयते ।  
उपवासः स विज्ञेयः शेषं लंघनकं विदुः ॥”

which means- "Where passions, carnal pleasures and food are forsaken, it is called a fast (*Upavasa*); mere forsaking of food is termed Langhan (missing a meal) by the preceptors."

Here he argues- "If this be so, then we will not observe fast etc.?"

**Answer:** Discourse is meant for upward movement (in spiritual path); what can we do if you adopt the path of reversion? If you observe fast, etc. with pride passion, etc., then observing or not observing (the fast, etc.) both are meaningless. And if you give up affection towards food, etc. with religious attitude then in whatever measure attachment is reduced, it is real reduction; but you should not feel contented by knowing and believing this (fasting, etc.) itself to be the penance and also cause of *Nirjara* (shedding of *karmas*).

And under the internal penances, the external observance in the activities performed in the form of expiation, reverence, service, study, renunciation and meditation, is to be known similar to that of external penances only. As fasting, etc. are external activities, similarly these too are also external activities; therefore, external observances of expiation, etc. are not internal penance. In such external activities if there be internal purity of thoughts, the same is called internal penance.

There too it should be particularly noted that on evolution of high degree of purity the thoughts get turned into *Shuddhopayoga* form which causes shedding of *karmas* (*Nirjara*) only; bondage is not caused. And on evolution of lower degree of purity, some degrees of *Shubhopayoga* (auspicious thought activity) also exist; therefore, in whatever measure purity is evolved, it causes *Nirjara* and whatever degrees of auspicious dispositions are still found, the same cause bondage. Such a mixed state of disposition is found in one and the same unit of time due to which both bondage and *Nirjara* (shedding) are caused.

Here someone may say- "By auspicious dispositions the shedding of *Papa* (vice) *karmas* and bondage of *Punya* (virtue) *karmas* take place, but why do you not accept that by pure (passionless) dispositions shedding of both *Papa* & *Punya* *karmas* is caused?"

**Answer:** While ascending in the path of liberation, reduction of duration of all kinds of *Prakrities* (*karmas*) takes place; there lies no

discrimination between *Punya* and *Papa*. And reduction of fruition in *Punya-Prakritis* is not caused even by pure passionless dispositions (*Shuddhopayoga*). Rather in the higher spiritual stages, intense bondage and rise of fruition of *Punya-Prakritis* is caused and the atoms of *Papa-Prakritis* get transformed into the form of *Punya-Prakritis* – such transformation is caused on evolution of both the *Shubha* (auspicious) and *Shuddha* (pure passionless) forms of dispositions. Therefore, the aforesaid rule is not possible; only according to the degrees of purity the rule is possible.

It should be noted that though the *Jiva* of fourth *Gunasthana* engrosses himself in the study of scripture and meditation of self-soul, etc., yet *Nirjara* (shedding of *karmas*) is not caused and excessive bondage too is caused. And though the *Jiva* of fifth *Gunasthana* (observing partial conduct) may be indulging in the acts of carnal pleasures, etc., yet *Gunashreni Nirjara* (shedding of *karmas* in geometrical progression) continues and only feeble bondage is caused. Further, the *Jiva* of fifth *Gunasthana* may be practising penances like fasting, expiation etc., in that time also *Nirjara* (shedding of *karmas*) caused is of lower order. But the monk of sixth *Gunasthana* may be found engaged in the activity of taking food or making movement, etc., in that time also *Nirjara* caused is of higher order and bondage caused is also of lower order as compared to the *Jiva* of fifth *Gunasthana* (observing the penance, etc.).

Therefore, *Nirjara* (shedding of *karmas*) is not caused according to external observances; but *Nirjara* takes place on evolution of purity (passionlessness) due to lessening of internal power of passions. The details of the same will be described later on; one should know the same from there.

Therefore, the activities of fasting, etc. are to be known as penance (*Tapa*) only conventionally. This is why it is described as *Vyavahara Tapa*. The meaning of *Vyavahara* and *Upachara* is one and the same. And the passionless form of purity evolved by adopting such (external) means is the real penance which is to be known as the cause of *Nirjara*.

Here an example is being given: Wealth and food grains are stated to be the *Prana* (vitality). Because by wealth the food grains

are purchased and the *Pranas* (vitalities) are fostered by eating the same; therefore, conventionally the wealth and food grains are described to be the *Prana* (vitality) itself. If someone does not know the senses, etc. as *Pranas* and stocks food grains, etc believing them to be the *Pranas*, he will certainly die. Similarly, fasting and expiation, etc. are called as penance because by adopting means like fasting, etc. and undergoing expiation, etc. the real penance of the form of passionless disposition is fostered. Therefore, conventionally fasting, etc. and expiation, etc., are described as penances. If someone does not know the passionless disposition form of penance and knowing these external observances to be penances adopts them only then he will continue transmigrating in the world only.

What more to say, it should be understood that passionless-ness is real religion. Many other details of the same are described conventionally to be religion from external means point of view only. So, these are to be known simply as conventional forms of religion. But the *Vyavaharaabhasi* does not know this secret, that is why he does not possess true belief of *Nirjara-tattva* also.

### **Contrary Concept of *Moksha-tattva* (Liberation)**

Further, he believes the attainment of *Siddha* state to be the *Moksha* (liberation). In such a state, birth, death, disease, etc. afflictions are destroyed, infinite knowledge of universe-nonuniverse is evolved and adorability by whole of the universe is attained – by these things he knows *Siddhas* to be supreme. But all *Jivas* have the desire of destroying miseries, knowing the knowables and becoming adorable. If he desires liberation for the sake of these things only then how is his belief different from those of other *Jivas*?

Further, he also has such inner understanding that happiness in the state of liberation is infinite times more than the happiness found in heaven. In this process of multiplication, he identifies the happiness found in both heaven and liberation to be of the same type. There in heaven, the happiness is caused by enjoyment of objects of sensual pleasures; this type of happiness is known to him but in the state of liberation, the objects of sensuous pleasures are not present, therefore, he does not understand the type of happiness found there. But because great persons describe happiness found in liberation to

be superior to that found in heaven also, therefore, he too believes it to be superior. For example, some person does not understand the true nature of music (rhythm) of the song, etc. but because all persons in the assembly praise it, so, he also praises it. Similarly, this (*Vyavaharaabhasi*) believes *Moksha* (liberation) superior.

Here he questions- "In scriptures also happiness of *Siddhas* (liberated souls) is described to be infinite times more than that of the *Indras* (heavenly gods) etc.?"

**Answer:** For example, the lustre of the *Tirthankara's* body is described to be crores times more than that of the sun's radiance, but the two lustres are not of the same type, but because in the world sun's radiance is considered to be highly significant, so, for showing greater significance in comparison the rhetorical simile is given. Similarly, the happiness found in *Siddhas'* is described to be infinite times more than that found in *Indras* etc. heavenly gods. But both the types of happiness are not alike. However, in the world *Indra's* happiness is considered to be very significant, so, for showing greater significance in comparison the rhetorical simile is given.

Again he questions- "How did you conclude that he understands the *Siddha's* happiness and *Indra's* happiness to be of the same type?"

**Answer:** He believes that the attainment of heavenly birth and the state of liberation is the fruit of the same type of religious activity. Some *Jiva* may attain the status of *Indra* etc. and some other *Jiva* may attain liberation. In this he believes the attainment of both as the fruit of the same type of religion. Although he holds this belief that one who practises such religious activity in a smaller measure attains the status of *Indra* etc. and one who practises the same in full measure he attains liberation. But he knows the type of religious activity in both the cases to be of the same type. Therefore, one who believes the causes to be of the same type, also believes the resulting fruit of the same type; because on meeting a particular cause only, a particular fruit is obtained. Therefore, we have concluded that he understands the happiness of *Indras* etc. and the happiness of the *Siddhas* (liberated souls) to be of the same type.

And due to instrumentality of *karmas*, the soul was having impure (contrary) dispositions; on their dissociation, the self-soul



attains its pure intrinsic form. For example, the atom becomes pure on its separation from the molecule, similarly this, the embodied self-soul, becomes pure after separation from the (bondage of) *karmas* etc. The only difference is that the atom is neither miserable nor happy in both the states; but the soul was miserable in the impure (mundane) state, now on its extinction the imperturbable (natural) type of infinite bliss is attained.

Further, the type of happiness found in *Indras* etc. is perturbable due to passional dispositions. So, from spiritual point of view, it is sorrow only. Therefore, both the types of happiness are not identical. Moreover, the cause of heavenly happiness is auspicious attachment and the cause of happiness attained in liberation is passionless disposition; therefore, their causes are also different, but such distinctive character is not realised by him. Therefore, he does not have the true belief of *Moksha* (liberation) also.

Thus, he does not have true belief of the *Tattvas*, that is why in *Samaysara* (*Atmakhyati* commentary on *Gatha* No. 276-277) it is stated that even if an incapable soul develops faith in *Tattvas* he still possesses false belief only. And in *Pravachansara* it is stated that belief in *Tattvas*, devoid of knowledge, of self-soul, is not efficacious.

Further, he observes the eight characteristics of right belief, avoids the twenty-five blemishes, practises *Samvega* (awe of worldly existence) etc. qualities as described in the scripture from conventional point of view; but, as without sowing the seeds, the corn is not produced in spite of adopting all other means (of cultivation), similarly, without attainment of true faith in *Tattvas* right belief is not evolved. In *Panchastikaya* commentary, where in the end of description of so-called religionist (*Vyavaharaabhasi*) is given, there too the same type of statement is found.

In this way, even on his making efforts for attaining right belief, the right belief is not evolved.

### Contrary Concept of Right Knowledge

In the scripture it is stated that true knowledge (*Samyag-Jnan*) is attained by the study of scriptures. Therefore, he zealously engages himself in the study of *Shastras*. There, he engages his *Upayoga* in the activities like learning, teaching memorising, studying, reading, etc.

but he does not pay attention on its purpose. In this sermon, it is not realised by him "what is purposeful for him"; rather he holds the intention of preaching others by studying the *Shastras* himself and where many *Jivas* accept and follow his discourse, he becomes satisfied. But the attainment of knowledge is meant for one's own benefit; however, if occasion arises for benefitting others also he discourses them also. And if somebody does not listen to his discourses he may not listen, but why should the discourser feel sorry for it? By grasping the real sense of the scripture, one should benefit himself.

Even in the study of scriptures, many *Jivas* engage themselves in the study of *Shastras* pertaining to grammar, logic, poetry, etc. but these are the cause of showing scholarship in the world; they do not contain description relating to the benefit of the self-soul. The purpose of their study is only this that if one possesses sharp intellect then he should, after studying these in smaller or greater measure, study the *Shastras* which are beneficial for the self-soul. But, if someone possesses average intellect, he should study only the easily graspable *Shastras* which are helpful in self-realisation. One should not engage himself in the study of grammar, etc. so much so that his life may come to an end without obtaining true knowledge of *Tattvas*.

Here someone may say- "If this be so, then one should not study grammar, etc.?"

**Answer:** Without the study of grammar, etc., the inner meaning of the great books does not become clear, hence their study is also desirable.

He again questions- "Why are the great books written in a manner that without study of grammar, etc. their meaning does not become clear? Why did the *Acharyas* not write the *Shastras* containing wholesome preachings in simple understandable language? They were not having any selfish motive?"

**Answer:** In dialectal language also, the words of *Prakrit & Sanskrit* etc. only are used but those are in corrupt form (*Apbhransha*). Moreover, the dialectal language is found in different-different forms from place to place, then how could the great persons (*saints*) write the *Apbharansha* words in the *Shastras*? The young child may

speak stutteringly but the elder ones do not speak in this way. And if the *Shastras*, written in the language of one place, are taken to another place then how would its meaning become clear there? Therefore, the *Shastras* are written in the form of pure words of *Prakrit*, *Sanskrit*, etc.

Further, without grammar the real meaning of the words does not become clear; without logic the differentia and verification, etc. cannot be ascertained properly. So, knowing that without the knowledge of grammar, etc., the ascertainment of the true nature of the substances cannot be done correctly through the words, the scriptures are written in accordance with their orthographical tradition. In the dialectal language also, only by making some use of their orthographical tradition the discourses are possible but by making greater use of their orthographical tradition the ascertainment cannot be done more clearly.

**Question:** "If it is so, why then books are now written in spoken language?"

**Answer:** Knowing that *Jivas* level of knowledge is reduced due to bad times and considering that people will understand to the extent they possess knowledge, the scriptures are now written in spoken language. Therefore, such *Jivas* who are not able to learn grammar, etc., should study through such books only.

And the *Jivas* who learn grammar etc. in detail with the purpose of expanding the meaning of various words in different ways and study books on logic, etc. for proving their greatness through arguments and counter-arguments and study poetry for showing their cleverness, study these with the object of fulfilling wordly desires, are not religious persons. Only such persons should be known to be religious and wise persons who study in some measure these books as per their capacity with the purpose of self-enlightenment through the ascertainment of *Tattvas* (substances) etc.

And many people study the mythological books (*Puranas*) describing the consequences (fruits) of virtue and vice (*Punya & Papa*), the ethical books describing the virtuous and vicious activities and the books of aetiology (*Karnanuyoga*) describing *Jivas*' spiritual stages of development (*Gunasthanas*), quest places (*Margana sthanas*), *karma Prakritis* (types etc. of *karmic* matter) and the details of three worlds

(universe) etc.; but if they do not think over the purpose of their study, then their all such study is nothing but the memorisation and repetition like that of a parrot only. And if they think over the purpose of these *Shastras* also then they come to know the *Papa* (vice) as harmful, *Punya* (virtue) as beneficial and also know the differentias of spiritual stages and believe that they will be benefitted to the extent to which they study these *Shastras*; only this much purpose is kept in view by them. So, by such study and attitude, at least this much will be achieved that they will not get a hellish birth and will get heavenly birth; but the real right path of liberation will not be achieved.

First of all one must acquire the correct knowledge of the *Tattvas*, then he should know that the fruit of *Punya-Papa* (virtue & vice) is transmigration (*sansara*), should believe that liberation (*Moksha*) is attainable by *Shuddhopayoga* (passion-less pure conduct) and should know that *Gunasthanas* (spiritual stages) etc. are described as the states of *Jivas* from conventional point of view. Thus by believing these (*Tattvas* etc.) as they really are, if he devotes himself in their study, then the right knowledge will be evolved.

In fact, the means of attaining true knowledge of *Tattvas* are the *Shastras* of *Dravyaanuyoga* (metaphysics) wherein the real nature of soul is described. Many *Jivas* study these *Shastras* also but they do not believe the self to be the self, non-self to be the non-self and *Asrava* (influx) etc. to be the *Asrava* etc. with due ascertainment as is described in those *Shastras*. By mouth the *Vyavaharaabhasi* may describe the *Tattvas* exactly (as described in *Shastras*), by listening to whose discourses the other *Jivas* may become true believers. For example, a boy under disguise of a woman, sings such a song by listening to which lustful feelings may be evolved in other men-women, etc., but that boy merely repeats what he has learnt; he does not grasp the true meaning of it and therefore, he himself does not become lustful. Similarly, this (*Vyavaharaabhasi*) preaches exactly as is written in the *Shashtra* but he himself does not grasp the true sense of it. Had he evolved true belief in him, he would have not mixed the part of different *Tattva* into other *Tattva*, but he is not aware of this. Therefore, right knowledge is not evolved in him.

In this way, he may study up to eleven *Angas* (of Jain scripture), even then he does not attain self-realisation. From this angle, in

*Samayasara* etc., attainment of knowledge up to eleven *Angas* by perverse believer is stated to be possible.

**Question:** So much knowledge is attained by him but is his knowledge of the same type as was possessed by *Abhavyasen* without belief in it?

**Answer:** He (*Abhavyasen*) was a sinner who was not afraid of the activities involving injury, etc. but the *Jiva* who obtains birth in *Graivièyaka*, etc. heavens possesses such knowledge which is not without belief. He holds such belief that these books are true but true belief in *Tattvas* is not attained by him. In *Samayasara* it is stated that any one *Jiva* can obtain belief of religion, knowledge of eleven *Angas* and may be found observing the conduct of great vows, etc. also. In *Pravachansara* it is stated that a *Jiva* may obtain such a knowledge of the scriptures (*Agama-jnana*) by which he knows all substances as if they are lying on his palm. He knows this too that I am the knower of these things but “such realisation that I myself am an embodiment of knowledge (*Jnana-swaroopa*), only a sentient substance distinctly separate from other objects”, is not attained by him. Therefore, knowledge of *Shastras* also, devoid of the knowledge of the self, is not fruitful.

In this way, although he (the *Vyavaharaabhasi*) studies the *Jain-Shastras* for obtaining true knowledge, yet the true knowledge is not attained by him.

### **The Contrain Form of Right Conduct**

The type of conduct practised by such persons for the sake of right conduct is now being described:

They (*Vyavaharaabhasis*) pay attention on the observance of external conduct but they do not bother about the purity or impurity (improvement or defilement) of inner dispositions. And even if they pay attention on inner thoughts then too their attention remains fixed on the prevalent thoughts only; but on close analysis of the tradition of those thoughts and dispositions it seems that they do not care about the inner desire (for sensual pleasures). And the fruit reaped is that of the longing existing in inner feelings. The same will be discussed in detail later on where its real characteristics will become clear. So in the absence of such identification they are found making effort for external conduct only.



There, many *Jivas* follow the external (religious) conduct either due to family-tradition or by observing others or under the influence of anger, pride, deceit and greed passions. Such people do not have even a religious bent of mind; how could they evolve right conduct? In such *Jivas* (followers of external conduct) some are ignorant and some others are passionate; so due to ignorance and passional feelings the right conduct can not be evolved.

And many *Jivas* believe: "What is there in knowing, fruit will be reaped only on practising religion." Under such thoughts they continue making efforts of observing external religious conduct like vow, penance, etc. and do not make effort for attaining *Tattva-Jnana* (true knowledge of *Tattvas*). So without attaining the right knowledge of *Tattvas* even the practice of great vows, etc. is termed as false conduct only and on attaining the right knowledge of *Tattvas* one gets the title of vowless true believer even without practising vows, etc. Therefore, first of all one should make effort for attaining the right knowledge of *Tattvas* and thereafter, for the sake of lessening and destroying the passions, he should adopt the external means of right conduct. The same is described in *Shravakaachara* written by monk *Shri Yogeendra Deva* thus:

“दंसणभूमिहं बाहिरा जिय वयरुक्ख ण हुंति”।

**Meaning:** "O *Jiva* ! without the base of this right belief the trees of vows, etc. are not possible, i.e., the *Jivas* who do not possess the right knowledge of *Tattvas* cannot practise the real right conduct".

The same is being clarified hereunder: Many *Jivas* from the very beginning take (the oath of) higher vows without destruction of internal carnal desires and passions. Therefore, they want to fulfill the vow somehow. There, in such observance of vows, their inner feelings are hurt. For example, someone observes too many fasts and later on by becoming miserable like a patient passes the time somehow and does not practise the religious code. So, in the beginning itself, why should he not take such a vow only which he can observe? In such distressed feelings the *Aarta-Dhyana* (sorrowful concentration) only results, how could its fruit be agreeable? Or when the pain of that vow is not endured then in its place he adopts other means for fostering sensuality. For example, when he feels

thirsty he does not take water and instead adopts other various types of treat-ments producing cooling effect or he gives up *Ghee* (clarified butter) and instead eats other oily substances effortfully. Similarly, one should know about other conventional observances.

If the *Parishahas* (afflictions) could not be endured, the carnal desires were not overcome, why did he then take such type of vow? Why should one engage himself in such activities which might result in giving up simple means of satisfying one's desire and involve oneself in complicated means of satisfying desires? On the other hand, in such states, the attachment feeling gets intensified there.

Further, when misery is felt in observing vows then, for engaging one's attention, he thinks of other recourses. For example, after accepting the vow of fast he starts playing games; many wicked persons indulge in vicious activities like gambling, etc. or keep on sleeping. They knowingly and will-fully want to pass time anyhow. Similarly, one should know about other vows.

There are many wicked persons who first take the vow but when they feel afflicted by it then they give it up. Taking and giving up of vow is a mere sport for them, but breaking of vow is great sin. It would be better if such persons do not take a vow. In this way, the *Vyavaharaabhasis* first take the vow thoughtlessly and later on get involved in such state of affairs.

In *Jain* religion not taking a vow is not punishable. The preaching of *Jain* religion is that one should first know the real nature of *Tattovas*; afterwards whatever object he forsakes he should know its flaws and should know the merit involved in such forsaking; then he should modify his thoughts accordingly; should not take a vow merely on the strength of present thoughts only, rather should take the vow after being convinced of sustaining it in future and should also take into consideration his physical strength as well as suitability of environment related with substance, region, time and feelings etc. In this way, one should take a vow after giving due thoughts to all these things. Further, the vow taken too, should be of such a degree which would not cause feelings of disrespect towards it, and on the other hand would accelerate the feelings of taking higher vows. Such is the tradition of *Jain* religion.

Here someone may ask that the *Chandalas* etc. untouchable (low category) persons also take the vows; how do they take into consideration all these things?

**Answer:** They take the vow with strong determination that they will not give up the vow even if they have to suffer from miseries ending in death. They have no feeling of disrespect towards the vow.

And whatever vows the true believers take they do so on the basis of right knowledge of *Tattvas*.

Further, those who do not have internal feeling of detachment and dispassion and take some external vow, they indulge with excessive fondness in the beginning and end of the vow of the object which they have forsaken. For example, in the meals taken before and after observing the fast, they take heavy rich food with excessive greed passion and do this hurriedly. So, as the flow of water was obstructed, when the obstruction got removed then immediately excessive flow started. Similarly by means of vow the indulgence in the objects of senses was kept checked but the internal fondness towards it went on increasing and at the end of the period of vow excessive indulgence in the object of senses started. This means that even during the period of the vow the longing for sensuous objects (carnal desire) was not really controlled; before and after the period of the vow, excessive fondness towards it arose but the fruit (of taking vow) could be reaped only on the destruction of attachment feeling. Therefore, one should take the vow in the measure in which dispassionate feeling is evolved. Even the great monks, after taking the vow of lower degree, gradually reduce the quantity of food, etc. And if they take the vow of higher degree, they do so after ascertaining their strength (of body and soul). Thus, they act in a manner which is conducive to acceleration of higher thoughts. Only such type of religious practice is fruitful which would neither cause negligence nor result in restlessness.

Further, those who do not have religious attitude they sometimes follow higher religious practices but at other times indulge in unrestrained practices. For example, in some religious festivals they take meals, etc. many times. If there be religious attitude then they should observe suitable continence, etc. in all the religious festivals.

Further, sometimes in some religious acts they spend lot of money but if suddenly some religious activity is organised they do not spend even a little amount of money in it. However, if they have real religious aptitude then they should continue spending money as per their capacity suitably in all religious activities. Similarly, one should know in other matters.

Further, those who do not have true understanding of religious practices accept some religious rite (vow) of higher order and practise other rites (vows) of lower order. For example, they forsake wealth, etc. but they indulge interestedly in sensual pleasures like taking rich food and wearing fancy cloths, etc. And some people show their devoutness by forsaking woman and wearing the special robes, etc. and later on they indulge in forbidden trades and slanderous sinful activities. In this way, they adopt some practices of very high order and some other practices of very low order. Thus, becoming slanderous they cause mockery of religion and people pointedly say that behold ! the so-called devout person is indulging in such practices. For example, some person wears one cloth of very superior quality and another cloth of very inferior quality then he becomes an object of mockery; similarly, such religious person also becomes an object of ridicule.

The tradition of true religion is this that one should accept all religious activities (vows) possible in what soever status one exists to the extent one's passions are destroyed. If passions are destroyed in lesser measure then one should accept the rites of lower status but after accepting higher status one should not practise activities possible in lower status.

Here is a question that the renunciation of coition etc. is admonished in higher stages of householder's vows (*Pratimas*); therefore, whether a person belonging to lower status should renounce them or not?

**Answer:** A person of lower status cannot renounce them totally, some fault may persist; therefore, renunciation is admonished in higher stages of householder's vows (*Pratimas*). Whatever type of renunciation is possible in lower states, the person belonging to lower stages should also observe it; but the acceptance of that vow

which is not at all possible in lower stages is done only due to pressure of passional feelings. For example, If someone who indulges in seven bad habits, renounces cohabitation with his wife then how is this justifiable? Although renouncing one's wife is a religious act, nevertheless, first of all, seven bad habits are to be given up, then only renouncing of one's wife is desirable. Similarly, one should know about other things.

Further, some *Jiva* who has not acquired the knowledge of religious conduct from all angles, lays more emphasis on some (particular) religious rites while ignores other rites. For example, many *Jivas* while emphasising benevolence towards living beings, propagate refutation of other religious activities like worshipping, glorification, etc. Many others while emphasising religious acts like worshipping, glorification, etc., do not bother about activities involving injury, etc. Many people while emphasising penances (*Tapa*) observe fast, etc. even in the state of painful meditation and, considering themselves to be ascetics (*Tapaswi*), indulge in anger-passion, etc. undauntedly. Many others laying emphasis on charity, give donation even by earning wealth through indulgence in sinful activities. Many persons laying emphasis on renunciation of household activities, indulge in begging<sup>1</sup> etc. - in many such ways these people indulge in sinful acts by emphasising some aspect of religion while totally neglecting the other aspects of religious activities.

All the aforesaid activities of such persons are similar to that of an unjudicious trader who gets more loss in many ways through some business activity which he adopts for the sake of profit. The object of a businessman being earning of profit, what is desirable is that after considering all aspects he should act in such a manner which results in more profit. Similarly, the object of a true believer is evolution of passionlessness; therefore, after considering all aspects he should act in a manner which results in a greater degree of passionlessness; because the basic religion is passionlessness (*Veetaraḡabhava*).

1. Pt. Todarmalji wanted to give here more details of bathing, etc. *Shauch Dharma* and people engaging themselves in temporal acts by quitting religious practices. This is written in the margin column of his manuscript.



In this way, the unjudicious persons accept religious conduct perversely; therefore, they do not possess even the slightest trace of right conduct.

Further, many *Jivas* follow correctly small vows-great vows form of conduct and their thoughts are also in accordance with their conduct. They do not have any intention of (fulfilling the object of) deceit or greed passion, etc.; they follow such conduct believing it to be religion for the sake of liberation. They do not even have the longing for heavenly pleasures; but since they have not firstly acquired the right knowledge of *Tattvas*, therefore, they believe that they are adopting the means of liberation but they even do not know the means of liberation and instead adopt the means of heavenly birth only. If someone eats the clarified sugar lump knowing it to be the nectar then he can not achieve the object resulting from eating nectar; the fruit is not reaped according to one's own conviction, rather it is reaped in accordance with the means adopted.

In *Shastra* (scripture) it is stated that the word “सम्यक्” *Samyak* (right or true) prefixed to the word “चारित्र” *Charitra* (conduct) is meant for refuting the conduct followed in the state of ignorance. Therefore, first of all one should attain real knowledge of *Tattvas* and thereafter the *Charitra* (conduct) should be practised; then only it gets the name *Samyak Charitra* (right conduct). For example, if some farmer does not sow the seed and performs other related activities then how would he reap the corn? Only grass, etc. would be obtained. Similarly, the ignorant person does not make effort for acquiring real knowledge of *Tattvas* but adopts other conventional rites then how could he obtain liberation? Only heavenly birth, etc. will be possible.

There are many such *Jivas* who do not even know the names of the *Tattvas* correctly and follow the external vows, etc. only. There are many other *Jivas* who indulge in the observance of vows, etc. in the aforesaid manner on the basis of false knowledge of right belief and knowledge. Although they correctly observe the conduct of vows, etc., nevertheless, without attaining right belief and knowledge, the whole of the conduct is false conduct only.

The same thing is stated in *Samayasara Kalasha* :-

“क्लिश्यन्तां स्वयमेव दुष्करतरैर्मोक्षोन्मुखैः कर्मभिः,  
क्लिश्यन्तां च परे महाव्रततपोभारेण भग्नाश्चिरम् ।  
साक्षान्मोक्षमिदं निरामयपदं संवेद्यमानं स्वयं,  
ज्ञानं ज्ञानगुणं विना कथमपि प्राप्तुं क्षमन्ते न हि ॥ 142 ॥”

**Meaning:** Some *Jivas*, averse to liberation-path, might indulge in severe austerities involving penance of the type of heating of body, etc. and some other *Jivas* might be thinning their body and bearing afflictions by the weight of observing great vows and penance for a pretty long time, they may do so, but without attaining right knowledge they are not capable for obtaining this explicit liberated nature of soul which is devoid of all kinds of diseases, and the sentient nature which is realisable by itself.

And, in *Panchastikaya*, at the end, where the description about *Vyavaharaabhasi* is given, it is stated that even observance of thirteen kinds of conventional conduct does not lead to the path of liberation.

Further, in *Pravachansara*, observance of continence without realisation of self-soul has been stated to be fruitless. In these *Shastras* as well as in *Paramatma-Prakash* etc., other *Shastras* also, description emphasising this aspect is found at several places.

Therefore, the observance of conduct is efficacious only on attaining the *Tattva-jnana* (right knowledge of *Tattvas*) first.

Here somebody may understand that some *Jivas* externally observe the small vows or great vows, but the internal thoughts are not in consonance with that conduct and observe them with the desire of getting heavenly birth, etc. But observance with such intention results in bondage of inauspicious *karmas*. The *Dravyalingi* \**Muni* can obtain births even up to the last Graiveyaka heaven and in the five kinds of transmigrations attaining of *Deva-ayu* (heavenly life) of thirty-one *Sagaras* is described to be possible infinite times; so attaining of such high status is possible only when one observes the great vows with internal thoughts and inclination, possesses extremely feeble passions, has no desire of carnal pleasures either of

\* A naked possessionless *Jain* monk who follows literally the 28 basic rites but is devoid of true belief and knowledge.

this world or of the next world and adopts such means (vows) etc. with religious aptitude only having desire of liberation. Therefore, the *Drayalingi Muni* is not found having any apparent perversity, only some subtle perversity is found in him which can be grasped by the true believer only.

Now it is being explained how they practise religious conduct and what perversity lies in it:

Firstly, in the world knowing the agonies and sorrows of hellish life, etc. and also the agonies of birth and death, etc. even in the heavenly life, they desire liberation being dejected from the world. So, everybody knows these agonies to be sorrowful. The *Indras - Ahimindras* heavenly gods enjoy sensual pleasures due to affection in carnal desires. Therefore, those persons who believe even such sensual pleasures to be sorrow only, and by identifying the imper-turbable blissful state, desire to attain liberation, are to be known as true believers.

Secondly, the fruit of carnal pleasures, etc. results in hellish birth, etc.; body is impure, perishable and not worth fostering; relatives, etc. are selfish companions only; thus, considering the faults of other non-self objects, they forsake them. And the fruit of observing vows, etc. is birth in heaven or attaining liberation; observance of penances, etc. produces pure imperish-able fruit; torturing the body through them is desirable; the *Deva-Guru-Shastra* etc. are benedictory - likewise thinking the aforesaid qualities of other non-self objects, they (the *Vyavaharaabhasis*) accept and practise them only. Thus, in various ways, knowing some non-self object to be bad, believe it to be disagreeable and, knowing some other non-self object to be good, believe it to be agreeable. Therefore, believing non-self objects to be agreeable-disagreeable is perverse belief.

And due to such faith only, their feeling of renunciation is also of malicious form; because malice consists in knowing other things to be bad.

Someone may say- "The right believers too renounce other substances knowing them to be bad?"

**Answer:** The true believers do not treat other substances to be bad, rather they know their attachment feeling to be bad. They give up the feeling of attachment due to which the cause of attachment is also renounced. On thinking over the nature of substance, it becomes clear that no substance (non-self object) is bad or good.

Someone may say- "Is it not instrumental cause?"

**Answer:** None other substance defiles forcibly; when our own thoughts get defiled then only it is called an external instrumental cause. Moreover, one's thoughts get defiled even without that instrumental cause, therefore, it is not even an indispensable instrumental cause also. Thus, finding fault in other substance, is wrong belief. The feelings of attachment, etc. only are bad but he (*Vyavaharaabhasi*) does not understand this. Finding fault in other substances, he develops in them feeling of dejection full of malice. The real apathy consists in not finding fault or merit in any other substance; therefore, one should not know anything bad or good, should know the 'self' to be the self and 'non-self' to be the non-self; "I have no concern with other non-self substance at all"; having such belief one should remain only a knower and a seer. Such type of apathy is found in a true believer only.

Further, with the feeling of apathy he accepts small vows or great vows form of conventional conduct as described in *Shastras*, renounces, partially or wholly, indulgence in sinful acts like injury, etc. and instead engages himself in auspicious form of activities like non-injury, etc. And earlier as he used to believe his doership in the sinful activities related to embodied modifications, similarly, now he started believing his doership in virtuous activities related to embodied modifications. Thus there became parity of believing I-ness feeling in the activities related to embodied modifications. For example, "I kill *Jivas*, I am possessor of possessions" - such was his belief. Similarly, "I protect *Jivas*, I am naked and possessionless", now he believes so. Therefore, I-ness feeling in activities related to embodied modifications is false belief only.

The same is stated in *Samayasara Kalasha* also:

“ ये तु कर्तारमात्मानं, पश्यन्ति तमसा तताः ।

सामान्यजनवत्तेषां न मोक्षोऽपि मुमुक्षुतां ॥ 199 ॥”

**Meaning:** The *Jivas*, who, being covered by the darkness of falsehood, believe themselves to be the doer of the activity related to embodied modification, may even be the aspirants of liberation; but as the ordinary people belonging to non-*Jaina* faiths do not attain liberation, similarly, these *Vyavaharaa-bhasis* also do not attain liberation because of the parity of faith of doership.

And in this way, he, treating himself to be the doer, constantly engages himself through mind, speech and body in the activities of householder's or monks' religion; practises these rites in such a way that there is no transgression in them. But such thoughts are *Saraaga* (tinged with auspicious attachment feelings) whereas the *Charitra* (conduct) is a *Veetaraaga Bhava* (an attachmentless disposition of the soul). Therefore, believing such means to be the path of liberation is false belief.

**Question:** The *Charitra* (conduct) is described to be of two kinds: *Saraaga*, i.e., with attachment and *Veetaraaga* i.e., without attachment. How is it so?

**Answer:** For example, rice is of two types: one is with husk and one without husk. There, one should know that the husk is not the nature of the rice, it is a blemish in rice. Some wise person was collecting the rice with husk, seeing him, if some ignorant person, considering husk itself to be the rice, starts collecting husk only then he will uselessly become miserable only. Similarly, *Charitra* (conduct) is of two kinds: *Saraaga* (with attachment) and *Veetaraaga* (without attachment). There, one should know that the *Raaga* (attachment feeling) is not the nature of conduct, but is a blemish in conduct. Further, many true believers observe conduct with auspicious attachment; see-ing them, if some ignorant person considering the auspicious attachment (conventional vows, etc.) itself to be the conduct, adopts it (conventional conduct only) then he will uselessly become miserable only.

**Question:** Someone may ask here- "By indulging in sinful activities intense passions were caused, now on observing the aforesaid religious activities, feeble passions resulted; therefore, to the extent to which passions are reduced, you should term it conduct and to the extent to which passions exist, you may call it passions. In this way, the conduct with auspicious attachment is possible.



**Answer:** If it be so, preceded by real knowledge of *Tattoas* then what you say is correct. Without *Tattoas'* knowledge even the highest degree of conventional conduct is termed incontinent (*Asanyama*) only; because the intention of indulging in passions is not eradicated. The same is being explained:

The *Dravyalingi Muni* accepts *Nirgrantha* (naked possessionless) state by renouncing kingdom, etc., observes the twenty-eight basic codes of conduct, practises the highest degree of penance in great measure, endures hunger, etc. twenty-two kinds of *Parishahas* (afflictions), does not become perturbed even if the body is cut into several pieces, remains firm even on meeting several causes of breach of vow, does not become angry with any body, does not boast of such practices, does not follow these practices with the intent of deceit, does not desire to obtain carnal pleasures pertaining to this world or other world by such practices – such is his state of body and mind. If his state be not of such type, how would then he reach up to the *Graiveyaka* heaven? But in scripture he is termed as incontinent false believer only. The reason for this is that he has not evolved right belief and knowledge of *Tattoas*. His knowledge & belief of *Tattoas* is of the type described earlier; with such intention only he practises all the aforesaid activities, but on thinking over the tradition of the intention of these means, the intention of indulging in passions is found.

How is it so? The same is being described: “He renounces attachment feeling etc. which are the causes of vice (*Papa*) knowing them worth giving up but believes worth accepting and adopting the auspicious type of attachment which is the cause of virtue (*Punya*), makes effort for its growth; but the auspicious type of attachment also is passion (*Kashaya*) only. Since he believes passions worth adopting, then the belief of indulging in passions only persisted. Thus the intention remained only of envy towards inauspicious non-self objects; but the intention of detachment feeling in non-self objects is not evolved.”

**Question:** Even the true believer also makes effort for evolution of auspicious attachment (virtuous conduct)?

**Answer:** As someone who was to undergo great punishment, makes effort for reduction in punishment and feels happy by accepting less punishment but in faith he believes undergoing punishment to be disgraceful only. Similarly, intense vicious passions were found existing in a true believer, so he makes effort for reducing passions by taking recourse to virtuous passions, feels happy also on evolution of virtuous (feeble) passions but in faith he believes passions to be worth giving up only. Further, for example, someone makes efforts for business activity, etc. knowing it to be cause of earning and feels happy if the effort becomes successful. Similarly, the *Dravyilingi Muni* makes effort for evolution of auspicious (feeble) passions believing it to be the cause of liberation and feels happy if he succeeds in this effort. Thus, even though there lies parity in the efforts for virtuous (feeble) passions and feeling of happiness, the true believer believes it to be a punishment whereas the false believer believes it to be like a business activity. Therefore, the difference lies in the inner intention.

Further, even when this *Vyavaharaabhasi* feels miserable by undergoing the afflictions (*Parishahas*) and penance (*Tapa*), etc., he does not make effort for its mitigation but experiences the agony of these afflictions; so experiencing the agony (involved in these rites) is passion (*Kashaya*) only. Where there is passionlessness, there one knows only the knowables causing misery in the same way as he knows only the other knowables; such a state (of knowledge & belief) is not evolved in him. And if he bears them he does so only with the intention of involving in passions. That intention is such that "I suffered badly lot of pangs in hellish life being helpless; now this misery of *Parishahas* etc. is less intense. By bearing this willfully, happiness in heaven and liberation will be caused. If I do not bear it and get involved in sensual pleasures then I will get hellish birth, etc. where I will have to undergo intense misery;" with such concept he possesses disagreeable feeling in the *Parishahas*. Only with the fear of hellish birth and with the greed of happiness, he tolerates them; so, all this is nothing but passionless feelings only. Further, he thinks that "the bonded karmas do not get quit without reaping their fruit, therefore I had to bear them". So, with such thoughts he keeps on experiencing the fruit of *karmas* (*Karmafal-chetna*). Further,

from *Paryaya-drishti* (modification point of view) whatever state of misery is caused by undergoing *Parishahas* (afflictions), etc., he believes it to have been caused to self-soul, but from *Dravya-drishti* (substantial point of view) he does not identify the difference between the self-soul and the states of the body, etc. In this way, thinking from the angle of various conventional practices, he bears the *Parishahas*, etc.

Further, he has renounced the objects of worldly pleasures like kingdom, etc. and continues forsaking the favourite food, etc. So, as someone suffering from fever causing burning sensation, gives up eating of cold things due to fear of gastric trouble, but so long as he likes taking cold things till then he is not said to have got rid of the fever; similarly, the *Jiva* having attachment feeling, gives up carnal pleasures owing to the fear of hellish birth, etc., but so long as he likes indulging in carnal pleasures, till then he is not said to have got rid of attachment feeling. Moreover, as no other food is naturally liked by celestial being who relishes nectar, similarly, disliking of carnal pleasures is not evolved in him which results from the relishment of self-realisation. In this way, from the viewpoint of fruition, etc., he believes enduring of *Parishahas* (afflictions), etc. to be the cause of happiness and enjoying of carnal pleasures to be the cause of sorrow.

Further, he simultaneously believes that sorrow is caused from bearing afflictions, etc. and happiness is caused by enjoying carnal pleasures, etc. The intention of indulging with the feeling of attachment-aversion is not given up in the objects and activities which are believed to be the cause of happiness and sorrow. And there, where feeling of attachment-aversion exists, no conduct (*charitra*) is possible there. Therefore, although this *Dravyalingi Muni* undergoes penances, etc. by renouncing carnal pleasures, nevertheless, he is an incontinent (*Asanyami*) only. In scriptures he is treated to be inferior even to an incontinent (*Asanyat*) and partially continent (*Desha Sanyat*) true believer because these respectively belong to fourth and fifth *Gunasthanas* (spiritual stages) whereas this (*Dravyalingi Muni*) belongs to first *Gunasthana* only.

Here someone may say that the proclivity of passions is more in an incontinent and partially continent true believer and that in a

*Dravyalingi Muni* these are in lesser measure due to which the incontinent and partially continent true believers can take birth up to sixteenth heaven only and the *Dravyalingi Muni* goes up to the last *Graiveyaka* heaven. Therefore, you may regard a *Dravyalingi Muni* to be inferior to a *Bhavaulingi Muni* (true monk of 6th-7th spiritual stage); but how can he (*Dravyalingi Muni*) be treated to be inferior to incontinent (*Asanyat*) and partially continent (*Desh Sanyat*) true believers?

**Answer:** The incontinent and partially continent true believers do have proclivity of passions but in faith they have no intention of indulging in any type of passions; whereas a *Dravyalingi Muni* is found possessing the intention of indulging in auspicious passions, knows them in faith to be beneficial. Therefore, from the belief point of view, he (the *Dravyalingi*) has more passions than an incontinent (vowless) true believer also.

Moreover, the auspicious form of proclivity of *Yogas* i.e., activity of mind, speech & body is found more in a *Dravyalingi Muni* and the specific difference in the bondage of auspicious-inauspicious type of *karmas* in *Aghati karmas* (non-obscuring *karmas*) is caused in accordance with auspicious-inauspicious *Yogas* (activities), that is why he goes up to the last *Graiveyaka* heaven, but it is not at all efficacious; because the *Aghati-karmas* do not obscure the main qualities of the soul. What is there if he secures high or low status due to their rise? Those are merely the external associated changing facets of the mundane existence only, whereas he is a soul; therefore, the lessening of the effectiveness of *Ghati-karmas* (obscuring *karmas*) which are the obscurers of the main qualities of the soul is desirable.

The bondage of those *Ghati-karmas* is not according to the external proclivity, but it is according to the inner strength of passions. Therefore, in comparison to a *Dravyalingi Muni*, the bondage of *Ghati-karmas* is less in incontinent (*Asanyat*) and partially continent (*Desh-Sanyat*) true believers. The bondage of all types of *Ghati-karmas* to a *Dravyalingi Muni* occurs with more duration and fruition, whereas the bondage of *Mithyatva* (faith-deluding) and *Anantanubandhi* (intensest type of passions) *karmas*, etc. is not at all caused to incontinent and partially continent true believers; the bondage of

remaining *karmas* only is found, that too is with less duration & fruition. Further, *Guna Shreni Nirjara* (dissociation of bonded *karmas* in geometrical progression) never occurs to a *Dravyalingi Muni* but it sometimes occurs to a vowless (incontinent) true believer and on evolution of partial continence (small vows) and complete continence (great vows) it occurs continuously. Because of this only, he (the true believer) is termed as the treader of the right path of liberation. Therefore, in scripture, the *Dravyalingi Muni* is treated to be inferior to incontinent and partially continent true believers.

In *Samayasara Shastra*, inferiority of a *Dravyalingi Muni* is shown in *Gathas* (verses), commentary and couplets, etc. And in the commentary of *Panchastikaya*, where the description of the observers of *Vyavahara* (conventional) conduct only is given, there even on his following the five types of conventional conduct his inferiority only has been asserted. And in *Pravachansara Shastra* the *Dravyalingi Muni* is stated to be a *Sansara-tattova* (representative of mundane existence). The same point of view has been clarified in other *Shastras* like *Paramatma Prakasha*, etc. For further details, one should refer to other *Shastras* where the conventional conduct of *Dravyalingi Muni* in the form of Chanting of *Mantras*, observing penance, chastity, continence, etc. activities is described to be ineffective at several places. Such details are not discussed here due to the fear of this treatise becoming voluminous.

Thus ends the description of the false believer who follows the conventional conduct only.

### **The False Believers Possessing Fallacious Knowledge of Both the Real & Conventional Points of Views**

#### **(UBHAYABHASI-MITHYADRISHTIS)**

Now follows the discussion of such type of false believers who have misconcept about and take recourse to both the real and conventional standpoints (*Nayas*).

Such *Jivas* who believe that because in *Jina's* faith both *Nishchaya* (real) and *Vyavahara* (conventional) standpoints (*Nayas*) are stated, therefore, we should follow both of them – with such consideration,



they follow the *Nischaya* (real standpoint) as described in the discussion of the followers of fallacious knowledge of *Nishchaya naya* and follow *Vyavahara Naya* as described in the discussion of the followers of fallacious knowledge of *Vyavahara Naya*.

Althouth in their such understanding of both *Nayas*, there lies a clear contradiction, but what can they do? The true nature of both the *Nayas* has not been grasped by them and in *Jina's* faith two *Nayas* are described, so none of them can be given up; therefore, they take recourse to both *Nayas* fallaciously. Such *Jivas* too should be known as false believers.

Now the details of their proclivity are being described:

In their inner-self they have not correctly identified by ascertainment the true nature of real and conventional path of liberation. They merely believe the path of liberation to be of two kinds, the real and the conventional, on the basis of *Jina's* commandment. But the path of liberation is not of two kinds, only the interpretation of liberation path is of two kinds. Where the true liberation path is described as liberation path, it is the real liberation path. And where, that which is not the liberation path but is an instrumental cause of and is coexistent with liberation path, describing it conventionally to be liberation path, is the conventional liberation path. Because everywhere the differentia of real (*Nishchaya*) and conventional (*Vyavahara*) is of this type only. True statement is called *Nishchaya* (real), empirical statement is called *Vyavahara* (conventional); hence for the sake of interpretation only, the liberation path is to be known as of two kinds. But one is real liberation path and one is conventional liberation path – believing in this way, two kinds of liberation path, is false.

Further, he believes both *Nishchaya* and *Vyavahara* to be worth adopting; this too is a fallacy; because the nature of *Nishchaya* and *Vyavahara* is contradictory to each other. For, in *Samayasara* it is stated so:

ववहारोऽभूदत्थो भूदत्थो देसिरुण सुद्धणउ ।\*

\* “ ववहारोऽभूदत्थो भूदत्थो देसिदो दु सुद्धणओ ।  
भूदत्थमस्सिदो खलु, सम्माइट्ठी हवह जीवो ॥ 11 ॥”

**Meaning:** *Vyavahara* is *abhootartha* (unreal), it does not state the true nature (of the substance), rather states contrarily from some empirical point of view. And the *Shuddha Naya* (pure stand point) which is true (*Nishchaya*), it is *Bhootartha* (real), it states the nature of substance as it is. In this way, the nature of these two *Nayas* is contradictory to each other.

Further, you believe that the realisation of pure self-soul like *Siddha* (liberated soul) is *Nishchaya* and the conduct of the form of vows, chastity, continence, etc. is *Vyavahara*; so, your such belief is not correct, because it is not that the name of some particular quality or mode of a substance is *Nishchaya* and name of some other quality or mode is *Vyavahara*. Describing a mode or quality of a particular substance to be of the same substance only is *Nishchaya Naya* (real standpoint) and describing conventionally the mode or quality of that particular substance to be the mode or quality of some other substance is *Vyavahara*. For example, describing a clay pot to be the pot of clay is *Nishchaya* and calling the same clay pot conventionally to be the pot of *Ghee* (clarified butter) because it contains *Ghee*, is *Vyavahara*. Similarly, one should know everywhere also.

Therefore, your believing something to be *Nishchaya* and something to be *Vyavahara* is a fallacy. Moreover, in your such belief also their lies contradiction between *Nishchaya* and *Vyavahara*. If you believe yourself to be pure (*Shuddha*, i.e., devoid of blemishes) like *Siddha* (liberated soul) then why do you observe vows, etc.? If you want to attain *Siddhahood* by observing vows, etc. then in the present state your realisation of pure soul is proved false. In this way, there lies contradiction between the two *Nayas*. Therefore, believing both the *Nayas* as adoptable, is not correct.

Here lies a question that in *Samayasara*, etc., the realisation of pure soul is stated to be *Nishchaya* and observance of vows, continence, etc. is stated to be *Vyavahara*, we too believe in the same way?

**Answer:** Realisation of the pure 'self-soul is the true path of liberation, that is why it is stated to be *Nishchaya*. Here the meaning of word *Shuddha* (pure) be understood as "inseparate from the intrinsic nature of the self and separate from all non-self substances (including their qualities and modifications)". But believing the

mundane being to be a *Siddha* (liberated soul) - such type of fallacious meaning of the word *Shuddha* should not be understood.

Further, the observance of vows, penance, etc. is not the liberation path; however, merely from the instrumental cause point of view, these are described conventionally to be the liberation path, therefore, these are called *Vyavahara*. In this way, from the viewpoint of *Bhootartha* (real) and *Abhootartha* (unreal) liberation path, these are respectively described as *Nishchaya* and *Vyavahara*. So, you should believe like this only. But both of these are not true liberation paths; believing both of these to be worth adopting is nothing but the false understanding only.

There he says that in belief we keep *Nishchaya* and in practice we follow *Vyavahara* – in this way we accept and adopt both (*Nayas*).

This is also not correct because believing *Nishchaya* (real) as it is and *Vyavahara* (unreal) as it is, is desirable. Belief in one *Naya* (standpoint) only results in *Ekanta Mithyatva* (one-sided erroneous belief). And in modifications, there is no role of *Naya*. The modification is the state of substance; describing the modification of a substance to be the modification of the same substance is *Nishchaya Naya* and describing the same modification to be the modification of some other substance is *Vyavahara Naya*; describing that modification with such intention constitutes the involvement of both *Nayas*. But the modification itself does not constitute *Naya*. Hence, believing the acceptance of both the *Nayas* in the aforesaid manner also is false.

What to do then? The same is being explained :

Whatever is stated from *Nishchaya Naya* point of view should be treated as true and believed as such and whatever is stated from *Vyavahara Naya* point of view should be treated as untrue and its belief should be given up.

The same is stated in *Samayasara Kalasha* also :

“ सर्वत्राध्यवसानमेवमखिलं त्याज्यं यदुक्तं जिनै—  
स्तन्मन्ये व्यवहार एव निखिलोऽप्यन्याश्रयस्त्याजितः ।  
सम्यङ् निश्चयमेकमेव परमं निष्कंपमाक्रम्य किं  
शुद्धज्ञानघने महिम्नि न निजे बध्नन्ति संतो धृतिम् ॥ 173 ॥

**Meaning:** The *Jinadevas* (omniscient Gods) have stated that all types of conjectures like intention of causing injury, etc. and not causing injury, etc. i.e., killing as well as protecting living beings, etc. are to be renounced. Therefore, I believe that all kinds of conjectures which are based on other substances are to be given up; why do then the saintly persons not remain firmly engrossed in the embodiment of pure knowledge form of one's own greatness by accepting unwaveringly well the one supreme *Nishchaya Naya* only?

The gist is this that the *Vyavahara* is required to be given up, therefore, it is desirable to remain engrossed in one's own glory by accepting the *Nishchaya*.

Further, it is stated in *Shatpahuda*:

“ जो सुत्तो ववहारे, सो जोई जगए सकज्जम्मि ।  
जो जग्गदि ववहारे, सो सुत्तो अप्पणे कज्जे ॥ 31 ॥ ” (मोक्षपाहुड)

**Meaning:** One who sleeps in (ignores) *Vyavahara* that monk is awake in his objective. And one who is awake (engrosses) in *Vyavahara*, he sleeps in (ignores) his objective.

It is, therefore, desirable to develop faith in *Nishchaya Naya* by giving up faith in *Vyavahara Naya*.

*Vyavahara Naya* describes by intermingling self-substance non-self-substance, their modifications and the cause and effect relationship, etc. in one another; so, by such belief only wrong faith is caused. Therefore, it should be given up. Whereas the *Nishchaya Naya* describes the substances as they are, it does not intermingle one thing into the other thing; so, by such belief only right faith is caused. Therefore, such faith is worth evolving.

Here is a question that if this be so, then how is in *Jiva's* path the acceptance of both *Nayas* advocated?

**Answer:** In *Jina's* path, at some places, description is found with the prominence of *Nishchaya Naya*; the same should be known “to be exactly true”. And at other places description is found with the prominence of *Vyavahara Naya*; the same should be known that “it is not so, it is described to be so conventionally from the instrumental cause, etc. point of view.” Knowing in this way only constitutes

the acceptance of both the *Nayas*. But knowing the description of both the *Nayas* as equally true i.e., "this is also true and that is also true" – in this way knowing and accepting both *Nayas* fallaciously, is not advocated.

Again there lies a question, "If *Vyavahara Naya* is untrue, then why has it been discoursed in *Jina's* path? Only the one *Nishchaya Naya* should have been discoursed.

**Answer:** A similar type of question is raised in *Samayasara* also. There the answer given is this:-

“ जह णवि सक्कमणज्जो, अणज्जभासं विणाउ गाहेउं ।

तह ववहारेण विणा, परमत्थुवएसणमसक्कं ॥ 8 ॥” (समयसार)

**Meaning:** Just as nobody is capable in making an *Anarya* (a barbarian person) understand some meaning without use of his (barbarian's) language, similarly, without use of *Vyavahara* the discourse of *Parāmartha* (*Nishchaya*) is impossible, therefore, the discourse of *Vyavahara* is given.

Further, in the commentary of this verse it is stated that “व्यवहारनयो नानुसर्तव्यः<sup>1</sup>” The meaning of this is that for the sake of accepting and adopting this *Nishchaya* (real standpoint) the discourse is given through *Vyavahara* (conventional stand-point). But *Vyavahara Naya* is not worth adopting.

**Question:** How is the discourse of *Nishchaya* not possible without *Vyavahara*? And how is the *Vyavahara Naya* not to be accepted?

**Answer:** From *Nishchaya* (reality) point of view, the soul substance is a self-evident entity separate from other substances and inseparable from its own qualities; those who are not able to identify it, if discoursed repeatedly in this way, then they would not be able to understand. Therefore, to make them understand *Jiva* is explained by means of *Vyavahara Naya* through its embodied forms

1. एवं म्लेच्छस्थानीयत्वाज्जगतो व्यवहारनयोपि म्लेच्छभाषास्थानीयत्वेन परमार्थप्रतिपादकत्वा-  
दुपन्यसनीयोऽथ ब्राह्मणो न म्लेच्छितव्य इति वचनाद्द्वयवहारनयो नानुसर्तव्यः ।

— समयसार गाथा 8 की आत्मख्याति टीका



of human-hellish-earthern beings in association with other substances like body, etc.; then “the human being is *Jiva*, the hellish being is *Jiva*” – they are able to identify the *Jiva* along with its embodied forms.

Or (for the sake of explanation) by creating divisions in the indivisible substance, the details of *Jiva* are stated through knowledge, perception, etc. attributes and modifications. Then the knower is the *Jiva*, the seer is the *Jiva* - with these different traits, they are able to identify the *Jiva*.

Further, from *Nishchaya* (reality) point of view, passion-lessness is the path of liberation. Those who do not understand this, if discoursed repeatedly in this way, then they would not be able to understand. Therefore, by means of *Vyavahara Naya*, the details of passionlessness are explained to them in the form of observance of vows, chastity, continence, etc. with right knowledge and belief of *Tattoas* in relation to dissociation of the instrumentality of other substances; then they are able to identify passionlessness. Similarly, elsewhere also one should know the impossibility of discoursing *Nishchaya* (reality) without *Vyavahara*.

Further, here the embodied forms (*Paryayas*) of human hellish beings, etc. are stated to be the *Jiva* from *Vyavahara* standpoint; but one should not understand *Jiva* as an embodied form only. Because the embodied form (*Paryaya*) is a combined state of *Jiva* (soul) and *Pudgalas* (matter). In such state, from *Nishchaya* standpoint, the *Jiva* (soul) substance is a separate entity. That alone should be believed to be the *Jiva* (soul). Due to combination with *Jiva*, even the bodies, etc. are conventionally called *Jiva*; such statement is for the sake of statement only. In reality, the bodies etc. cannot become *Jiva* (soul) – one should evolve such belief only.

And in the indivisible soul substance, the divisions of knowledge, perception, etc. attributes are indicated, but one should not understand the soul to be having such divisions; because the divisions are indicated only for the sake of explanation. In reality, the soul is an indivisible entity only; one should believe the same only to be the soul substance. The divisions which are stated from the viewpoint of name, quantity, etc. are for the sake of statement only. In reality, those divisions are not there - one should evolve such belief only.

Further, from the viewpoint of getting rid of the instrumental cause of other substances, the observance of vows, chastity, continence, etc. is stated to be the liberation path; so one should not believe their observance only to be the liberation path; for, if adopting and forsaking of other substances be possible for the soul then the soul would become the doer and the destroyer of other substances. But no substance is dependent on other substance. Therefore, the soul becomes passionless by renouncing the feelings of attachment, etc. So, in reality, passionlessness only is the liberation path. In some way, there is cause and effect relationship between passionlessness and observance of vows, etc., therefore, observance of vows, etc. is stated to be the liberation path; this statement is for the sake of statement only. In reality, the external conduct is not the liberation path – one should evolve such belief only.

Similarly, one should know that elsewhere also the statement of *Vyavahara Naya* is not to be accepted.

Here is a question: “Whether *Vyavahara Naya* is helpful only in preaching others or it accomplishes our purpose also?”

**Answer:** So long as one is not able to identify the substance as stated by *Nishchaya Naya*, till then he should try to ascertain it through the path of *Vyavahara* (conventional means); therefore in the lower stages *Vyavahara Naya* is useful for us also, but it would be useful only when one considers the *Vyavahara* to be a conventional method and ascertains the substance correctly through it; but, if by considering *Vyavahara* also to be as true as *Nishchaya* one believes- “the substance is of this type only” - then such belief, on the other hand, would become inefficacious.

The same is stated in *Purushartha Siddhyupaya*:

“अबुधस्य बोधनार्थं मुनीश्वरा देशयन्त्यभूतार्थम् ।  
व्यवहारमेव केवलमवैति यस्तस्य देशना नास्ति ॥ 6 ॥  
माणवक एव सिंहो यथा भवत्यनवगीतसिंहस्य ।  
व्यवहार एव हि तथा निश्चयतां यात्यनिश्चयज्ञस्य ॥ 7 ॥”

**Meaning :** For making the ignorant person understand (the nature of the substance), the great monks preach him through *Vyavahara Naya* which is untrue. It is not worthwhile to preach him

at all who knows and adopts *Vyavahara* only. For example, to the one who does not know the real lion, the cat itself is a lion. Similarly, for him who does not know *Nishchaya*, *Vyavahara* alone takes the place of *Nishchaya*.

Here some thoughtless person might say -"Since you declare *Vyavahara* to be untrue and worth giving up, what for then should we follow the conventional rites like vows, chastity, continence, etc.? We shall give up them all."

**Answer:** Observance of vows, chastity, continence, etc. is not called *Vyavahara*; believing these (rites, etc.) to be the liberation path is *Vyavahara*; you should give up this belief and should believe that these are stated conventionally to be the liberation path by knowing them to be externally coexistent. These (auspicious dispositions) are dependent on other substances, whereas the true liberation path is passionlessness (an attachmentless disposition), so, it is based on self-soul substance. In this way, one should know *Vyavahara* to be untrue and worth giving up. Moreover, by giving up vows, etc., *Vyavahara* does not become worthless.

Further, we ask him- "What shall you do after giving up vows, etc.? If you will indulge in the acts of injury, etc. then even naming it conventionally to be liberation path is not possible there; what benefit will result by such practices? Only hellish life, etc. will be attained? Hence, such indulgence is nothing but thoughtlessness. However, by rooting out the state of virtuous conduct like observance of vows, etc., if only passionless nonchalant state is evolved then it is really commendable only. But this is not possible in the lower stages, therefore, it is not worthwhile to become unrestrained by giving up vows, etc. Thus, keeping *Nishchaya* in faith and believing *Vyavahara* to be useful in practice, is also fallacious belief only.

Further, for the sake of adopting both the *Nayas*, this *Jiva* sometimes pretends to realise himself as if (in the present state) he is a pure soul like *Siddha*, devoid of attachment, etc. and possessed of omniscience, etc., engrosses himself in such type of thoughts by holding meditation posture, but he is not in such a state and fallaciously believes- "In reality, I am so only," becomes contented with such belief. And sometimes verbally also he talks like this only.

But the *Nishchaya* (real standpoint) states the substance as it is. How can it be named as *Nishchaya* if one believes oneself to be what he is not explicitly? His understanding should be known to be as fallacious as that of the *Nishchayabhasi Jiva* described earlier.

Or, otherwise he believes that “from this *Naya* the soul is like this and from that *Naya* the soul is like that.” But the soul is only as it is; but he does not understand the objective of describing it through the *Naya*. For example, he believes that from *Nishchaya* point of view, the soul is like *Siddha*, possessed of omniscience, devoid of *Dravya-karmas* (karmic matter), *Nokarma* (body, etc.) and *Bhavakarma* (passional dispositions; and from *Vyavahara Naya* point of view, it is a mundane being, possessed of sensory knowledge, etc. with *Dravya-karma*, *Nokarma* & *Bhavakarma*. But such two natures of the one soul are not possible. How can it be possible for one substance only to be possessed of a particular quality and dispossessed of same quality? Therefore, believing so is a fallacy.

How is it then? As a king and a pauper both are similar from the manhood point of view, similarly, the *Siddha* (liberated soul) and the *Sansari* (mundane being) both are described to be similar from consciousness point of view. If similarity is believed to be from the viewpoint of omniscience, etc. then it is not so; in reality, the *Sansari* possesses sensory knowledge, etc. only and the *Siddha* possesses omniscience. But this much is certain that *Sansari Jiva* possesses sensory knowledge, etc. due to instrumentality of *karmas*; therefore, from the intrinsic nature point of view, if the potency of omniscience is stated to be in *Sansari Jiva* then it is not wrong. For example, the pauper possesses the potency of becoming a king; similarly, one should know about this potency also. Further, the *Dravya-karmas* and *Nokarmas* are the products of *Pudgalas* (matter-substance), so, from *Nishchaya* point of view, the *Sansari Jiva* also is devoid of them; but if (in the mundane state) the relationship is not accepted from the cause and effect point of view, which is not in *Siddhas*, then it is assuredly a fallacy. And the *Bhavakarma* (passional dispositions) is the disposition of soul and is so from the *Nishchaya* point of view, but it is produced due to the instrumental cause of *karmas*, therefore, from *Vyavahara* point of view it is stated to be the product of *karmas*. And like *Siddha* not accepting the presence of

attachment. etc. passions even in the *Sansari Jivas* (mundane beings) and believing them to be the product of *karmas* only, is also a fallacy.

Thus through different *Nayas*, believing the same one substance with respect to one particular state or quality to be "like this also and to be like that also", is nothing but the false understanding; but statements of different *Nayas* are made from different-different aspects, accepting this, the right faith lies in believing a substance exactly as it is found. Although the misbeliever believes a substance to be of multifaced nature but he cannot believe (or grasp) it by identifying it correctly - this should be known.

Further, the observance of vows, chastity, continence, etc. is found to this *Jiva*; so from *Vyavahara* point of view, "these also are the cause of liberation" - by believing so, he believes them adoptable. So, such belief of this *Jiva* should be known to be as perverse as that of the *Jiva* following conventional conduct only which was described earlier. So, similarly one should know about this (*Ubhayabhasi Jiva*) also.

Further, he believes this way also that "the observance of vows, etc., where whatever is necessary, is worth practising but one should not have the mineness feeling in it." But how would one not have the feeling of mineness in an act of which he is the doer? If the self is not the doer, then how could one have in it the feeling that it is worth adopting for me? And if he is the doer then it becomes his deed (*karma*); then automatically, the doer-deed relationship is established; so such belief is fallacious.

**Question:** What is then the right belief?

**Answer:** The observance of external vows, etc. is dependent on body, etc., the non-self-substances, but the self is not the doer of the other substances; therefore, one should neither have the feeling of doership nor the feeling of mineness in it. Since in the observance of vows, etc., one has the feeling of auspicious thought activity (*Shubhopayoga*) in the form of accepting & forsaking of some objects, this is one's own act and so, he is doer of it. Therefore, one should believe the self to be its doer and should also have the feeling of mineness in it. But one should know this *Shubhopayoga* as the cause of bondage only and not that of liberation; because the bondage and



liberation are contrary to one another; therefore, believing one and the same disposition to be the cause of both auspicious bondage and liberation is fallacy.

Hence, such a nonchalant passionless pure disposition of the soul "*Shuddhopayoga*" which is devoid of the thoughts of both vows and nonvows and wherein there remains no concern with acceptance and forsaking of other non-self substances, is the only path to liberation. And in the lower spiritual stages, many *Jivas* are found having both *Shubhopayoga* and *Shuddhopayoga* together. That is why *Shubhopayoga* in the form of observance of vows, etc. is mentioned conventionally to be the liberation path, but on pondering over the reality, *Shubhopayoga*, i.e., auspicious conduct, is assuredly only the destroyer of liberation, because that which is the cause of bondage, the same is the destroyer of liberation; one should have such belief only.

In this way by accepting *Shuddhopayoga* only to be worth adopting, one should make effort to evolve it and by knowing both *Shubhopayoga* and *Ashubhopayoga* to be worth giving up one should make effort for relinquishing them. If one is not capable of evolving *Shuddhopayoga* then he should dwell in the state of *Shubhopayoga* by discarding *Ashubhopayoga*, because in comparison to *Shubhopayoga* there is more impurity in *Ashubhopayoga*. And when one attains the state of *Shuddhopayoga* he only becomes an unattached knower of other non-self substances; there remains no purpose with other non-self substances. In the state of *Shubhopayoga*, the tendency of observing external vows, etc. is found and in *Ashubhopayoga* one indulges in external vowless activities, etc., because there exists cause and effect relationship between *Ashuddhopayoga* (impure thought activity) and the activities of other non-self substances. Moreover, the sequence of evolution of dispositions is such that first *Ashubhopayoga* disappears on manifestation of *Shubhopayoga* and thereafter *Shubhopayoga* automatically ends on evolution of *Shuddhopayoga*.

Further, some persons believe that *Shubhopayoga* is the cause of *Shuddhopayoga*; but this is not true because if such be the cause and effect relationship then *Ashubhopayoga* would become the cause of

*Shubhopayoga*. The fact is that the *Shubhopayoga* is evolved on disappearance of *Ashubhopayoga* and *Shuddhopayoga* is evolved on disappearance of *Shubhopayoga*. Further, the *Dravyalingi Muni* is found possessing *Shubhopayoga* of the highest order but *Shuddhopayoga* is not evolved, therefore, in reality there exists no cause and effect relationship between *Shubhopayoga* and *Shuddhopayoga*. For example, earlier a patient was suffering from intense disease but afterwards disease became less intense (mild), then this mild disease is not the cause of diseaselessness. This much is true that in the state of mild disease if he tries to become diseaseless then he can become diseaseless. But, if by knowing the mild disease to be beneficial, he maintains it then how would he become diseaseless? Similarly, a passionate person was having *Ashubhopayoga* of intense form of passions, later on feeble passions form of *Shubhopayoga* was evolved, then that *Shubhopayoga* is not the cause of the evolution of passionless *Shuddhopayoga*. This much of course, is true that on persistence of *Shubhopayoga* if he tries for attaining *Shuddhopayoga* then he can attain it, but, if by knowing *Shubhopayoga* itself to be beneficial, he maintains it then how would *Shuddhopayoga* be evolved? Hence, the *Shubhopayoga* of misbeliever is in no way the cause of *Shuddhopayoga*, however, assuming that the true believer, found possessed with *Shubhopayoga*, might in the near future evolve *Shuddhopayoga* – with such understanding, at some places, *Shubhopayoga* also is stated to be the cause of *Shuddhopayoga*.

Further, this *Jiva (Ubhayabhasi)* believes himself to be the follower of both real and conventional (*Nishchaya & Vyavahara*) forms of liberation path. In the aforesaid manner he believes his soul to be pure and regards such belief to be the right belief and such knowledge to be the right knowledge and conduct based on such thoughts to be the right conduct. In this way, he believes to have attained the real triple jewels (*Ratnatraya* consisting of right belief, knowledge and conduct). But being devoid of the rational thinking, he believes, knows and thinks himself to be pure although he is presently in impure state – thus deludedly he feels satisfied. Further, he thinks

that because he has faith in *Arihanta Deva*, etc. and not in any other deity, etc., and has faith in the characteristics of *Jiva*, etc. *Tattvas* as learnt from *Jaina* scriptures and not as described in non-*Jaina* scriptures, so, he has attained right belief; he further, thinks that because he engrosses himself deeply in the study of *Jaina Shastras*, so, he has attained right knowledge. And because he indulges in the practice of vows, etc., so, he believes that he has acquired right conduct - in this manner, he believes that he possesses conventional form of triple jewels (*Vyavahara Ratnatraya*). But *Vyavahara* (conventional) is the name of *Upachara* (formalization) and *Upachara* also is possible only when the conventional rites, etc. are found to have resulted in the evolution of real tripe jewels (*Nishchaya Ratnatraya*). In whatever way *Nishchaya Ratnatraya* is attained then only those instrumental causes can possibly be termed as conventional causes; but he has not even identified the true *Nishchaya Ratnatraya*; how would he then be able to attain it in this way? Simply, having become the follower of *Jina's* commandments, he practises the conventional path by seeing others. That is why he has not attained the real and conventional form of liberation path.

The real and conventional forms of liberation path will be described ahead; so by following that only, the liberation path could be attained.

In this way, this *Jiva* believes and knows the *Nishchayaabhasa* (false apprehension of *Nishchaya*) only but simultaneously knows the *Vyavahara* (conventional practices) also to be beneficial; therefore, without becoming unrestrained he does not indulge in inauspicious activities, that is why he gets birth up to the last *Graiveyaka* heaven. And if due to predominance of false apprehension of *Nishchaya*, his conduct becomes inauspicious then he may even take birth in miserable state of existence. Thus, he reaps the fruit of his thoughts & dispositions but continues to remain in mundane life only. Without attaining the right path of liberation, he does not achieve *Siddha* state (liberated non-corporeal state). Thus ends the description of misbelievers who take recourse to both *Nishchayaabhasa* and *Vyavaharaabhasa*.

## Misbelievers Nearer to Attainment of Right Belief (*Samyaktva Sanmukha Mithyadrishhti*)

Now starts the description of misbelievers who are nearer to attainment of right belief :-

Under the state of feeble passions, etc., one got the *Kshayopashama* (destruction cum subsidence) of knowledge obscuring *karmas* due to which the *Jiva* attained the potency of rational thinking about *Tattvas*; and due to feeble state of delusion (*Moha-karma*) one got interested in thinking about *Tattvas*; and because of external association of true deity, preceptor and scriptures, he got the benefit of true sermons.

There, by listening attentively to such sermons about purposeful path of liberation, characteristics of *Deva-Guru-Dharma*, etc., *Jiva-Ajiva*, etc., *Tattvas*, the self-non-self and beneficial-harmful dispositions to the self, he starts thinking deeply thus- "Oh ! I was unmindful of all these things and forgetfully, under delusion, was engrossed in the present embodied form (*Paryaya*) only, but the duration of this *Paryaya* is very short; moreover, all sorts of agreeable *Nimittas* (instrumental causes) are available to me; I must, therefore, understand all these things correctly because therein lies my own real purpose." With such thinking, he starts pondering over the contents of the sermons which he listened to.

There, the ascertainment of those things is materialised by knowing *Uddesha* (nomenclature), *Lakshana-Nirdesha* (differentias or characteristics) and *Parizsha* (logical examination); therefore, first of all he should learn their names this is *Uddesha*. Then he should know their differentias or characteristics and afterwards should start examining logically as to whether "whatever is written is possible or not".

There, learning the names and knowing the characteristics, these two things, are based on the sermons; one should memorise these as discoursed; however, in the process of their verification, one's own rational thinking is required. Therefore, one should ponder over them judiciously in his *Upayoga* (active consciousness) in solitude that "whether the facts are as sermonised or otherwise?" There he should try to understand properly through inference, etc., types of

*Pramana-jnan* (comprehensive knowledge). Or the sermon states like this and if it is not believed to be like that then it would be otherwise. So, among these alternatives which reasoning has more weight and which has less weight? Whichever appears to have more weight should be taken to be true. And if the truth seems to be otherwise than what is sermonised or if there remains some doubt or ascertainment is difficult, then he should consult the specialists and ponder over the answer received. In this manner, only one should raise questions and ponder over answers till ascertainment is not reached. Alternatively, one should discuss with coreligionists possessing similar knowledge through the process of questions and answers, convey his own understanding to them, get their response and ponder over it. And one should ponder over in solitude whatever conclusion is drawn in the question-answer process. In this manner, one should continue making efforts till he is not able to grasp the gist in his inner-self in accordance with true sermons.

If *Jaina's* sermons appear to be contrary to imaginary *Tattvas* sermonised in other non-*Jaina* scriptures or there remains some doubt about the *Tattvas*, then also one should continue making efforts in the aforesaid manner.

On making efforts in this way, such decision is reached- "I too am convinced that the truth is as preached in *Jina's* sermons"- because the omniscient *Jina* cannot be wrong preacher.

Here someone may say- "If *Jinadeva* is not a wrong preacher, then one should believe his sermons to be true; why should one verify them?"

**Answer:** Without verification, this type of understanding is possible that whatever *Jinadeva* has preached is true, but the true sense cannot be grasped by him. And without grasping the true sense, the faultless pure belief cannot be evolved, because if one's faith in truth is based simply on someone's statement only then his faith may change also by listening to the statement of someone else. Therefore, from the viewpoint of strength of conviction, the belief based on mere statement is just like no faith. Further, if the real sense of a thing is grasped, then one does not deviate from it in spite of several contrary reasonings; therefore, the conviction based on the basis of the grasping of the true sense is only the true belief.



If one argues here that the authenticity of a statement should be accepted on the basis of the authenticity of the person making the statement? Then answer is that the authenticity of a person is not proved automatically but it is based on the earlier examination of some of his statements.

**Question:** The sermons are of various types; which ones are to be verified?

**Answer:** In sermons, some *Upadeya* (acceptable and adoptable), some *Heya* (rejectable and worth giving up) and some *Jnèya* (knowable) *Tattvas*, essential elements, are described. There one must verify the adoptable and rejectable *Tattvas* because misunderstanding about these *Tattvas* causes harm to oneself. If the adoptable is considered to be rejectable and rejectable is considered adoptable, then one would harm oneself.

Again he asks- "How would harm be caused, if without verification adoptable is considered as adoptable and rejectable as rejectable on the basis of *Jina's* preachings?"

**Answer:** The true meaning of a statement cannot be understood without grasping its inner sense. This much is granted that one accepts the truth as per *Jina's* preachings but it is possible that such understanding may be reversed without grasping its true sense. In worldly affairs also, when we send a servant for accomplishing some work, the possibility of right accomplishment is there if he has grasped the true objective. If the objective is not properly grasped, he is likely to commit mistake. Therefore, for grasping the inner sense of a statement, one must necessarily do the verification of rejectable & adoptable *Tattvas*.

Further, he says- "What should one do if verification goes wrong?"

**Answer:** If there be identity in *Jina's* preachings and the result of verification done by him then he should conclude that the verification is true. For example, if someone checks the account and accounts are not found tallying as per rules then he tries to locate the mistake. Similarly, one should continue verifying one's convictions till they are found to be in accordance with *Jina's* preachings.

And about the *Jneya* (knowable) *Tattvas*, one should try to verify in so far as they are within his reach or else one should draw the inference that why should *Jinadeva* (omniscient) preach contrarily about knowable objects when no contrary statement is found in his preaching about adoptable and rejectable *Tattvas*? For example, why would one purposelessly tell a lie when he does not tell a lie even about purposeful objects? Therefore, one should know the differentia of the knowable *Tattvas* also either by verification or on the basis of *Jinadeva's* commandment. Even if the real sense of the knowable objects is not grasped then also there is no harm.

Therefore, in *Jaina Shastras* where the *Tattvas*, etc. are described, the description is done in such a manner that the ascertainment of the same by inference is possible through reasoning & logic, etc. And the description about three worlds (universe), *Gunasthanas* (spiritual stages), *Marganas* (quest places), *Puranas* (mythology), etc. are found as per *Jina's* commandment. Therefore, verification about rejectable and adoptable *Tattvas* is necessary.

There, one should identify distinctly the *Jiva*, etc. substances and *Tattvas* and the self-nonsel. Further, one should identify rightly the nature of rejectable false belief, attachment, etc. passions and adoptable right belief, etc. And one should know the cause and effect relationship (*Nimitta-Naimittikas*), etc. as it really is. Thus, one must know all such things, the knowledge of which is necessary for entry into the path of liberation. Hence, one must verify all these. One should know these basically through reasoning and logic, by *Pramana* (comprehensive knowledge view) and *Naya* (partial view) and should know their details by means of *Nirdesha* (description), *Swamitva* (ownership), etc. and by *Sat* (existence), *Sankhya* (number), etc. One should know these basically and in details as per one's power of grasping and the available instrumental means (*Nimitta*). Moreover, in this knowing process the knowledge of useful things like *Gunasthanas*, *marganas*, etc. and *Puranas*, etc. and vows, conventional rites, etc., is also desirable. Here those *Tattvas*, etc. which can be verified should be verified and those which cannot be verified should be known as per *Jina's* commandment.

In this way for the sake of such knowledge, one sometimes ponders over, sometimes reads the *Shastras*, sometimes listens to

discourses, sometimes engrosses himself in the study of scriptures, sometimes discusses through question-answer - such are his activities. He takes great pleasure in doing his work; therefore, he adopts such means with inner interest. Making efforts in this way, so long as (i) true belief of the *Tattvas* is not evolved, (ii) "This is like this only", with such sort of conviction the nature of the *Jiva* etc. *Tattvas* is not realised, (iii) till the I-ness feeling which one possesses in the embodied form is not evolved in the self-soul only, (iv) until and unless one does not identify and discriminate the beneficial and harmful forms of one's own thoughts and dispositions - till then he is a misbeliever heading towards right belief. This *Jiva* will shortly attain the right belief; he will attain right belief either in this birth itself or in the next birth.

By making such efforts in this birth, even if he is born as an animal in the next birth (in *Tiryancha* state of existence) then, on the strength of impressions of the previous birth, even without the instrumental cause of *Deva-Guru-Shastra*, he can evolve right belief. Because, on the basis of such efforts, the fruition of *Mithyatva* (faith-deluding *karma*) gets feeble. Where its rise is not found, there right belief is produced.

The chief cause (for the evolution of right belief) is this (the absence of the rise of *Mithyatva karma*) only. The external instrumental cause is the association of *Deva* (omniscient *Jina*) etc.; so, chiefly right belief is evolved through their instrumentality only. In some cases right belief is evolved in the present birth on the strength of past efforts even without the instrumentality of *Deva* etc. In doctrines "तन्निर्गर्हादिगमाद्वा" (तत्त्वार्थसूत्र 1-3) such aphorism is given. Its meaning is this that right belief is attained by intuition or by acquisition of knowledge. There, that right belief which is evolved without external instrumental cause of *Deva* etc., is stated to be produced by the acquisition of knowledge.

See ! the glory of reflection on *Tattvas* ! Without reflection on *Tattvas* one may have staunch faith in true *Deva*, etc., may study many *Shastras*, observe vows, etc., undergo penances, etc., even then he is not entitled to evolve right belief, whereas one who reflects on *Tattvas* is entitled to evolve right belief even without these (conventional activities).

Further, some *Jiva*, under some circumstances, before reflecting on *Tattovas*, may develop faith in true deity, etc., observes vows and penances and afterwards may start reflecting on *Tattovas* but he is entitled to evolve right belief only on reflection on *Tattovas*.

And someone even after reflection on *Tattovas* may not evolve right belief due to lack of ascertainment of faith in *Tattovas* and becomes interested in conventional religious practices, therefore, he develops faith in true deity, etc. and engages himself in observance of vows, penances, etc. Some other person may develop faith in true deity, etc. and simultaneously evolves right belief and in some cases observance of vows, penances, etc. may be found along with evolution of right belief or may be before or afterwards too. However, faith in true deity, etc. is essential because without it right belief cannot be evolved, but there is no such rule regarding observance of vows, etc. Many *Jivas*, first of all, attain right belief and only afterwards start observance of vows, etc., whereas in the case of some *Jivas* evolution of right belief and observance of vows, etc. is found together. In this way, the *Jiva* who reflects on *Tattovas* is entitled to evolve right belief but there is no such rule that he would invariably attain right belief because in the scriptures attainment of five types of capacities (*Labdhis*) is stated to be essential before manifestation of right belief.

### **Characteristics of Five *Labdhis* (Five Types of Capacity Attainments)**

The attainment of capacities (*Labdhis*) is of five types:-

- (1) *Kshayopashama*: (Specific state of destruction cum subsidence of knowledge obscuring karmas), i.e., attainment of rational knowledge,
- (2) *Vishuddhi*: (Feeble state of passions),
- (3) *Dèshana*: (Listening to and grasping of the *Jina's* preachings)
- (4) *Prayogyà*: (Competency of thought activity)
- (5) *Karana*: (Efficiency attainment to engross in self-soul).

on evolution of which the reflection on *Tattovas* (*Tattva-Vichara*) is possible – such a kind of *Kshayopashama* be evolved, i.e., the

absence of the rise of the *Nishekas* (atoms) of totally destructive type of *Spardhakas* (*karmas*) of which the rise-time has fallen due is the *Kshya* (destruction) and their remaining in the inoperative existing form with the capableness of coming into rise in future instants is *Upashma* (subsidence) and followed by risen state of partially destructive type of *Spardhakas* - such a condition of the *karmas* is named as *Kshayopashama*; attainment of such capacity is the *Kshayopashama Labdhi*.

And due to feeble rise of *Moha* (deluding *karma*) the evolution of mild passion form of thoughts takes place wherein the reflection on *Tattvas* (*Tattvaavichara*) be possible; attainment of such capacity is called *Vishuddhi-Labdhi* (feeble state of passions).

Further, where the grasping of and deliberation on *Tattvas* preached by *Jinadeva* (omniscient Lord) takes place - attainment of this capacity is *Deshana-Labdhi* (precept attainment). In hells, etc. where the instrumentality of (listening to) precepts is not possible, this capacity is evolved by virtue of impressions gained in the past birth.

Further, when the previously bonded duration of *karmas* (excepting age *karma*) gets reduced to the level of an *Antar Koda-Kodi Sagaras* (within crores into crores *Sagaras*, i.e., innumerable years) and the duration of fresh bondage of the level of an *Antar Koda-Kodi Sagaras* would have got reduced to its numerable division, that too, right from the start of the time of that *Labdhi* shall continue getting reduced gradually and the fresh bondage of many of the demeritorious *Prakritis* (inauspicious *karmas*) shall be going on ending gradually - thus attaining of such a worthy state of thoughts & dispositions is *Prayogy Labdhi* (competence attainment).

Attainments of these four capacities are possible to both *Bhavya* (capable) and *Abhavya* (incapable) souls. It is stated in *Labdhisara* that after attainment of these four *Labdhis*(capacities) the right belief may or may not get evolved. Therefore, there is no rule about the evolution of right belief to the *Jiva* who reflects on *Tattvas*. For example, someone was imparted instruction for his well being; knowing it, he may ponder over it as to how is this instruction beneficial to him? Later on after deliberation he may conclude that "It is so only"—such



conviction about that instruction may be evolved; alternatively, he might think contrarily or get involved in other thoughts and may not ascertain about the benefit from that instruction and so, he may not develop faith in it. Similarly, the revered preceptor preached him about *Tattvas*, knowing it he may ponder over it as to how is this preaching beneficial? Later on, after deliberation he may conclude that "It is so only" - such conviction may get evolved, alternatively, he might think contrarily or get involved in other thoughts and may not ascertain about the benefit from that preaching and so he may not develop faith in it. So, the prime cause is the rise of *Mithyatva karma* (faith-deluding karma); when there is no rise of it then true faith gets evolved; if its rise is not subsided then true faith is also not evolved. This is the rule. One's duty is only to make efforts for reflection on *Tattvas* (*Tattva-vichara*).

And it is the rule that on evolution of fifth *Karana-Labdhi* (efficiency attainment) the right belief invariably gets manifested. *Karana-Labdhi* is evolved to such *Jiva* only who has already attained the first four *Labdhis* and who is definitely to attain right belief after one *Antar-Muhurta*.

Therefore, the duty of this *Jiva* of *Karana-Labdhi* is only to willfully engross his *Upayoga* concentratedly in reflection on *Tattvas*; due to this, at every moment, his thoughts & dispositions get more and more purified. For example, some *Jiva* developed such pure thinking about the instruction which he received that because of which he would shortly attain staunch faith in it. Similarly, the thought activity of this *Jiva* (of *Karana-Labdhi*) about the preachings of *Tattvas* started becoming so pure that due to which he would soon attain right belief. Further, the sequential (instant after instant) manifestation of these thoughts as seen by omniscience is described in *Karanaanuyoga* (aetiology).

There are three stages of this *Karana-Labdhi* : (i) *Adhah-Karana*, (ii) *Apoorva-Karana*, and (iii) *Anivritti Karana* respectively. The detailed exposition of these is given in *Labdhisara*<sup>1</sup> *Shashtra*. One should know the details from there. Here it is being described in short:

---

1. *Labdhisara, Gatha 35*

These three names are from the viewpoint of thoughts of all *Jivas* of *Karana-Labdhi* of all the three times (present, past & future). *Karana* is the name of *Jiva's* thoughts & dispositions (*Parinaamas*).

Where the dispositions of prior and posterior moments are uniform, it is called *Adhah-Karana* (slow progressive thought activity). For example, the dispositions of some particular *Jiva* in the first moment of that *Karana* were having less purity; afterwards, moment after moment, the purity in dispositions went on increasing infinite times progressively. And whatever types of dispositions he may be having in the second-third, etc. moments, similar dispositions can be found in some other *Jiva* in the first moment and the purity in dispositions of these other *Jivas* may be increasing moment after moment infinite times progressively in comparison to the first *Jiva*. Such is the state of dispositions in *Adhah-Pravritti Karana*.

And where the dispositions of prior and posterior moments are not uniform but are necessarily unique (*Apoorva*) only, such stage is called *Apoorva-Karana* (highly progressive thought activity). For example, the dispositions of that *Karana* found in its first moment are not found to be of the same purity of any other *Jiva* who is in the second, etc. moments, rather are increasingly more and more pure. And here in this state, like *Adhah-Karana*, the *Jivas* who are found to be in the first moment only, the dispositions of all those *Jivas* may be found to be uniformly pure or may be with more or less degree of purity also; but here the speciality is this that the lowest order purity of dispositions of the *Jivas* belonging to second, etc. moments are found to be having infinite times more purity than that of the highest degree of purity of the *Jiva* of first moment. Similarly, the dispositions of all those *Jivas* who after entering this *Karana* have reached in the second, etc. moments, may be either uniformly pure or may have different degrees of purity, but the dispositions of *Jivas* of higher moments are not at all found to be of identical purity but are found to be of greater and greater degree of purity in comparison to the *Jiva* of lower moments. Such are dispositions in the state of *Apoorva-Karana* (highly progressive thought activity)<sup>1</sup>.

1. समए समए भिण्णा भावा तम्हा अपुव्वकरणो हु ॥ 36 ॥ (लब्धिसार)  
जम्हा उवरिमभावा हेट्ठिमभावेहिं णत्थि सरिसत्तं ।  
तम्हा बिदियं करणं अपुव्वकरणेत्ति णिट्ठिं ॥ 51 ॥ (लब्धिसार)  
करणं परिणामो अपुव्वाणि च ताणि करणाणि अपुव्वकरणाणि, असमाणपरिणामा त्ति जं उत्तं  
होदि ॥ (धवला 1-9-8-4)

And wherein the dispositions of *Jivas* of the same moments are of uniform purity only and are not of different degrees of purity - such state of dispositions is called *Anivritti-Karana*. The dispositions of all *Jivas* in the first moment of this *Karana* are necessarily identical; similarly all *Jivas* of the second, etc. moments also have identical purity of dispositions. Further, the purity of dispositions of all *Jivas* of second, etc. moments are always with infinite times more purity than the *Jivas* of the first moments.

In this way, one should know these three stages of *Karanas*<sup>1</sup>.

There, the duration of *Adhah-Karana* is one *Antar-Muhurta* wherein four essentials take place : (i) moment after moment infinite times more purity arises, (ii) the duration of fresh *karmic* bondage goes on decreasing by one *Antar-Muhurta* at every moment, this is *Sthiti-Bandhaapasarana* (reduction in duration of bondage), (iii) the fruition of auspicious *Prakritis* (*karmas*) goes on increasing by infinite times more at every moment and (iv) the fruition-bondage of inauspicious *Prakritis* goes on decreasing by infinite part at every moment; thus the four essentials take place.

Thereafter, *Apoorva-Karana* starts. Its duration is a fractional numerical part of the period of *Adhah-karana*. Here also the afore-said four essentials take place : (i) whatever was the duration of the existing past *karmas*, he decreases it by one-one *Antar-Muhurta* every moment, this is *Sthiti Kandak-Ghata* (destruction of duration bondage); (ii) further he decreases the fruition of the existing past *karmas* by one-one *Antar-Muhurta* of lesser time than the earlier one; this is *Anubhaga Kandak-Ghata* (destruction of fruition bondage) and (iii) in the period of *Guna-Shreni* (dissociation of old *karmas* in increasing geometrical progression) he causes innumerable fold times of *karmas*' stock to become suitable for dissociation (*Nirjara*); this is *Guna Shreni Nirjara*. And *Guna-Sankramana* (transformation of *Prakritis* into one another) does not occur here, but occurs at some other place in *Apoorva-Karana*.

1. एगसमए वट्टताणं जीवाणं परिणामेहि ण विज्जेदे णियट्ठी णिव्वित्ती जत्थ ते  
अणियट्ठीपरिणामा । धवला 1-9-8-4)  
एवकम्हि कालसमये संठाणादीहिं जह णिवट्ठंति ।  
ण णिवट्ठंति तहा विय परिणामेहिं मिहो जेहिं ॥ 56 ॥ गो.सा./जी.कां

In this way, *Anivrittikarana* takes place after *Apoorva-Karana*. Its period is equal to a numerable fractional part of *Apoorva-Karana* period. In it, after lapse of sometime and with aforesaid essentials, the *Jiva* performs *Antar Karana*<sup>1</sup>, i.e., he makes the *Nishekas* of *Mithyatva Karma* of one *Muhurata* period only to remain suspended which were due for coming into rise after the end of *Anivritti-Karana* period, he causes those atoms to get converted into other duration form. And after *Antar-Karana*, he performs *Upashama Karana* (subsiding operation). The *Nishekas* of *Mithyatva Karma* which are situated just above the *Nishekas* which have been suspended through the *Antar-Karana* operation, he makes them incapable of coming into rise. By this kind of process the *Nishekas* which were falling due for rise just after the last moment of *Anivritti-Karana* were suspended; at the time of rise of such *Nishekas* what *Nishekas* will come to rise in the absence of those suspended *Nishekas*? Therefore, in the absence of the rise of *Mithyatva*, first subsidential type of right belief (*Prathamopashama Samyaktva*) is attained. The eternal misbeliever does not have the existence of *Samyaktva Mohaniya* and *Mishra Mohaniya Prakritis*; therefore, by causing the subsidence of only one *Mithyatva-Karma*, he becomes *Upashama Samyagdrishti* (one possessing subsidential type of true belief). And if some *Jiva*, after attaining right belief, again gets defiled then his condition also becomes similar to that of an eternal misbeliever.

Here arises a question- "*Tattva-Shraddhana*, i.e., faith in *Tattvas* was attained after verification, how can it end?"

**Answer:** For example, some person was given instruction. By verification, he acquired faith in it that "It is so only"; later on, somehow, different thought arose, therefore, such doubt arose in that instruction - "It is this way or that way?" or "Do not know how is it?" Or considering that instruction to be false, contrary understanding was developed about it, then lack of faith arose in it and the faith in that instruction disappeared. Alternatively, earlier, he was already having wrong faith; in-between true faith was evolved

1. **Antar Karana:** Operation of dislodging the due-duration of *Nishekas* due for rise. "किमंतरकरणं णाम? विवकिखयकम्माणं हेड्डिमोवरिमड्ढिदीओ मोत्तूण मज्जे अन्तोमुहुत्तमेत्ताणं द्विदीणं परिणामविसेसेणणिसेगाणभावीकरणमंतरकरणमिदि भणणदे।

— (जयधवला, अ.प. 953)

due to deliberation on that instruction. But a lot of time lapsed after deliberation on that instruction, so by forgetting it, wrong faith, as existed earlier, again got evolved automatically. In this way, faith in that instruction disappeared. Or, earlier, he developed true faith but afterwards neither some contrary thought arose nor much time lapsed, but due to rise of related *karmas* and as per destiny automatically that faith disappeared and contrary faith arose. Thus, in many ways, true faith in that instruction finished. Similarly, some *Jiva* got the opportunity of listening to *Jinadeva's* (omniscient's) preachings about the *Tattvas*, etc.; after verifying it, he acquired such faith in it that "It is so only"; later on, as described earlier, in several ways, the true faith disappears. This description is given in a general way, the minute details and intricacies are known in *Kewaljnana* (omniscience) that at this moment true belief is existing and at this moment it is not existing; because here the prime cause is the rise of *Mithyatva-karma* (faith-deluding *karma*). If its rise be there then other causes like thoughts, etc. may or may not be there; automatically true belief ends. And if its rise is not there, then other causes may or may not be there, automatically the true belief gets manifested. So, knowing of such sort of internal subtle state related to every moment, is not possible in the case of a *Chhadmastha* (non-omniscient); therefore, he can not ascertain the subtleness of the state of his own false or right belief. It is known in omniscience. From this point of view, the changing of *Guna-Sthanas* (stages of spiritual development) is described in *Shastras* (scriptures).

In this way, one who has fallen from true belief, is called a *Saadi Mithyadrishhti* (a non-eternal misbeliever). For the reattainment of true belief, he has also to undergo the process of aforesaid five *Labdhis*. The special point is this that here some *Jiva* has the existence of all the three *Prakritis* (atoms) of *Darshan-Moha* (faith-deluding *karma*), so, by subsiding the three *Prakritis*, he becomes a *Prathamopashama Samyagdrishhti*. Or someone gets the rise of *Samyaktva Mohaniya* (*Prakriti* that blurs slightly the right belief) and the rise of other two *Prakritis* (*Mithyatva & Samyagmithyatva*) is not there; he becomes a *Kshayopashama Samyaktvi* (true believer). In his case *Guna-Shreni* operation does not take place and *Anivritti Karana* is also not there. And someone may get the rise of *Mishra-Mohaniya*



(*Samyaktva-Mithyatva*), the other two *Prakritis* (*Mithyatva* & *Samyaktva Mohaniya*) are not found; he attains *Mishra Gunasthana*; no *Karanas* are found there. Such state is found in the case of a *Saadi Mithyadrishti* (non-eternal misbeliever) on disappearance of *Mithyatva*. *Kshyaika-Samyaktva* (destructive type of right belief) is attained by *Vedaka-Samyagdrishti* (true believer possessing *Kshayopashama Samyaktva*) only, hence, description about him is not done here. In this way, the duration of the state of *Saadi Mithyadrishti* is found to be minimum one middle *Antar Muhurta* (less than 48 minutes time is one *Antar Muhurtha*) and maximum a little less than the duration of half a matter-cycle, i.e., one cycle of quasi *karmic* matter.

Behold ! the peculiarity of *Jiva's* thought activities ! Some *Jiva* after attaining *Yathakhyat-Charitra* (perfect passionless conduct of subsidential type) in the eleventh *Gunasthana*; again by becoming a false believer, transmigrates in the world for a period of little less than half a matter-cycle and some other *Jiva* just after coming out from the state of *Nitya-Nigoda*<sup>1</sup> and by taking birth in the form of man after disappearance of *Mithyatva*, attains omniscience within an *Antar Muhurta*. Knowing this fact, one should be fearful of degeneration of one's thoughts and should make efforts for improving them.

And if in the case of that *Saadi Mithyadrishti* (non-eternal misbeliever) the rise of *Mithyatva* is found only for a short period then his external *Jainahood* is not destroyed and disbelief in *Tattvas* is not discernible; and he again attains right belief even without deliberation or by some deliberation only. And if the rise of *Mithyatva* exists for a longer period then his state becomes similar to that of an eternal misbeliever. He even accepts and follows the *Grihita Mithyatva* (newly adopted false belief) also and wanders even in the *Nigoda*, etc. states of existence. There is no limit or measure of it.

And some *Jiva*, after falling from right belief (4th *Gunasthana*), reaches the stages of *Sasadana* (down-fall, state of 2nd *Gunasthana*) and he stays there for a minimum period of one moment and maximum

---

1. *Nitya-Nigoda*= Eternal state of group souled vegetable kingdom of one-sensed beings which die and take rebirth 18 times in one respiration period.

period of six winks (Avalis). It is not possible to narrate the condition of his thoughts through words. Some particular type of thoughts which are known in omniscience are found for a very short duration. The rise of *Anantanubandhi* (intensest passions) is found there but the rise of *Mithyatva* is not there. So, one should know all this from the study of *Agama* (scriptures).

And some *Jiva*, after falling from right belief (4th *Gunasthana*), reaches the stage of *Mishra Gunasthana* (3rd *Gunasthana*). There the rise of *Mishra Mohaniya* (*Samyaktva Mithyatva Prakriti*) is found. Its duration is one middle *Antar Muhurta* only. Its duration also is very short, therefore, his thoughts also are known in omniscience only. Hence, it is perceived that as someone was given some instruction, he believes it to be true and untrue at one and the same time. Similarly, that state in which belief and disbelief in *Tattoas* is found in one and the same time is called mixed state (of right and wrong belief).

Many people say- "For us *Jinadeva* (omniscient *Jina*) and other *Devas*, (deities)all are worshipable – such type of mixed belief they call *Mishra Gunasthana*; it is not so; this is clearly the state of *Mithyatva* (wrong belief). Even on existence of *Vyavahara* (conventional) form of belief in true *Deva* (omniscient *Jina*) etc., *Mithyatva* (wrong belief) persists but in the aforesaid case even the ascertainment about true and false deity is not existent. Therefore, it is to be known that such person possesses *Vinaya-Mithyatva*.

In this way, the description has been made about the false believers heading towards right belief. In this context, other related matters have also been discussed.

Thus, the characteristics of false believers of *Jaina* faith have been described.

Here various types of false believers have been discussed. Its purpose is this that by identifying these different kinds, if one finds any blemish in himself, then he should try to remove it and should evolve right belief. He should not become passionate by finding and seeing such blemishes in others, because one's own good or bad is caused by one's own thoughts & dispositions (*Parinaamas*). If one finds others interested in such discussion then one should benefit

them also by giving discourses. It is, therefore, imperative to make efforts for improving one's own thoughts and dispositions; it is highly desirable to become a true believer by giving up all sorts of false convictions and perverse faiths (*Mithyatva bhavas*), because the root cause of transmigration (mundane existence) is *Mithyatva* (false belief); there is no sin greater than *Mithyatva*.

On destruction of *Mithyatva* (false belief) along with *Anantaanubandhi Kashayas* (error feeding intensest passions), the bondage of forty-one *Prakritis*<sup>1</sup> (*karmas*) also stops, the *Sthiti* (duration of *karmas*) gets decreased to the limit of *Antah Koda-Kodi Sagaras* (within crore of crore *Sagaras*), the *Anubhaga* (fruition of *karmas*) becomes very less only, such a *Jiva* attains *Moksha* (liberation state) shortly. And due to the existence of *Mithyatva*, the liberation path cannot be attained even besides making many other efforts. Therefore, by all sorts of means, it is necessary to destroy *Mithyatva* totally.

[ Thus, in *Moksha Marga Prakashak Shastra* the Seventh Chapter Dealing with Characteristics of Different False Believers of *Jaina* Faith is Concluded. ]

• • •

---

1. The names of 41 *Prakritis* are : (a) 16 nos. related to *Mithyatva* :- *Mithyatva*, *Hundak-sansthana*, *Neuter sex*, *Narakgati*, *Narakgatanupurvi*, *Narakayu*, *Asampraptasripatika-sanhnana*, *Jati-4* (one-sensed, two-sensed, three-sensed & four-sensed beings), *Sthawara*, *Aatapa*, *Sukshma*, *Aparyapta*, *Sadharana*. (b) 25 nos. related to *Anantanubandhi-kashayas*: *Anantanubandhi krodha*, *maan*, *Maya*, *Lobha*, *Styangriddhi*, *Nidra-nidra*, *Prachala-prachala*, *Durbhag*, *Duswara*, *Anadeya*, *Aprashast-vihayogati*, *Striveda*, *Neecha-gotra*, *Triyag-gati*, *Tiryag-gatanupurvi*, *Tiryag ayu*, *Udyota*, *Sansthana-4* (*Nyagrodha*, *Swati*, *Kubjaka*, *Vamana*) *Sanhnanas-4* (*Vajra-naracha*, *Naracha*, *Arddha-naracha* and *Keelita*).

## CHAPTER 8

### NATURE OF SERMONS

Showing the right path of liberation to the misbelievers, mundane beings, is the greatest benefaction of them. Even the *Tirthankaras* (omniscients), *Ganadharas* (chief monks) etc. render such type of benefaction only; Therefore, in this *Shashtra (Moksha Marga Prakashaka)* also the discourses are given according to their sermons.

For clarifying the nature of sermon, some explanation is given here; because if one does not identify or know the sermon properly in its true sense then he may follow the wrong path by believing otherwise. Therefore, the nature of sermon is being described.

In *Jina's* faith the sermon is given through four kinds of *Anuyogas* (branches of scriptures). *Prathamanaanuyoga* (mythonomy), *Karanaanuyoga* (Aetiology & cosmology), *Charanaanuyoga* (Ethics or religious rituals) and *Dravyaanuyoga* (Metaphysics) - these are the four *Anuyogas*.

That branch of scriptures in which the life sketches (biographies) of great personages like *Tirthankaras*, *Chakravarties*, etc. are described, is called *Prathamanaanuyoga*. And that branch of scriptures in which the *Gunasthanas* (spiritual stages), *Marganas* (quest-places), etc. forms of the *Jivas* and *karmas* and cosmology, etc. are described, is called *Karanaanuyoga*. And that branch of scriptures in which the religious conduct, vows & rituals to be followed by householders and monks are described is called *Charanaanuyoga*, whereas that branch of scriptures in which six kinds of substances, seven *Tattovas* etc. and the science of self-nonsel self discrimination, etc. are discussed is called *Dravyaanuyoga*.

## The Purpose of 4-*Anuyogas*

Now the purpose of these *Anuyogas* is being described :

### The Purpose of *Prathamānuyoga*

In *Prathamānuyoga* the *Jivas* are encouraged to follow the religion by way of describing the peculiarity of mundane existence, the consequences of *Punya* (virtue) and *Papa* (vice) and the conduct of the great personages, etc. Even the persons having low level of understanding get interested in religion through it, because they do not understand the minute details but understand the worldly parables; their *Upayoga* (mind) gets engaged in them. And in *Prathamānuyoga* the description is found in the form of worldly tendencies only which they understand very well. In worldly stories of kings, etc., fostering of sins is found. Here too, the legends of the high persons like kings, etc. are found but their purpose is to detach persons from vices and to actuate them to practise religion. Therefore, those persons, due to attraction of legends read and listen to them and then knowing the *Papa* (vices) to be harmful and *Dharma* (virtuous conduct) to be beneficial, they take interest in religion.

In this way, this *Anuyoga* is meant for the people of low level of understanding. *Prathama* means slow-witted misbelievers, hence the *Anuyoga* which is meant for them is *Prathamānuyoga*. "Such meaning is given in the commentary of *Gommattasara*"<sup>1</sup>

Further, if the *Jivas* having attained the knowledge of *Tattvas* read or listen to this *Prathamānuyoga*, then for them this serves the purpose of examples. For instance, "such *Jiva* knew that the *Jiva* (soul) is an eternal substance; the body, etc. are the external associations." And in mythology the rebirths (transmigrations) of the *Jivas* are described; those become the examples of that knowledge. And he had learnt about *Shubha* (pious), *Ashubha* (impious) and *Shuddha* (pure/passionless) *Upayogas* i.e., conduct of the self and their consequences also. In mythology the proclivity of those *Upayogas* (pious, impious & pure conduct of the self) and their fruition experienced by the *Jiva* is described, the same serves as an

1. प्रथमं मिथ्यादृष्टिमन्नतिकमव्युत्पन्नं वा प्रतिपाद्यमाश्रित्य प्रवृत्तोऽनुयोगोऽधिकारः प्रथमानुयोगः ।  
गोम्मटसार (जी.प्र.टी. गाथा 361-62)



example of that knowledge. Similar is the purpose of other descriptions.

Here the meaning of example is that he found similar happenings in the life of some *Jiva* which corroborated his knowledge about such *Jiva*; so, this became an evidence for such knowledge.

For example, a warrior gets highly encouraged in valour by listening to such stories of mythological personages in which the praise of warriors and censure of coward persons is found. Similarly, a religious person gets highly encouraged in religious practices by listening to such stories of mythological personages in which the praise of religious persons and censure of the wicked persons is found.

Thus, one should know the purpose of this *Prathamaanuyoga*.

### **The Purpose of *Karanaanuyoga***

In *Karanaanuyoga* the *Jivas* are actuated to follow the religion through descriptions of the details of *Jivas* as well as of *karmas* and structure of the universe, etc. The *Jivas* who wish to engage their *Upayoga* (active knowledge) in religion, they get engaged in religion and become detached from vices by knowing and identifying the details of the *Jivas'* *Gunasthanas* (spiritual stages), *Marganas* (quest places) etc. and the details of the various kinds of *karmas*, their causes- conditions and fruits in different *Jivas* and hellish-heavenly abodes in the universe (three worlds). And if the *Upayoga* gets engrossed in such thoughts then at once automatically religion (serenity) gets evolved and vicious tendency ends. By its practice even the attainment of *Tattva-jnana* (true knowledge & belief of the *Tattvas*) takes place soon. And he becomes a true believer of *Jina's* religion by knowing its glory that such minute and true description is found in *Jina's* religion only and nowhere else it is found.

And to such *Jivas* who study this *Karanaanuyoga* after attaining true knowledge of *Tattvas*, this appears to be the adjectival form of that (*Tattva-jnana*). The details and specialities of these *Jiva* etc. *Tattvas* are found in *Karanaanuyoga* about which he has learnt. There many details are described in their true (*Nishchaya*) form and many other details in conventional (*Vyavahara*) form being attributed to be

so. Many are of *Pramana*<sup>1</sup> etc. form relating to the characteristics of *Dravya* (substance), *Kshetra* (spatiality), *Kaal* (time) and *Bhava* (qualities) etc., many other are described with the relativity of instrumental cause and dependence of *Upayoga* etc. – thus various forms of details are described. By believing them precisely in toto such *Jiva* engrosses himself in the study of *Karanaanuyoga*.

By the study of this *Anuyoga* one's *Tattva-jnana* becomes pure (faultless). For example, someone was knowing that a particular object is a jewel but only on knowing the various specialities of that jewel he becomes a true assayer of the flawless (pure) jewel. Similarly, he was knowing the *Tattvas* that these are *Jiva*, etc. but only on knowing the various details of those *Tattvas* he acquires faultless knowledge of those *Tattvas*. On acquiring the faultless knowledge of *Tattvas* one becomes, of his own, a distinguished devout person.

Further, if he engages his *Upayoga* (active knowledge) elsewhere, then passions, etc. are increased and the non-omniscient's *Upayoga* does not remain incessantly concentrated or fixed on one particular object; therefore, the true believer engages his *Upayoga* in the study of *Karanaanuyoga* due to which the knowledge of substances as seen in omniscience is evolved. There remains the difference of *Pratyaksha* (direct) and *Apratyaksha* (indirect) knowledge only. There is no contrariness in grasping or knowing the *Tattvas* etc.

In this way, one should know the purpose of studying *Karanaanuyoga*. *Karana* means formulae concerning to mathematical calculations; that book which deals with this *Anuyoga* (topic) is called *Karanaanuyoga* (aetiology). In this *Anuyoga* the prominence of mathematical description is found.

### **The Purpose of *Charanaanuyoga* (Ethics)**

Now the purpose of *Charanaanuyoga* (ethics) is being described. In *Charanaanuyoga* the *Jivas* are actuated to follow the religious practices by explaining the different means of observing religion. The *Jivas* who do not know as to what is beneficial and what is harmful for them and remain engrossed in sinful acts like injury,

---

1. *Pramana* = Comprehensive or valid knowledge which knows an object in all respects from all angles.

etc., are discoursed in such a way that they give up vicious acts and adopt religious practices. Knowing this those who are inclined towards religious practices they engage themselves in such religious practices which they can follow after listening to the details (rituals) of householder's and monk's religious rituals (duties).

By such practices passions become feeble and consequently so much is achieved that they do not suffer from miseries in bad states of existence but obtain happiness in good states of existence and by observance of such practices, the instrumentality of *Jina's* faith (religion) is maintained and in such state if the attainment of *Tattva-jnana* be destined, then it gets evolved.

And those *Jivas* who practise *Charanaanuyoga* after attaining the knowledge of *Tattvas*, to them all these observances appear to be in accordance with their passionless dispositions (*Veetaraaga Bhavas*). On evolution of partial and complete passionlessness, such sort of householder's state and monk's state respectively is attained because the instrumental cause and effect relationship is found in these observances. Knowing this and identifying the characteristics of the householder's and monk's religion (duties), they indulge in such suitable religious practices as is warranted by the degree of passionlessness evolved in them. There, whatever degree of passionlessness (*Veetaraagata*) is evolved in them, they know it to be beneficial and whatever degree of passions (*Raaga*) persists, they know it to be worthless and believe total passionlessness to be the supreme religion.

Such is the purpose of *Charanaanuyoga* (ethics).

### **The Purpose of *Dravyaanuyoga* (Metaphysics)**

Now the purpose of *Dravyaanuyoga* (metaphysics) is being described. In *Dravyaanuyoga* the *Jivas* are actuated to follow the religion by describing the substances and the *Tattvas* (essential principles). The *Jivas* who do not know and identify the *Jiva* (soul) etc. substances and the *Tattvas* and do not know the self-nonsel to be different entities, are discoursed through reasoning, examples, logic and through *Pramana* (comprehensive viewpoint) and *Nayas* (partial viewpoints) etc. in such a way that they are able to grasp the true nature of *Tattvas* etc. and develop right faith in them. By its regular

study the eternal ignorance is removed. When the *Tattvas* etc., fancied or fabricated by the other (non-Jaina) faiths, appear to be false then the belief of *Jina's* faith gets evolved and if one makes efforts for identifying their true nature then he may attain right belief in *Tattvas* very soon.

Further, if such *Jivas* who have attained *Tattva-jnana*, regularly study *Dravyaanuyoga* then all those descriptions appear to them to be according to their belief. For example, someone has acquired some skill but if he continues to practise it then it remains in his memory; if he does not practise it, he forgets it. Similarly, after one has attained *Tattva-jnana* if he continues to study *Dravyaanuyoga* which deals with it, then that *Tattva-jnana* persists, if he does not do so, he forgets it. Or the *Tattva-jnana* which was attained in brief form, if becomes clear or lucid through different logic reasoning examples, etc., then there can be no laxity in it. Moreover, due to lessening of passions (*Raaga*) etc., by this sort of practice and study, the *Moksha* (liberation) is attained soon.

In this way, one should know the purpose of *Dravyaanuyoga* (metaphysics).

### **The Methodology of Exposition in *Anuyogas***

Now, the methodology of exposition found in these *Anuyogas* is being described.

#### **The Methodology of Exposition in *Prathamānuyoga***

In *Prathamānuyoga* whatever main stories are, the same are described as they are. And in them the relevant expositions pertaining to the topic under discussion are also given; some are described as it is and some are given according to the thoughts of the author of the book, but the purpose is not changed.

For example, on the auspicious occasions of the *Tirthankara*, *Devas* the *Indras* (chief gods of heaven) came to celebrate the function. So this story is true and the *Indras* offered invocation to them which is described in this *Anuyoga*. Although the *Indras* offered invocation in different words and here (in *Prathamānuyoga*) the author has described it in some other words, but the purpose of

invocation is not changed. Further, some conversation took place between some persons; there the words uttered were different, whereas here the author has used some other words, but the same purpose is maintained. And the names of town, forest, battlefields, etc. used here are the same but, maintaining the same purpose, the description is found in less or more words. Other descriptions should also be known likewise.

Further, the relevant stories also are written by the authors as per their own thoughts. For example, in *Dharma-pariksha* the story of the stupid fellows is found. There is no such rule that the same story was narrated by *Manovega* but some tale fostering stupidity was narrated. So, they have supported the same purpose. Similarly, one should know elsewhere also.

Here someone may say, - "Untrue statements are not possible in *Jain Shastras*?"

**Answer:** That which fosters a different purpose is called untrue. For example, "someone tells a person that you should say so". He did not speak in the same words, but spoke with the same purpose; therefore, he is not called a liar. If the rule be that the same words be used then, if someone had contemplated on renunciation in various ways, describing all that, would increase the volume of the book and if nothing is written about it then its concept will not be clear. Therefore, in the context of renunciation, the authors will write descriptions fostering renunciation only in less or more words as per their thoughts, but will not write any thing fostering passions. Here the purpose is not changed. Therefore, it is not untrue. In the same way, one should know elsewhere also.

Further, in- *Prathamayanuyoga*, only the prominent things are supported. For example, someone observed fast; although its fruit was insignificant but he attained higher state of existence due to his other religious observances simultaneously. Here such attainment is described to be the result of observance of fast only. In the same way, one should know elsewhere also.

And as someone firmly observed the vow of chastity, etc., chanted *Namaskar Mantra* (obeisance to five supreme souls) and also observed other religious practices, his miseries came to an end and



miracles appeared; so all this is not caused only by such religious practices but such (agreeable) events took place due to the rise of some other karma, nevertheless, such events are described to be fruit of observance of chastity, etc. only. Similarly, someone indulged in some wicked act (and obtained hellish birth); so, this is not the result of that wicked act only, but owing to the rise of some other karma, he got birth in the lower state of existence or suffered from miseries, etc. But it is described to be the fruit of that wicked act only. Likewise, one should know the other examples.

Here someone may say- "Describing such false fruit is not desirable; how can such statement be believed to be authentic?"

**Answer:** For the benefit of those ignorant persons who do not take interest in religious practices and are not afraid of wicked acts without showing more fruit of such acts, such descriptions are found. When the fruit of religion be described to be the fruit of sin, the fruit of sin be described to be the fruit of religion then it is false, but here it is not so. For example, ten persons jointly do some work, there, if it is described conventionally to be the work of one person only then it is not wrong. Or somebody's ancestors performed some act; if from one caste point of view it is described conventionally to be the performance of their sons, etc. then there is nothing wrong. Similarly, one event took place as a result of several virtuous and vicious acts; if conventionally it is described to be the result of one virtuous or vicious act, then there is nothing wrong. Or whatever has been the result of some other virtuous or vicious act, if from the similar category point of view, the same is described conventionally to be the result of any other virtuous or vicious act only, then there is nothing wrong.

In preachings, statements are made at some places from conventional (*Vyavahara*) point of view and at some places from realistic (*Nishchaya*) point of view. Here (in *Prathamaaanuyoga*) the *Upachara* (superimposed) form of *Vyavahara* (conventional) practices are described. In this way, it is authentic. But one should not treat this to be correct degree to degree. It should be known that degree to degree description is found in *Karanaanuyoga*.

Further, in *Prathamaaanuyoga*, if someone is found to be observing one particular conventional form of religious practice, he is said

to be following the religion in toto. For examples, those *Jivas* who are found not having any doubt in religion or craving for worldly enjoyments, etc., are said to have attained the right belief; but only by not having doubt, desire, etc. in any one particular religious aspect, the right belief cannot be evolved; the right belief is evolved on developing staunch faith in *Tattvas*; but here the real right belief has been superimposed in the conventional right belief and the conventional right belief in toto has been superimposed in any one aspect of conventional right belief, - thus by, '*Upachara*', (superimposition) the right belief is said to have been evolved.

Further, on attaining knowledge of one part (*Anga*) of any *Jain-shastra*, the right knowledge is said to have been evolved. But on attaining the knowledge of *Tattvas*, devoid of doubt, etc. perversities, the right knowledge is evolved. Here also the right knowledge is termed so by *Upachara* (conventionally) as stated above.

Further, if someone observes some pious conduct, he is said to have attained right conduct. And if one has accepted *Jaina* religion and practises some vow in smaller or greater measure, he is called a *Shravaka* - a true believer householder observing small vows or partial conduct. (In reality) on attainment of fifth *Gunasthana* (spiritual stage) only, one is called a *Shravaka*, but in the aforesaid manner conventionally (by *Upachara*) he is called a *Shravaka*. In the *Shastra* '*Uttar-Purana*' the king *Shrēnika* is termed a supreme *Shravaka*, though he was a vowless (incontinent) householder; but because he was a *Jaina* so he is described so. Likewise, one should know elsewhere.

Further, one who accepts *Munilinga* (possessionless naked monk state) without right belief and even if externally he is found with some blemish, he is still called a *Muni* (monk). Although on attainment of sixth *Gunasthana* etc., one becomes a *Muni*, but in the aforesaid manner, conventionally (by *Upachara*) he - the monk - with blemishes is called a *Muni*. In *Samavasarana Sabha* (omniscient's preaching arena) the presence of a particular number of monks is stated (in the *Shastra*); but all of them were not the true *Bhavalingsi-Munis* (true spiritual monks with right belief), but because of acceptance of external *Jain* monk's posture, all are termed as monks (munis). Similarly, one should know elsewhere.

Further, in *Prathamaanuyoga*, if someone indulges in some undesirable act with religious attitude, even then he is praised. For instance, *Vishnukumar* (a Jain monk possessed with super-natural power) removed the affliction of the other monks with religious attitude; but it was not desirable to indulge in this act by forsaking the status of a monk, because such an act is possible in householder's conduct only and monk's conduct is higher than the householder's conduct. Therefore, it is not praiseworthy to accept lower religious status by giving up higher religious status; but monk *Vishnukumarji* has been praised due to the prominence of *Vatsalya Anga*, i.e., affectionate feeling towards the coreligionists. Under this pretext, it is not desirable for others to accept lower religious status by giving up higher status.

Further, (it is described that) a cowherd created hot atmosphere around a Jain monk by burning fire. He did so out of compassion. One should surely remove the *Upasarga* (affliction) caused externally by others. But removing the natural *Parishaha* (disagreeable condition) of cold, etc. is the cause of arousing liking passion in the monk and the monk should not indulge in liking passions. Therefore, such an act causes affliction (instead of removing it). That is why the judicious persons do not make effort for removing cold. The cowherd was an ignorant person; he did so out of compassion, therefore, he is praised. But under this pretext, it is not desirable for others to indulge in such acts which are contrary to religious practice.

Further, the King *Vajrakarana* did not salute the King *Simhodara* and kept the idol of *Jina* carved in the ring. Even the great true believers salute the kings, etc.; there is no fault in it. But disrespect is caused in keeping the idol in the ring, because no such adorable idol is possible as per set norms; therefore, this act is faulty. But he was not aware of this; out of religious affection he developed a feeling- "I will not salute anybody else". Therefore he is praised. But under this pretext, it is not desirable for others to indulge in such acts.

Further, for the sake of getting a son, etc. or mitigating disease and other calamities, etc., some people built temples (*Chaityalayas*) and worshipped *Jina's* idol, etc.; chanted hymns and recited

*Namaskar mantra*, etc.; but such practices destroy the *Nihkankshita Guna* (the virtue of desirelessness) and amount to indulgence in *Nidanbandha* type sorrowful concentration<sup>1</sup>. Because of inner inauspicious purposes, it causes the bondage of inauspicious *karmas* only. But even being deluded, he did not worship false deities, etc. which are the cause of enormous and intense bondage of *Papa karmas*; considering this aspect, he has been praised. Under this pretext, it is not desirable for others to adopt religious practices for temporal gains. Likewise, one should know elsewhere also.

Thus, there are found many such descriptions in *Prathamanyoga*; knowing their real sense, one should not get deluded.

### Methodology of Exposition of *Karanaanuyoga*

Now the style of exposition in *Karanaanuyoga* is being described: The description found in *Karanaanuyoga* is as known in omniscience. Though all is known in omniscience, yet, only that which is useful to *Jiva*, e.g., the relationship of *Jiva-karmas*, etc. and cosmology (universe) etc. are described here in this "*Anuyoga*". Even all details of them cannot be described, therefore, whatever could be possibly described in words and could be known and perceived in non-omniscient's knowledge, is described in an abridged form. For example, the *Gunasthanas* (spiritual stages) are described from the viewpoint of instincts and dispositions of the *Jivas*; those dispositions being infinite cannot be described through words, therefore, by combining many dispositions into one category, fourteen *Gunasthanas* are specified. And there are various ways of knowing the *Jivas*, but only main fourteen *Marganas* (quest-places) are specified. Although *karmic* matter (atoms) possesses infinite potency, yet, in them, by combining many atoms into one category, the eight types of main *prakritis* (*karmas*) and one hundred & forty-eight subdivisions of them are described. And in the universe (3 worlds) many objects are found but herein some of the main objects with their details are described. And *Pramana* (measure) is of infinite kinds; the *Sankhyat* (numerable) etc. three main divisions and further twenty-one divisions of these are specified.

1. Sorrowfully lost in thinking about how to get worldly pleasures & objects in future or in next birth.

In the same way, one should know elsewhere.

Although the spatiality, time, qualities (modes) etc. of the substance are indivisible, nevertheless, with the object that the non-omniscient may also attain some knowledge of the substances, in *Karanaanuyoga*, by imagining the divisions like spatial units (*Pradēshas*), time unit (*Samaya*), units measuring the degrees of quality manifested (*Avibhaga-Pratichchedas*) etc. and their 'Pramana' (quantity or numerical measurement) are described. And one and the same substance is described by making divisions of different-different *Gunas* (attributes) and *Paryayas* (modifications). Although the *Jivas* (souls) and the *Pudgalas* (matter) etc. are separate-separate substances, nevertheless, through the instrumentality of relationship (bondage) etc. the *Gati* (state of existence) produced out of many substances, the *Jati* (category) etc. divisions are described to be of one *Jiva* only. All this exposition should be known to be with the prominence of conventional standpoint (*Vyavahara Naya*) because details and specialities cannot be understood without *Vyavahara* (conventional divisions). And at some places the description is found from *Nishchaya* (real) standpoint also. For example, *Pramana* (numerical measures etc.) of *Jivas* etc. substances are described; the separate-separate substances are that much only. One should know the same appropriately.

Further, many statements given in *Karanaanuyoga* are comprehensible by non-omniscient directly or through inference and those which are not so comprehensible should be believed as per *Jina's* commandment. The embodied forms of human beings, etc., which are the grōss and longer-lasting combined modifications of *Jiva* and *Pudgalas* and the *Jars*, etc. modes of matter can be known directly or through inference, but the degrees of knowledge, etc. and smooth-rough attributes, etc. which are described from the viewpoint of subtle changes taking place every moment, are known only by *Jinas* commandment. Likewise, one should know elsewhere also.

Further, in *Karanaanuyoga* the description is not done according to the proclivity of non-omniscients-but is done of the substances known in *Kewal-jnan* (omniscience). For example, many *Jivas* contemplate on the nature of substances and observe vows, etc. but



they do not possess the internal power of right belief and right conduct. Therefore, they are called misbelievers and incontinent (vowless) persons. On the other hand, many *Jivas* neither contemplate on the nature of substances nor follow vows, etc. and either indulge in other acts or remain asleep thoughtlessly, but they possess the power of right belief, etc.; therefore, they are called right believers and votaries (continent persons).

Further, some *Jiva* is found indulging more in passional acts but possesses feeble internal-passional power; therefore, he is called a feeble-passioned person. And some *Jiva* is found indulging less in passional activities but possesses intense internal passional power, so he is called a highly-passioned person. For example, the peripatetic gods (*Vyantaras*) destroy the town, etc. by passions, nevertheless, they are stated to possess *Peeta-Leshya*<sup>1</sup>, due to feeble passional power. And the one-sensed, etc. beings are not seen indulging in passional acts, yet they are stated to possess *Krishna Leshyas*<sup>2</sup> etc. due to intense passional power. And the *Devas* of *Sarvartha Siddhi* are found indulging very less in passions but they are called incontinent because they possess more passional power. And the *Jiva* of fifth *Gunasthana* indulges more in passional acts like business, sex, etc., yet he is stated to possess partial continence or conduct because of feeble passional power. Likewise, one should know at other places.

Further, the activity of mind, speech and body of some *Jiva* is found to be less, yet he is stated to possess more *Yoga* (vibratory activity) because of power of attracting the *karmas*; one may be found indulging too much in external activities, nevertheless, he is stated to possess less *Yoga* due to weak power. For example, though the omniscient is not having any activity of movement, etc., nevertheless he is stated to possess more *Yoga* (vibratory activity). The two-sensed, etc. beings make movement, etc., yet they are stated to have less *Yoga*. In the same way, one should know elsewhere.

Further, that which is not seen apparently, nevertheless, it is stated to be present there because of presence of subtle power. For example, the true monk is not found indulging in any sexual activity

1. *Peeta-Leshya* = Mild passional dispositions or yellow thought complexion.

2. *Krishna-Leshya* = Intense passional dispositions or black thought complexion.

but the inner instinct for copulation is stated to be present in him up to the ninth *Gunasthana*. The cause of misery is not apparent in *Ahmindra* (self Gods), nevertheless, rarely, the rise of *Asata* (pain-producing *karma*) is stated to be present there. Similarly, one should know elsewhere.

Further, the *Karanaanuyoga* describes the right belief, knowledge, conduct, etc. religion with the relativity of subsidence, etc. of *karma-prakritis* and with their subtle power with reference to different *Gunasthanas* and it also describes the *Jiva* etc. *Tattvas* with their minute details and classifications, etc. which are the cause of right belief, etc. Here if someone tries to make effort according to *Karanaanuyoga*, it cannot be possible; the main object of *Karanaanuyoga* is to describe the true nature of substances; there is no prominence of putting anything into practice. Therefore, one should follow the conduct as per *Charanaanuyoga* etc., due to which, whatever is to happen happens automatically. For example, if one wishes to subside the *karmas*, how can he do it? One should rather make effort for ascertaining the *Tattvas* etc., owing to which subsidential, etc. form of right belief is evolved of its own. Similarly, one should know elsewhere.

In one *Antarmuhurta*<sup>1</sup> a monk falling from the eleventh *Gunasthana*, gradually becomes a false believer and again by ascending (the ladder of destruction of *karmas*) he evolves *Kewal-jnan* (omniscience). Such subtle dispositions of right belief, etc. are not the subject of comprehension. Therefore, one should know the nature of substances as per the *Karanaanuyoga* but follow such conduct knowingly which is beneficial.

And in *Karanaanuyoga* also, at some places, the exposition is found with emphasis on preaching, so that should not be believed in its totality. For example, making effort for injury, etc. is called *Kumati-jnana* (perverse sensory knowledge); study of scriptures of other religions is called *Kushruta-jnana* (perverse scriptural knowledge); always perceiving bad aspect and not perceiving good aspect is called *Vibhanga-jnan* (perverse clairvoyance) - all these are preached so for forsaking them. From subtle point of view, all

---

1. Any period less than 48 minutes is called an *antarmuhurta*

knowledge of a true believer is right knowledge. Similarly, one should know elsewhere.

And if somewhere general statements are found, the same should not be treated as correct degree to degree. For example, the circumference is described to be three times of the diameter but minutely speaking it is somewhat more than three times. Likewise, one should know elsewhere.

And, somewhere, the exposition is found from the predominance point of view, the same should not be taken as stated, in all respects. For example, the *Jivas* of *Mithyadrishti Gunasthana* i.e., first *Gunasthana* and of *Sasadan Gunasthana* i.e., second *Gunasthana* are described as *Papa Jivas* (vicious souls), the *Jivas* of the fourth *Gunasthana*, i.e., vowless right believers, etc., are described as *Punya Jivas* (virtuous souls). This is stated from the predominance point of view but minutely speaking both the types of *Jivas* may be found in smaller or greater measure having virtuous and vicious dispositions. Similarly, one should know elsewhere.

In the same way, many other different descriptions are found; the same should be known appropriately.

Thus, the methodology of exposition in *Karanaanuyoga* is concluded.

### **Methodology of Exposition in *Charanaanuyoga***

Now the methodology of exposition in *Charanaanuyoga* is explained:-

In *Charanaanuyoga*, that aspect of religious conduct has been preached, in the manner, which is comprehensible by *Jivas*. In fact, the religion is the real form of liberation-path and its instrumental causes are conventionally called religion. Therefore, from the predominance of *Vyavahara Naya* (conventional standpoint) the kinds and subdivisions of various types of conventional religion (*Upachar Dharma*) are described in this *Anuyoga*, because in real aspect of religion (*Nishchaya Dharma*) there is no place for acceptance and renunciation of any thing and in the lower spiritual stages it is not possible for *Jivas* to give up rambling state of thoughts, therefore, here this *Jiva* is preached to give up irreligious acts and adopt religious practices.

Such sermons are given in two forms; the one form consists of adopting conventional practices only and the other form consists of adopting conventional practices along with real aspect of religion.

Those *Jivas* who do not possess the knowledge of *Nishchaya* (real aspect of religion) and even on preaching they are not able to grasp it, such false believers are preached only through *Vyavahara* (conventional path) when they show some interest in religion. And those *Jivas* who possess the knowledge of *Nishchaya* & *Vyavahara* both or who might evolve such knowledge on being preached - such true believers - and those false believers who are likely to attain right belief shortly, are given sermons of conventional practices along with real aspect of religion, because the true monk (preceptor) is the benefactor of all *Jivas*.

The irrational (mindless) *Jivas* are not capable of grasping the sermon; the true monks have benefitted such *Jivas* by preaching other (rational) *Jivas* to have compassion towards such *Jivas*.

Further, there are some *Jivas* who cannot attain the right path of liberation due to the predominance of *karmas*; (the preceptor monks) have benefitted such *Jivas* through the discourse of *Vyavahara Dharma* (conventional form of religion) by engaging them to adopt virtuous conduct, being the cause of sensual pleasures and good state of existence and by discouraging them from vicious acts, being the cause of miseries and evil state of existence. Such *Jivas* are benefitted to the extent to which miseries are reduced.

Further, the sinner is found possessing sinful instincts and attains evil state of existence where the instrumental cause of religion does not exist; therefore, traditionally he continues suffering from miseries only. And the pious person is found possessing pious instincts and attains good state of existence where the instrumental causes of religion are found; therefore, traditionally he attains happiness or if the power of *karmas* gets reduced, then he may even attain the liberation path also. Therefore, the preceptors encourage *Jivas* through conventional discourses to adopt virtuous acts and discourage them to give up vicious acts.

And the *Jivas*, who have attained the liberation path or are capable of attaining it, are benefitted by actuating them to follow

liberation path through preachings of conventional practices along with real aspect of religion. In this way, the true preceptor monks render benefaction to all *Jivas* but if such benefaction is not availed by some *Jivas* then what can the true preceptors do? Whatever benefaction is possible, they do it. Therefore, the sermons are given in two forms.

In conventional form of preachings, there is the predominance of external activities only. By following them, the *Jiva* quits the vicious acts and adopts virtuous acts. There, according to the external activities, the inner thoughts also get released from intense passion and become of the order of feeble passion. So, chiefly it is so but someone may or may not evolve feeble passion; the true preceptors, give sermons of observing external rituals only with the object of improving thoughts and the dispositions.

And in the sermons of *Vyavahara* (conventional path) along with *Nishchaya* (real aspect of religion) the predominance is of the thoughts and dispositions only. Through its preachings, if someone tries to improve his thoughts by means of practice of *Tattva-jnana* and contemplation about renunciation, then one's external activities also get improved in accordance with thoughts. On improvement of thoughts, the external activities also invariably get improved. Therefore, the true preceptors predominantly give sermons of improving the thoughts.

Thus, out of two forms of these sermons, where the *Vyavahara* religion only is preached, there, for attaining right belief, the preceptors preach to develop faith in *Arhanta Deva* (passionless omniscient God), *Nirgrantha-Guru* (possession-less naked monk preceptor) and *Daya-Dharma* (non-violence religion) only and not to have faith in any other deity, etc. and to have faith in *Vyavahara* form of *Jivas* etc. *Tattoas*, not to get involved in doubt, etc. twenty-five blemishes and to develop qualities like doubtlessness *Nihshankita-Anga* etc. and *Samvegya* (awe towards miseries of worldly existence) etc.

And for attaining right knowledge, the preceptors preach to study the scriptures containing *Jina's* preachings and to make effort for understanding the true meaning of the words, etc. properly. And



for evolving right conduct, the true preceptors preach to give up sins like injury, etc. partially or completely and to observe vows, etc. And if some *Jiva* is not found capable of following the higher grade of religion (vows, etc.) then the preceptor sermonises him to take or follow one particular vow only. For example, the tribal person (*Bhil*) was advised to give up eating the meat of crow, the cowherd was preached to chant *Namaskar Mantra* and the householders to construct the *Jina's* temple and to engage in worship, propagation of religion, etc.; thus, sermons are given as per the capacity of *Jiva*.

Further, where the discourse is given of *Vyavahara* along with *Nishchaya*, there, for attaining right belief, the preceptors sermonise to evolve faith in real *Tattovas* (realities). "The real nature of *Tattovas* is true (*Bhootartha*) and their conventional form is superimposed" - with such faith and through the discrimination of self-nonsel and with the object of giving up attachment, etc. in non-self substances, the preceptor preaches to evolve faith in those *Tattovas*. This is also explained that by developing such faith, the deities other than *Arhanta* etc. are perceived to be false, then automatically the belief in them gets quit. And for attaining right knowledge, the preceptors preach to know these *Tattovas* doubtlessly in their real form; the instrumental cause for attaining such knowledge, is the study of *JainShastras* (*Jina's* scriptures). Therefore, for achieving this purpose, the study of *Jina's* scripture automatically takes place. And for evolving right conduct, the preceptors preach to give up passions like attachment, etc. There, on partial or total destruction of intense attachment, etc. passions, the sinful activity, which was existing partially or completely due to their instrumental effect, gets quit; and in the presence of feeble passion, the practising of vows, worthy of a *Shravaka* (votary householder) and a *Muni* (homeless & possessionless naked ascetic) is found and on destruction of feeble attachment also, the conduct of *Shuddhopayoga* (pure passionless conduct of the self) is evolved. This is also described in this *Anuyoga*.

Further, whatever real vow, invocation, worship, propagation of religion or meditation, etc. are found associated with a true believer having right faith, the same are preached here. The preachings are given in accordance with the true traditional path described in *Jina's* religion.

Thus, one should know the two forms of discoursing the people.

Further, in *Charanaanuyoga*, discourse is given for giving up the acts of intense passions and adopting the acts of feeble passions. Although indulging in passions is assuredly harmful, yet if total renunciation of passions is not possible, then in whatever measure passions are reduced, to that extent one is benefitted — such is the purpose of these preachings. For example, such *Jivas* who are not able to give up totally the desire of indulging in household activities, constructing temple, etc., enjoying carnal pleasures, indulging in anger passion, etc., are preached to engage themselves in the acts of worshipping, spreading the truth, constructing and decorating the *Jina's* temple, etc. or dancing, singing (religious songs) before *Jina's* idol, etc. or helping the religious persons, etc. Because traditionally in these activities passions are not fostered. But in sinful activities traditionally the passions are fostered; therefore, the *Jivas* are preached to give up sinful acts and to engage in aforesaid acts. Further, in whatever small or great measure, sinful acts are likely to be given up, in that measure the *Jiva* is preached to give up sinful acts and to develop right belief and partial vows, etc. And those *Jivas* who have totally given up the desire of indulging in household activities, etc., are preached to give up aforesaid virtuous activities like worship, etc. and by relinquishing all sinful acts, etc., to adopt the great vows, etc. But if it is known that the passions are only partially reduced, then such *Jivas* are preached to adopt the activities of compassion, religious preaching, observing *Pratikramana* (repentance for the faults done knowingly or unknowingly), etc. Wherever passions in their totality are found to have been destroyed, there remains nothing to be done; therefore, they need no preachings. Such is the sequence to be followed in the path to liberation.

Further, in *Charanaanyoga* even by arousing passion, the passionate beings are encouraged to give up sinful acts and to follow religious practices. For example, by arousing fear passion through description of hellish miseries to be the result of sinful acts, the *Jivas* are encouraged to give up sinful acts and by arousing greed passion through the description of pleasures of heavens, etc. to be the fruit of virtuous deeds, the *Jivas* are actuated to follow religious deeds. And this *Jiva* indulges in sins due to feeling of attachment

towards sensuous pleasures, body, son, wealth, etc. and remains disinterested in religion. By describing the sensuous pleasures to be the cause of death, afflictions, etc., the feeling of detachment is aroused in them. By describing the body, etc. to be impure, the disgust passion is aroused there; by describing the sons, etc. to be the partaker of wealth, etc., aversion is aroused in them and by describing wealth, etc. to be the cause of death, afflictions, etc., the feeling of disliking is aroused in them. By adopting such different means, the intense attachment in the sensuous objects is destroyed and they are encouraged to give up sinful acts and start following religious practices. Further, by chanting the name (of supreme souls), invocation, worship, charity, chastity, etc., the afflictions of poverty, etc. get finished in this world and son, wealth, etc. are attained — through such descriptions, greed passion is aroused and *Jivas* are encouraged to follow religious practices. Similarly, one should know other examples.

Here lies a question as to what is the purpose of arousing one type of passion by discouraging to give up another type of passion?

**Answer :** Severe cold (typhus) and fever both are diseases. But if the physician diagnoses that someone is dying due to severe cold (typhus) then he makes effort to develop fever in him and after the fever has developed, if the chance of his surviving be there, then afterwards he tries to eradicate the fever also. Similarly, all passions are worth giving up but knowing that some *Jivas* are indulging in sinful acts due to passional feelings, the true preceptors try to arouse such passions in them which encourages them to follow virtuous acts. Later on, if it is found that such persons have developed religious instincts, then they encourage them to uproot the passions. Such is the purpose.

Further, in *Charāṇānuyoga*, through different reasonings, descriptions are made in such a manner that the *Jivas* are encouraged to follow religion by quitting sinful acts. The true preceptors explain through worldly illustrations, logic, examples, judiciously; and sometimes they quote examples from other religions also. As in *Suktamuktavali* the goddess *Laxmi* is described to be an inhabitant of lotus flower and from the viewpoint that both poison and *Laxmi* are

the product of ocean, she is stated to be the sister of poison. In the same way, descriptions are made elsewhere also.

Although many of such examples, etc. are false, yet they foster the real purpose; therefore, there is no fault in this.

Somebody may say here that the fault of falsehood lies here?

**Answer :** Even if it is false but fosters, the real purpose then it is not treated to be false. And if it is true also but fosters false purpose then in reality it is false only.

In the use of rhetoric, logic, naming etc., the truth & falsehood are not decided on the basis of words but on the basis of purpose. For example, a town with some decoration is stated to be similar to *Indrapuri* (heavenly town); this is obviously false but because it fosters the purpose of decoration, it is not treated to be false. And in this town “stick is found with the umbrella and nowhere else” — this is obviously false because use of stick is found elsewhere also but because unlawful persons are very few there and lawful persons are not punished — since it fosters this purpose — hence it is not false. Further, Jupiter (*Brihaspati*)’s name is written as *Surguru* (the preceptor of Gods) and Mars (*Mangal*)’s name is written as *Kuja*; so such names are taken from other faiths. Their literal meaning is false but that name signifies the meaning of that particular thing, therefore, it is not false.

Thus, the examples, etc. drawn from other faiths are false. Here the objective is not to foster faith in those examples but to foster faith in the purpose and because the purpose is true hence there lies no fault.

Further, in *Charanaanuyoga* such discourses comprehensible by non-omniscients are given from general point of view with the prominence of worldly tendencies, but the discourses are not given from the subtleness point of view, comprehensible by omniscience, because it cannot be practised. Here the purpose is to encourage the religious practice.

For instance, it is stated that an *Anuvrati* (the follower of small vows) does not commit injury to mobile beings whereas in the activities like sexual intercourse, etc. injury to mobile beings is

caused; he too knows that in *Jinavani* (omniscients preachings) it is stated that here mobile beings are found but he has no intention of causing injury to mobile beings and he does not indulge in such injury which in worldly affairs is called injury of mobile beings. Therefore, from this point of view, he is the renouncer of injury to mobile beings.

Further, the monk (*muni*) is said to be the renouncer of injury even to one-sensed (immobile) beings, but the monks make movement, etc. on earth and in water etc.; there the total absence of even mobile beings is not found because the space occupied even by mobile beings is so small that it may not be perceivable by eyes and their existence is found on earth and in water, etc. only — this, the monks know from *Jinavani* (scriptures) and some monks know this through clairvoyance, etc. also, but they do not have intention of committing injury to mobile-immobile beings by negligence. And in the world, indulgence in activities like digging of earth and use of unboiled water, etc. is called injury to immobile beings and causing injury to gross mobile beings is called injury to mobile beings. The monks do not indulge in these activities, therefore, the monk is said to be the total renouncer of injury. From the same point of view he is stated to be the renouncer of untruth, theft, chastity and possessions.

From the viewpoint of omniscience, the false — speech-vibration (in the soul) is stated to be present upto twelfth *Gunasthana*, the assimilation of *Adatta-karma Parmanus* (specific atoms), etc. other non-self substance upto thirteenth *Gunasthana*, the rise of sex-pas-sion upto ninth *Gunasthana*, internal attachment upto tenth *Gunasthana*. The external possessions like *Samavasarana* etc. (congregation) are found associated with omniscient also; but due to absence of negligence, the monk does not have any sinful intention. And those activities which in the world are stated as “this person tells lies, steals, commits adultery, keeps possessions etc.” are not found in the monks, therefore, they are stated to be the renouncers of untruth, etc.

And among the *Mulgunas* (fundamental rites of a monk) the renunciation of the objects of five senses is described, but knowing through the senses has not stopped and if the attachment-aversion



passion in the objects (of senses) would have been totally destroyed then the *Yathakhyat-Charitra* (perfect right conduct) would have been evolved to them but this has not happened, yet in broad sense the desire of objects of senses has ended; therefore, they are stated to have renounced the objects of senses. Similarly, one should know elsewhere also.

Moreover, whatever a votary renounces and practises all that is according to the system of *Charanaanuyoga* and worldly tradition. For example, someone renounces injury to mobile beings; here he has renounced that injury which in *Charanaanuyoga* and worldly tradition is called injury to mobile beings. The renunciation of such injuries to mobile beings which are perceived in omniscience cannot be possible. Here that injury to mobile beings which he has renounced is like this – “not to think of it is renunciation by mind, not to talk of it is renunciation by words, not to act through body is renunciation by body.” It should be known that other renunciations and practices are also followed in the same way and by this method only.

Here arises a question that in *Karanaanuyoga* the description is found “precisely as it is” from the omniscience point of view. There, in the sixth *Gunasthana*, the total absence of the twelve kinds of non-abstinence (*Aviratis*) is stated; how is it so?

**Answer:** ‘Non-abstinence’ also is included in vibratory activity (*Yoga*) and passions (*Kashayas*), but there also the non-abstinence is defined to be the absence of renunciation from *Charanaanuyoga* point of view; hence, those are absent there. The mental non-abstinence is stated to be absent but the mental thoughts are found in the monk, yet it should be known that due to absence of vicious proclivity of unrestrained mind the absence of mental non-abstinence is described.

Moreover, in *Charanaanuyoga*, the names, etc., various terms, are stated from the conventional worldly tradition point of view. For example, the true believer is stated to be a true recipient and misbeliever as unworthy recipient. Here one who has faith in *Jinadeva* (the conqueror omniscient God) etc. should be known as true believer and one who does not have such faith as misbeliever. Because giving of donation is advised in *Charanaanuyoga*, therefore,

one should understand the meaning of right belief, wrong belief as stated in *Charanaanuyoga* only. But if the right belief, wrong belief are considered as per *Karanaanuyoga* then the same *Jiva* who was in eleventh *Gunasthana* might fall in the first *Gunasthana* in one *Antarmuhurta* (within 48 minutes) only. In such a situation how could the decision about the true recipient and the unworthy recipient be taken by the doner ?

Further, if the viewpoint of *Dravyaanuyoga* is taken about the existence of right belief, wrong belief, then in the congregation of monks, there are both *Dravyalingis*<sup>1</sup> and *Bhavalings*<sup>2</sup> monks also. Firstly, correct decision about them is very difficult, because the external conduct of both is found to be similar and even if by chance a true believer may be able to judge correctly (a *Dravyalingi*) on the basis of some symptom and if he does not adore him then others will doubt as to why did he not adore him? In this way, if the false status of a monk gets disclosed, then it will create controversy in the congregation of monks, therefore, here the statement should be understood from the viewpoint of conventional right belief and wrong belief.

Here someone may ask- "How would a right believer adore a *Dravalingi* monk because he considers the *Dravyalingi* to be inferior in qualities even to himself?"

**Answer:** In a *Dravyalingi* monk the practice of conventional religion is found in very great measure and adoration is also a conventional practice only. For example, there is a rich person but he offers respect to a person who is elder in age from the parentage point of view. Similarly, the true believer possesses right faith but he offers adoration from the viewpoint of conventional religion to that person who is higher in status from the conventional religion point of view, treating him to be possessing greater merits. Similarly, those *Jivas* who observe fasts in greater measure are called *Tapaswi* (ascetic observing penance). Although one, who indulges greatly in meditation and scriptural studies, is a superior ascetic; nevertheless,

---

1-2. Both *Dravyalingi* & *Bhavalingsi* monks are *Digamber Jain* monks but the difference is of wrong-right belief. The *Dravyalingi* monk is without right belief i.e. he is still a wrong believer whereas the *Bhavalingsi* is a true believer.

here in *Charanaanuyoga*, there is prominence of external penance, therefore, he is called an ascetic *Tapaswi*. Similarly, one should know about other terminology used herein.

Thus the methodology of exposition in *Charanaanuyoga* should be known with various other different forms as stated above.

### **Methodology of Exposition in *Dravyaanuyoga***

Now the methodology of exposition in *Dravyaanuyoga* is being described :-

The way by which right belief of *Jiva*, etc. substances is attained by *Jivas*, in that way, the description of their details, logic, reasoning, illustrations (examples), etc. is done here. Because here the purpose is of the evolution of right belief. Although *Jiva* etc. substances are indivisible (*Abheda*), nevertheless, by assuming divisions in them, the description of *Dravya* (substances), *Guna* (attributes) and *Paryayas* (modifications), etc. divisions is done conventionally. And for arousing faith, discourses are given through different logic and reasonings or by means of *Pramana* (comprehensive view) and *Nayas* (partial view). This is also a method. Further, logic (*Hetu*) is put up & illustrations (*Drishtantas*) are given for evolving *Anumāna* (inference), *Pratyabhijnana* (recognition of an object by noticing similarities and differences) about the substance. Thus, here the discourses are given for arousing faith in the substance.

Further, for evolving faith in liberation path, the *Jiva-Ajiva* etc. *Tattvas* are described by means of their specialities, logic, reasoning, illustration etc. There, the way by which the discriminative knowledge of self and non-self is evolved, in that way the ascertainment of the nature of *Jiva-Ajiva* is done, and the way by which the passionless disposition is evolved in that way the nature of *Asrava* (influx) etc. is explained; and there, chiefly the glory of self-realisation (*Atmaanubhavan*) is shown for the sake of evolution of true knowledge and detachment towards worldly things.

Further, in *Dravyaanuyoga* wherever there is predominance of real spiritual sermons, there the conventional religion (*Vyavahara Dharma*) is also contradicted. The *Jivas* who do not try for self-realisation and are engrossed in external conventional practices, by

detaching them from there and for diverting them towards self-realisation, the insignificance of vows, chastity, continence, etc. is emphasised. There one should not know that he should start indulging in sinful acts by relinquishing these (virtuous acts). Because the purpose of that discourse is not to encourage *Ashubhopayoga* (inauspicious dispositions); but for evolving *Shuddhopayoga* (passionless conduct) the *Shubhopayoga* (auspicious conduct) is contradicted.

Someone may say here that in metaphysics (*Adhyatma Shastras*) *Punya* (virtue) and *Papa* (vice) both described to be alike, so if *Shuddhopayoga* is evolved then it is good, but if it is not evolved then one may either engage himself in *Punya* (virtuous acts) or in *Papa* (vicious acts)?

**Answer:** For example, from the lower caste (*shudra*) point of view, the *Jaat* and the *Chāndāla* are said to be alike but comparatively *Jaat* is somewhat better than *Chāndāla*, because one is untouchable, the other is touchable. Similarly, from the bondage cause point of view, the *Punya* and the *Papa* both are alike but *Punya* is somewhat better than *Papa*; because one is intense passion and the other is feeble passion. Therefore, one should know that it is not desirable to indulge in *Papa* by giving up *Punya*.

Further, those *Jivas* who are engrossed in activities like adoration of *Jina's* idol only, for diverting them towards self-realisation, etc. - "God is in the body and not in the temple" –such discourse is given. Here one should not know that he is being encouraged to give up adoration and get happiness by taking food, etc.; because this is not the purpose of such preachings.

In the same way, wherever such conventional practices are contradicted, one should not become negligent (towards pious acts); one should rather know that the *Jivas* who are engrossed in conventional practices only, for creating interest in real religion (*Nishchaya Dharma*) in them, the conventional religion (*Vyavahara Dharma*) is described to be insignificant.

And in the same *Shastras* the true believer's indulgence in carnal pleasures, etc. has been described as not to be the cause of bondage but the cause of *Nirjara* (shedding of *karmas*); but one should not understand here the carnal pleasures to be beneficial or worth



indulgence. There, for emphasising the glory of true believer, the carnal pleasures, etc. which are well-known as the causes of intense bondage, have been ignored because in spite of their persistence, due to the strength of right belief, feeble bondage is caused and due to the same power, the Shedding of *Karmas* (*Nirjara*) increases. Therefore, conventionally the carnal pleasures are not stated to be the cause of bondage but the cause of *Nirjara* (dissociation of *karmas*). Even if on deliberation carnal pleasures appear to be the cause of *Nirjara* then why should the true believer give up them and accept monkhood? Here the purpose of this statement is only to show the glory of the true belief due to the power of which even the carnal pleasures are not able to show their effect. In the same way, the true meaning of other such statements should also be known.

Further, the object of *Dravyaanuyoga* is also to actuate *Jivas* to accept and give up some things like that of *Charanaanuyoga*; Therefore, here the description is made from the viewpoint of thoughts and dispositions which can be comprehended by non-omniscients. The main difference is that in *Charanaanuyoga* the emphasis is laid on the external activities whereas in *Dravyaanuyoga* the emphasis is on inner spiritual thoughts & dispositions, but the description is not as subtle as is found in *Karanaanuyoga*. The same is illustrated hereunder:-

*Shubha* (auspicious), *Ashubha* (inauspicious) and *Shuddha* (pure) - such three states of *Upayoga* (active thought activity) are described. The thoughts with religious attachment are termed as *Shubhopayoga*, sinful thoughts and aversion are termed as *Ashubhopayoga* and passionless thoughts (devoid of attachment -aversion) are termed as *Shuddhopayoga*. This statement is from the viewpoint of the thoughts comprehensible by non-omniscients. In *Karanaanuyoga* the description is found from the viewpoint of inauspicious-auspicious thoughts as per *Jivas'* passionate power in different *Gunasthanas*; this aspect is not considered here.

According to *Karanaanuyoga* the passionless *Shuddhopayoga* is evolved on attainment of *Yathakhyāta-Charitra* (perfect right conduct); it will be attained automatically on destruction of *Moha* (conduct-deluding *karma*); how can a person of lower spiritual stage



effectuate *Shuddhopayoga*? Whereas in *Dravyaanuyoga* the emphasis in sermons is laid on the evolution of *Shuddhopayoga* only; therefore, at that time when a non-omniscient engrosses his *Upayoga* in self-realisation, etc. by relinquishing the thoughts engrossed in comprehensible activities like adoration, injury, etc., he is called the possessor of *Shuddhopayoga*. Although there exists subtle passions comprehensible in omniscience, yet that view-point is not considered here. He is stated to be possessing *Shuddhopayoga* because he relinquishes attachment, etc. passions which are comprehensible in his knowledge.

Similarly, the evolution of right belief is stated on attainment of right faith in self-nonsel *Tattvas* etc. This statement is from the viewpoint of comprehensibility. From subtle point of view, the description of right belief, etc. in different *Gunasthanas* etc. is found in *Karanaanuyoga*. Likewise, one should know elsewhere.

Therefore, if someone tries to equate the style of description of *Dravyaanuyoga* with *Karanaanuyoga* then at some places it tallies and at some places it does not tally. For example, on evolution of *Yathakhyat Charitra* (perfect right conduct) *Shuddhopayoga* is found from both points of view; but in lower spiritual stage *Shuddhopayoga* is possible sometimes from *Dravyaanuyoga* point of view, but from the *Karanaanuyoga* point of view, due to existence of different degrees of passions always, *Shuddhopayoga* is not accepted. Similarly, one should know about the other statements also.

Further, in *Dravyaanuyoga*, for proving the *Tattvas* etc. described in other faiths to be wrong, the same are contradicted. This is not done maliciously. The purpose is to evolve the right belief by proving them to be untrue.

Similarly, in other ways also, the methodology of exposition is found in *Dravyaanuyoga*.

Thus, the methodology of exposition in all the four *Anuyogas* has been explained. There, in some *Shastra*, the exposition is found with the prominence of one *Anuyoga*, in some with two *Anuyogas*, in some with three *Anuyogas* and in some others with all the four *Anuyogas*. So where whatever is possible, one should understand the same.

### The Tradition of Exposition in *Anuyogas*

Now the prominence of the tradition found in these *Anuyogas* is being described here.

In *Prathamānuyoga* the tradition of rhetorical *Shastras* and metrical *Shastras* is prominent, because by rhetoric statements the mind gets delighted; by narrating directly one's *Upayoga* is not engrossed to the same extent to which it is engrossed with rhetorical reasoning. Further, if a distant object is described with some exaggeration then its nature becomes easily comprehensible.

In *Karānānuyoga* the tradition of mathematical expressions is prominent, because therein the measure (*Pramāna*) etc. of substances, space (region), time, qualities, etc. are described. So, by using the tradition of mathematics, it becomes easily comprehensible.

In *Charānānuyoga* the tradition of moral instructions and ethical science is prominent, because the object there is that of putting into practice, i.e., to actuate the people to follow the conduct. Therefore, on explaining the ethical path according to worldly traditions the true aspirant starts following religious practices.

In *Dravyānuyoga* the tradition of logic or the science of reasoning is prominent, because there the purpose is of making decision. i.e., ascertaining the *Tattvas* etc. and in logic the path of making decision is shown.

These are the prominent traditions found in different *Anuyogas*; the descriptions are found with other traditions also.

Here someone may ask that only the learned scholars (*punditas*) have the knowledge of rhetoric, mathematics, ethics and logic. An ordinary person does not understand these; why therefore, direct description is not given?

**Answer:** The *Shastras* are chiefly meant for being studied by *punditas* (learned scholars) and sagacious persons; if the descriptions follow rhetoric tradition then their mind gets engrossed. And the scholars can explain the same to ordinary persons and those who do not understand then they should explain to them directly,

but by writing the direct description in *Shastras* the talented persons may not devote more time in their studies; therefore, the tradition of rhetoric, etc. is followed.

In this way, the tradition of description in the four *Anuyogas* is found. And in *Jaina* faith most of the *Shastras* are in these four *Anuyogas*. And the *Shastras* pertaining to grammar, logic, metres, words-book etc. and the *Shastras* on medical science, astrology, incantations, etc. are also found in the *Jina's* religion. Their purpose is being described hereunder:-

### **The Purpose of Works on Grammar, Logic, etc.**

The study of *Anuyogas-Shastras* is possible by the study of books on grammar, logic, etc. This is the purpose of grammar etc. *Shastras*.

Someone may say, if the *Shastras* are written in direct dialectal form then what remains the purpose of grammar, etc.?

**Answer:** The dialect is an imperfect and unsound language and is different-different in different places. How could scholars write books in such language? The correct, subtle description which is possible through grammar, logic, etc. is not possible in common language. Therefore, the *Shastras* are written following the tradition of grammar, etc.; so one should study in smaller or greater measure these books also as per one's capacity and should then study the purposeful *Anuyogas Shastras*.

Further, through the miracles of medical science, etc., the glory of *Jina's* religion may spread and by medicines, etc., the benefaction also may be caused to persons, or the *Jivas* who are engrossed in worldly affairs; they may be attracted by the miracles of medical science, etc. and may adopt *Jain* religion. Afterwards, they can understand and practise true religion and obtain spiritual benefit - with such purpose the books on medical science etc., are written.

Here one should remember that by knowing these to be *Jaina Shastras* one should not devote himself too much in the study of these *Shastras*. If due to sagacity these are studied in natural way and by such study if one's attachment, etc. passions are controlled then their knowledge is useful. But these *Shastras* are not as useful

as *Anuyoga Shastras*. Therefore, it is not desirable to engage oneself too much in their study.

**Question:** If it be so, then why did *Ganadhara Acharyas* (chief preceptors) compose these *Shastras*?

**Answer:** Knowing the aforesaid somewhat purpose, these *Shastras* are composed. For example, a very rich man sometimes accumulates less useful things also but if a less wealthy person accumulates those things then his wealth is spent there, then by what means would he collect more useful things? Similarly, the sagacious persons like *Ganadhara Acharya* (chief preceptors), etc. may compose less useful books on medical science, etc. also but if a person with average intelligence engages himself in their study then his intellect gets involved in it; how could he then study the highly beneficial *Shastras*?

Further, if a person with feeble passions composes in mythology descriptions relating to adornment of body, etc., he does not become passionate but if a highly passionate person composes descriptions of such bodily adornment, etc. then he would certainly get involved in sinful bondage. Similarly, the feeble-passioned *Ganadhara Acharyas* etc. compose the books of medical science, etc., even then they do not become passionate, but if the highly passionate people engage themselves in their study then due to increased feelings of attachment, etc. passions they would get involved in the bondage of sinful *karmas*. Such is the nature of sermons in *Jaina* faith.

### **Removal of Misconjectures about *Anuyogas***

#### **(1) Removal of Misconjectures about *Prathamānuyoga***

Many *Jivas* argue that in *Prathamānuyoga* the descriptions are found in great measure about adornment of body, etc. and battles, etc. due to which attachment, etc. passions increase; therefore, such statement should not have been there and one should not listen to such narrations.

**Answer:** If a story is to be narrated, then all events should be described and if the narration is exaggerated by use of rhetoric, etc., even then the words of scholars are always logical. Further if you say that for correlating the reference to the context the general description would have been sufficient, why is the description exaggerated?



Its answer is this that without exaggeration of the indirect statement, it does not become clear. Further, earlier someone enjoyed carnal pleasures, fought wars, etc., but later on after renouncing all this, he accepted monkhood; such astonishing contrast would be perceived only when statements are done with exaggeration.

**Question:** Such descriptions increase passions?

**Answer:** For example, someone constructs a *Chaityalaya* (temple); his objective is to encourage persons to practise religion there, but if some sinner indulges in sinful acts there, then there is no fault of the person who constructed the temple (*Chaityalaya*). Similarly, the preceptors described adornment of body, etc. in mythology. Here their purpose is not of encouraging passionnal acts, rather that of actuating religious acts; but if some sinner does not practise religion and increases attachment, etc. passionnal feelings then what is the fault of the preceptor?

**Question:** Such descriptions should not have been there which are likely to arouse passions?

**Answer:** The mind of an ordinary passionate person is not attracted in the statement of renunciation only. Therefore, as the medicine is given to a child in a sugar-coated form, similarly the interest of passionate person is aroused in religion through the description of carnal pleasures, etc.

**Question:** If this be so, then at least the dispassionate persons should not study such *Shastras*?

**Answer:** In the hearts of those persons who do not have attachment feeling, the hearing of narrations relating to bodily adornment, etc. does not generate attachment feeling. They know that such is the tradition of narration here.

**Question:** At least such persons, who become passionate on listening to such narrations of bodily adornment, etc., should not listen to such narrations ?

**Answer:** In *Jain* mythology where the purpose is of religion only and in which everywhere religion is fostered, the narration of adornment of body, etc. is done under the force of circumstances. If one



becomes highly passionate even on listening to this then where would such a person become dispassionate; rather by giving up listening to mythology he would indulge in such other acts only which would encourage intense attachment feelings, etc. Therefore, even such person is likely to develop religious instincts in smaller or greater measure by listening to mythology. This act is definitely better than other acts.

**Question:** In *Prathamaanuyoga* there are the stories of other *Jivas*; how is our purpose served by them?

**Answer:** For example, by listening to the stories of lewd persons, lewdness is increased in us also. Similarly, by listening to the stories of devout persons, great affection for religion is aroused in us also. Therefore, it is desirable to study *Prathamaanuyoga*.

### **(2) Removal of Misconjectures About *Karanaanuyoga***

Many *Jivas* argue that in *Karanaanuyoga* the *Gunasthanas* (spiritual stages), the *Marganas* (quest-places), etc., the *karma prakritis* and three worlds (universe) etc. are described. So one knows them that "this is so and that is so," but how is our purpose served by this? Our benefaction is possible either by worship or observing vows or giving charity, etc. or by self-realisation.

**Answer:** The God (omniscient) is passionless; by adoration He does not do anything by getting pleased. By adoration one's passions become feeble; automatically its fruit is beneficial. So in the study of *Karanaanuyoga*, the passions can become more feeble. Therefore, its fruit is more beneficial. And the activities of observing vows, and giving charity, etc. are the means of external instrumental causes of reducing passions. If one's *Upayoga* gets engrossed in the study of *Karanaanuyoga* then the attachment, etc. passions are removed which is the means of the internal instrumental cause; therefore, this is more useful. After accepting the vows, etc., the *Jivas* study the scriptures. And the self-realisation is the paramount act; but in the ordinary process of self-realisation the *Upayoga* does not remain fixed, and when it does not remain fixed then other thoughts arise in such a state; if one studies *Karanaanuyoga* then he engages his *Upayoga* in that thought.

Such engagement of *Upayoga* reduces attachment, etc. passions in the present and is the cause of reducing the attachment, etc. in future also; hence one should engage one's *Upayoga* here.

One knows the kinds and classifications of *Jivas & Karmas* etc. in various ways; in such knowledge there is no purpose of indulgence in attachment, etc., therefore, attachment, etc. are not increased, rather everywhere the purpose of evolving passionlessness is proved. Hence, such study is the cause of uprooting the attachment, etc. passions.

**Question:** Though some statements are of this purpose only, but what is achieved through the description of *Yojanas* (unit of distance measurement), etc. of islands, oceans, etc.?

**Answer:** On knowing them, agreeable-disagreeable feeling is not aroused; therefore, the aforesaid purpose is served.

**Question:** If this be so, then even knowing of things like stones, etc. which serves no purpose, does not give rise to agreeable-disagreeable feeling; therefore, such knowledge also proves to be useful?

**Answer:** An ordinary passionate person does not make effort of knowing any thing without the purpose of attachment, etc.; if its knowledge takes place on its own then due to the intention of internal attachment, he wants to disengage his *upayoga* from there. Here he knows the islands, oceans, etc. effortfully, engages *upayoga* there, so such act is possible only on reduction of attachment, etc. passions. And in knowing stones, etc., if any worldly purpose is perceived, then attachment, etc. passions arise but in knowing the islands, etc., no worldly purpose is involved; therefore, it is not the cause of attachment, etc. passions.

If by listening to the structure of heavens, etc., attachment (passion) is aroused, then it will be about the next birth only. Here, by knowing the virtuous conduct (*Punya*) to be its cause, by giving up vicious conduct (*Papa*), he would follow virtuous conduct. This much benefit only will be there. Further, on knowing islands, etc., the exact structure of the universe is known, then by perceiving the descriptions of other faiths to be false, he would become true believer and on removal of fallacy by knowing the exact structure of the

universe, purity of *Upayoga* emerges. Therefore, such study of *Karanaanuyoga* is efficacious.

**Question:** Study of *Karanaanuyoga* is very difficult therefore, its study causes uneasiness?

**Answer:** If the object is known easily, then *Upayoga* (active knowledge) does not get engrossed in it and the zeal of knowing a known thing repeatedly does not arise, then the *Upayoga* gets engrossed in sinful acts; hence one should study that also which according to his ability can be studied with difficulty; but how would one study that which he cannot study?

Further, you say that "Such study causes weariness". But religion does not consist in remaining idle. If one feels happiness in idleness then sin alone is caused; hence it is desirable to make effort for the sake of religion. With such thoughts, one should engage oneself in the study of *Karanaanuyoga*.

### **(3) Removal of Misconjectures About *Charanaanuyoga***

Many *Jivas* say- "In *Charanaanuyoga* the discourse is for observing the external vows, (rites) etc. but no purpose is served by them; our thoughts and dispositions should be pure whatever be the external activity; therefore, one need not pay attention to such discourse.

**Answer:** There exists instrumental cause and effect relationship between soul's dispositions and external activities, because the actions of a non-omniscient *Jiva* are found in accordance with thoughts; sometimes some activity also takes place unrelated with thoughts; this happens helplessly. When one engages himself willfully in some act and says that 'my thoughts are not such', - this is his fallacy. Or, thoughts may be aroused by paying attention to external objects. Therefore, for detaching one's *Upayoga*, in *Samayasara Shastra* etc., its dissociation from the external objects is advised. Hence, on lessening of attachment, etc. passions, sequentially the house-holder's and monk's religion are evolved externally. Or, on accepting in this way householder's and monk's religion in the state of fifth and sixth *Gunasthanas* on lessening of attachment, etc. feelings, appropriate dispositions are evolved. Such exposition is found in *Charanaanuyoga*.

And if there be no achievement by observance of external continence, then what is the reason that the gods of *Sarvarthasiddhi* heaven, who are true believers, are stated to have fourth *Gunasthana* only, whereas the householders *Shravakas* possess the fifth *Gunasthana*. Moreover, why should the *Tirthankaras*, etc. accept continence (great vows) by renouncing the householder's life? Therefore, this is the rule that without the means of external continence and vows, etc. one's thoughts & dispositions cannot become pure, hence for the knowledge of code of external conduct, one must study *Charanaanuyoga*.

#### (4) Removal of Misconjectures About *Dravyaanuyoga*

Many *Jivas* say that in *Dravyaanuyoga* the inferiority of vows, continence, etc. conventional religion (*Vyavahara Dharma*) is shown. A true believer's indulgence in carnal pleasures, etc. is stated to be the cause of *Nirjara* (shedding of *karmas*). By listening to such statements, the *Jiva* will become unrestrained by giving up virtuous activities and adopting sinful acts. Therefore, reading and listening to these *Shastras* is not desirable.

**Answer:** "Though a donkey may die by eating sugarcandy, yet the human beings will not give up eating sugarcandy". Similarly, if a person with perverse understanding becomes unrestrained by listening to spiritual *Shastras* then the judicious persons will not give up study of spiritual *Shastras*. What is necessary is that if someone seems to be becoming unrestrained he should be discoursed in such a manner by which he would not become unrestrained. Moreover, in spiritual *Shastras* also at several places unrestrained behaviour has been contradicted, therefore, the one who listens to them attentively, does not become unrestrained; but by listening to one aspect, if one becomes unrestrained due to his misunderstanding, there is no fault of *Shastras*; his own fault is there.

And if by imagining false faults, the reading and listening of spiritual *Shastras* is contradicted, then by such contradiction the liberation path is contradicted, because therein lie the basic preachings about the path of liberation. For example, most of the *Jivas* are benefitted by rains and if someone is harmed then by giving importance to it, one should not contradict rains. Similarly, most of



the *Jivas* are encouraged to follow the path of liberation but contrarily if somebody indulges in sinful acts, then giving prominence to it, one should not contradict the study of spiritual *Shastras*.

Further, one may become unrestrained by listening to spiritual *Shastras*, but earlier also he was a false believer and now too he remains a false believer only. The only harm would be that he may not get birth in good state of existence and may get birth in a miserable state of existence. But if spiritual discourses are not given then many *Jivas* are restrained from attaining the true path of liberation and this results in great harm to most of the *Jivas*; therefore, one should not contradict the spiritual discourses.

Further, many *Jivas* say that the spiritual discourses found in *Dravyaanuyoga* are of very high order and so it is useful for persons of higher spiritual stages, but the persons found in the lower state should be discourses to adopt practices of vows, continence, etc. only?

**Answer:** In *Jina's* faith the tradition is that first of all right belief is attained and afterwards vows, etc. are accepted. The right belief is attained on acquiring the faith of self-nonselself and that faith is acquired by the study of *Dravyaanuyoga*. Hence, first one should become a true believer by generating faith in accordance with *Dravyaanuyoga* and afterwards he should become a votary by accepting the vows, etc. according to *Charanaanuyoga*. Thus, primarily in the lower stages only *Dravyaanuyoga* is useful; only secondarily if it seems that someone is not capable of attaining right path of liberation, then he is discourses to follow vows, etc. Therefore, believing that the study of spiritual *Shastras* is desirable for persons of higher spiritual stages, persons of lower stages should not avoid the study of *Dravyaanuyoga*.

**Question:** The nature of sermons of higher order is not grasped by persons of lower stages?

**Answer:** It is not desirable by such persons to plead ignorance here who exhibit great capacities in other activities. The true nature of *Dravyaanuyoga* can be properly perceived by constant study; it may be that one is able to grasp in smaller or greater measure according to his level of intelligence, but if someone supports avoidance of such study then it amounts to being envious of *Jaina* faith.



**Question:** The time now is bad, therefore, the highest spiritual sermons should not be given prominently?

**Answer:** The present time is bad from the viewpoint of non-attainment of liberation directly; but in the present time attainment of right belief through self-realisation, etc. is not forbidden, therefore, for self-realisation, etc., one must study *Dravyaanuyoga*.

The same is stated in *Shat-Pahuda (Moksha-Pahuda)*:

“ अज्जवि तिरयणसुद्धा अप्पा झारुण जंति सुरलोए ।  
लौयंतियदेवत्तं तत्थ चुआ णिव्वुदिं जंति ॥ 77 ॥”

**Meaning:** Even today the *Jivas* purified by evolution of three jewels (right belief, knowledge & conduct) get birth in heavens through meditation on self-soul and also attain godhood in *Laukantika* heaven; after completing the heavenly duration they attain liberation (through one birth in human male body). Therefore, in this era also there should be prominence of discourses of *Dravyaanuyoga*.

**Question:** Spiritual *Shastras* are a part of *Dravyaanuyoga*. In such *Shastras* discourses are given about the discriminative knowledge of the self-nonsel, etc.; this is very useful and also easily understandable; but there the description of substance attribute - modifications, etc. and of *Pramana* (comprehensive knowledge viewpoint), *Nayas* (partial viewpoints) etc. and the refutation of the *Tattvas* mentioned in other non-*Jaina* faiths is also found. By the study of these (*Shastras*) various types of notions and thoughts arise, and their knowledge is acquired after great efforts; hence, one should not study them?

**Answer:** “Knowing something in detail is more effective than knowing it in general”. More and more one goes into details, greater and greater clarity and purity about the nature of the substances is attained, faith becomes firm, attachment, etc. are reduced; therefore, it is justifiable to study these *Shastras*.

Thus, by misconjures about all the four *Anuyogas* one should not be averse towards their study.

## Utility of the Study of Books on Grammar, Logic, etc.

There are books on grammar, logic, etc.; one should study these *Shastras* also in smaller or greater measure, because without their knowledge, the meaning of the higher *Shastras* is not properly perceived. And the clarity which is obtained about the nature of the substance with the help of the knowledge of these (grammar, logic, etc.) – that degree of clarity is not obtained through the knowledge of ordinary language, etc. only. Hence knowing these traditionally useful, one should study these also but should not get entangled in their study. After gaining their basic knowledge, one should devote himself in the study of purposeful *Shastras*.

And books on medical science (physiology) etc. have no role to play in the liberation path; therefore, if in the ordinary course with the object of conventional religion their knowledge is obtained, then one should do good to others but should not indulge in sinful acts. And if their study is not done, there is no harm.

In this way knowing the *Jina's* scriptures to be faultless, one should believe in their preachings.

## Removal of Seemingly - Contradiction Among *Anuyogas*

Now the seemingly - contradiction among *Anuyogas*, which arises due to lack of understanding of different points of views, is being removed.

Wherever the description is found on the tradition of *Prathamaanuyoga* etc. *Anuyogas*, the same should be known there as per its tradition. By knowing one *Anuyoga's* statement to be different from the statement of another *Anuyoga* one should not raise doubt. For example, at some places the faultless true believer only is stated as not having doubt, worldly desire, disgust, etc. but at other places the rise of fear is stated upto eighth *Gunasthana*, of greed upto tenth and of disgust upto eighth *Gunasthana*; these should not be known to be contradictory. There is the absence of intense doubts, etc. in a true believer because of right belief. Chiefly speaking, the true believer does not have any doubt, etc.; from this point of view, in

*Charanaanuyoga*, the doubts, etc. are described to be absent in a true believer, but from the subtle power point of view, the rise of fear, etc. (quasi-passions) is found upto eighth etc. *Gunasthana*; therefore, in *Karanaanuyoga*, their presence is stated upto that stage. In the same way, one should know elsewhere.

Earlier many examples have been cited in the discussion of methodology of *Anuyogas*. One should know them or understand from one's own intelligence.

Further, in one and the same *Anuyoga*, from different points of view, differing statements are found. For instance, in *Karanaanuyoga* absence of recklessness (*Pramāda*) is stated in the seventh *Gunasthana*; there the passions (*Kashayas*) are treated as subdivisions of recklessness (*Pramadas*) and in the same *Anuyoga* the existence of passions (*Kashyas*) is stated upto tenth *Gunasthana*. One should not know such statements to be contradictory because here, under *Pramadas*, those *Kashayas* (passions) which are caused knowingly in the form of auspicious-inauspicious dispositions, are included and in the seventh *Gunasthana* such diversion of *Upayoga* (knowingly) is not found, therefore, their absence is described there. And from the viewpoint of subtleness of dispositions, etc., the same (passions) are described to be present upto the tenth *Gunasthana*.

Further, in *Charanaanuyoga*, the renunciation of seven bad habits like theft, adultery, etc. is described in the first *Pratima* (householder's first vow) and there itself their renunciation is described in the second *Pratima*; one should not sense any contradiction in this; because in seven bad habits such thefts, etc. are included which cause punishment, etc. and are highly censured in public life. And in vows such thefts, etc. are described to be renounced which are against the householder's conduct and publicly also are treated to be bad; one should know such meaning elsewhere also.

Further, with reference to different-different dispositions, one and the same disposition is described differently-differently. For example, at some places the 'great vows', etc., are described to be subdivisions of *Charitra* (conduct) and at other places even on observance of 'great vows', etc., the *Dravyalingi Muni* is described to be incontinent (vowless). One should not know any contradiction in

this; because along with right knowledge, the great vows, etc. are termed as *Charitra* and along with false knowledge even on observance of vows, etc., one is incontinent (vowless) only.

Further, *Vinaya* (veneration) is included in five kinds of *Mithyatva* (false belief) also and is described as one of the twelve penances (*Tapas*) also; one should not sense any contradiction in this, because offering veneration to those who do not deserve to be venerated and treating this to be religion is called *Vinaya Mithyatva*; but appropriate veneration of those who are venerable in the religious tradition is *Vinaya Tapa*.

Further, at some places pride has been censured and at other places it is praised; one should not see any contradiction in this, because for inspiring others to treat oneself as superior due to pride-passion, if one does not pay reverence etc. to others, then such pride-passion is censurable only; and because of absence of greed-passion if one does not bow or feel inferiority complex, then such pride is praiseworthy.

Further, at some places cleverness has been censured whereas at other places it has been praised; there is no contradiction in this. Because under the influence of deceit-passion, if one exhibits cleverness for cheating someone, then such cleverness is censurable only. But that cleverness which is exhibited in accomplishment of some act appropriately and judiciously is praiseworthy only. Similarly, one should know elsewhere also.

Further, at some place some disposition might have been censured in comparison to a superior disposition of the same type and at other place the same disposition might have been praised in comparison to an inferior disposition of the same type. One should not think this to be contradictory. For example, wherever a particular type of auspicious activity is censured then one should understand that this has been done in comparison to a higher auspicious activity or pure (passionless) disposition and where it has been praised, there one should know that this has been done in comparison to an inferior activity or inauspicious activity.

Further, likewise, some *Jiva* might have been censured in comparison to some *Jiva* of higher status. There, one should not know



him to be totally censurable; and some *Jiva* might have been praised in comparison to some other *Jiva* of lower status; there one should not know to be fully praiseworthy, but should know his merits-demerits appropriately.

Similarly, one should understand the meaning of various preachings from the viewpoint from which they have been described.

Further, in the *Shastras*, at some places, one particular word is used in one sense and at other place in another sense; by identifying the topic, one should understand its possible meaning. For example, the *Samyag darshan* (right belief) has been described in liberation path; there the meaning of the word *Darshan* is faith and in the description of *Upayoga* the meaning of the word *Darshan* is perception of the general nature of the substance and in the description of senses, the meaning of the word *Darshan* is only to see through the eyes. And in the description about the measure (magnitude) etc. of the substances the meaning of *Sukshma* (subtle) and *Bādar* (gross) is to be understood as that which has smaller magnitude is called *Sukshma* (subtle) and that which has bigger magnitude is called *Bādar* (gross). And in the description of matter-molecules, etc. that which may not be perceivable by senses is called *Sukshma* and that which is perceivable by senses is called *Bādar*. In the context of the description of *Jivas* (embodied beings) etc. that which automatically does not get obstructed without the instrumentality of supernatural power, etc. is called *Sukshma* (subtle-bodied *Jiva*) and that which gets obstructed is called *Bādar* (gross-bodied *Jiva*). In the description of cloths, etc., the thin (not coarse) means *Sukshma* (fine) and thick (coarse) means *Bādar* (not fine).

Further, the meaning of word *Pratyaksha* (direct knowledge) in worldly affairs is knowing directly through senses; in the divisions of *Pramana* (comprehensive knowledge) clear discernment is called *Pratyaksha*; with reference to self-realisation, etc., the state of being stationary of one's *Upayoga* in the self-soul is called *Pratyaksha*. Further for example, the misbeliever is said to be devoid of knowledge. So here one should not understand the total absence of knowledge; the absence of knowledge is stated from the viewpoint of true knowledge. For example, with reference to celestial beings



where the word *Udirana*<sup>1</sup> has not been used, there the meaning of the word *Udirana* should be understood to be the death due to other instrumental causes and with reference to the description of ten *Karmas* (modes of *karmas*) where *Udiranakarana* has been described to *Devaayu* (age *karma* of the celestial beings) also, its meaning should be understood to be the throwing of upper *Nishekas*<sup>2</sup> of *karmas* in *Udayavali*<sup>3</sup>. Similarly, one should know elsewhere also appropriately.

Further, by prefixing some words before one particular word only many kinds of meanings become evident and the same word has different meanings. In whatever context whichever meaning is suitable, the same should be known to be its meaning. For example, "one who conquers" is called *Jina* (conqueror) but in the context of religion, one who conquers the *Karma*-enemy, is known to be the *Jina*. Hence, the meaning which is connoted by adding the word *Karma*-enemy before the word *Jina* is relevant; the other meaning is irrelevant. And for example, one who possesses life (sentience) is called *Jiva* (living being). Where the description of life and death be from *Vyavahara* (conventional) point of view, there, one who possesses senses, etc. vitalities is called *Jiva*. And where the description of the substances, etc. be from the *Nishchaya* (real) point of view, there, one who possesses the sentience vitality is called *Jiva*. Similarly, the word *Samaya* has many meanings, e.g., soul is *Samaya*, all substances are *Samaya*, time substance is *Samaya*, unit of (conventional) time only is *Samaya*, *Shastra* is *Samaya*, faith is *Samaya*. In this way, out of several meanings, whichever is appropriate in a particular place, the same should be known to be its meaning.

Further, at some places names, etc. are used from the view-point of the meaning of that word; at other places name, etc. are used in a customary sense. Where names etc. are used from customary point of view, there one should not grasp their literal meaning, but whatever be its traditional meaning, the same should be accepted.

1. *Udirana* = The state of prematured rise of *karmas*.
2. *Nisheka* = The sum total of atoms (*karmas*) coming into rise in an unit of time.
3. *Udayavali* = *Karmas* being ready to get dissociated; (state of *karmas* just prior to their rise).

For example, right belief, etc. has been described as *Dharma* (religion). So, here the word *Dharma* used is in its true sense, because *Dharma* is that which causes evolution of blissful state in the soul. Where the substance *Dharma* (ether) is described as *Dharma*, here, the word *Dharma* is used in customary sense; one should not grasp its literal meaning but should understand that it denotes a substance of this name. Similarly, one should know elsewhere also.

Further, at some places the literal meaning of the word should not be accepted, but its purposeful meaning in that context should be grasped. For example, if somewhere something is described to be absent and its meagre existence is found there, then one should not understand its total absence there but should know that keeping in view its meagre presence, absence has been described. For example, it is stated that true believer is devoid of attachment feeling, etc. There, one should draw the meaning in the aforesaid manner, (i.e., presence of meagre attachment, etc. is found). Further, the literal meaning of the word *Nokashaya* (quasi-passions) is "the negation of passion". but this sense should not be accepted because here the purpose is to show that it is not a passion like anger, etc. but it is a minor type of passion, therefore, the word *Nokashaya* is used. Similarly one should know elsewhere.

Further, at some place the description may be found with some logic, so there one should grasp its purpose. In *Samayasara Kalasha*<sup>1</sup> it is stated that "just like the example of washerman, until one's belief of renouncing the alien dispositions is not put into practice, till then, this self-realisation is evolved". So here the purpose is to show that the moment alien dispositions are renounced, the self-realisation is evolved. In worldly affairs if an act is accomplished the moment someone comes, it is customary to say that "though he did not come and yet this work was accomplished." Such purpose only should be grasped here. Similarly, one should know elsewhere.

Further, at some place, some quantity (magnitude) etc. are mentioned; so, there one should not take the literal meaning but

1. अवतरति न यावद्वृत्तिमत्यन्तवेगादनवमपरभावत्यागदृष्टांतदृष्टिः।  
ज्ञातिरिति सकलभावैरन्यदीर्यैर्विमुक्ता स्वयमियमनुभूतिस्तावदाविर्बभूव ॥ 29 ॥

should grasp its purpose. In *Jnānarnavā*<sup>1</sup> *Shastra* it is stated- "In this era only two-three sagacious persons (true believers) are found." So, literally, only so many persons are not there, but the purpose is to say that very few persons (true believers) are there. Similarly, one should know elsewhere.

On this pattern, there are many more words used with different meanings; so, the same should be known appropriately; contrary meaning should not be grasped.

And whatever be the sermons, by distinguishing it correctly that which is found suitable to the self, the same should be accepted. For example, in the books on medical science several medicines are described; one should know them but he should take those medicines which might cure one's disease. If one is suffering from 'cold', then he should take that medicine only which produces heat and should not take that medicine which produces cold; one should know that this medicine is useful for others (and not for himself).

Similarly, one should acquire the knowledge of various preachings found in *Jain Shastras* but should follow only such preachings which might remove his perversities. He should accept that preaching which contradicts the perversity which one has and should not follow such preachings which support it. He should know that such preaching is useful for others.

Some examples are cited here. In the *Shastras* at some places preachings supporting *Nishchaya* (real standpoint) are found and at other places those supporting *Vyavahara* (conventional standpoint) are found. There if one has the excessive leanings towards *Vyavahara* then he should follow correct practice by accepting the preachings fostering the *Nishchaya* (real standpoint) and if one has excessive leanings towards *Nishchaya* then he should follow correct practices by accepting the sermons fostering the *Vyavahara* (conventional standpoint). Further, one may be already devoid of self-knowledge due to conventional faith; afterwards also he may not make effort for gaining self-knowledge by giving prominence to conventional sermons only; or due to faith in *Nishchaya* (real standpoint), one had become unrestrained by falling from renunciation and afterwards

1. दृः प्रज्ञाबललुप्तवस्तुनिचया विज्ञानशून्याशयाः, विद्यन्ते प्रतिमन्दिरं निजनिजस्वार्थोद्यता देहिनः ।  
आनन्दामृतसिन्धुशीकरचयैर्निर्वाय जन्मञ्चरं, ये मुक्तेर्वदनेन्दुवीक्षणपरास्ते सन्ति द्वित्रा यदि ॥ 24 ॥

also, by giving prominence to sermons based on real standpoint, he fosters the carnal pleasures. In this way, by following contrary sermons, harm alone is caused.

Further, it is stated in *Atmaanushasana*<sup>1</sup> that - "Being meritorious why do you indulge in blemishes? If you desired to become demeritorious then why did you not become fully demeritorious?" So, if a person be meritorious but may be having some blemish, then he should accept such preaching for removing that blemish. But if one is himself full of blemishes and by accepting such preachings wishes to defame meritorious persons, then he would harm himself only. It is not worse to have some blemish in comparison to one who is full of blemishes; therefore, such a person is better than yourself (a person full of blemishes). Further, here it is stated "Why did you not become full of blemishes?" So, this is just a logical argument; this sermon is not meant for encouraging someone to become full of blemishes. And if a meritorious person is criticized because of some blemish, it should be known that only the *Siddhas* (non-corporeal omniscients) are totally free from blemishes. In the lower spiritual stages, some merit or some demerit is always to be found.

Someone may say here - "If this be so, then how is it stated in *Shat-Pahuda*<sup>2</sup> that after accepting monkhood, if one keeps the slightest possession, then he also goes to *Nigoda* (i.e., host souled one-sensed beings)?"

**Answer:** By accepting higher spiritual status, if one indulges in some such mean practice which is not possible in that status, then due to breach of vows, etc., he involves himself in great sin and one should know that in the lower spiritual status where some such merits and demerits are possible, it is not desirable to highlight his demerits.

Further, it is stated in *Upadesha Siddhanta Ratna Māla*<sup>3</sup> - "Even the anger of the preacher who gives sermons according to *Jina's*

1. हे चन्द्रमः किमिति लंछनवानभूस्त्वं । तद्वान् भवेः किमिति तन्मय एव नाभूः ।  
किं ज्योत्स्नया मलमलं तव घोषयन्त्या । स्वर्भावभन्नु तथा सति नाऽसि लक्ष्यः ॥ 40 ॥
2. जहंजायरूवसरिसो तिलतुसमेतं ण गिहदि हत्थेसु  
जइ लेइ अप्पबहुयं ततो पुण जाइ णिग्गोदम् ॥ 18 ॥ (सूत्र-पाहुड्)
3. रोसोवि खमाकोसो सुत्तं भासंत जस्सणधणस्य ।  
उस्सुत्तेण खमाविय दोस महामोह आवासो ॥ 14 ॥ (उपदेशसिद्धांत रत्नमाला)



commandment, is a treasury of for-bearance." But this sermon is not meant for the discourser. If on the basis of this sermon, the discourser continues to indulge in anger, then he would harm himself only. This sermon is meant for acceptance by listeners. Sometimes even being angry, if the discourser gives a true sermon, then too the listeners will treat it to be beneficial only. Likewise, one should know elsewhere.

Further, intense heat-producing medicines are prescribed for the persons suffering from extreme cold, (typhus). If one is suffering from heat or from minor cold, takes such medicines then he would become miserable only. For one who has excessive prominence of some activity, the discourse may be given with great emphasis for its contradiction; if a person who does not have the prominence of such act or has little prominence, follows such sermon, then he would harm himself only.

For example, someone has very great liking for study of *Shastras* and does not make effort for self-realisation; for such person, too much study of *Shastras* has been negated. But a person who does not study the *Shastras* or studies *Shastras* rarely, if gives up study of the *Shastras* by such preachings and does not engage his *Upayoga* in self-realisation, then he would harm himself only.

Further, for a person who strongly believes religion to consist in committing injury through the act of oblation (religious sacrifice) and bathing, etc., the preaching is - "Even if the earth gets turned upside down no auspicious fruit can result by committing injury." But if a *Jiva* who accumulates lot of *Punya* (auspicious karmas) by practising acts of worship, etc. in which some injury is also caused, gives up worshipping, etc. by following such preachings and does not adopt injuriless practices like *Sāmāyika*<sup>1</sup> etc., then he would assuredly harm himself only. In the same way, one should know elsewhere.

For example, some medicine might be potentially effective, but one should continue taking it so long as it is beneficial to oneself. If even on mitigation of cold, one continues to take heat producing medicine, then it would rather cause the disease. Similarly, there is some religious activity, but one should continue its practice only till

---

1. *Samayika* = Vow of self-contemplation, state of equanimity.



such time it benefits the self. If even on evolution of higher spiritual status, one continues observance of the religious practice pertaining to lower spiritual status, it would rather cause harm only.

Further for example, religious practices like *Pratikramana*<sup>1</sup> etc. are advised for eradicating sin but if even after self-realisation, one indulges in the thoughts of *Pratikarmana*, etc. then it would rather increase perversity. From this very point of view *Pratikramana* etc. have been stated to be poison in *Samayasara*. Further, the religious activities like the glorification, etc. are advised to be followed by a vowless person; if even on becoming a votary, one indulges in these activities, then he would assuredly get bondage of vicious *karmas* only. How is it justifiable (for a votary) to become controller of the activities like managing temple, etc. after giving up activities like business, etc. Similarly, one should know elsewhere also.

Further the medicines like elixir, etc. are invigorating but if a person suffering from fever takes them, then great harm would be caused. Similarly, practice of high religion is very beneficial but if without the removal of one's passional dispositions, one adopts such high religious practices, then it would cause great harm only. For example, if one has not freed himself from inauspicious passions and adopts rambleless state of *Upayoga* then it would rather increase his passions. Further, if a person who is engrossed in sensual pleasures like taking food, etc. adopts religious practices like renunciation of worldly occupations and possessions, etc., then it would rather cause harm only. Further, if one has not renounced the perverse activities like indulgence in business, etc. and adopts religion in sanctimonious form of renunciation, then great harm would be caused to him. Similarly, one should know elsewhere also.

Likewise, after true deliberation and understanding the true sense of the preachings, one should adopt the same. Enough details have been considered so far. In fact, on evolution of right knowledge, one himself perceives the real sense of preachings. The sermons (preachings) are in the form of words and through words several meanings cannot be explained simultaneously; therefore, the preachings are generally given with the prominence of one meaning only.

---

2. *Pratikramana* = Repentence with confession.

Further, where whatever particular meaning is described, there, the prominence is of that particular meaning only. If someone gives prominence to its second aspect (meaning) then both aspects (meanings) of the preachings will not be grasped firmly; hence, in the preaching, one should emphasise firmly one aspect (meaning) but the emblem of whole of the *Jain* scripture is *Syadvada*<sup>1</sup> and the meaning of the word *Syad* is *Kathanchit* i.e., partially true from a particular point of view. Therefore, whatever sermon is received, it should not be taken to be the whole truth. After knowing the sense of preaching, one should ponder over as to how is this sermon? What is its purpose? and to which *Jiva* it is useful? With such deliberation, one should accept its true meaning. Afterwards, one should analyse his present state. In the manner in which the sermon seems to be useful to oneself, one should accept it in the same form and if sermon is worth knowing only, then he should know correctly. In this way, one should get benefitted from the preachings.

**Question:** What should a person with ordinary intelligence, who is not able to ponder so much, do?

**Answer:** For example, a businessman should engage himself in smaller or greater measure in that business which he understands according to his wisdom, but he must necessarily possess the knowledge of profit and loss. Similarly, a judicious person should accept that sermon in smaller or greater measure which he understands according to his wisdom, but one must have such knowledge as to what is beneficial to him and what is not beneficial to him. The real purpose is to mitigate attachment, etc. by attaining true belief and knowledge. Therefore, one should accept the purpose of that preaching only which fulfills his such purpose. Even if he does not possess detailed knowledge, he should at least not forget his purpose. So, much caution is extremely necessary. It is not desirable to understand the meaning of the preachings in such a form which may hurt the self-benefaction.

In this way, studying the *Jain Shastras* with the outlook of *Syadvada*, the benefaction of the self takes place.

**Question:** Where different-different viewpoints be possible, there the use of *Syadvada* is justified but what should one do when

from one viewpoint only mutual contradiction is perceived in the *Shastras*? For example, in *Prathamānuyoga* it is stated that thousands of monks have attained liberation along with one *Tirthankara*; and in *Karānānuyoga* it is stated as a rule that six hundred and eight *Jīvas* (monks) attain liberation in a duration of six months and eight *Samayas* (units of time). Further, it is described in *Prathamānuyoga* that gods and goddesses are born (in heaven) together and after death they are born together in human state of existence. In *Karānānuyoga* the age of a god is stated in *Sagaras* and that of goddess in *Palyas*; how are these statements reconciled?

**Answer:** The statements in *Karānānuyoga* are subtle and correct degree to degree whereas in other *Anuyogas* the statements are according to the relevant purpose. Hence, the statement of *Karānānuyoga* are true as they are, and in other *Anuyogas*, the statements are to be reconciled with the relevant purpose. Where it is stated that thousands of monks have attained liberation (*Moksha*) along with one *Tirthankara*, it should be known that so many have not attained liberation at one point of time but should be understood that the place where the *Tirthankara* (omniscient lord) stopped all activities of movement, etc. and became stationary, along with him many monks were present and afterwards they attained liberation at different times. In this way, the apparent contradiction in *Prathamānuyoga* and *Karānānuyoga* is removed. Further, the god and goddess took birth together; afterwards the goddess died and obtained several rebirths. These being purposeless, are not described. Afterwards they again took birth together in human embodied form. By such reconciliation the apparent contradiction is removed. Similarly, one should reconcile other statements.

**Question:** Although reconciliation in such statements is possible in some way but at some place it is stated that *Neminath Swami*<sup>1</sup> was born in *Sauripur* and at other place it is stated that he was born in *Dwaravati*. Further, the story of *Ramchandra*, etc. is found written differently-differently; at some places the one-sensed beings are stated to be in *Sasadana Gunasthana* and at other places it is not written so; how can one reconcile such contradictory statements?

1. *Neminath* was the 22nd *Tirthankara* of the present cycle of time.



**Answer:** Such contradictory statements are the results of bad times. In this era the persons possessing direct (independent) knowledge and persons highly versed in scriptural knowledge are not found and the *Shastras* have been composed by the persons of ordinary intelligence; due to lack of knowledge some meaning might not have been understood truly by them; therefore it is written so. Or, in this era, in *Jaina* faith too passionate persons are found and such persons might have written such statements due to some purpose. In this way such statements are found; that is why in *Jain Shastras* contradiction seems to be existing.

Wherever such contradictions are found, one should ascertain as to who is more authentic – the author making this statement or the author making that statement. After such deliberation, one should treat the statement of great preceptors to be authentic. Further, many *Shastras* are found in *Jaina* faith; one should compare their tradition. Those statements, which are in accordance with the set tradition, should be treated as authentic. Even after such deliberation, if it is not possible to ascertain the truth-untruth, then one should believe that “whatever is reflected in omniscience is only authentic”, because without ascertainment of truth about *Devas* (omniscient *Arihanta* God) and *Tattvas* etc., the path of liberation is not at all possible. In any case, such ascertainment is possible; therefore, if someone states their nature contrarily then one can himself perceive the truth. Further, if other statements cannot be ascertained or there remains some doubt about them, or even their contrary knowledge is obtained and yet such belief exists that whatever is known by omniscient is authentic, then there will be no impediment in the path of liberation.

**Question:** As the different types of statements are found in *Jina's* religion, similarly in *Shastras* of other faiths also different contradictory statements are found. You have somehow clarified the contradictions found in the statements of your faith and you impute blemishes to such statements found in other faiths. This shows that you suffer from attachment-aversion feeling?

**Answer:** Though the statements may be of various types, yet if they foster one and the same purpose then there is no fault; but if

they foster one purpose at one place and the other purpose at other place, then assuredly they are faulty. Now the one and only purpose of *Jina's* religion is of uprooting the *Raag* (attachment-aversion etc. passions). Therefore, at some places the purpose of quitting intense attachment, etc. by indulgence in feeble attachment, etc. is supported and at other places the purpose of uprooting passions totally is fostered, but nowhere the purpose of increasing the attachments, etc. passions is found. Therefore, whole of the description in *Jina's* religion is faultless. And in other faiths at some places the description is found with the purpose of quitting attachment, etc., and at other place the description is found with the purpose of increasing attachment, etc.; in the same manner other descriptions also are found with the contradiction in purposes. Therefore, the descriptions of other (non-*Jaina*) faiths are faulty. In worldly affairs also, one who makes different statements with the view of fostering one purpose only is said to be authentic and he who makes statements for fostering different-different purposes is said to be confused (insane) person.

Further, in *Jina's* religion whatever different types of statements are found, are from different-different viewpoints; there is no fault; whereas in other (non-*Jaina*) faiths different-different statements are found with one viewpoint only, so are faulty. For example, the *Jinadeva* (omniscient God) possesses perfect passionless disposition and is also found having the majesty of *Samavasarana* etc. Here, there is no contradiction. The majesty of *Samavasarana*, etc. is created by *Indra* (chief God). He, the *Arihanta Deva* (omniscient God), does not have any attachment, etc. in it; therefore, both things are possible. And in other (non-*Jaina*) faiths, the God is described to be a mere observer and passionless also and the lust - anger, etc. dispositions are stated to be his creations; so how is it possible for one and the same soul to have passionless disposition and the lust - anger, etc. passions? Similarly, one should know elsewhere also.

Further, due to bad times, in *Jina's* religion, some statements are found contradictory from one viewpoint only. So, this is the fault of ignorant persons but not the fault of *Jina's* religion. There too the glory of *Jina's* religion is such that no one can write unauthentic



statements. The birthplace of Lord *Neminath Tirthankara* is stated to be in *Sauripur* at one place and *Dwaravati* at other place. So, at whatever place he might have been born but taking of birth in a town is not unauthentic because even today persons are born in towns.

Further, in other (non-*Jaina*) faiths, their scriptures are stated to have been composed by persons having true knowledge like the omniscient, etc., but in them the statements are found to be contradictory. At some place the celibate from childhood is praised, at other place it is stated that "Benefaction is not possible without the birth of son." So, how can both statements be true? Such contradictory statements are found abundant there. Further, many unauthentic statements are found therein. For example, one such statement is "Semen fell in the mouth of a fish and it gave birth to a son". Such an event is not found associated with any one in the present era and by inference also this is not possible. Such innumerable statements are found there. If in these cases it is inferred that these are faults of omniscients then how could he make such mistakes? And contradictory statements cannot be believed. Therefore, it is concluded that faults lie in their faiths. With such ascertainment, one should follow the preachings found in *Jina's* religion only.

### **The Sequence of Studying the *Anuyogas***

One should study the *Prathamaaanuyoga*, etc. There is no such rule that first one should study this *Anuyoga* and then study that *Anuyoga*; But keeping in view the state of one's own thoughts and dispositions, one should study the same *Anuyoga* which might encourage him to follow religion. Alternatively, one may study sometimes one *Shashtra* and at other time some other *Shashtra*. For example, in the journal, various transactions are entered at different places; by correct posting of these transactions in the account, one can ascertain the state of debits and credits. Similarly, in the *Shastras* different types of sermons are found at different places; so, if in true knowledge one identifies it with the true purpose, then he may determine one's weal and woe.

Therefore, those *Jivas* who engross themselves in *Jina's* preachings through right knowledge with the relativity of *Syat* style of narration, attain self-realisation soon. In the path of liberation, first step is the knowledge of scriptures; without knowledge of scripture, the religion cannot be practised. Therefore, you too (the reader) should study scripture with unprejudiced understanding. Your benefaction is certain.

Thu ends, in *Moksha Marga Prakashaka Shastra*, the Eighth Chapter, containing deliberation on the nature of the preachings.

• • •

## CHAPTER 9

### NATURE OF LIBERATION PATH

दोहा : “शिव उपाय करतें प्रथम, कारन मंगलरूप।  
विघन विनाशक सुखकरन, नमौ शुद्ध शिवभूप ॥”

( **Meaning** : While making effort for liberation, I first bow to the pure self-soul – the monarch of liberation who is the cause of benediction, destroyer of impediments and the cause of bliss.)

Now the nature of liberation path is being described. Firstly the nature of wrong faith, etc. which are contrary to liberation path have been explained. Knowing them irksome and cause of sorrow, one should give up them by treating them renounceable. And in the middle portion, the nature of preachings has been described; knowing it correctly, one should understand the true sense of preachings. Now the nature of right belief, etc., which constitute the path of liberation are being explained. Knowing them blissful and the cause of bliss, one should accept them by believing them to be worth adopting; because the weal of soul is liberation only; the duty of soul is to make effort for its evolution only. Therefore, the same is being preached here.

#### **Soul's weal is liberation only**

“The weal of the soul is attainment of liberation only and nothing else”- how does such ascertainment take place – the same is being described:-

The soul is found in various states of attributes and modifications. Amongst these, whatever else be the state, no harm or benefit is caused to the soul; harm or benefit is caused to it only by the state of misery and happiness. Here no logic or example is required because it is clearly perceived.

All souls in the world are found making effort for avoiding miseries and evolving happiness. Whatever other efforts are made by them, are for this purpose only, there is no other purpose. Whatever causes misery is being avoided and whatever is supposed to cause happiness is being pursued.

Further, the states of contraction - expansion, etc. are, too, caused to the soul only and the association of many other substances is also found but no effort is made for those things which are not perceived to be causing pleasure or pain. Here one should know the nature of the soul to be such only. One can forbear all sorts of conditions but cannot forbear the state of misery. What can one do if misery is caused due to helplessness (subserviency), one has to bear it; but left to oneself, one does not want to undergo even the slightest misery. Further, whatever be the states of contraction - expansion, etc., one bears it in the natural course, because no logic is applicable in the state of nature. Such should be known to be nature of the soul.

One should know that when one suffers from misery, he wants to sleep; in the state of sleeping, one's active knowledge, etc. become feeble, but even by becoming like an inanimate object, he wishes to eliminate misery. And even he wishes to die. Although in death one believes his absolute destruction, yet one wishes to eliminate misery even by finishing one's existence. Therefore, one's sole purpose is only to end the state of misery.

Further, absence of misery only is happiness, because misery consists in perturbedness and its absence itself is happiness consisting in unperturbedness. This too is clearly perceived. Whatever association of external things may be found, one who is not internally perturbed, is happy. Further, perturbedness is caused due to rise of attachment, etc., passions because due to feelings of attachment, etc., one wishes to modify other substances differently and those substances modify differently. This causes perturbedness. Therefore, for mitigation of perturbedness, either one's attachment, etc. (passions) be uprooted or other substances should modify according to one's desire; but all other substances are not subservient to him. Sometimes some substance may be found modifying as per one's desire, even then his perturbedness does not get mitigated

totally; when everything happens as per his desire and nothing happens contrarily then alone one would remain unperturbed; but this can never be possible, because the modification of any substance is not dependent on any other substance. Therefore, unperturbedness is possible only on eradication of one's feelings of attachment, etc. (passions). So, this act can be attained, because attachment, etc. dispositions are not the natural dispositions, but are perverse dispositions, are produced due to instrumentality of other substances and that instrumental cause is the rise of *Moha* (deluding) *karma*; on its destruction, all sorts of attachment, etc. passions get eradicated and then on removal of perturbedness, misery ends and bliss is evolved. Hence, the destruction of the *Moha karma* is beneficial.

Further, the coexisting cause of perturbedness is the rise of *Jnanavarana* (knowledge-obscuring *karma*) etc. Due to the rise of *Jnanavarana* and *Darshanavarana* (perception-obscuring *karma*) knowledge and perception are not fully manifested; therefore, perturbedness is caused due to the desire of knowing and seeing (the things). Or he does not know the exact complete nature of the substance, due to which the feelings of attachment, etc. arise which cause perturbedness.

Further, due to the rise of *Antarya karma* (obstructive *karma*) the desired acts of charity, etc. are not fulfilled, then perturbedness is caused. The rise of *Antaraya karma* along with the rise of *Moha-karma* become the associating cause of perturbedness. On destruction of *Moha-karma* they become ineffective and those *karmas* get automatically destroyed (without any effort) in one *Antar Muhurta*, i.e., within very-very short period; but when the coexisting cause also gets destroyed then the fully manifested state of unperturbedness is realised. There, the omniscient God is said to have attained the state of infinite bliss.

Further, due to the instrumentality of the rise of *Aghati karmas* (non-destructive *karmas*) the union of body, etc. is found. There, due to rise of *Moha-karma*, the union of the body, etc. acts as an external coexisting cause of perturbedness. Perturbedness is caused due to the feeling of attachment, etc. whose internal cause is the rise of



*Moha-karma* and external cause is the rise of *Aghati karmas* due to which the union of body, etc. is found. Although the rise of *Aghati karmas* continues even after the destruction of *Moha-karma*, it in no way can cause perturbedness. But since earlier it was a coexisting cause of perturbedness, therefore, the destruction of *Aghati karmas* also is desirable for the soul. The state of misery is not found in the omniscient God even on the rise of these (*Aghati*) *karmas*. Therefore, no effort is necessary for their destruction; but on destruction of *Moha-karma* these (*Aghati*) *karmas* also get automatically destroyed in a short period of time.

In this way, the benediction of soul lies in the destruction of all *karmas* and liberation (*Moksha*) is the name of destruction of all *karmas*. Thus, the only weal of the soul is attainment of *Moksha* and nothing else; one should clearly ascertain this.

Someone may ask here- "In mundane existence also due to the rise of *Punya* (auspicious) *karmas* the *Jiva* becomes happy; hence, why do you say that *Moksha* only is the weal of the soul?"

**Answer:** In mundane existence, there is no happiness at all in any way, there is only misery. But sometimes someone is found in intense state of misery and someone is found suffering from feeble state of misery. So, from the point of view that earlier there was intense misery or some *Jivas* are found in the state of intense misery, the *Jiva* found suffering from feeble misery is said to be happy. And from the same point of view, the *Jiva* suffering from feeble misery treats himself to be happy; in reality there is no happiness. Further, even if the state of feeble misery remains for all times, it may also be treated as beneficial but this also is not so. The rise of *Punya karma* is short-lived and during that time feeble misery is found but afterwards intense misery gets evolved. Therefore, the mundane existence is not at all beneficial.

For example, someone is suffering from typhoid fever; sometimes he is more restless, sometimes he is less restless. When he is less restless, he treats himself to be happy. People also say- "He is well"; but in reality so long as fever exists, he is not well. Similarly, the mundane being is having the rise of *Moha-karma*. Sometimes he feels more perturbed, sometimes less perturbed.

When he feels less perturbed, he believes himself to be happy. People also say - "He is happy"; but in reality so long as there is rise of *Moha*, he is not happy.

Further, it should be known that even in mundane existence one is said to be happy on lessening of perturbedness and one is called miserable on increase in perturbedness. Happiness-unhappiness is not caused by association of external objects. For example, some pauper acquired wealth, here also he is called happy due to lessening of perturbedness and he also treats himself to be happy. And a very rich person suffered some loss of wealth; there he is called unhappy due to increase in perturbedness and he also believes himself to be unhappy.

One should know the same all everywhere.

Moreover, the decrease-increase in perturbedness too is not in accordance with association of external things, rather it is according to the decrease-increase in passions. For example, someone possesses less wealth and he feels contented. Therefore, he is less perturbed. And someone possesses enough wealth but is avarice (greedy) then he is found to be more perturbed. Further, someone highly abused somebody but he did not become angry, then he is not found perturbed and if one becomes angry even by a little abuse, then he feels highly perturbed. For example, although the cow has no expectation from its calf, yet it entertains intense feeling of attachment towards it; therefore, the cow is highly perturbed due to the feeling of protecting it. Further, the body of the warrior is useful in many ways but due to rise of pride passion, etc., if the *Moha* (attachment) towards body, etc. gets lessened in the battle-field then he feels less perturbed even in the event of death. Hence, it should be ascertained that even in mundane existence happiness & sorrow are believed to be caused only on lessening and increase in perturbedness. And decrease-increase in perturbedness is caused by decrease-increase in attachment passions, etc.

Further, happiness and sorrow are not caused by other external substances. Desire arises in a person out of passions and if external things are obtained as per his desire, then due to some lessening of passions, perturbedness is reduced, then he feels happy; and when

one does not get the external things as per his desire, then due to increase in passions, perturbedness increases and he feels unhappy. This is the reality; but he believes that happiness-sorrow are caused to him due to the instrumentality of other substances. Such understanding is delusion only. Therefore, one should know that in mundane existence, the *Jivas* feel happy due to somewhat decrease in passions and believes it to be beneficial, then, where on total destruction of passions and causes thereof, infinite bliss is attained due to evolution of supreme unperturbedness, how then such state of liberation be not believed to be the weal of the soul?

Further, in mundane existence, even if one acquires a high status, then also either the perturbedness of gathering articles of carnal pleasures is caused or the perturbedness of enjoying the carnal pleasures persists, or if due to some other passion like anger, etc., some desire is evolved, then the perturbedness of fulfilling it is caused; never does he become totally unperturbed. Internally, several types of perturbedness are found existing. And if one makes external effort for ending perturbedness, then firstly, this objective is not accomplished; and if due to destiny that objective gets fulfilled then immediately he busies himself in making effort for mitigating some other perturbedness. **Thus perturbedness of mitigating perturbedness continues incessantly.** If this sort of perturbedness be not there, then why does he indulge in the newer-newer types of acts of sensual pleasures, etc.? Therefore, in the mundane existence, due to rise of *Punya karmas*, if someone attains the rank of *Indra-Ahmindra*, etc., even then, imperturbedness is not evolved and he remains miserable only. Therefore, in no way mundane existence is beneficial.

And in the state of liberation, none of the types of perturbedness exists, therefore, the purpose of making effort for ending perturbedness is not found there; the liberated souls (*Siddha Gods*) always remain blissful by the spiritually evolved quietude; therefore, the state of liberation only is beneficial. Earlier also the detailed description of the sorrows & miseries of mundane existence and bliss of liberated state has been given, that too has been given with this very purpose. Pondering over that too, believing liberation to be the weal of the soul, one should make effort for liberation. The purpose of all preachings is this much only.

## Liberation Through Right Effort Only

The question here is whether effort for liberation materialises according to destiny on advent of opportune time or on subsidence of delusion, etc. or through one's own persistent right effort. If the answer be that it materialises on union of first two causes, then why do you sermonise us? And if it materialises through right effort, then what is the reason that some are able to make right effort while others are not able to do so, although all listen the sermon?

**Answer:** Union of many causes takes place in accomplishment of one act. So, where the effort for liberation materialises, the union of all the three causes is found and where it does not materialise, there the union of all the three causes is not found. Amongst the aforesaid three causes, opportune time and destiny are not any (achievable) entities. The time (moment) of the accomplishment of an act is its opportune time and the accomplished act itself is the destiny. And the subsidence, etc. of *karmas* is the potency of *karmic* matter, of which the soul is not the doer or destroyer. And making of right effort for liberation is the duty of the soul. Therefore, the soul is sermonised to make right effort for liberation.

If the soul makes effort for adopting those means through which the accomplishment assuredly takes place, there the union of other causes is invariably found and the act is also invariably accomplished. And if the soul adopts such means through which accomplishment of act may or may not materialise, there if other causes are met with, then the act gets accomplished and if not met with, then the act does not materialise.

By the adoption of means of liberation advocated in *Jina's* religion, liberation invariably takes place. Therefore, that *Jiva* who makes effort for liberation according to the preachings of omniscient *Jina*, automatically gets association of opportune time and destiny and the adoption of such effort is itself the result of subsidence, etc. of *karmas*. Therefore, the one who makes right effort for liberation, invariably gets the union of all other causes and he assuredly attains *Moksha* (liberation) – this is to be believed. And the *Jiva* who does not make right effort for liberation, for him, the opportune time and destiny are not there and because the subsidence, etc. of *karmas* has



not taken place that is why he does not make the right effort. Therefore, one who does not make the right effort for liberation, to him, other causes are also not available and *Moksha* (liberation) is not attained by him. Such should be one's belief.

**Question:** Many people listen the sermons but only some can make effort for liberation, some others cannot make – why is it so?

**Answer:** The reason is that those who make right effort by listening the sermons, can adopt the means of liberation and those who do not make right effort, cannot adopt the means of liberation. Sermonisation is merely a process of education; the fruit reaped is always according to the effort made.

**Question:** *Dravyalingi Muni* undergoes religious penances, etc. by renouncing the householder's life for the sake of attaining liberation. Here, he has made effort but the objective is not attained; therefore, nothing is accomplished by making effort.

**Answer:** How could the objective be attained by contrary effort? The fruit of indulging affectionately in penance, etc., form of conventional conduct, is described in the scripture to be the auspicious bondage of *karmas*, but he (the *Dravyalingi Muni*) wishes to obtain liberation through such effort; how is this possible? This is mere delusion.

**Question:** The cause of delusion, too, is the rise of *karmas* only. How can effort be fruitful?

**Answer:** The delusion is removed on ascertainment (of truth) on the basis of right preachings, but he (the *Dravyalingi Muni*) does not make such effort, so the delusion persists. If he makes effort for ascertainment (of truth) then the rise of *Moha-karma* (deluding *karma*) which is the cause of delusion also gets subsided and then delusion is removed, because, in the process of ascertainment, the thoughts gets purified which results in the reduction of duration and fruition of *Maha-karma*.

**Question:** The reason why one's *Upayoga* (active knowledge) does not get engaged in the ascertainment (of truth) is also the rise of *karma*?



**Answer:** The one-sensed, etc. beings do not have the power of thinking; in their case, the rise of *karma* is only the reason. But he (the *Dravyalingi* monk) possesses the power of thinking, and ascertaining by virtue of *Kshayopashama* (destruction cum subsidence) state of *Jnanavarana karmas*, etc.; wherever he engages his attention (*Upayoga*), ascertainment of the same is possible. But he engages his attention in the ascertainment of other things and does not engage it here (in the path of liberation), so this is his own fault. There is no role of *karmas* in this.

**Question:** The obscurer of right belief and right conduct is *Moha* (deluding *karma*) how can right-effort for liberation be possible without its removal ?

**Answer:** Not engaging one's *Upayoga* (active knowledge) in ascertaining the *Tattovas* is his own fault only. And if through right effort one engages his *Upayoga* in ascertainment of *Tattovas* then, on destruction of *Moha-karma* on its own, the right effort (*Purushartha*) for the path of liberation in the form of right belief, etc. materialises. Therefore, chiefly one should make effort to engage one's *Upayoga* in the ascertainment of *Tattovas*. And whatever sermons are given, they are meant for effectuating such effort (*Purushartha*) only, and by such *Purushartha*, the *Purushartha* of liberation would get effectuated on its own.

Further, the non-ascertainment of *Tattovas* is not the fault of any *karma* but your own fault only; but you pretend to remain faultless and want to put the blame of your fault on *karmas*, etc. Such misconduct is not possible for one who claims to obey *Jina's* commandment. You wish to continue indulgence in sensual pleasures; therefore, you are lying. Why would one put up such argument, if one has real urge for liberation?

Even when you do not seem to attain your objective in worldly affairs, you continue making effort in that direction, but here you do not want to make effort, therefore, it is concluded that you are praising the state of liberation by following others. You do not believe it to be beneficial after ascertaining its true nature. It is impossible that one may not make effort for achieving an objective which is ascertained to be beneficial.

**Question:** Whatever you have stated is true but the rise of material *karmas* (*Dravya-karmas*) causes passions, etc. dispositions (*Bhava-karmas*) and *Bhava-karma* causes the bondage of *Dravya-karma* and again its rise causes, *Bhava-karma* - this has been happening since eternity. How then the effort for liberation be possible?

**Answer:** If for all time, the bondage and rise of material *karmas* be found to be uniform, then it can be true, but due to instrumentality of *Jiva's* dispositions, the formerly bonded *karmas* too undergo the process of *Utkarshana* (increase in duration), *Apakarshana* (decrease of duration) and *Samkramana* (transformation) etc., which causes reduction and increase in their potency; therefore, their rise (operative state) also becomes feeble and intense. Due to their instrumentality, the fresh bondage of *karmas* also happens to be feeble or intense. Therefore, due to instrumentality of the rise of *karmas*, the manifestation of knowledge, etc. in the mundane beings, sometimes, is found more and sometimes less; sometimes passions like attachment, etc. become feeble and sometimes intense. In this way, transmigration continues.

There, sometime, the *Jiva* attains the status of rational five-sensed developed being; then the power of thinking through mind gets manifested. Such *Jiva* sometimes is found having intense attachment, etc. and sometimes feeble. There due to intense rise of attachment, etc., the indulgence in voluptuous acts only is found. And due to feeble rise of attachment, etc., if the instrumental cause of external discourses, etc. is met with and he engrosses his *Upayoga* in those discourses, etc. through his own effort, then engagement in religious activities becomes possible and if the instrumental cause is not met with and he too does not make effort (for liberation), then he may continue indulging in other acts but with feeble feelings of attachment, etc.; so, in such moments, the preaching is efficacious.

Those one-sensed, etc. beings, who are devoid of thinking power, do not possess the knowledge of understanding the sermons and the *Upayoga* of the *Jivas* having intense attachment, etc., does not get engrossed in sermons. Therefore, such *Jivas* who possess thinking power and whose attachment, etc. passions have become feeble, if through instrumental cause of sermons adopt religion,

then they are benefitted. Under such conditions only right effort becomes efficacious.

The one-sensed, etc. beings are not at all capable in observing religious acts; how can they make effort (*Purushartha*)? And if a highly passionate being makes effort then such effort will be for sinful acts only; the effort for religious acts is not possible.

Therefore, he who possesses thinking power and whose attachment, etc., engrosses his *Upayoga* effortfully in the ascertainment of *Tattvas*, etc., then his *Upayoga* gets engrossed there and then he is benefitted. If under such conditions also, he does not make effort (*Purushartha*) for ascertaining the *Tattvas*, passes the time recklessly, either he may keep indulging in voluptuous and passionate activities with feeble attachment, etc. or may keep engaged in conventional religious acts; then the opportunity will be lost and wandering in mundane existence only will continue.

Further, with such opportunity, those *Jivas* who continue the practice of engrossing their *Upayoga* effortfully in the ascertainment of *Tattvas*, their thoughts and dispositions will become purer, due to which the potency of material *karmas* will decrease and after some-time the subsidence of *Darshan Moha* (faith-deluding *karma*) will take place of its own; then the exact conviction of *Tattvas* will be evolved. So, his duty is only to continue the practice of ascertainment of *Tattvas*; by this means only, the subsidence of *Darshan Moha* takes place of its own; there is no role of *Jiva* in it.

And on subsidence of *Darshan-Moha*, the right belief gets manifested of its own in the *Jiva*. And on evolution of right belief, such faith is evolved- "I am soul, I should not indulge in attachment (*Raag*), etc." But due to rise of *Charitra Moha* (conduct-deluding *karma*) the attachment, etc. are produced. There, if the rise be intense, then he indulges in sensual objects and if the rise be feeble, then he engrosses his *Upayoga* (active knowledge) effortfully in the religious acts and in the contemplation of renunciation, etc.; due to its instrumentality, *Charitra-Moha* becomes feeble; in such state the effort (*Purushartha*) for accepting partial conduct (small vows) or complete conduct (great vows) gets manifested. And by accepting *Charitra* (self-conduct with vows) through his own *Purushartha* he

increases the engrossment in religion; there, by purity of thoughts and dispositions, the potency of *karmas* becomes feeble, due to which purity increases further and the potency of *karmas* becomes more feeble. In this way, he gradually destroys *Moha* (conduct-deluding *karmas*) then the thoughts and dispositions become absolutely pure (passionless); through them the knowledge obscuring, etc. destructive (*Ghati*) *karmas* are destroyed; then omniscience gets manifested. Thereafter, effortlessly, he attains the perfectly pure liberated state (*Siddhahood*) by destroying the non-destructive (*Aghati*) *karmas*.

In this way, if one makes right effort in the presence of instrumental cause of sermons, then the destruction of *karmas* takes place.

And when the rise of *karma* (conduct-deluding *karma*) be intense then right effort (*Purushartha*) is not possible; even one falls down from the higher *Gunasthanas* (spiritual stages of development); there, whatever be the destiny, the same happens. But where the rise of *karmas* be feeble and right effort (*Purushartha*) be possible, there one should not remain reckless but should make effort attentively for achieving one's objective.

For example, a person is flowing in the current of the river; there, if the force of water be more, then *Purushartha* is not effective, even sermons are not fruitful. And if the force of water be less and he makes effort for coming out, then he can come out. Such person only is sermonised to come out. And if he does not come out, then he will continue flowing in slow motion and after, when the force of water increases, then he will go on flowing. Similarly, the *Jiva* wanders in the world; there, if the rise of *karmas* be intense, then *Purushartha* is not effective, even sermons are not fruitful. And if the rise of *karmas* be feeble, then if he makes effort to follow the path of liberation, then he can attain liberation. He alone is sermonised to follow the liberation path. And if he does not follow the path of liberation, then some purity of dispositions and thoughts may get evolved and later on due to intense rise of *karmas* he may get birth in *Nigoda* (most inferior state of existence of one-sensed beings). etc.

Therefore, missing the opportunity is not desirable. Now from all angles, the opportunity is there; obtaining such an opportunity



is difficult. Therefore, the capable souls should practise the religion as is being preached by true preceptor.

### The Nature of Liberation Path

Now the nature of liberation path is being described:- On total destruction of delusion, etc. *karmas*, due to whose instrumentality, the soul became miserable by undergoing alien (impure) state, the evolution of absolutely pure state of the soul is called *Moksha* (liberation). And the means or cause of the same is to be known as the path of liberation.

There, the causes (means) are of various types. 1. Some causes are such without which the act cannot be accomplished and on whose existence, the act may or may not be accomplished. For example, without accepting monkhood, liberation can not be attained but on accepting monkhood liberation may or may not be attained. And 2. some causes are such by which chiefly the act is accomplished but even without which the act may be accomplished. For example, by observance of external penances like fasting, etc., chiefly, liberation is attained but *Bharat Chakravarty*, etc. attained liberation even without observing the external penances. And 3. some causes are such by which accomplishment of the act invariably takes place and without which the act can never be accomplished. For example, on union of right belief, knowledge and conduct, liberation is invariably attained and in their absence, liberation can never be attained. Such are the causes; amongst them, the union of right belief, knowledge and conduct is invariably the path of liberation which alone magnanimously, and as a rule, is the means of liberation. Amongst these right belief, knowledge and conduct even if one of them is not there, liberation path is not possible.

The same is stated in *Tattvarth Sutra*:-

“सम्यग्दर्शनज्ञानचारित्राणि मोक्षमार्गः (तत्त्वार्थसूत्र-1/1)

In the commentary of this *Surta* (aphorism) it is stated that here the word मोक्षमार्गः is a singular word which means that the union of all the three is one path of liberation; there are no three separate-separate paths of liberation.

**Question:** The vowless true believer does not possess the conduct; has he attained liberation path or not?



**Answer:** It is the rule that he will definitely attain liberation path. Therefore, conventionally he is also said to have attained liberation path but in real spiritual sense, he attains the liberation path on evolution of right conduct (*Samyak-charitra*). For example, some person decided to go to some town, therefore, conventionally it is also stated- "He is going to that town", but in reality, only on moving in the path, the act of going will be established. Similarly, the vowless true believer has acquired faith in the passionless liberation path, therefore, conventionally he is said to be the trader of liberation path, but in reality, liberation path will be attained only on evolution of passionless state. Further in *Pravachanasara* also, it is stated that liberation path is evolved only on the union of all the three (right belief, knowledge and conduct). Therefore, it should be known that without acquiring right belief and knowledge of *Tattvas*, by mere lessening of attachment, etc. (passions), the liberation path is not attained and without lessening of passions - attachment, etc., even on acquiring the right belief and knowledge also, the liberation path is not attained; only on the union of all the three, the real liberation path is evolved.

Now these are being described through the process of *Nirdesha* (Nomenclature), *Lakshan Nirdesha* (characteristics) — and *Pariksha* (analysis) hereunder:

There, "the union of right belief, right knowledge and right conduct constitutes the path to liberation" – such nomenclature is called *Nirdesha*.

And that which is devoid of (the faults of ) *Ati-vyapti*<sup>1</sup>, *Avyapti*<sup>2</sup> and *Asambhava*<sup>3</sup> and by which these are identified is called *Lakshana*<sup>4</sup> and its nomenclature with specification is called *Lakshan-Nirdesha*.

There, that which is to be identified is called *Lakshya* (objective); excepting it, all other things are called *Alakshya* (non-objective). Stating that characteristic to be the characteristic of a thing which is

- 
1. *Ati-vyapti*- Characteristic of related thing found in unrelated thing also.
  2. *Avyapti*- Characteristic which is found in some related thing and not found in other related things.
  3. *Asambhava*- Characteristic which is not at all found in any related thing.
  4. *Lakshana*- Nature, quality or characteristic.

found in both *Lakshya* (related thing) and *Alakshya* (unrelated thing) is called *Ati-vyapti*. For example, stating "immateriality" to be the characteristic of the soul; but immateriality characteristic is found in both the related thing, i.e., soul and unrelated thing, i.e., space substance, etc.; therefore, such characteristic (of soul) is called *Ati-vyapti*. By identifying the soul through this characteristic, even the non-soul substances like space, etc. would also be included amongst souls; this fault will be there.

Further, stating such characteristic to be the characteristic which is found in some related things and is not found in other related things is called *Avyapti*. For example, omniscience be stated to be the characteristic of the soul; but omniscience is found manifested in some souls and not found manifested in other souls; therefore, this is an *Avayapti* characteristic. By identifying the soul through this characteristic, the non-omniscient souls will not be included in the category of souls. This fault will be there.

Further, stating that characteristic to be characteristic of the objective which is not at all found in that objective is called *Asambhava* (impossibility). For example, stating insentience to be the characteristic of the soul; this is contradictory to direct comprehension, etc. because this is an *Asambhava*, impossible characteristic. By believing the soul possessing this characteristic, even matter, etc. (insentient things) would be included in souls and soul would become non-soul. This fault will be there.

Thus, if the *Lakshana* (characteristic) is contaminated with *Ativyapti*, *Avayapti* and *Asambhava* (faults), it is a perverse characteristic (*Lakshanaabhasa*). And that characteristic which is found in all related objectives and is not found in any unrelated objectives, is called the true *Lakshana* (characteristic). For example, soul's specific characteristic is *Chaitanya* (sentience), so this characteristic is definitely found present in all souls but is not at all found in any non-soul; therefore, this is the true characteristic. By identifying the soul through this characteristic, the correct knowledge of soul-non-soul is obtained; there lies no fault. In this way, the nature of characteristic is explained.

Now the true characteristic of right belief, etc. is being described:

## True Characteristic of Right belief (*Samyagdarshan*)

The belief in *Jiva* etc *Tattvarthas* (substances with their true character) devoid of perverse ascertainment is the characteristic of right belief. (1) *Jiva* (soul), (2) *Ajiva* (nonsoul), (3) *Asrava* (influx with impure thought activity), (4) *Bandha* (bondage of *karmas*), (5) *Samvoara* (stoppage of influx with emergence of pure thought activity), (6) *Nirjara* (partial dissociation of *karmas* with increase in purity of thought activity) and (7) *Moksha* (complete dissociation of *karmas* with manifestation of perfect purity - these are the seven *Tattvarthas*. Their belief- "It is so only and not otherwise" - such conviction is *Tattvartha-Shraddhana* (belief of *Tattvarthas*) and such right belief which is devoid of perverse grasping and understanding is right belief (*Samyag Darshan*).

Here for the negation of perverse conception, the word *Samyak* (means right or true) is stated because the word *Samyak* stands for commendation. Only after removal of perverse conviction in belief, commendation is possible.

**Question:** What is the purpose of using two words here *Tattva* and *Artha*?

**Answer:** The word *Tat* (means 'that') is used in context of the word *Yat* (means 'which'), hence that which is being talked of is called *Tat* and its quality or nature is called *Tattva*; because तस्य भावस्तत्त्वम् *Tasyabhavastattoam* — such is the compound formation of the word *Tattva*. And that which is being comprehended, such substance, quality or disposition (mode) is called *Artha* and तत्त्वेन अर्थस्तत्त्वार्थः *Tattva* means one's own nature, the belief of substances along with their true nature is called right belief (*Samyag Darshan*). Here, if only belief of the quality (*Tattva*) was considered, then without the belief of that substance whose quality is being considered, mere belief of its quality is not efficacious. And if the belief of the substances alone was considered then without the belief of its quality, the belief of the substance is also not efficacious.

For example, someone may be having the faith of knowledge, perception, colour, etc. — this is knowledge, this is whiteness — such belief be there but knowledge and perception is the nature of the soul,

"I am soul; and colour, etc. is the nature of the matter, the matter is a distinctly separate substance from me"- if such belief of the substance is not attained, then mere belief of the qualities is not efficacious. And "I am soul"- such belief is acquired but if the belief of the true nature of the soul, as it really is, is not acquired then without the belief of its quality, the mere belief of the substance also is not efficacious. Therefore, the belief of the substance along with its qualities alone is efficacious. Or the *Jiva* etc. are also termed by both the words *Tattva* and *Artha*; therefore, तत्त्वमेवार्थस्तत्त्वार्थः *Tattvamā-varthastattvartha*, i.e., the *Tattva* is also the *Artha*, their belief is *Samyagdarshan* (right belief).

With this meaning, at some places- *Tattva-shraddhana* (belief of qualities) is called right belief and at other places *Padartha Shraddhana* (belief of substances) is called right belief. So, one should not understand any contradiction there. This is the purpose of stating the two words *Tattva* and *Artha*.

### Why Seven *Tattvarthas* Only

**Question:** The *Tattvarthas* are infinite. From the general point of view, all these are covered under *Jiva-Ajiva*; therefore, either two only or infinite should have been stated? The *Asrava* etc. are the specific dispositions of *Jiva-Ajiva* only; what is the purpose of stating them separately?

**Answer:** If here, the purpose would have been only of acquiring belief of substances, then the statement would have been either in the general or specific form which will produce knowledge of all substances; but that is not the purpose here; here the purpose is of (attaining) liberation only. So, here only those general and specific substances and dispositions are given by whose belief liberation is attained and without whose belief liberation cannot be attained.

Therefore, the *Jiva* and *Ajiva* (soul & nonsoul), these two, are stated as general form of *Tattvas* from the viewpoint of one category of many substances. By knowing these two categories *Jiva* can acquire the belief of self and non-self, then he can know the self as distinct from non-self, may endeavour for liberation for one's own weal and can know the non-self as distinct from the self; then by becoming detached (dispassionate) from the non-self substances, he may follow



the liberation path by giving up attachment, etc. Hence, only on evolution of belief of these two categories, liberation is attained and without knowing these two categories, the belief of self and non-self is not evolved; then he continues making effort for worldly objects only by modificational approach. If he indulges in the non-self substances with attachment-aversion feeling then how can he follow the liberation path? Therefore, without the belief of these two categories, liberation cannot be attained. In this way, these two general *Tattvas* are described as worth believing necessarily.

Further, the other five *Tattvas* like *Asrava* etc. are the modifications (*Paryayas*) of *Jiva* (soul) and *Pudgalas* (matter); therefore, these are specific *Tattvas*, so, by knowing these five modifications (*Paryayas*), the belief of making effort for liberation is evolved. There, if he identifies *Moksha* (liberation) then he can make effort for attaining it by believing it to be beneficial. Hence, one should acquire belief of *Moksha*.

Further, the means of *Moksha* is *Samvara* (stoppage of influx) and *Nirjara* (dissociation of *karmas*). So, if he identifies these, then he may make effort for evolution of *Samvara* and *Nirjara*. Therefore, one should acquire belief of *Samvara* and *Nirjara*.

Further, *Samvara* and *Nirjara Tattvas* bear negative characteristics, therefore, those dispositions which are to be renounced should be identified. For example, forbearance is evolved by giving up anger, so if he identifies anger-passion then he may evolve forbearance by giving up anger. Similarly, *Samvara* is generated on mitigation of *Asrava* and on partial mitigation of *Bandha* (bondage) the dissociation of *karmas*, i.e., *Nirjara* is evolved. Therefore, if he identifies *Asrava* and *Bandha* then by mitigating them, he can make effort for evolution of *Samvara-Nirjara*. Hence, one should acquire belief of *Asrava* and *Bandha Tattvas*.

Thus, only on evolution of belief of these five *Paryayas* (modifications of soul and matter) the liberation path is acquired. If one does not identify these *Tattvas* then, without identification of *Moksha*, why would he make effort for it? Without identifying *Samvara* and *Nirjara*, how can he make effort for their evolution? Without identification of *Asrava* and *Bandha*, how can he destroy them? Thus



without acquiring belief of these five *Parayayas (Tattvas)*, the path of liberation cannot be attained.

In this way, although the *Tattvarthas* are infinite; those may be described in various ways by their general and specific forms, but here the sole purpose is of *Moksha* (liberation) only; therefore, two are general *Tattvas* from category of substances point of view and by adding five specific *Tattvas* of modificational form, the *Tattvas* are stated as seven.

The path of liberation depends on their right belief. It should be known that, excepting these *Tattvas*, the belief of other things may be contrary; the path of liberation is not dependent of any other things.

Further, at some places, by including *Punya* (virtue) and *Papa* (vice) (in above seven *Tattvas*), nine *Padarthas* are described. So *Punya & Papa* are the details of *Asrava* etc only. Therefore, they are covered under the seven *Tattvas*. Or, on acquiring belief of *Punya & Papa*, one would not accept *Punya* to be the path of liberation or would not indulge in sins unrestrainedly. Therefore, by knowing the belief of these also as beneficial in the liberation path, the nine *Padarthas (Tattvas)* are stated by adding the two *Punya & Papa Tattvas* as the details of the details. And in *Samayasara* etc., these are also stated as nine *Tattvas*.

**Question:** Belief of these *Tattvas* is stated to be *Samyagdarshan* (right belief), but *Darshan* means general perception only and *Shraddhana* means ascertainment only; how is the same meaning possible (of these two words)?

**Answer:** According to the context, the meaning of the verb changes. Here, the context is of the path to liberation. Therefore, the meaning of the word *Darshana* should not be understood to be mere general perception, because general perception caused by ocular-nonocular perception is found similar to both true believer and false believer. Following or not following the path of liberation is not concerned with it. And right belief is found in a true believer only; the liberation path is concerned with this. Therefore, here the meaning of the word *Darshan* also should be taken to be belief only.

**Question:** What is the purpose here in stating the belief to be devoid of *Viparita Abhinivesha* (perverse intention)?

**Answer:** *Abhinivesh* means inner intention. So, perverse intention consists in not having correct intention about the belief of *Tattvarthas*, as it should be, and instead, the intention be contrary. The purpose of belief of *Tattvarthas* is not merely their affirmation; there the purpose is such that by ascertaining *Jiva-Ajiva*, one should believe the self and non-self as they really are; by identifying *Asrava* (influx with impure thought activity), should believe it to be *Heya*, renounceable (worth giving up); by identifying *Bandha* (bondage), should believe it to be harmful; by identifying *Samvara* (stoppage of influx with emergence of purity) should believe it to be *Upadeya*, worth acquiring; by identifying *Nirjara* (partial dissociation of bondage with rise of purity) should believe it to be beneficial and cause of benefit and by identifying *Moksha* (liberation with full manifestation of soul's purity & complete dissociation of bondage) should believe it to be the highest benefit of the self – such is the purpose of *Tattvartha-shraddhana*. Perverse intention is the name of belief contrary to aforesaid belief. It comes to an end on evolution of true belief of *Tattvarthas* (substances with their true nature). Hence, it is stated here that belief in *Tattvarthas* is devoid of perverse intention.

Or, someone may have seemingly belief in *Tattvarthas* but in inner intention perversity is not ended. Somehow, intention contrary to the aforesaid intention, is found in the inner-self. So, right belief is not evolved in him. For example, a *Dravyalingi Muni* ascertains the *Tattvas* through *Jain* scripture but due to such perverse intention as feeling of I-ness in bodily activities and sense of benefit in *Punyaasrava* (auspicious influx or virtuous conduct), he remains a misbeliever only. Therefore, that belief in *Tattvarthas* which is devoid of perverse intention, is only *Samyagdarshan* (right belief).

Thus, the belief of *Jiva* etc. *Tattvarthas*, devoid of perverse intention, is the characteristic of *Samyagdarshan* and *Samyagdarshan* is the *Lakshya* — objective.

The same is stated in *Tattvartha Sutra*:

“तत्त्वार्थश्रद्धानं सम्यग्दर्शनम्” ॥ 1/2 ॥ i.e., Belief in substances with their true nature is right belief.

And in *Sarvartha Siddhi* named commentary on *Tattvartha Sutra*, the meaning of words *Tattva* etc. is clearly stated and the purpose as to why the *Tattvas* are seven only is also specified. It is to be known that whatever description is given here is based on it.

Further, in *Purushartha Siddhyupaya* also, the following verse is written:-

“ जीवाजीवादीनां तत्त्वार्थानां सदैव कर्तव्यम्।  
श्रद्धानं विपरीताभिनवेशविविक्तमात्मरूपं तत् ॥ 22 ॥”

**Meaning:** One should always have firm belief in *Jiva-Ajiva* etc.. *Tattvarthas* (essential principles) as they are, free from perverse notions & intention. This belief is the nature of the self (soul); it gets manifested on destruction of *Darshan Moha* (faith-deluding *karma*), therefore, it is the natural disposition (characteristic) of the soul. It gets manifested in the fourth *Gunasthana* etc., spiritual stages; thereafter, even in *Siddha* (liberated) state, it remains manifested for all times.

### **Refutation of *Avayapti*, *Ativyapti* & *Asambhava* faults in the differentia of *Tattvartha-Shraddhana***

**Question:** It is described in the *Shastras* that many *Tiryanchas* (rational animals) etc., having feeble knowledge, do not know even the names of seven *Tattvas* and yet they acquire *Samyagdarshan* (right belief), therefore, your statement that the differentia of the right belief is *Tattvartha Shraddhan* has *Avyapti* fault?

**Answer:** One may know, may not know or may know contrarily the names of *Jiva-Ajiva* etc.; right faith evolves on having faith in them by correctly identifying their nature.

There, someone acquires faith by identifying the nature in general form, while other acquires faith by identifying their nature in details (specific form). Therefore, although true believer *Tiryanchas* (rational animals) etc. who have feeble knowledge do not even know the names of *Jiva* etc., yet they acquire faith by identifying their nature in general form. Therefore, attainment of right belief is found in them.

For example, some *Tiryancha* (rational animal) does not know his own as well as of others name etc. but believes I-ness in the self and believes others to be nonself. Similarly, one having feeble knowledge does not know the names of *Jiva-Ajiva* but he believes I-ness in the self-soul which is embodiment of knowledge and whatever body, etc. are there, believes them to be non-self — such belief is found in him. This itself is the belief of *Jiva-Ajiva*. And for example, the same *Tiryancha* does not know the names, etc. of bliss etc., nevertheless, by recognizing the blissful state and for continuing it by recognizing the causes of forthcoming misery, desires to avoid that cause; and whatever is presently causing misery, he makes effort for ending it. Similarly, although one, having feeble knowledge, does not know the names of *Moksha* etc., nevertheless, by having belief of perfect blissful *Moksha* state and for evolving it, desires to evolve the state of *Samvara* which is caused by giving up *Asravas* like attachment, etc. which are the cause of forthcoming bondage; and through pure thought activity, he desires to shed out that state which is the cause of transmigratory misery. In this way, he has belief of *Asrava* etc. Thus belief of seven *Tattvas* is found in him also. If such belief be not there then he would not have the desire of evolving pure dispositions by giving up attachment, etc. The same is being explained here:

If one does not know the category of *Jiva-Ajiva* and does not identify self and non-self, then how would he not develop attachment, etc. feelings in other substances? If he does not identify attachment, etc. passions, then why would he like to give up them? Those attachment, etc. only are *Asravas*. If he does not know the fruit of attachment etc. to be harmful, then why would he like to give up attachment, etc.? The fruit of those attachment, etc. only is *Bandha* (bondage). Further, if he recognises the passionless dispositions, then he wants to evolve them. That passionless disposition itself is called *Samvara* (emergence of purity with stoppage of influx). And because he recognises the elimination of the cause of earlier mundane existence, therefore, for materialising it, he wishes to evolve pure dispositions through penances, etc. The cause of that earlier mundane existence is *karma*, so, its elimination itself is *Nirjara* (dissociation of *karmas*). And if he does not recognize the absence of



mundane existence, then why for would he evolve the dispositions of *Samvara* and *Nirjara*? So, the end of that mundane existence itself is *Moksha*. Hence, only on evolution of belief of seven *Tattvas*, the desire for evolving pure dispositions arises by giving up attachment, etc. passions. If out of these (seven *Tattvas*) even the belief of any one *Tattva* be not found, then such desire would not be produced. And such desire is definitely found present in right-faithed *Tiryanchas* (rational animals) etc., having feeble knowledge; hence, one should conclude that he possesses the belief of seven *Tattvas*. Owing to less *Kashayopashama* of *Jnanavarana* etc. *karmas*, detailed knowledge of *Tattvas* may not be found in him, nevertheless, due to subsidence, etc. of *Darshan Moha* (faith-deluding *karma*), the potency of right belief of *Tattvas* in general form is found manifested in him. Thus in this *Lakshana* (differentia), the *Avyapti* fault is not there.

**Question:** During the time when a true believer indulges in sensual pleasures etc. passional acts, he is not having thought of seven *Tattvas*; how then right belief is possible? Moreover, right belief does exist, hence, in this differentia, the *Avyapti* fault exists.

**Answer:** Thought activity is dependent on the tendency of *Upayoga* (active knowledge); wherever the *Upayoga* is engaged the same becomes the object of thought. And belief consists in ascertainment of *Tattvas*. Therefore, on engagement of thought in other knowables and in the state of asleep, etc. activity, the thought, of the *Tattvas* is not there. Nevertheless, their ascertainment continues existing, it does not get destroyed; therefore, he possesses right belief.

For example, some diseased person has such ascertainment that "I am a human being, I am not *Tiryancha* (animal) etc. This is the cause of my disease. So, now by removing the cause and by lessening the disease, I must become free from disease". And when the same person engages himself in other thoughts, etc. then such thought is not found; but such belief only persists. Similarly, this soul (true believer) has such ascertainment that "I am soul and I am not matter, etc., bondage is caused to me through influx (impure thought activity), so now by effectuating *Samvara* and *Nirjara* I should attain *Moksha* state". And when the same soul indulges in



other thoughts, etc., then though he does not have such thought, yet such right belief only persists.

**Question:** If such right belief persists, then why does he indulge in the causes of bondage?

**Answer:** For example, the same person under some circumstance indulges, in the causes which increase the disease and engages himself in business, etc. and becomes angry also; nevertheless, that belief is not destroyed. Similarly, the same soul, being subservient to the instrumentality of the rise of *karmas*, indulges in the causes of bondage also, indulges in the acts of sensual pleasure, etc. and anger, etc. passions, nevertheless, that right belief is not destroyed. Detailed discussion of the same will follow later on.

In this way, even in the absence of thought of seven *Tattvas*, right belief persists. Hence, there is no fault of *Avyapti*.

**Question:** In higher spiritual stages where notionless self-realisation is found, there even thinking about the seven *Tattvas* etc. is forbidden. So, how is the denial of the differentia of right belief possible? And there the denial (of rambling of *Upayoga*) is possible, so *Avyapti* fault arises there?

**Answer:** In lower spiritual stages, he (the true believer) engaged his *Upayoga* (attention) in thoughts of seven *Tattvas* which strengthened his ascertainment and by disengaging his *Upayoga* from the objects of senses, he reduced attachment, etc. And on accomplishment of objective, the instrumental causes are also denied; therefore, when the ascertainment became strong and attachment, etc. got eradicated, then why should one allow his *Upayoga* to ramble meaninglessly? Therefore, in that state, the rambling of *Upayoga* is denied. Moreover, the differentia of right belief is ascertainment only; so ascertainment is not denied. If ascertainment is required to be given up, then it would amount to denial of this differentia but this is not so. Even there also the ascertainment of seven *Tattvas* persists. Therefore, there lies no *Avyapti* fault.

**Question:** The use of the word ascertainment-non-ascertainment is possible with reference to a non-omniscient; therefore, I agree that the differentia of right belief to be the belief of seven *Tattvas* is

pertinent in his case. But knowledge of all the knowables is found equally in all omniscients; there the differentia of ascertainment of seven *Tattvas* is not applicable and they do possess right belief, hence, in reference to them, the aforesaid differentia seems to have *Avyapti* fault?

**Answer:** For example, the ascertainment which is found in the non-omniscient through *Shrut-Jnana* (scriptural knowledge), similarly, the ascertainment is found in omniscient *Arhanta & Siddha* through omniscience. The same nature of seven *Tattvas* which was ascertained earlier is now known through omniscience. Here the ascertainment has become *Paramaavagadha* (firmly concentrated); due to this reason only, the right belief is stated to be *Paramaavagadha*. If the right belief which was attained earlier (in the non-omniscient state) would have been known wrong, then non-ascertainment could be possible in the state of omniscience, but the omniscients are found possessing exactly the same right belief of seven *Tattvas* which was evolved in non-omniscient state. Therefore, in spite of the states of less or more knowledge (i.e., irrespective of *Shrut-Jnan* or *Kewal-Jnan*) the existence of the quality of right belief is found in the same full measure in *Tiryanchas* etc. and *Arhantas & Siddhas*.

Further, in the earlier state it was believed that he should make effort for *Moksha* through *Samvara & Nirjara*. Afterwards on attainment of *Moksha* state, this belief manifested that I have attained *Moksha* through *Samvara-Nirjara*. Further, earlier due to feeble knowledge, very few details of *Jiva* etc. *Tattvas* were known; afterwards, on dawn of omniscience, all their details are known, but the basic nature of *Jiva* etc. *Tattvas* as was ascertained and believed in the state of non-omniscience, exactly the same is found in the state of omniscience. And, although the omniscients (*Arhantas & Siddhas*) know even other substances with ascertainment, nevertheless, those substances are not purposeful; therefore, in the quality of right belief, the belief of seven *Tattvas* only is accepted. The fact that the omniscients (*Arhantas & Siddhas*) are not having any state of attachment, etc. passions and do not desire to have the mundane existence — all this is to be known to be due to the strength and power of right belief.

**Question:** *Samyagdarshan* (right belief) was stated to be the path of liberation; how is it stated to exist in *Moksha*?

**Answer:** Some cause is of such type also that it does not get destroyed even on accomplishment of the objective. For example, many branches developed from one branch of some tree. On such happening, that one (original) branch is not destroyed; similarly, on the basis of the quality of right belief some soul attained the state of *Moksha* along with many qualities. On such happening, the quality of right belief is not destroyed. In this way, even in the state of omniscience, right belief, in the form of belief in *Tattvas* only, is found. Therefore, there is no *Avyapti* fault.

**Question:** In scripture it is stated that even a misbeliever can have belief in *Tattvas*. In *Pravachanasara* the belief of *Tattvarthas* devoid of self-knowledge is stated to be worthless; therefore, in stating *Tattvartha-Shraddhana* to be the differentia of right belief, there lies *Avyapti* fault?

**Answer:** The belief of *Tattvas* stated to be found in a misbeliever is stated from *Name Nikshèpa*<sup>1</sup> point of view which does not have the effect of *Tattva-Shraddhana* and conventionally that which is stated to be belief of *Tattvas* is found in the misbeliever. Or, it is found from *Āgama Dravya Nikshèpa*<sup>2</sup> point of view, i.e., he studies *Shastras* dealing with the belief of the *Tattvarthas* but he does not engross his *Upayoga* in ascertaining their characteristics. And here *Tattvartha-Shraddhana* is stated to be the differentia of right belief from *Bhava Nikshèpa*<sup>3</sup> point of view. Such effective true belief in *Tattvarthas* is never found in a misbeliever. And where the *Tattvartha-Shraddhana* devoid of self-knowledge is stated, there too, one should know it in this very sense only. How would he not possess the knowledge of the self-soul, if he has acquired true belief of *Jiva-Ajiva* etc.? It is invariably found. In this way, none of the misbelievers possesses the true belief of *Tattvarthas* from any point of view. Therefore, in this differentia, there is no fault of *Ativyapti*.

1. *Name-Nikshèpa*: Giving name to an object irrespective of its qualities, for social practice.
2. *Āgama Dravya Nikshèpa*: Attributing of some quality in a person who does not really possess that quality but possesses knowledge of scripture dealing with that quality.
3. *Bhava-Nikshèpa*: Attributing that quality in a person which he really possesses.

Further, the aforesaid differentia of belief in *Tattvarthas* is also not impossible because it is not the differentia of false belief which is the rival of right belief; its differentia is contrary to this.

In this way *Tattovartha Shraddhana* (belief in *Tattvarthas* or *Tattvas*) is such true differentia of true belief which is devoid of *Avyapti*, *Ativyapti* and *Asambhava* faults and which is found in all true believers and is not at all found in any misbelievers.

### Synthesis Between Different Definitions of Right Belief

Again, a question arises that the rule stated by you that the belief of seven *Tattvas* is right belief is not maintainable. Because at some places the belief of self (soul) distinct from other non-self objects only is stated to be the right belief. In *Samayasara*<sup>1</sup> in the verse एकत्वे नियतस्य etc. (*Ekatve Niyatasya* etc.) it is stated that perceiving this soul as distinct from other non-self substances is only assuredly the right belief. Therefore, ignoring the thought of nine *Tattvas* one should engross one's *upayoga* in the soul only.

Further, at some places ascertainment of the soul only is stated to be the right belief. In *Purushartha Siddhyupays*<sup>2</sup> there is a verse stating दर्शनमात्मविनिश्चितिः (*Darshanmatma-Vinishchiti*), its meaning is this only. Therefore, on evolution of belief of *Jiva-Ajiva* only or of *Jiva* only right belief is evolved. How could the aforesaid statements be possible, if there had been the rule of belief of seven *Tattvas*.

**Answer :** The belief of self (soul), distinct from non-self substances, is evolved along with or without the belief of *Asrava* etc.? If it is evolved without their belief, then without the belief of *Moksha*, for what purpose such effort is made? Without the belief of *Samvara* & *Nirjara* what for he continues making effort for engrossing his *upayoga* in the nature of the soul by renouncing attachment, etc.? Without belief of *Asrava* & *Bandha*, what for does he forsake his

1. एकत्वे नियतस्यशुद्धनयतो व्याप्तुर्यदस्यात्मनःपूर्णज्ञानघनस्य दर्शनमिह द्रव्यान्तरेभ्यः पृथक् । सम्यग्दर्शनमेतदेव नियमादात्मा च तावानयम, तन्मुक्त्वा नवतत्त्वसन्ततिमिमामात्मायमेकोऽस्तु नः ॥ 6 ॥
2. दर्शनमात्मविनिश्चितिरात्मपरिज्ञानमिष्यते बोधः । स्थितिरात्मनि चारित्रं कुत एतेभ्यो भवति बन्धः ॥ 216 ॥



earlier state? Hence, without belief of *Asrava* etc., the belief of self-nonselself is not possible. And if it is found along with the belief of *Asrava* etc., then automatically the rule of the belief of seven *Tattvas* is established. Where ascertainment of soul alone is emphasized, it is to be noted that without the belief of non-self as non-self, the belief of soul cannot be evolved; therefore, the belief of *Jiva* (soul) is evolved only along with the belief, of *Ajiva*. And as stated earlier, he assuredly acquires the belief of *Asrava* etc., also. Therefore, here too the rule of belief of seven *Tattvas* only is established.

Moreover, without the belief of *Asrava* etc., the belief of self-nonselself or the belief of self (soul) only is not true; because the soul substance is an embodiment of pure-impure dispositions. For example, without looking at the threads, the cloth cannot be seen (identified). Similarly, without identifying the pure and impure dispositions, the belief of soul substance is not possible. Such identification of pure and impure dispositions is possible by the identification of *Asrava* etc. Moreover, without the belief of *Asrava* etc. the belief of self & nonself or the belief of self (soul) only is not efficacious also, because whether one believes or not, self is self only and nonself is nonself only. And if belief of *Asrava* etc. be there, then by renouncing *Asrava & Bandha* and by means of *Samvara-Nirjara* one can attain *Moksha*. And wherever the evolution of belief of self & nonself is admonished, it is for this purpose only. Hence, knowing of the self-nonselself or knowing of self (soul) only is efficacious only along with the belief of *Asrava* etc.

**Question:** If it be so, then why in *Shastras* it is stated that the belief of self-nonselself or the belief of self (soul) only is right belief and it alone is stated to be efficacious. Also why is it stated that by ignoring the thought of nine *Tattvas* one should concentrate on self-soul only?

**Answer:** One who has true belief of self-nonselself or belief of self (soul) only, he assuredly possesses the belief of seven *Tattvas*. Further, one who has true belief of seven *Tattvas* he assuredly possesses the belief of self & nonself or belief of self (soul) — thus by knowing such sort of mutual interdependence (*Abinabhavipana*) true belief is stated to be the belief of self-nonselself or the belief of self (soul) only.



Further, based on the above discussion, if someone by knowing the self-nonselself or the self soul only in general form feels contended, then he is under delusion because it is stated that “निर्विशेषं हि सामान्यं भवेत्खरविषाणवत्<sup>1</sup>” which means that knowing an object in its general form without its details (specifications) is like knowing an ass with horns. Therefore, it is desirable to have belief of self-nonselself or of self (soul) only along with the purposeful details like *Asrava* etc. or he who persistently contemplates and believes non-self as different from self or contemplates on self soul only through evolution of belief of seven *Tattvarthas* for the sake of giving up attachment, etc., accomplishes his objective. Therefore, chiefly discriminative knowledge (*Bheda-Vijnana*) and knowledge or realisation of the self-soul is stated to be efficacious.

Further, without the belief of *Tattvarthas* knowing of all other things is not fruitful, because the purpose is of rooting out attachment, etc. passions. So without the belief of *Asrava* etc. this purpose is not realised; then simply by acquiring knowledge, he fosters pride-passion, does not give up attachment, etc, how would his objective be fulfilled? Further, ignoring the thought of nine *Tattvas* is admonished. So earlier right belief was obtained by meditating on nine *Tattvas*, afterwards he developed the desire of giving up the thought of nine *Tattvas* for the sake of evolution of *Nirvoikalpa Dasha* (“निर्विकल्प दशा”) – unwavering state of *Upayoga*. Further, for him who did not meditate earlier on nine *Tattvas* there lies no purpose of giving up the thought of nine *Tattvas*. He should first give up innumerable worldly thoughts which arise in him.

Thus, in the belief of the self-nonselself or in the belief of self-soul, the coexistence of the belief of seven *Tattvas* is found. Therefore, *Tattvartha Shraddhana* (belief of *Tattvarthas*) is the differentia of right belief (*Samyaktva* or *Samyagdarshan*).

**Question:** At some places in *Shastras* the belief of *Arhanta Deva* (true omniscient God), *Nirgrantha Guru* (true possessionless naked monk-preceptor) and *Dharma* (religion devoid of violence) is stated to be the right belief (*Samyaktva*). How is it so?

1. आलाप पद्धति, श्लोक 9

**Answer:** By acquiring belief of *Arhanta Deva* etc., the belief of false deities, etc. is eradicated, due to which newly adopted false belief (*Graheeta-Mithyatva*) comes to an end; from that point of view, this has been stated to be the right belief. This is not the differentia of right belief in true sense, because such belief is found even in misbelievers following conventional practices like *Dravyalingi Muni* (*Jain* monk without right belief).

Or for example, partial conduct or complete conduct may or may not be found on accepting partial vows (*Anuvratas*) or complete vows, (*Mahavratas*) but without accepting partial vows or complete vows, the partial conduct or complete conduct is never evolved. Therefore, knowing these vows (*Vratas*). to be coexisting causes and treating these causes conventionally to be the act itself, these vows, etc. are stated to be the conduct itself. Similarly on, acquiring belief in *Arhant Deva* etc., the right belief may or may not be evolved but without having belief in *Arhanta Deva* etc., the right belief of *Tattvartha Shraddhana* form is never evolved. Therefore, knowing the belief in *Arhanta Deva* etc. to be the coexisting cause and treating this cause conventionally to be the act itself, this belief is stated to be the right belief. Due to this reason only, this is called *Vyavahara Samyaktva* (conventional right belief).

Or one who has belief in *Tattvarthas* invariably possesses belief in true nature of *Arhantas* etc. Without having belief in *Tattvarthas* one may have belief in *Arhanta Deva* etc. from partisan angle but belief with true identification of the true nature of *Arhanta* etc. is not evolved. And one who has belief in true nature of *Arhantas* etc. invariably has right belief of *Tattoas* because by identifying the nature of *Arhantas* etc., the identification of *Jiva-Ajiva-Asrava* etc. *Tattoas* is attained.

Thus knowing them to be mutually coexisting, at some places, belief in *Arhanta Deva* etc. is stated to be the right belief.

**Question:** The convention of belief in true or false deities is not found in the hellish state of existence, etc. but right belief (*Samyaktva*) is found there; therefore, such a rule is not possible that on evolution of right belief, the belief in *Arhanta Deva* etc. is invariably found?

**Answer:** In the belief of seven *Tattvas* the belief of *Arhanta Deva* (true omniscient God) is inherently included because in belief of *Tattvas*, *Moksha Tattva* is believed to be supreme, that *Moksha Tattva* is the differentia of *Arhanta & Siddha*; one who believes the differentia to be supreme, invariably believes the object possessing that differentia to be supreme. Therefore, those *Arhantas & Siddhas* are also believed to be supreme and others are not believed to be such. This itself amounts to be the belief of true omniscient God. Further, the causes of *Moksha* are *Samvar-Nirjara*; therefore, he (the true believer) believes these also to be supreme and the possessors of *Samvar-Nirjara* are chiefly the monks; therefore, he believes the monks to be supreme and not others. This itself amounts to be the belief in *Guru* (true preceptor). Further, the name of the disposition, devoid of attachment, etc. passions, is *Ahinsa* (non-violence), he believes the same disposition to be worth evolving and not any other disposition. This itself amounts to be belief in *Dharma* (true religion). In this way, the belief in *Arhanta Deva* etc. is inherently included in the belief of seven *Tattvas*. Or through the instrumentality by which he acquires belief in *Tattvarthas*, by the same instrumentality he acquires belief in *Arhanta Deva* etc. also. Therefore, in evolution of right belief, there lies the rule of having belief in true *Deva* etc.

**Question:** Many *Jivas* have belief in *Arhanta Deva* etc., know their attributes, yet right belief of the form of *Tattvartha Shraddhana* is not evolved in them, therefore, one who possesses true believe in *Arhanta Deva* etc. invariably possesses *Tattva Shraddhana* (belief in *Tattoas*) — such a rule is not possible?

**Answer:** Without belief in *Tattvas* he knows forty-six qualities of *Arhanta Deva*; these qualities which he knows are concerned with the embodied state of *Arhanta*. But he does not identify clearly the respective qualities of *Jiva* (soul) and *Pudgala* (matter) as are found differently in them. Therefore, true belief also is not attained by him. Because without identifying the different categories of *Jiva-Ajiva* he does not know *Arhanta Deva's* spiritual qualities and the bodily modifications of the embodied state of *Arhanta*. If he knows them correctly, why would he then not know his self (soul) different from other non-soul substances? Therefore, it is stated in *Pravachansara* thus:

जो जाणदि अरहंतं, दव्वत्तगुणत्तपज्जयतेहिं ।  
सो जाणदि अप्पाणं, मोहो खलु जादि तस्स लयं ॥ 80 ॥

**Meaning:** He who knows the *Arhanta* with respect to substantiality, quality and modifications, knows himself and his delusion, in fact, gets destroyed.

Therefore, one who does not have belief of *Jiva* etc. *Tattvas* does not have true belief of *Arhanta Deva* etc. also. And without belief of *Moksha* etc. *Tattvas* he does not know correctly the supremacy of *Arhanta Deva* etc. He knows the supremacy of *Arhanta* by worldly glories etc., of *Guru* (preceptor) by penance etc. and of *Dharma* (religion) by non-violence, i.e., by quality of protecting other *Jivas*; so all these specialities are dependent on other things. And only on having belief of *Tattvas* etc., the nature of *Arhanta Deva* etc. is known by their spiritual qualities. Therefore, one who has true belief of *Arhanta Deva* etc., invariably possesses true belief of *Tattvas*. This is the rule.

In this way, the differentia of right belief is determined.

**Question:** The differentia of right belief is stated to be the belief of *Tattvarthas* or belief of self-nonsel, or belief of self-soul or belief of *Deva-Guru-Dharma* (true omniscient God, true preceptor and true *Ahinsa* religion). And the mutual oneness of all these differentias, as shown by you, is also understood, but what is the purpose of stating these different differentias?

**Answer:** Out of these four differentias, if one differentia is accepted from true angle, it covers all the four differentias, nevertheless, keeping in view different chief purposes, different differentias have been stated differently.

Where the belief of *Tattvarthas* is stated to be the differentia, there the purpose is that by identifying these *Tattvas* one acquires belief of the real nature of the substances and of his own benefit and harm and then he follows the path of liberation.

And where the belief of self-nonsel is stated to be the differentia, there such belief is stated to be the chief differentia, by which the purpose of *Tattvartha Shraddhana* is accomplished. The purpose of belief of *Jiva-Ajiva* is to acquire distinct belief of self-nonsel. And



the purpose of belief of *Asrava* etc. is to renounce attachment, etc. passions; therefore, on evolution of distinct belief of self-nonsel, the belief of non-attachment, etc. in other substances is generated. In this way knowing that the purpose of *Tattvartha Shraddhana* is accomplished by acquiring distinct belief of self & nonself, this differentia (belief in seven *Tattvas*) is stated.

And where belief of the self-soul is stated to be the differentia, there the only purpose of distinct belief of self-nonsel is this much that one should know the self-soul to be himself. On knowing the self-soul to be himself, even the thought of other substances is not useful. By knowing the primeness of such fundamental purpose, the differentia of belief of self-soul has been emphasized.

And where the belief of *Deva-Guru-Dharma* (true God, preceptor & religion) is stated to be the differentia, there the external means are emphasized; because belief of *Arhanta Deva* etc. is the cause of true belief in *Tattvarthas* and belief of false deities, etc. is the cause of belief of imaginary *Tattvas*. So, from the viewpoint of primeness of external cause, by effectuating abandonment of belief in false deities for effectuating belief in true *Deva* etc., the differentia of the belief in true *Deva-Guru-Dharma* is stated to be chief differentia.

In this way, from the viewpoint of primeness of different purposes, different differentias are stated.

**Question:** Out of these four differentias, which one differentia should this *Jiva* adopt?

**Answer:** On subsidence, etc. of *Mithyatva karma* (faith-deluding *karma*) the destruction of perverse determination or belief takes place. There, all the four differentias are simultaneously found. And from the viewpoint of thinking process, he chiefly meditates on *Tattvarthas* or develops discriminative knowledge between self and nonself or concentrates on the nature of the self-soul only or ponders over the nature of true *Deva* etc. Thus in his knowledge different kinds of thoughts arise but in belief everywhere mutual correlation is found. When he meditates on *Tattvas*, it is for the purpose of discriminative knowledge (*Bheda-Vijnāna*). When he engages his *upayoga* in discriminative knowledge, he does so with the purpose of meditation on *Tattvas*. Similarly, at other places also, mutual



correlation exists. Therefore, in the belief of a true believer, acceptance of all the four differentias is found.

Further, one who has rise of *Mithyatva* (faith-deluding *karma*) possesses perverse belief of *Tattvas*. These differentias are found in him apparently only; these are not true. He believes *Jiva* etc. *Tattvas* as described in *Jina's* faith, does not believe in others, learns their names, kinds, etc. Such sort of *Tattva Shradhdhana* is found in him; but belief of their true nature is not found in him. Further, he may talk about the difference between self & nonself objects, may meditate on this, but as he possesses I-ness feeling in the embodied form and nonself feeling in cloths, etc. like that he does not possess I-ness feeling in the self-soul and nonself feeling in the body, etc. Further, he may meditate on self-soul according to *Jina's* preachings but he does not have belief of self to be the self with real ascertainment. Further, excepting *Arhanta Deva* etc., he does not believe in other false deities, etc. but he does not believe them by correctly identifying their nature (distinctive characteristics) thus these apparent differentias are found in a misbeliever. Out of these differentias, some is found and some is not found. There, these may be found in different forms also.

Further, amongst these apparent differentias, the point to be noted is that first of all one should acquire the belief of true *Deva* etc., then he should contemplate on *Tattvas*, then he should ponder over the self-nonsel and ultimately should meditate on self-soul only - if he follows these means sequentially, then successively by attaining the true path of liberation, some *Jiva* may attain the *Siddhahood* (liberated state of soul) also. And by violating this sequence, he whose belief about *Deva* etc. is not authentic or correct, owing to the sharpness of intellect, remains engaged in contemplation of *Tattvas*; and by this believes himself to be an enlightened self, or does not engross his *upayoga* in contemplation of *Tattvas* also but considers himself possessor of the discriminative knowledge of self & nonself; or even does not know correctly the self-nonsel objects but believes that he has realised the self; so all these facets are mere show of cleverness and are the means of fostering pride passion, etc. These are in no way useful to the self. Therefore, the *Jiva* who desires self-

realisation, should follow the steps stated hereunder in the given sequence till he does not attain true right belief.

The sequential steps are these:- First of all either by the commandment, etc. or by some examination, one should give up belief in false deities, etc. and should evolve belief in *Arhanta Deva* etc. because by such belief the newly acquired false belief (*Graheeta Mithyatva*) is quitted and the instrumentality of the false deities, etc., which act as impediments in the liberation path, is removed and the instrumentality of *Arhanta Deva* etc., who are the agreeable cause in the liberation path, is obtained. Therefore, first of all one should acquire faith in true *Deva* etc., then he should ponder over *Jiva* etc. *Tattovas* as described in *Jina's* faith, should learn their names, differentias, etc. because by such practice, belief in *Tattovas* is acquired. Afterwards, he should continue meditation in such a way which might generate distinction between self and nonself because by such practice discriminative knowledge is evolved. Thereafter, for the sake of believing I-ness in self-soul, he should continue meditation on the nature of self-soul because by such practice, self-realisation is attained.

In this way, by following these steps sequentially, he should sometimes engage his *upayoga* in the thoughts of true *Deva* etc., sometimes in *Tattovas*, sometimes in self-nonsel and sometimes in self-soul only. By such practice *Darshan Moha* (faith-deluding *karma*) may gradually become feeble, then he may attain true right belief (*Samyagdarshan*). But there is no such rule. If some *Jiva* meets with some strong perverse cause in the course of this process, then he may not attain right belief; but chiefly many *Jivas* do accomplish their objective by following this process. Therefore, one should adopt these in the aforesaid manner. For example, one who desires to have a son, should get married. Afterwards, most of the persons are assuredly blessed by the birth of a son; but someone may not get a son His duty is to make effort. Similarly, one who is desirous of evolving right faith, should adopt willfully these causes. Afterwards, most of the *Jivas* do attain right faith, someone may not attain also. But one should willfully adopt these means as per one's capacity.

Thus, the differentia of right belief is determined.

**Question:** The differentias of right faith have been stated in many ways; why have you given prominence to the differentia of *Tattvartha Shraddhana* amongst them?

**Answer:** In other differentials, the *Jivas* having feeble knowledge, do not grasp the purpose explicitly and instead they get confused, whereas in this *Tattvartha Shraddhana* differentia, the purpose is grasped explicitly, no confusion arises. Therefore, prominence is given to this differentia. The same is being explained here:-

In the differentia of belief in true *Deva-Guru-Dharma* the *Jivas* having feeble knowledge, understand that right belief consists only in believing in *Arhanta Deva* etc. and not believing others. Therein, the nature of *Jiva-Ajiva* and of the cause and effect relationship about bondage and liberation is not grasped correctly; then the purpose of liberation path is not accomplished and without evolution of belief in *Jiva* etc. *Tattvas* one becomes satisfied by such belief only and thinks himself to be true believer. He develops jealousy towards false deities, etc. but does not make effort for giving up other feelings of attachment, etc. — such state of confusion arises.

Further, in the differentia of belief of self-nonsel, the persons, having feeble knowledge, understand that only knowledge of self andonsel is efficacious, this alone produces right belief. Therein, the nature of *Asrava* etc. *Tattvas* is not correctly grasped, then the purpose of liberation path is not fulfilled. Or without belief of *Asrava* etc., he becomes satisfied by this much knowledge only and believes himself to be true believer; by remaining unrestrained, he does not make effort for giving up attachment, etc. Such fallacy is produced.

And in the differentia of belief in self-soul only, the person having feeble knowledge, thinks that the thought of self-soul only is efficacious. This alone produces right belief. Therein the detailed nature of *Jiva-Ajiva* etc. and nature of *Asrava* etc. is not correctly grasped, then the purpose of attaining liberation path is not fulfilled or he may believe himself to have acquired right belief by such thought only without acquiring the belief of the details of *Jiva* etc. and the nature of *Asrava* etc. By remaining unrestrained, he does not make effort for giving up attachment, etc. — such fallacy is caused to this person also.

Knowing this, these differentias are not given prominence.

And in the differentia of belief in *Tattvarthas* the belief of *Jiva-Ajiva* etc. and *Asrava* etc. is evolved. Therein, the true nature of all *Tattvas* is clearly grasped, then the purpose of liberation path is fulfilled. Further, on evolution of such belief one becomes true believer but he does not remain satisfied here. Because of belief of true nature of *Asrava* etc., he continues making effort for liberation by giving up attachment, etc. He does not fall in the trap of fallacy. Therefore, the differentia of belief in *Tattvarthas* is given prominence.

Further, in the differentia of *Tattvartha-Shraddhana*, belief of true *deva* etc., belief of self-nonselself and belief of self-soul are included. This is grasped by *Jivas* having feeble knowledge also. But in other differentias, the inclusion of differentia of *Tattvartha-Shraddhana* is grasped by intelligent persons only. Persons, having feeble knowledge, are not able to grasp this. Therefore, the differentia of *Tattvartha-Shraddhana* is given prominence.

Or all these differentias may be found in a misbeliever in an apparent form only; therein, the thought of *Tattvarthas* quickly becomes the cause of elimination of perverse determination; whereas the other differentias may not become quick cause and even may become the cause of perverse determination.

Therefore, by ascertaining the prominence from all angles, "the belief of *Jiva* etc *Tattvarthas*, devoid of perverse determination, is the only differentia of right faith (*Samyaktava*)" - such conclusion is arrived at. So ends the discussion of determination of differentia of right belief.

That soul, who possesses this differentia, is alone to be known as true believer.

### **Kinds of *Samyaktva* & Their Characteristics**

Now the kinds of *Samyaktva* (right faith) are being discussed:-

First of all, the difference between *Nischaya* (real) and *Vyavahara* (conventional) is being considered. That disposition of the belief attribute of the soul, which is devoid of perverse determination, is



real right belief (*Nischaya Samyaktva*), because this is the trait of true form of right faith; the name of true form of state only is *Nishchaya*. And the belief which is the instrumental cause of belief devoid of perverse determination, is conventional right faith (*Vyavahara Samyaktva*); because calling the cause to be the effect or act is attribution (*upachara*). So, the *upachara* (attribution) only is called *Vyavahara*.

The true believer has true belief in *Deva-Guru-Dharma*, because of which only, his belief is devoid of perverse determination. Here the belief, devoid of perverse determination, is *Nischaya Samyaktva* and belief of *Deva-Guru-Dharma* is *Vyavahara Samyaktva*.

In this way, both the types of *Samyaktva* are found at one and the same time only.

Further, the misbeliever possesses merely apparent belief of *Deva-Guru-Dharma* etc. and such belief is not devoid of perverse determination; therefore, the *Nischaya Samyaktva* is not found here and the *Vyavahara Samyaktva* too is merely of apparent form; because his belief of *Deva-Guru-Dharma* etc. has not become the direct cause of ending perverse determination. Without production of the desired result, even *upachara* (attribution) is not possible. Therefore, from the viewpoint of direct cause, even the *Vyavahara Samyaktva* is not possible in him.

Or as a rule, the belief of *Deva-Guru-Dharma* etc. is found in him which acts to be the traditional cause of belief, devoid of perverse determination. Although, as a rule, it is not a cause, nevertheless, it acts to be the prime cause. And attribution (*upachara*) of effect or act is possible in the cause, therefore, from the viewpoint of chief traditional cause, *Vyavahara Samyaktva* is stated to be found even in a misbeliever.

**Question:** In many *Shastras* the belief of *Deva-Guru-Dharma* etc. and the belief of *Tattvas* is described as *Vyavahara Samyaktva* and the belief of the self-nonselself or belief of self-soul only is stated to be *Nischaya Samyaktva*; how is it so?

**Answer:** In belief of *Deva-Guru-Dharma* the prominence is of putting into practice. In practice, one who adores and believes *Arhanta Deva* only to be true *Deva* and not other deities, etc. is stated



to be the believer of *Deva* etc. And in the belief of *Tattvoarthas* thought is prominent. One who contemplates on *Jiva* etc. *Tattvas* in his *Upayoga* is called believer of *Tattvas*. In this way, prominence is found. So, both of these do become the cause of right faith in the case of some *Jiva*; but their existence is possible even in a misbeliever; therefore, these are described to be *Vyavahara Samyaktva*.

And in the belief of self-nonselself or in the belief of self-soul only, the prominence is of absence of perverse determination. One who has discriminative knowledge of self-nonselself or realises self-soul, is chiefly devoid of perverse determination. Therefore, the possessor of discriminative knowledge or realiser of self-soul; is stated to be true believer (*Samyagdrishti*). Thus chiefly the belief of self-nonselself or belief of self-soul is found in a true believer only. Therefore, these are stated to be *Nischaya Samyaktva*.

This description is from the prominence point of view. Minutely speaking, all these four differentias are apparently found in a misbeliever and truly found in a true believer. If these (four differentias) are found merely in an apparent form, then, without being the rule, these are attributed to be the traditional cause and if these are found in their true form, then they are, as a rule, direct causes. Therefore, these are termed as of *Vyavahara* (conventional) forms. It should be known that the belief, devoid of perverse determination, which is evolved due to their instrumentality, is *Nischaya Samyaktva* (real right faith).

**Question:** In many *Shastras* it is stated that the soul itself is the real right belief (*Nischaya Samyaktva*) and rest all is *Vyavahara* (convention); how is it so?

**Answer:** The belief evolved, devoid of perverse determination, is the nature of the soul itself; there, from the indivisibility point of view, there is no difference between soul and right belief. Therefore, from real point of view, the soul itself is stated to be the right belief. Rest all are mere instrumental cause of right belief or by imagining distinction, the soul and right faith are stated to be different. In this way, rest all are stated to be *Vyavahara*.

Thus, *Nischaya Samyaktva* and *Vyavahara Samyaktva* are the two kinds of *Samyaktva*.

Further, from the viewpoint of other instrumental causes, etc. the right faith (*Samyagdarshan*) is stated to be of ten kinds like *Ajnaa Samyaktva* etc. Same is stated in *Atmaanushasana*:

“ आज्ञामार्गसमुद्भवमुपदेशात्सूत्रबीजसंक्षेपात् ।  
विस्तारार्थाभ्यां भवमवपरमावादिगाढे च ॥ 11 ॥”

**Meaning:** (*Ajna, Marga, Upadesha, Sutra, Bija, Sankshepa, Vistara, Artha Avagaadha* and *Paramaavagaadha* — these are the ten kinds of *Samyaktva* - (right belief). Out of these ten kinds of right belief, the first eight are based on the immediate cause preceding the evolution of right belief and the last two are based on the excellence of coexisting knowledge).

The belief of *Tattvas* evolved by following *Jina's* commandment (omniscient's preachings) is called *Ajnaa Samyaktva*. Here one should note that “I believe in *Jina's* commandment” — such belief only is not the right belief. Belief in commandment is a mere cause. Due to this only, the *Samyaktva* is stated to have evolved by *Ajnaa* (commandment). Therefore, that right belief in *Tattvas* which is evolved by earlier obeying *Jina's* commandment is *Ajnaa Samyaktva*. Similarly, the belief, which is evolved by viewing the possessionless path of liberation, is *Marga Samyaktva*<sup>1\*</sup>....

The right belief of *Tattvas* which is possessed by a *Shruia-Kewali* (preceptor who has knowledge of all scriptures) is called *Avagaadha Samyaktva* and the belief of *Tattvas* possessed by the omniscient *Jina* is called *Paramaavagaadha Samyaktva*.

Thus, these two kinds are stated from the viewpoint of coexisting right knowledge.

In all these ten kinds (of right belief) the differentia of *Samyaktva* should be known to be belief in *Tattvarthas*.

Further, *Samyaktva* is described to be of three kinds:-

1. ***Aupashamika*:** (That which is caused by subsidence of *Darshan Mohaniya prakriti*)

<sup>1\*</sup> Here after describing *Margana Samyaktva* a space of 3 lines is left in the manuscript written by Pt. Todarmalji (author of this book) for describing the rest six *Samyaktvas*, but the same could not be written.

2. *Kshayopashamika*: (Caused by destruction-cum-subsidence of *Darshan Mohaniya*)
3. *Kshayika*: (Caused by destruction of *Darshan Mohaniya*).

So, these three kinds are specified from the viewpoint of *Darshan-Moha* (faith-deluding *karma*) only.

Further, the *Aupashamika Samyaktva* is of two kinds:

1. *Prathamopashama Samyaktva*: (First type of subsidential right belief)
2. *Dwiteeyopashama Samyaktva*: (Second type of subsidential right belief).

There, the *Samyaktva* (right faith) which arises by effecting subsidence of *Darshan Moha* (faith-deluding *karma*) through *karana* (attainment of *karana-labdhi*) at the end of the state of first — misbeliever's *Gunasthana* is called *Prathamopashama-Samyaktva* (first type of subsidential right belief).

Here the point to be noted is this that in the case of the eternal misbeliever (*Anadi Mithyadrishhti* who never acquired right belief ever before) the subsidence of *Mithyatva-prakriti* only takes place; because in this state, the existence of *Mishra Mohaniya* and *Samyaktva Mohaniya* is not found. When a *Jiva* acquires the *Upashama Samyaktva* (first type of subsidential right faith); if, in the period of that *Samyaktva*, he converts the atoms of *Mithyatva* into the form of *Mishra-Mohaniya* and *Samyaktva-Mohaniya*, then the existence of three types of *Prakritis* is caused. Therefore, in the case of eternal misbeliever, the existence (*Satta*) of only one *Mithyatva Prakriti* is found; the subsidence of the same takes place. Further, in the case of a non-eternal misbeliever (*Saadi-Mithyadrishhti*) some have the existence (*Satta*) of all the three *Prakritis* and some have the existence (*Satta*) of one *Prakriti* only. During the process of evolution of *Samyaktva*, in whose case, the existence of three *Prakritis* was caused and such state persists, in his case, the existence of all the three *Prakritis* is found. And where (in whose case) *Mishra-Mohaniya* and *Samyaktva Mohaniya* have disappeared, i.e., their atoms are converted into *Mithyatva* form, in the case of such non-eternal misbeliever (*Saadi-Mithyadrishhti*), the existence of only one *Mithyatva Prakriti* is found. Therefore, in the case of a *Saadi Mithyadrishhti*

either the subsidence of three *Prakritis* or of one *Prakriti* only takes place.

What is *Upashama* (subsidence)? The same is being explained here:

By the *Antarkarana Vidhana* effected in the state of *Anivrattikarana*, the *Nishekas* (atoms of *Darshan Mohaniya*) which were capable of coming into rise (*udaya*) during the period of *Samyaktva*, were made ineffective in that period. The same atoms were turned into the *Nishekas* capable of coming into rise in future. And by the *Upashama Vidhana* effected in the same period of *Anivrattikarana*, the *Nishekas*, which were capable of coming into rise after that period, were caused to remain in such state that they might not come into rise in this period in the form of *Udirana* (premature operation).

Thus that state where the existence (*Satta*) of *Darshan Mohaniya* is found but its rise is not found, is termed as *Upashama* (subsidence).

This is the *Prathamopashama Samyaktva* evolved at the end of the state of *Mithyatva* (first *Gunasthana*). This is found existing from the fourth, etc. up to seventh *Gunasthana*.

And *Upashama Samyaktva*, which is evolved from *Kshayopashama Samyaktva* in the state of readiness for *Upashama-Shreni* in seventh *Gunasthana*, is termed *Dwiteeyopashama Samyaktva*. Here the subsidence of all the three *Prakritis* of *Darshan Mohaniya* is caused by *Karana* (attainment of *Karana-labdhi*), because in his case, the existence (*Satta*) of all the three *Prakritis* is found. Here too their rise (*udaya*) is made ineffective in that period by *Antar Karana Vidhana* and *Upashama Vidhana*. This is called *Upashama* (subsidence). So, this *Dwiteeyo-pashama Samyaktva* is found existing from the seventh etc. up to the eleventh *Gunasthana*. It should be known that when one falls from the eleventh *Gunasthana*, this in some cases is found existing in sixth, fifth and fourth *Gunasthana* also.

Thus *Upashama Samyaktva* is of two kinds. So in the present state, this *Samyaktva* is as pure as *Kshayika*. Since the existence (*Satta*) of its opponent *karma* is found, therefore, this *Samyaktva* remains persisting merely for an *Antar-Muhurta* period. Later on, the rise (*udaya*) of *Darshan-Mohaniya* (right belief deluding *karma*) takes place.



Thus, the nature (differentia) of *Upashama Samyaktva* has been described.

Further, where out of the three *Prakritis* of *Darshan-Mohaniya* the rise of *Samyaktva Mohaniya* only is found and the rise of other two is not found, there the *Kshayopashama Samyaktva* is found. This *Samyaktva* is evolved on completion of the period of *Upashama-Samyaktva* and in case of a non-eternal misbeliever (*Saadi-Mithyadrishi*) it is attained from the (at the end of ) first *Mithyatva Gunasthana* or the third *Mishra Gunasthana* also.

What is *Kshayopashama*? The same is being explained here:-

Out of the three *Prakritis* of *Darshan Mohaniya*, whatever is the fruition (potency) of *Mithyatva-Prakriti*, its infinitesimal part is of the *Mishra Mohaniya*. and its infinitesimal part of the *Samyaktva Mohaniya*. In these, the *Samyaktva Mohaniya Prakriti* is *Desha Ghati* (causing partial destruction); even on its rise, the right belief (*Samyaktva*) is not destroyed. That (*Prakriti*) which causes some foulness but can not destroy totally, is called *Desha Ghati*.

And where the *Nishekas* (atoms) of *Mithyatva* and *Mishra Mithyatva*, capable of coming into rise in the present moment, are shedded out even without their coming into rise state, is to be known as *Kshaya* (destruction); and the same *Nishekas* capable of coming into rise in future moments, if found existing (in *Satta*) is termed as *Upashama* (subsidence); and the rise of *Samyaktva Mohaniya* is found — the existence of such a state is called the *Kshayopashama* (destruction cum subsidence of *Darshan Mohaniya*). Therefore, the belief of *Tattvarthas* which has foulness, is *Kshayopashama Samyaktva*.

The nature of such minute state of foulness, which is found here, is known by the omniscient *Jina* only. For the sake of illustration, the nature of foulness is explained through waveredness, impurity and lack of firmness. There, although conventionally he has ascertainment of true *Deva* etc. but the existence of such type of waveredness that “this *Arhanta Deva* etc. is mine and that *Arhanta Deva* is of others”, rise of doubt, etc., is impurity. This *Lord Shantinath* bestows peace, etc. feeling is called lack of firmness. Such examples are given merely conventionally; but there is no such rule. Whatever, foulness is found assuredly in



*Kshayopashama Samyaktva* is known by the omniscients only. One should know this much that some sort of foulness is found in his belief of *Tattvarthas*. Therefore, this *Samyaktva* is of one kind only. There is no subdivision in it.

The speciality is this that at the time of readiness for evolution of *Kshayika Samyaktva*, where during the period of one *Antar Muhurta* only he destroys the *prakriti* of *Mithyatva*, there remains the existence (*Satta*) of two *Prakritis* only; later on, he destroys *Mishra Mohaniya* also, there remains the existence (*Satta*) of one *Samyaktva Mohaniya* only. Then, afterwards he does not perform the *Kandakaghata*<sup>1</sup> etc. operation of *Samyaktva Mohaniya*; there he gets the name of *Krit-kritya Vedaka Samyagdrishti* (the true believer whose objective is fulfilled).

Further, the name of this *Kshayopashama Samyaktva* itself is *Vedaka Samyaktva*. Where it is described from the prominence of *Mithyatva* and *Mishra-Mohaniya* point of view, there it is termed *Kshayopashama Samyaktva*. And where it is described from the prominence of *Samyaktva-Mohaniya*, there it is termed as *Vedaka Samyaktva*. These two names are simply for the sake of description. There is no difference in their nature. Further, this *Kshayopashama-Samyaktva* is found existing from the fourth up to the seventh *Gunasthanana*. Thus, the nature of *Kshayopashama Samyaktva* has been explained.

Further, the totally pure belief of *Tattvarthas*, which is evolved on the complete destruction of all the *Nishekas* of all the three *Prakritis*, is called *Kshayika Samyaktva*. So, this is attained by *Kshayopashama Samyagdrishti* (true believer possessing *Kshayopashama Samyaktva*) in any of the four *Gunasthanas*, i.e., from fourth to seventh *Gunasthanana*.

How is it attained? The same is being explained. There, first by means of three *Karanas* he converts the atoms of *Mithyatva* into *Mishra Mohaniya* and *Samyaktva-Mohaniya* form and then sheds them out. By this way, he destroys the existence (*Satta*) of *Mithyatva* and then he converts the atoms of *Mishra Mohaniya* into *Samyaktva Mohaniya* and then sheds them out; in this way, *Mishra-Mohaniya* is destroyed. And the *Nishekas* of *Samyaktva Mohaniya* shed out by

1. *Kandakaghata*; Destroying by reducing the duration of *Samyaktva-Mohaniya*.

coming into rise state; if its *Sthiti* duration, etc. be very long, then he reduces it by *Sthitikandaka* process, etc. Where the *sthiti* (duration) remains only of one *Antar Muhurta* then he becomes a *Krit-kriya Vedaka Samyagdrishti*. Further, successively by destroying these *Nishekas*, he becomes a *Kshayika Samyag drishti* (true believer possessing destruction — form of pure belief).

So, this (*Kshayika Samyaktva*) is pure owing to the destruction of the opponent *karma* (*Darshan Mohaniya*) and is passionless owing to destruction of intensest passion with false belief. This is never destroyed. From the moment it is evolved, it remains existing for ever even in the liberated state of *Siddhas*. Thus the nature (differentia) of *Kshayika Samyaktva* (destruction form of right belief) has been explained. Such are the three kinds of *Samyaktvas*.

Further, on evolution of *Samyaktva* the intensest type of passion (*Anantaanubandhi Kashaya*) gets changed into two forms. Either it takes the form of *Aprashasta Upashama* (inauspicious subsidence) or *Visanyojana* (conversion into *Aprathyakhyan* etc. forms of intenser passions).

There, the subsidence which is caused by subsidential process (*Upashama-Vidhana*) through *Karanas* (attainment of *Karana-labdhi*) is called *Prashasta Upashama* (auspicious subsidence). The absence of *Udaya* (rise) is called *Aprashasta Upashama* (inauspicious subsidence). So, in the case of *Anantaanubandhi* (intensest passion), the *Prashasta Upashama* is not at all possible, but it is possible in the case of other *Prakritis* of *Mohaniya*. Its *Aprashasta Upashama* only takes place.

Further, through the process of three *Karanas*, the transformation of the atoms of *Anantanubandhi* (intensest passion) in the form of other *Prakritis* of *Charitra Moha* and thus destruction of its existence, is called *Visanyojana* (transformation).

In *Prathamopashama Samyaktva*, only the inauspicious subsidence of *Anantanubandhi* takes place. And after *Visanyojana* of *Anantaanubandhi* only the *Dwiteeyopashama Samyaktva* (second type of subsidential right belief) is attained. Some *Acharya* states this to be a rule and some others do not state it to be a rule. And in the state of *Kshayopashama Samyaktva*, in the case of some *Jivas*, *Aprashasta Upashama* takes place and in the case of some other *Jivas* *Visanyojana*

(transformation) is caused. But *Kshāyika Samyaktva* is evolved only after *Visanyojana of Anantāanubandhi*.

Here the specific point to be noted is that in the case of *Upashama* and *Kshayopashama* types of true believers, the destruction of existence of *Anantānubandhi* was caused through *Visanyojana* (transformation). If he again falls in *Mithyatva* state, then the bondage of *Anantaanubandhi* is caused. Then the recurrence of its existence takes place. And the *Kshayika Samyagdrishti* does not fall in *Mithyatva* state; therefore, the recurrence of the existence of *Anantaanubandhi* is never found in his case.

**Question:** *Anantaanubandhi* is the *Prakriti* of *Charitra Moha* (conduct-deluding *karma*), so, it destroys the *Charitra* (conduct). How is the destruction of *Samyaktva* (right belief) possible by this *Prakriti*?

**Answer:** In the state of rise of *Anantaanubandhi*, anger, etc. dispositions are produced, (but) disbelief in *Tattvas* is not caused. Therefore, *Anantaanubandhi* destroys the conduct only, does not destroy *Samyaktva* (right belief). So, in reality, it is like this only but the types of anger, etc. passion which is caused due to rise of *Anantaanubandhi*, of the same form is not caused on evolution of *Samyaktva* (right belief) — such instrumental cause and effect relationship is found. For instance, the destroyer of *Trasa* state (mobile name *karma*) is the *Sthavara Prakriti* (immobile name *karma*) only; but on attainment of *Trasa* state even the rise of the *Ekendriyajati-Prakriti* (one-sensed type of name *karma*) is not found. Therefore, conventionally even if the one-sensed type of *Prakriti* is stated to be the destroyer of *Trasa* state, then there lies no fault. Similarly, the destroyer of *Samyaktva* is the *Darshan Moha* (faith-deluding *karma*) but on evolution of *Samyaktva* even the rise of *Anantaanubandhi* is not found; therefore, conventionally even if *Anantaanubandhi* is stated to be the destroyer of *Samyaktva*, then there lies no fault.

**Question:** *Anantaanubandhi* also destroys conduct (*Charitra*) only, then on its disappearance evolution of some conduct should be stated. Why is incontinence stated to be existing in *Asanyat Gunasthana* (state of vowless right belief)?

**Answer:** The *Anantaanubandhi* etc. kinds are not from the intense or feeble passions point of view, because whether indulgence is found in intense passion or feeble passion, the rise of *Anantaanubandhi*, etc., all the four types of passions, is found simultaneously. There the highest *Sparaddhakas* of all the four types of passions are stated to be uniform.

Here the specific point is that, that type of intense rise of *Apratyakhyāna*, etc., which is found in the absence of *Anantaanubandhi*, the same type is not found on its disappearance. Likewise, that type of intense rise of *Pratyakhyāna* and *Sanjwalana* type of passion which is found in the presence of *Apratyakhyāna*, the same type is not found on its disappearance. And the intense rise of *Sanjwalana* which is found in the presence of *Pratyakhyana*, the same degree of intense rise is not found when it (*Sanjwalana*) alone is found existing. Therefore, on disappearance of *Anantaanubandhi*, although passions become somewhat feeble, yet that degree of feebleness is not evolved owing to which the corresponding state of soul may be given the name of *Charitra* (conduct). Because the degrees of intensity & feebleness in passions are of innumerable types. In them, the posterior states of passions are less intense as compared to the anterior states, but conventionally all these states of passions are categorised in three limits. Most of the earlier states are stated to be of incontinent form. Many of the states found thereafter are stated to be of partial continence (*Desha Sanyama*) form and the states found thereafter are stated to be of *Sakal Sanyama* - complete continence form. In all the aforesaid states of passions, those which are found from the first *Gunasthana* up to the fourth *Gunasthana*, all are of incontinence (*Asanyama*) form only. Therefore, in spite of feeble states of passions, the corresponding states of the soul cannot be named as states of *Charitra* (conduct or continence).

Although from realistic point of view, the reduction in passion amounts to part evolution of conduct (*Charitra*), nevertheless, from conventional point of view, where such reduction of passions is found whereby one accepts *Shravaka Dharma* (partial continence & vows found in householder's state) or *Muni Dharma* (complete continence & vows found in true monk's state) — such state only is regarded as *Charitra* (conduct). Such degrees of reduction in passions



is not found in an incontinent person. Therefore, here (from first to fourth *Gunasthana*) incontinence exists. In spite of the states of intensity and feebleness in passions, as from the *Pramatta Gunasthana* onwards everywhere the state of the soul is called the state of *Sakal Sanyama* (complete continence), similarly, from the *Mithyatva* (first etc.) up to *Asanyata* (fourth) *Gunasthanas* everywhere the state of soul is called the state of *Asanyama* (incontinence) only. It is to be noted that in all these states, the degree of incontinence is not uniform.

**Question:** *Anantaanubandhi* does not destroy *Samyaktva* (right belief), then on its rise, how one attains the state of *Sasādāna Gunasthana* after falling from the state of *Samyaktva* (right belief)?

**Answer:** For example, a person is suffering from such intense disease that it may cause end of human life; such person is called to be the relinquisher of human life. And after end of human life, if gets birth in celestial life, then this latter state of existence is not evolved during the diseased state. Here the rise of age *karma* of human life is continuing. Similarly, in the case of a true believer the rise of *Anantaanubandhi* took place which became the cause of end of right belief, (*Samyaktva*); therefore, such rise (of *Anantaanubandhi*) is stated to be the opponent (*Sasādāna*) of *Samyaktva*. And on destruction of right belief, the perverse belief (*Mithyatva*) is evolved; this did not happen in *Sasādāna Gunasthana*. Therefore, it should be noted that here (in *Sasādāna*) the duration of period is of *Upashama Samyaktva* (subsidential type of true belief) only.

Such happens the state of *Anantaanubandhi* anger, etc., four passions, on evolution of right belief. Therefore, the attainment of *Samyaktva* (right-belief) is also stated to have been evolved on subsidence, etc. of seven *Prakritis*.

**Question:** How is *Samyaktva Margana* classified in six categories?

**Answer:** The *Samyaktva* is of three types only. And the absence of right belief is *Mithyatva* (perverse belief). And the mixed disposition of the both (*Samyaktva & Mithyatva*) is the *Mishra* (state of mixed disposition). The disposition which is destroyer of *Samyaktva* is *Sasādāna* (state of downfall). Thus on pondering over the *Jiva* from



the viewpoint of *Samyaktva-Margana* (soul-quest by right-belief) the six kinds (of *Samyaktva Margana*) are stated.

Here someone may say that one who has come in *Mithyatva* state after falling from *Samyaktva* should be called to be in the state of *Mithyatva-Samyaktva*. But this is wrong, because its existence is found in an *Abhavya* (incapable soul) also. Moreover, the use of the word *Mithyatva Samyaktva* itself is incorrect. As in *Sanyama Margana* (soul quest by continence) the *Asamyama* (state of incontinence) is also included; in *Bhavya Margana* (capable soul quest) the *Abhavya* (incapable souls) is enumerated. Similarly, in *Samyaktva-Margana* the *Mithyatva* is enumerated. But one should not understand *Mithyatva* to be a kind of *Samyaktva*. On deliberation from *Samyaktva* point of view, many *Jivas* may be found without right belief (*Samyaktva*), there *Mithyatva* is found; for explaining this state, *Mithyatva* is enumerated in *Samyaktva Margana*. Similarly, the states of *Sasādāna* (downfall) and *Mishra* (mixed) are also not the kinds of *Samyaktva*. It should be known that *Samyaktva* is only of three kinds.

Here it is stated that by subsidence, etc. of *karmas* the subsidential, etc. types of *Samyaktva* are evolved, but subsidence, etc. of the *karmas* are not caused by *Jiva*. He should make effort for ascertaining the *Tattvas*; owing to its instrumentality, the subsidence, etc. of *karmas* take place on their own; then he attains belief in *Tattvas*.

Thus one should know the kinds and nature of *Samyaktva*.

### **Eight Angas (virtues) of Right Belief**

Further *Samyagdarshan* (right belief) is described to be having the following eight *Angas* (virtues).

1. *Nihshankitvatva*: (Doubtlessness in *Tattvas*)
2. *Nihkankshitatva*: (Desirelessness for worldly pleasures).
3. *Nirvichikitsatva*: (Non-repugnance at the afflicted ones)
4. *Amudhadrishtitva*: (Non-stupidity in *Deva-Guru-Dharma*)
5. *Upabrinhana*: (Developing spiritual qualities)
6. *Sthitakarana*: (Stabilisation in religion)
7. *Prabhavana*: (Glorification of religion)
8. *Vatsalya*: (Fraternity towards coreligionists)

There, the absence of fear, or absence of doubt in *Tattvas* is *Nihshankitvatva* (doubtlessness). And absence of attachment in and craving for nonself objects, etc. is *Nihkankshitvatva* (desirelessness). And the absence of malice-form of disgust in other nonself objects is *Nirvichikitsatva* (non-repugnance). And the absence of delusion in the form of false ascertainment about *Tattvas* and *Deva* etc. is *Amudhadrishtitva* (non-stupidity); acquiring excellence in spiritual qualities and observance of religious practices is called *Upabrinhana*. This *Anga* (virtue) is also termed as *Upagoohana* which means veiling of shortcomings & demerits of coreligionists. And re-installing the self as well as other coreligionists in one's own intrinsic nature and of *Jina's* religion is the *Sthitikarana Anga*. Spreading and promoting the glory of one's own nature as well as of *Jina's* religion is *Prabhavana-Anga*. And cultivation of deep affection in one's own nature as well as in *Jina's* religion and coreligionists is *Vatsalya Anga*. Thus, one should know these eight *Angas*.

As the hands, legs, etc. are the limbs of human body, similarly, these are the *Angas* (limbs) of *Samyagdarshan* (right belief).

**Question:** Even, many true believers are found having fear, desire, disgust, etc. passions and even many misbelievers are not found having these passions; therefore, how do you say the *Nihshankita* etc. *Angas* to be the organs of *Samyaktva*?

**Answer:** For example - hands, legs, etc. are stated to be the limbs of human body; there may be some such person who may not be having any one of the limbs like leg, etc. Although he is said to be possessing human body, yet without those missing limbs he does not look handsome and is not able to function efficiently in all respects. Similarly, the *Nihshankita* etc. are stated to be the *Angas* (limbs or virtues) of *Samyaktva* (right belief); there may be some true believer who may not be having any of these *Nihshankitvatva* etc. *Angas*. There he is said to be having *Samyaktva* but without those missing *Angas* (virtues) such right belief is neither pure nor efficacious in all respects. Further, for example, a monkey also possesses hands, legs, etc. limbs, but these limbs are not similar to those possessed by a person. Similarly, the misbelievers are also found having conventional form of *Nihshankita*, etc. *Angas*; but are not of the same form as are found in a true believer from real point of view.

---

## 25 Blemishes of *Samyag Darshan*

Further, in the discussion of *Samyaktva* (right belief) twenty-five blemishes are described:-

- 8- Doubts, desire etc. faults,
- 8- Arrogance etc. prides,
- 3- Stupidities (follinesses),
- 6- Worthless places (not worth worshipping or visiting).

These blemishes are not found in a true believer. Rarely some fault may be found in a true believer but the right belief is not destroyed totally. There, one should know that in such a state *Samyaktva* gets defiled only. And further.....

(The great *Pandit Shri Todarmaji* could not conclude this 9th chapter and could not complete this book due to untimely end of his life).

• • •

28 Heminches of Samanyu Darshan

further in the discussion of Samanyu Darshan (right belief) twenty-five Heminches are described:

- a) Doubt, desire etc. rajah
- b) Arrogance etc. madha
- c) Stupidities (follyness)
- d) Wordless places (not worth worshipping or visiting)

These Heminches are not found in a true believer. Rarely some truth may be found in a true believer but the right belief is not destroyed totally. There, one should know that in such a state Samanyu Darshan is not destroyed. And further:

The great fault (the Takaran) could not conclude this 9th chapter and could not complete this book due to untimely end of his life.

## Appendix I

# NATURE OF NOBLE PEACEFUL DEATH

(*Samadhimarana Ka Swaroop*)

(by Pt. Gumani Ramji S/o Great Pt. *Todarmaji*)

Oh ! Capable (potential) soul ! Listen ! Now the nature of *Samadhimarana* (peaceful noble death) is being described:-*Samadhi* is the name of the state of passionlessness and serenity. *Samadhimarana* consists in dieing with discriminative knowledge and passionless seren thoughts. In brief this much only is the description of *Samadhimarana*. Detailed description is given ahead.

The natural characteristics of a right-knowledged person is such that he yearns for *Samadhimarana* only. He always harbours this feeling only. In the end, when death is nearer, he becomes alert in the same way as a sleeping lion becomes alert, whom some person challenges : "O ! Lion ! enemies' army is attacking you, make effort and come out of the cave. So long as the enemies' army is away, you should get ready and conquer the army of enemies. It is customary for great personages that they get ready before the enemy becomes alert".

Listening to such words of that person, the lion immediately got up and made such a great roar (howling) as if in the month of *Aashaadha* (July) the Lord *Indra* (celestial chief God) himself might have roared.

Knowing the end of the life nearer the right-knowledged person (enlightened self) becomes alert like a lion and gives up cowardness at once.

### How is a true believer ?

In his heart, the nature of soul appears resplendently manifested. Possessing the light of knowledge, he is full with sapid of bliss. He clearly knows himself only the *Chaitanya Deva* (sentient God) full of infinite imperishable attributes. By virtue of such glory only, he does not have even the slightest attachment in non-self substances.



### **Why is a true Believer Unattached ?**

Why does a true believer not indulge in attachment? He knows himself as knower, seer (perceiver), distinctly separate from non-self substances, eternal and imperishable and knows other substances as well as attachment, etc. (passions) as to be transient/short-lived, non-eternal and distinctly different from one's own nature. Why should a true believer have any fear ? xxx

## Appendix II

# RAHASYA-POORNA CHITTHEE

(A spiritual letter)

(Written by *Achāryakalpa Pt. Todarmalji, Jaipur*)

Situated in the great auspicious town Multan Nagar of all accomplishments, honourable coreligionists brethren deserving various (commendable) titles and possessing deep spiritual interest *Shri Khan Chandji, Gangadharji, Shripalji, Siddharthadasji* and all other coreligionists !

Please accept words of high reverence and prosperity from *Todarmal*.

I am enjoying possible degree of happiness. I pray that you may also evolve natural bliss through self-realisation of *Chaitanya* – the embodiment of knowledge and bliss.

Further, you had written a letter to brother *Shri Ram Singhji Bhuvanidasji*. Other co-religionists conveyed to me the contents of the same from *Jahānābād*.

Dear brother ! person like you alone could raise such questions. In the present time, very few people are found having deep interest in spiritual discussions. Blessed are those who even talk of self-realisation. The same is stated here:

तत्प्रति प्रीतिचित्तेन येन वार्तापि हि श्रुता ।

निश्चितं स भवेद्भव्यो भाविनिर्वाणभाजनम् ॥

— पद्मनन्तिपंचविंशतिका (एकत्वाशीतिः 23)

**Meaning:** The *Jiva* who had even listened to the talk of this sentient-natured soul with joyful mind, he assuredly, is a *Bhavya* (capable potential soul). In a short period of time, he will definitely attain liberation.

According to my knowledge, I am writing answers to the questions raised by you. You should ponder over them and you should continue writing letters containing discussions about soul and scriptures. Meeting face to face may materialise sometimes in future. I urge you to make constant effort for self-realisation.

Now, answers to the questions relating to direct & indirect states of self-realisation are being written as per my understanding. There, first of all I am writing about knowing the nature of self-realisation.

The soul substance (mundane being) is a misbeliever (*Mithyadrishti*) since eternity. There, the false belief is the name of the belief contrary to the nature of self and nonself. And whenever *Tattvartha-Shraddhana* form of right belief of self-nonsel is evolved to any *Jiva* by subsidence, destruction or destruction cum subsidence of *Darshan Moha karma*, then that *Jiva* becomes a true believer. Therefore, in the belief of self and nonself, the real right belief of the form of belief of pure soul is included.

Further, although a *Jiva* does not possess the belief of self-nonsel but possesses belief in *Deva-Guru-Dharma* as described in *Jina's* religion and believes in seven *Tattvas* and does not believe in *Deva* etc. and *Tattvas* etc. stated in other (non-Jaina) faiths, yet by such conventional right belief (*Vyavahara Samyaktva*) only he cannot be called a true believer. Therefore, the *Tattvartha-Shraddhana* which is found along with the discriminative knowledge of the self and nonself alone, is to be known *Samyaktva* (right belief).

Further, on evolution of such right belief, the *Kshayopashama* form of knowledge which, in the state of wrong belief, was functioning through five senses and mind in the form of perverse sensory & scriptural knowledge, the same knowledge has now become true knowledge of the form of right sensory & scriptural knowledge. Whatsoever the true believer knows, all that, is of right knowledge form.

If sometimes he (the true believer) knows the jar-cloths, etc. objects even contrarily, then it is the veiled state of knowledge caused by the rise of knowledge-obscuring *karma*. But whatever *Kshayopashama* (destruction cum subsidence) form of manifested knowledge exists, all that is right knowledge only. Because in such knowing (the objects) he does not grasp the substances in perverse form. So this right knowledge is the part of omniscience. For example, on somewhat disappearance of layer of clouds whatever partial light appears, all that is the part of light.

The knowledge, which is functioning in the form of right sensory knowledge and right scriptural knowledge, by the process of gradual increase, assumes the form of omniscience; from the viewpoint of right knowledge, both are of same category.

Further, the functioning of the dispositions of this true believer is of two types - *Savikalpa* (rambling) & *Nirvikalpa* (non-rambling, fixed). There, that disposition which is engaged in passional acts or in the activities of worship, charity, study of *Shastras* etc. is to be known as *Savikalpa* (rambling, not fixed).

**Question:** How is right belief (*Samyaktva*) found existing when the dispositions indulge (ramble) in auspicious-inauspicious forms?

**Answer:** An accountant of a firm acts on behalf of its owner. He also states such acts to be his own and in this process becomes happy-unhappy also. While performing such activities, he does not think of the separateness of his own identity from that of the owner, but in his inner heart, he entertains the belief that this is not my work. Doing such activities (with such feelings & belief) that accountant is honest. If by stealing the wealth of the owner, he considers such wealth to be his own, then the accountant is a thief. Similarly, the true believer while indulging in auspicious-inauspicious activities & dispositions in the state of the rise of *karmas* might get absorbed in those dispositions, nevertheless, in his inner heart, he entertains such belief that this is not my work. If he believes the bodily activities of observance of vows, continence, etc. also to be his own, then he is a misbeliever. So, such are the *Savikalpa-Parinama* (rambling dispositions).

Now the process of attaining *Nirvikalpa-Parinama* (non-rambling state of thoughts and dispositions) through *Savikalpa* (rambling state of thoughts and dispositions) is being described.

The same true believer sometimes strives for meditating on the nature of the self-soul; there firstly he discriminates between the self and nonself, determines the nature of his soul only as the lighthouse of sentience devoid of *Nokarma* (body etc.), *Dravya-karma* (Karmic matter) and *Bhava-karma* (psychic dispositions); afterwards the thought of nonself objects also disappears; only the thought of the self-soul continues. In such state of thought, he establishes the

feeling of I-ness in the self- nature in various ways. On evolution of such thoughts as - "I am *Chidaananda* (full of sentience & bliss), I am *Shuddha* (pure), I am *Siddha* (liberated) etc., a wave of bliss arises.in natural course, horripilation takes place; thereafter, such thought also disappears and the *Upayoga* gets fully engrossed in the pure conscious nature of the self-soul (*Chinmatra-Swaroopa*). There, all dispositions firmly get concentrated in conscious nature, even the thought of perception, knowledge, etc. and of *Naya-Pramana* etc. disappears.

The sentient nature of the self (*Chaitanya-Swaroopa*) was determined through thought activity (*Savikalpa* state); he engrosses his *Upayoga* in the same with such concentration that the difference between the meditator and the object meditated on disappears. Such a state is called the state of *Nirvikalpa Anubhava* (self-realisation in unwavering state of *Upayoga*). The same is stated in the great book *Naya-Chakra*:

तच्चाणेषणकाले समयं बुञ्जेहि जुत्तिमग्गेण ।  
णो आराइणसमये पच्चक्खोअणुहवो जम्हा ॥ 266 ॥

**Meaning:** First of all one should ascertain the nature of pure soul through *Naya & Pramana* (partial and comprehensive viewpoints) during reflection on *Tatvoas*. Thereafter, during the state of self-realisation, there is no place for *Naya & Pramana*, i.e., there arise no thoughts of *Naya* and *Pramana*; because it is the time for direct self-realisation.

For example, at the time of purchasing the jewels, several thoughts prevail but when we put it on the body then the thought activity stops and only the joy of wearing it is experienced. In this way, the state of *Nirvikalpa-Anubhava* (self-realisation devoid of rambling state of thoughts) is evolved through the thinking process (*Savikalpa* state).

And the knowledge, which was functioning through five senses and mind, the same knowledge, by getting disengaged from all directions, got engrossed in the nature of self-soul only in this *Nirvikalpa-Anubhava* (rambleless state of self-realisation). Because that knowledge is of *Kshayopashama* form (i.e., knowledge evolved



by the destruction cum subsidence state of knowledge-obscuring (*karma*). Therefore, in one unit of time, it knows only one knowable object. When that knowledge got engaged in the nature of the self-soul, then the knowing of other (non-self) objects automatically stopped. There such a state is evolved that although externally there may be various types of disturbances like noise, etc., yet the mediator of the nature of self-soul remains unaware of the same. In this way, the *Mati-Jnāna* (sensory knowledge) got engrossed in the nature of self-soul. And by disappearance of the thoughts of *Nayas* (viewpoints) etc., the *Shruta-Jnāna* (scriptural knowledge) also got engrossed in the nature of self-soul.

Such description is found in *Atma-Khyāti* named commentary of *Samyasara* (*Verse Gathā* No. 144) and in the book *Atmaavalokana* etc. Therefore, *Nirvikalpa-Anubhava* (rambleless state of self-realisation) is called supersensory. Because the role of senses is to be instrumental in knowing touch, taste, smell, colour, words (sound); the same is not found here (in the state of self-realisation); and the role of mind is to be instrumental in various types of thoughts; that also is not here. Therefore, although the same knowledge which was functioning through senses and mind, is functioning now in the state of self-realisation also, nevertheless, this knowledge is called supersensory.

And this *Swaanubhava* (self-realisation) is also termed to have evolved through mind, because in this realisation only *Mati Jnāna* (sensory knowledge) and *Shruta-Jnāna* (scriptural knowledge) are functioning; no other knowledge is found here.

The *Mati & Shruta Jnāna* do not function without the instrumentality of senses and mind. So here (in the state of self-realisation) the senses have no role because the object of senses is material substance only. Here (in self-realisation) the knowledge is functioning through the mind because the object of mind is immaterial substance also. Here, the knowledge functioning through the mind and getting engrossed in the nature of self-soul, is absolved from other thoughts. Therefore, this (self-realisation) is stated to be functioning through the mind. “एकाग्रचिन्तानिरोधो ध्यानम्” i.e., concentration of thought on one particular object, by turning it away

from several objects, is meditation; such differentia of meditation also is possible in this state of self-realisation.

Further, it is stated in the following verse of *Samyasara Natak*:

वस्तु विचारत ध्यावतँ मन पावै विश्राम ।  
रस-स्वादत सुख रूपजै, अनुभव याकौ नाम ॥

**Meaning:** On meditating upon the nature of the substance the mind gets rest (i.e., *Upayoga* gets relaxed after ascertainment of the self-substance) and by engrossment of *Upayoga* in the self-soul, spiritual bliss is experienced. Such a state is called the state of self-realisation.

In this way, the engrossment of *Upayoga* in the nature of self-soul is not without the instrumentality of mind. Hence, *Swaanubhava* (self-realisation) is also said to have generated through mind. Thus, there is no contradiction in stating self-realisation to be *Ateendriya*, supersensory, or to be generated through mind. The difference lies in the viewpoints.

Further, you wrote that "The soul is *Ateendriya* (supersensory), therefore, it can be realised by supersensory means only". But the mind is instrumental in knowing the immaterial substances also, because the object of *Mati-Shrut Jnana* is stated to be all (material & immaterial) substances. The same is stated in *Tattvarthasutra* also:

“मतिश्रुतयोर्निबन्धो द्रव्येष्वसर्वपर्यायेषु” (1/26)

i.e., the range of sensory knowledge and scriptural knowledge extends to all the six substances but not to all their modes.

Further, you have raised the question of *Pratyaksha* (direct) and *Paroksha* (indirect) in context with right belief. But direct and indirect are not the kinds of *Samyaktva* (right belief) In fourth *Gunasthana*, *Kshayika Samyaktva* (destruction type of right belief) similar to that of *Siddha* (liberated soul) can be evolved, therefore, *Samyaktva* is only of right belief form. That *Jiva* can be found even indulging in auspicious-inauspicious acts. Hence your statement that the *Nishchaya Samyaktva* (real right belief) is *Pratyaksha* (direct) and *Vyavahara Samyaktva* (conventional right belief) is *Paroksha* (indirect), is not correct. *Samyaktva* is of three kinds: there *Upashama Samyaktva*

(subsidential type of right belief) and *Kshayika Samyaktva* (destruction type of right belief) both are pure (free from any impurity) because they are devoid of the rise of *Mithyatva* (faith-deluding *karma*) and the *Kshayopashama Samyaktva* is having some blemish because it is found with the rise of *Samyaktva-Mohaniya*. But there are no *Pratyaksha* (direct) & *Paroksha* (indirect) kinds of *Samyaktva*.

Whether a true believer having *Kshayika Samyaktva* is found indulging in auspicious-inauspicious acts or is engrossed in self-realisation, the quality of right belief in both the states is the same. Therefore, it should be known that the direct-indirect are not the kinds of *Samyagdarshan* (right belief).

Further, the direct-indirect (*Pratyaksha-Paroksha*) are the kinds of *Pramana* (comprehensive knowledge) and *Pramana* is right knowledge. Hence *Mati-Jnāna* & *Shruta-Jnāna* are *Paroksha Pramana* (indirect comprehensive knowledges; *Avadhi* (clairvoyance), *Manah Paryaya* (telepathy) and *Kewal-Jnan* (omniscience) are *Pratyaksha-Pramana* (direct comprehensive knowledges) “आद्ये परोक्षम् । प्रत्यक्षमन्यत् ।” (तत्त्वार्थसूत्र 1/11-12). This is the statement in *Tattvarthasutra*. And in books of logic “स्पष्टप्रतिभासात्मकं प्रत्यक्षमस्पष्टं परोक्षम् ।” such differentia of direct (*Pratyaksha*) and indirect (*Paroksha*) is described.

That knowledge which knows its object (knowable) clearly well in its true form, is direct (*Pratyaksha*) and that which does not know its object clearly well, is indirect (*Paroksha*). There the range of objects (knowables) of sensory knowledge and scriptural knowledge are many but they cannot know even one knowable fully. Therefore, these are called indirect knowledges and the objects (knowables) of *Avadhi Jnāna* (clairvoyance) and *Manah Paryaya Jnān* (telepathy).are less, nevertheless, each one knows its object clearly well; hence, both are *Desha-Pratyaksha* (partially direct) and *Kewal-Jnāna* (omniscience) knows all knowables independently and clearly; therefore, it is *Sarva-Pratyaksha* (fully direct).

The direct (*Pratyaksha*) knowledge is of two kinds: (i) *Paramartha Pratyaksha* (Independent direct knowledge) and (ii) *Sāmvyavaharika Pratyaksha* (Dependent direct knowledge).

There *Avadhi* (clairvoyance), *Manah Paryaya* (telepathy) and *Kewal Jnana* (omniscience) know their objects independently clearly. Therefore, those are *Pārmārthika Pratyaksha* (independent direct knowledge). And colours, etc. are known through eyes, etc.; there, it is stated conventionally that “He knew colours, etc. directly”. Here partial clarity is also found. Therefore, these are called *Sāmvyavaharika-Pratyaksha*; but if an object has different mixed colours, then those are not known clearly by the eyes; that is why, such knowledge is not called *Parmārtha-Pratyaksha* (independent direct knowledge).

Further, the *Paroksha Pramana* (indirect comprehensive knowledge) is of five kinds:-

1. *Smriti* (Remembrance)
2. *Pratyabhijnana* (Recognition)
3. *Tarka* (Logic)
4. *Anumana* (Inference) and
5. *Āgama* (Knowledge of scriptures).

There, knowing that object through remembrance which was known earlier, is *Smriti* (Remembrance).

Recognizing an object by illustration is *Pratyabhi-jnāna* (Recognition).

The knowledge evolved through cause and effect relationship is *Tarka* (logic).

The knowledge of an object deduced from its cause is *Anumāna* (inference).

The knowledge derived through scriptures (*Āgama*) is *Āgama*.

Such are the kinds of *Pratyaksha-Paroksha Pramana* (direct-indirect knowledge of a substance).

In this state of self-realisation, the soul is known through *Shruta-Jnāna* (scriptural knowledge) The evolution of *Shruta-Jnāna* is preceded by *Mati-Jnāna* (sensory knowledge) only. Both *Mati-Jnāna* and *Shruta-Jnāna* are *Paroksha* (indirect knowledges). Hence, here the knowledge of soul is not *Pratyaksha* (direct). Further, the object



of *Avadhi* (clairvoyance) and *Manah-Paryaya-Jnāna* (telepathy) is material substance only and the *Kewalā-Jnāna* (omniscience) is not possessed of by the *Chhadmastha* (non-omniscients). Therefore, in the state of self-realisation, the soul is not known by *Avadhi*, *Manah-Paryaya* and *Kewal-Jnāna*. And here the soul is not known clearly well. Therefore, fully independent direct knowledge (*Pārmārthika-Pratyakshapana*) is in no way possible here.

Further, as we know the colours, etc. through eyes., similarly, the soul's innumerable *Pradeshas* (spatial units) etc. are not known even with partial clarity; hence conventional independent direct knowledge (*Samvyavaharika-Pratyakshapana*) is also not possible here.

Here the soul is realised through scripture - inference, etc. types of indirect knowledge. By knowing the true nature of soul as described in *Jaina* scripture, he engrosses his *Upayoga* in it; therefore, *Āgama* (knowledge derived from scriptures) is called *Paroksha Pramāna*. Or "I am soul only because I am embodiment of knowledge. Wherever there is knowledge, there is soul (*Ātma*) as are *Siddhas* (liberated souls) etc. and where there is no soul, knowledge is also not there, as in the case of dead body (carcass) etc." In this way, by ascertaining the soul-substance through inference (*Anumāna*) he engrosses his *Upayoga* in it. Therefore, inference (*Anumāna*) is called *Paroksha Pramāna*. Or the soul-substance which is known through scripture - inference, etc., by remembering the same, he engrosses his *Upayoga* in it. So it is called *Smriti*. Thus in various ways in the state of self-realisation, the soul is known through *Paroksha Pramāna* (indirect knowledge) only. There, first the soul is known (as it is), thereafter, the *Upayoga* gets engrossed in the same nature of the self-soul. Nothing special is known in the state of engrossment of *Upayoga* in the self-soul.

**Question:** If there is nothing special in the process of knowing in *Nirvikalpa* state as compared to *Savikalpa* state then how is more happiness generated?

**Answer:** One speciality is this that in *Savikalpa* state (rambling state of *Upayoga*) the knowledge was engaged in knowing several knowables, whereas in *Nirvikalpa* state (rainblemless state of *Upayoga* or concentration of thoughts) the knowledge (*Upayoga*) remains



engrossed in knowing the soul only. The second speciality is this that the *Upayoga* which used to ramble in different thoughts, the same *Upayoga* is now engrossed in the nature of self-soul by merging its identity in it.

On evolution of such specialities, some such inexpressible unique bliss is experienced of which even a minutest part is not experienced in enjoying carnal pleasures; therefore, that bliss is called supersensory (*Atteendriya*).

**Question:** Even if in the state of self-realisation, the soul remains *Paroksha* (indirectly known) only, then how is self-realisation described in the books to be *Pratyaksha* (directly known)? In the earlier quoted verse also, it is stated that 'पचखो अणुहवो, जम्हा', how is it so?

**Answer:** In the state of self-realisation, the soul is *Paroksha* (known indirectly) only, the soul's *Pradeshas* (spatial units) and shape are not visible, but by engrossment of *Upayoga* in the nature of the self-soul, the self-realisation, which is evolved, is called direct self-realisation (*Swaanubhava Pratyaksha*). The true believer does not know the taste of self-realisation by *Āgama-Anumana* etc. *Proksha Pramāna* (scripture-inference etc. form of indirect knowledge), rather he himself experiences the taste of self-realisation. For example, some blind person experiences the taste of sugarcandy; there, the shape, etc. of sugarcandy are *Paroksha* (indirect or not visible) but the taste experienced through the tongue is *Pratyaksha* (direct); similarly, in the state of self-realisation the soul is *Paroksha* (indirect or not visible) but the taste experienced through pure dispositions is *Pratyaksha* (direct).

Or that which is like *Pratyaksha* (direct) only, is also called *Pratyaksha* (direct). For example, people say- "We saw directly a particular person in dream or in meditation". There, in fact, nothing is seen directly, but identical to direct, we really saw like *Pratyaksha* (directly seen); therefore, it is said to be *Pratyaksha*. Similarly, in the state of self-realisation, the soul is really known like *Pratyaksha*; therefore, by this logic if we say that soul also is known directly, then there is no fault. The statements are made in different ways; however, the statements should be understood in such a way that

the point of view of *Āgama* (aetiology scripture) and *Adhyatma* (metaphysics) is not contradicted.

**Question:** Such realisation (*Anubhava*) is evolved in which *Gunasthana* (stage of spiritual development)?

**Answer:** It evolves even in fourth *Gunasthana* itself, but in the fourth *Gunasthana* it occurs again after long interval of time and in higher *Gunasthanas* it occurs with lesser interval of time.

**Question:** The self-realisation is *Nirvikalpa* (rambleless concentration of thoughts - *Upayoga*), what difference lies in self-realisation with respect to higher and lower *Gunasthana*?

**Answer:** The difference lies in the degrees of engrossment of *Upayoga*. For example, two persons are chanting the name (of *Arhanta* God, etc., say) and the thoughts of both are engaged in chanting the name, but greater concentration may be found in the case of one and lesser in the case of other. Similarly, one should know here also.

**Question:** It is stated that there is no *Vikalpa* (rambling of thoughts) in the state of *Nirvikalpa-Anubhava* (rambleless self-realisation), but first type of *Shukla Dhyāna* the state of pure concentration found in true monks prior to attainment of omniscience) is stated to be *Prathaktva*<sup>1</sup>-*Vitārka*<sup>2</sup>-*Vichāra*<sup>3</sup> (different<sup>1</sup>-scriptural<sup>2</sup> knowledge - shifting<sup>3</sup> of *Upayoga*) and *Prathaktva-Vitarka* means shifting of knowledge from one object to another or shifting of thoughts with regard to objects, words and activities. How is it so?

**Answer:** The statement is of two types - one is in the general (gross) form and other is in specific (minute) form. For example, from general point of view, the vow of complete celibacy is stated to be evolved even in the sixth *Gunasthana* and from specific (minute) point of view, the *Maithuna Sanjnaa* (feeling or desire of coition) is stated to be present upto the ninth *Gunasthana*; similarly, here in the state of self-realisation rambleless state of thoughts, *Nirvikalpa*, is described from the general point of view. And from the specific (minute) point of view *Prathaktva-Vitarka-Vichara* etc. (shifting of *Upayoga* etc.) and passions or emotional feelings, etc. are stated to be present upto the tenth *Gunasthana*. There, the statement of such dispositions, which is known by self and by others, should be known

from general (gross) point of view and the statement of such dispositions, which even himself does not know and only the omniscient knows, should be known from minute (specific) point of view. In *Charannuyoga* (ethics) etc. the prominence is that of general (gross form of ) statement and in *Karananuyoga* (aetiology) the prominence is that of specific (minute) statement. One should know such difference elsewhere also.

Thus, one should know the differentia of *Nirvikalpa Anubhava* (rambleless self-realisation).

Further, you have written three examples and a question based on them. But the example is not applicable in all respects. The example specifies one particular purpose, so here the second-day moon, water drop and a particle of fire (an ember) - these are parts only, and the full moon of plenilunar day, the ocean and fire-pit - these are complete forms. Similarly, in the fourth *Gunasthana*, the attributes of soul like knowledge, etc. have manifested partially; in the thirteenth *Gunasthana* (in *Arhanta* state) the attributes of soul like knowledge, etc. are fully manifested. And from quality point of view, the class of examples is one and the same. Similarly, from the quality point of view, the category of attributes manifested in the state of vowless right believer and those manifested in the thirteenth *Gunasthana* is one and the same.

Further, your question was that - "If the class is one, then even the true believer of fourth *Gunasthana* might be knowing the soul directly as the omniscient (*Kewali*) knows directly all the knowables?"

**Answer:** One category is not from the point of view of directness, but it is from the point of view of *Samyag-jnāna* – right knowledge. The true believer of fourth *Gunasthana* possesses right knowledge of the form of *Mati & Shruta-jnāna* whereas in the thirteenth *Gunasthana* the right knowledge is of the form of omniscience. Further, the difference between "Partial" and "Full" is only this much that the possessor of *Mati-Shruta-jnāna* (true sensory & scriptural knowledge) knows somewhat successively, one after the other, the immaterial substance indirectly and even the material substance directly as well as indirectly; and the possessor of omniscience knows all substances wholly and simultaneously; the possessor of *Mati-*

*Shrutajnana* knows; indirectly (*Paroksha*) whereas the omniscient knows directly (*Pratyaksha*), only this much difference is there. And if the category be described to be the same in all respects, then it should be stated that as the omniscient (*Kewali*) knows indirectly (*Paroksha*) whereas the omniscient knows directly ramblelessly and simultaneously the purposeless knowables, similarly, he (the true believer of fourth *Gunasthana*) too would know; but this is not so. Therefore, one should know the difference between direct and indirect (*Pratyaksha* and *Paroksha*).

In *Ashta Sahasree* also it is stated thus:-

स्याद्वादकेवलज्ञाने, सर्वतत्त्वप्रकाशने ।

भेद साक्षादसाक्षाच्च, ह्यवस्त्वन्यतमं भवेत् ॥ 105 ॥

— (अष्टसहस्री, दशमः परिच्छेदः)

**Meaning:** *Syadwad*, i.e., *Shrutajnana* (scriptural knowledge) and *Kewal Jnāna* (omniscience) - both are the illuminators of all kinds of *Tattvas* (substances with their attributes and modifications). The speciality is only this much that *Kewal Jnāna* (omniscience) is *Pratyaksha* (direct) and *Shruta Jnāna* (scriptural knowledge) is *Paroksha* (indirect); but the substance remains the same, does not convert into the other.

Further, whatever you have written to be the differentia of *Nishchaya-Samyaktva* (real right belief) and *Vyavahara Samyaktva* (conventional right belief) is true but this much should be known that in the case of a true believer, the internal real right belief is always existent in conventional right belief and at other times too; it is always in active form.

Further, your question is that- "Some coreligionist has raised a query that if the true believer knows the soul directly (*Pratyaksha*) then why would he not know the *Karma-Vargana* (karmic matter) directly?

The answer is that the soul is known directly by the *Kewali* (omniscient) only, whereas the *Karma-Vargana* is known by a clairvoyant also.



Further, you have stated that the soul's *Pradeshas* (spatial units) should be stated to be partially open similar to the moon of second-day?

**Answer:** This example is not from the point of view of *Pradeshas* (spatial units); this example is from the point of view of attributes.

Whatever questions you have raised about *Pratyaksha-Apratyaksha* (direct-indirect knowing process) etc. with respect to right belief (*Samyaktva*) and self-realisation, I have tried to answer the same as per my knowledge; you should also check the same from *Jinavani* (omniscients' preachings) and from your own understanding and knowledge.

How much to write ! That which is known cannot be fully written; on meeting face to face, further discussion is possible; but meeting depends on destiny; hence, benefit lies in continuously making effort for realisation of the sentient nature of the (self) soul.

In the present times *Adhyātma-Tattva* (spiritual reality or truth) is in the *Atma-Khyāti*, the Sanskrit commentary written by Amrit Chandra Acharya on *Samyasara* book and the discussion of *Āgama* (aetiology) is in *Gommatasara* and also in other books.

All that is known cannot be put into words; therefore, you too should keep yourself engaged in the study of *Adhyātma* (metaphysics) and *Āgama* (aetiology) books and keep engrossed in the bliss of self-soul.

And if you have come across some other special books, please write to me about the same. The coreligionists need to have mutual discussions. And I do not possess great intelligence but it is a great thing that I have an occasion for mutual exchange of ideas with brethren like you.

So long as meeting does not materialise till then please continue writing the letters. Dated *Fagun Badi 5, Vikram year 1811*. (March.....,1755 A.D.).

\* The End \*

---



# GLOSSARY

## "A"

- Abhavya (Incapable to attain liberation, an incapable soul)
- Abhisheka (Anointing ceremony)
- Abrahma (Incontinence, coition, unchastity)
- Adharma (Sinful act, vice, irreligion)
- Adharma-dravya (The medium of rest, anti-ether substance)
- Adhah-karana (Beginning of the process of self-meditation through which the soul attains to some degree of purity leading to self-realisation – samyagdarshan)
- Adho-loka (The lower world, the hells where infernal beings live)
- Advaita (Non-dual, the monistic school of Vedanta)
- Aghatia/Aghati (Non-obscuring *karmas* which are the cause of embodiment and surrounding conditions)
- Ahimsa/Ahinsa (Non-harming, non-injury, non-violence)
- Ajiva (Insentient, non-soul substances)
- Ajnana (Ignorance, false knowledge, lack of knowledge)
- Akama-nirjara (Involuntary dissociation of *karmas*)
- Akashaya (Free from passion or desire)
- Amudha-drshti (Free from superstitions & delusory notions)
- Amurta (Immaterial substances, non-matter)
- Ananta-darshan (Infinite perception)
- Ananta-jnana (Infinite knowledge)
- Ananta-sukha (Infinite bliss)
- Ananta-virya (Infinite spiritual power)
- Anantanubandhi Kashaya (Intensest type of passion causing infinite bondage)
- Anashana (Fasting)
- Anga (Limb, a group of 12 Jaina canonical texts)
- Anga-prakirnaka (Group of 12 Jaina canonical texts)
- Anivratti-karana (The process of self-meditation through which the soul attains right belief or self-realisation by suppressing certain *Mohaniya Karmas*)
- Antaraya-karma (Obstructing *karma* which restricts the energy – quality of the soul)

Antar-muhurta (A period of upto or within 48 minutes)

Anu (Atom)

Anubhaga, Anubhava (Fruition or intensity of *karma*)

Anubhaga-kandaka (Reduction in fruition of previously bonded *karmas* by one-one *Antarmuhurta*)

Anukampa (Compassion)

Anumana (Inference, deduced)

Anumodana (Approving some act being done by others)

Anupreksha (Reflection, contemplations of 12 kinds)

Anuvratas (Minor or small vows pertaining to householders)

Anuyoga (Exposition, a group of four canonical texts)

Aparigraha (Non-possession)

Apoorva-karana (The process of self-meditation through which the soul attains to an unprecedented degree of purity)

Apramatta-virata (7th Gunasthana - meditation state of a monk in which his contentment is not fouled by carelessness).

Apratyakhyavarana (Passions which hinder partial conduct)

Arhanta, Arhat (Worthy of worship, omniscient Lord)

Arati (Disliking or displeasure in regard to sense activities)

Ardha-Pudgal-Paravartan-kala (Half of the time of the cycle of wanderings with reference to *karmic* matter taken in and cast off infinite times)

Arupi (Immaterial substances)

Asamjni (Without mind, irrational beings not endowed with faculty of reasoning)

Asamyama (Non-restraint, incontinence)

Asata, Asata vedniya (Unpleasant feeling producing *karma*)

Ashubha (Inauspicious, evil)

Ashubhopayoga (Inauspicious thought activity, 'upayoga' engaged in impious acts)

Ashuchi (Impurity)

Ashuddhopayoga (Impure thought activity causing inflow of *karmas*)

Atichara (Infraction committed by accident)

Atman, Atma (Soul, self)

Atmanubhava (State of self-realisation, 'upayoga' engrossed in self-soul or abiding in one's own nature)

Audayika Bhavas (Dispositions arising from fruition of *Karmas*)

---

Aupadhika (Imposed dispositions, unnatural functioning due to rise of *karmas*)

Aupashamika Bhava (Subsidential right belief and disposition)

Avadhi-darshan (Clairvoyance perception, indistinct awareness preceding *Avadhi-jnana*)

Avadhi-jnana (Clairvoyance)

Avagaha (Providing accommodation)

Avagraha (Mere awareness of an object)

Avasarpini Kala (Descending cycle of time)

Avtara (Incarnation, rebirth)

Avaya (Perceptual judgement)

Avirati (Non-abstinence)

Avrata (Non-vow, vowless state)

Acharana (Conduct, behaviour)

Acharya (Chief preceptor, Head of monks' group)

Agama (Scripture, canonical literature, omniscient's preachings)

Akasha (Space substance)

Akinchanya (Non-attachment, possessionlessness)

Asrava (Influx of *karmic* matter)

Arambha (Commencement)

Arjava (Straightforwardness)

Artadhyana (Sorrowful concentration)

Aryika (Nuns of Digambara sect)

Avarana (Covering or veil)

Avali (Twinkling of an eye)

Ayu (Life *karma* that determines the span of a given life-time)

## **"B"**

Bandha (*Karmic* bondage, 4 types of bondage)

Bhagwana (Venerable, omniscient God)

Bhakti (Devotion, devotionism)

Bhava (Dispositional, internal thoughts, psychic)

Bhavanavasi Devas (Residential gods)

Bhava parivartana (Cycle of incarnation, i.e., wandering repeatedly in all states of embodied existence)

Bhavya (A self with capacity for liberation, capable soul)

Bhavalangi (A true possessionless naked Digamber Jain monk with right belief-knowledge and conduct)

Bhavamana (Psychical mind)

Bhavana (Observance or contemplations)

Bhava Nikshepa (Installation by actual state)

Bhava Parivartana (Cycle of thought, i.e., wandering repeatedly in different pious-impious thought activities from their minimum to maximum degrees of intensity)

Bhavasamvara (Psychic stoppage)

Bhoga (Enjoyment, experience)

Bhogabhumi (Land or realm of enjoyment)

Brahmachari (celibate, one who observes the vow of celibacy)

Brahma (Creator of universe as per Vaidik culture)

Brahmana (Priest, priestly caste)

## "C"

Chaitanya (Consciousness, sentience)

Chaitya (Jina's idol, *Pratima*)

Chaityalaya (Temple where Jina's idol is installed for worship & adoration)

Chakravarti (y) (Universal monarch, king of kings)

Chakshu (Sense of sight)

Chakshudarshan (Visual perception)

Charananuyoga (Ethics, scriptures dealing with the conventional conduct of householders and monks)

Chaturindriya (Four-sensed being having sense of touch, taste, smell, vision, i.e. touch, tongue, nose, eyes)

Chandala (Untouchable person)

Charitra (Conduct)

Charitra-mohaniya (Conduct deluding *karmas*)

Chhadmastha (Non-omniscient beings)

## "D"

Dana (Charity, alms-giving)

Dana-antaraya (A type of obstructing *karma* which hinders charity)

Darshan (Perception, insight, philosophy, belief of faith)

---

- Darshan-moha/Darshan-mohaniya (Faith or insight deluding *karma*)
- Darshan-Pratima (First *Pratima* or vow related with right belief)
- Darshanavarana/Darshanavarni (Perception-obscuring *karmas*)
- Darshan-Vishuddhi (Purity of right faith)
- Dasa Dharma (Ten characteristics of religion)
- Désa-Charitra (Partial conduct related with small vows)
- Désa-Ghati (Obscuring partially)
- Désa-Ghati Spardhaka (*Karmic* matter which obscures only partially)
- Deshana Labdhi (Attainment of omniscient's preachings)
- Desha Virata (The 5th *Gunasthana* where partial continence with partial renunciations is found)
- Deva (Celestial being, god)
- Deva-Mudhata (Delusion pertaining to gods)
- Dharma (Religion, duty, pious & pure thought activities, virtue, non-violence, righteousness)
- Dharma Dhyana (Virtuous concentration, pious meditation)
- Dharma Tirtha (Holy path, liberation path)
- Dhyana (Meditation)
- Digambara (Sky-clad, possessionless naked Jain monk)
- Diksha Initiation, vow of renunciation)
- Divya-dhwani (Miraculous divine sound forming omniscient's preachings)
- Dravya (Substance)
- Dravya-mana (Material physical, mind, an internal sense which acts as an instrumental cause in thinking)
- Dravya-Nikshépa (Installation by substance)
- Dravyendriya (Physical sense)
- Dveendriya (Two-sensed being having, sense of touch & taste)
- Dvesha (Aversion, hatred-feeling, disliking)
- Dvipa (Island)
- Dvipa-Samudra (Island-continent surrounded by sea)

**"E"**

- Eka (One, unitary)
- Eka-kshetravagaha (Occupying the same space points or locus)
- Ekanta (One-sided)



Ekantavada (Absolutist doctrine)

Ekatva (Unity)

Ekendriya (One-sensed being having sense of touch only, a synonym for *sthavara* - immobile beings)

Eshana-samiti (Carefulness in taking food)

Evambhuta-naya (The actual standpoint)

## "G"

Gana (Congregation of monks)

Ganadhara (Chief acharya monk who possesses four types of knowledges and composes scriptures from the preachings of omniscient *Tirthankara*; first monk disciple of *Tirthankara*)

Garbha (Uterine birth; conception)

Gati (Birth, condition of existence, transit from one body to another, destiny)

Ghati, Ghatia karma (Obscuring *karmas*)

Ghrana (Sense of smell)

Gotra (High or low family status determining *karma*)

Grantha (Book, scriptures, possessions, attachment)

Guna (Quality)

Gunahani (Decreasing series)

Gunasthana (Stage of spiritual development)

Gunashréni (In multiplying order)

Gunavraddhi (Increasing series)

Gupti (Control, restraint)

Guru (Preceptor monk)

## "H"

Hasya (Laughter)

Himsa (Injury, violence, harming)

Hundavasarpini (A period of 'avasarpini' i.e., period of downfall in which extraordinary events may take place)

## "I"

Indra - Lord of Devas (Celestial beings)

Indriya (Sense organ)

Indriya paryapti (Completion of senses)

Iha (Speculation)

Irya-patha (Influx of *karmas* caused by vibrations without passions)

Irya-samiti (Carefulness in walking so that no insect or being is harmed)

Ishat-kashayaṣ (Quasi-passions, 9 types - laughter, liking, disliking, sorrow, fear, disgust and 3 types of sex inclinations).

Ishwara (God)

## "J"

Jainabhasa (False Jainas, so-called Jainas)

Jain, Jaina (Follower of Jina, one who has '*samyak-darshan*')

Jati (Genus of beings, caste)

Jati-karma (The variety of *Namakarma* that determines one's genus)

Jina (The victor, conqueror; a synonym for *Tirthankara*)

Jina-dharma (Jain's religion, i.e., religion preached by Jina)

Jina-agam (Jaina scripture)

Jina-bimb (Image of a Jina)

Jiva (Soul, sentient, being)

Jivatva (Consciousness, principle of life)

Jnana (Knowledge)

Jnana chetana (Consciousness, realising consciousness only to be the self)

Jnanavarana karma (Knowledge-obscuring *karma*)

Jugupsa (Disgust, a type of quasi-passion)

Jyotishi devas (Stellar celestial beings)

## "K"

Kala (Time, *katanu*—the time substance)

Kala-parivartana (The cycle of time, i.e. wandering repeatedly in all moments of all aeons by taking birth and dying infinite times)

Kalpa (Cycle of 2 aeons, celestial abodes below the *graiveyakas* heavens)

Kalpatita (Heavenly beings born beyond the *kalpas*)

Kalyanaka (Auspicious moments or occasions)

Karma (Fine particles of matter called "*karman-vargana*" that bind the soul; action, act)

Karma-bhumi (Land or realm of action)

Karma-chetana (Knowing oneself to be the doer of actions)

Karman sharira (The transmigrating body of *karmic* matter bonded with mundane beings)

Karma-phala-chetana (Knowing oneself to be the enjoyer of *karmic* fruits)

Karma-prakriti (The particular type of *karmic* matter)

Karta (Doer, agent, instrumental)

Kasaya (Passions – anger, pride, deceit, greed)

Kavala-ahara (Food in morsels, human food)

\* \* Kaya-kléshta (Mortification of the body)

Kapota-leshya (Grey, dove coloured thought complexions)

Karan (Thoughts, degrees of purity of thoughts, means mathematical exposition, case)

Karana (Cause, instrumental or substantial)

Karita (Getting a thing done by others)

\* Karman-sharira (*Karmic* matter body bonded with soul)

Karman-Vargana (Molecules of *karmic* matter which fill the universe)

Karya (Effect)

Kaya (Body)

\*\* Kaya-kléshta (Mortification of body)

Kayotsarga (Abandonment of attachment with body, standing or sitting posture of meditation)

Késhta-locha (Pulling out one's hair of head & beard)

Kevala-darshana (Omni-perception associated with *Kevala-Jnana* – omniscience)

Kevala-jnana (Omniscience)

Kevali (Omniscient 'Jina')

Kriyas (Actions, sacred rites)

Krodha (Anger)

Krashna-Leshya (Block thought complexion)

Krata (Performed by oneself)

Kshapak (The destroyer of delusion)

Kshapak-shrëni (Ladder of destruction of *karmas*)

Kshaya (Destruction of *karmas*)

Kshayika-Bhava (Pure dispositions evolved on destruction of *karmas*)

Kshayopashamik-Bhava (Dispositions evolved on destruction cum-subsidence of *karmas*)

Kshetra (Region, space, area)

Kshetra-Parivartana (The cycle of space i.e. wandering infinite times by taking birth and dying on all space points of this universe sequentially)

Kshayopashama Labdhi (Attainment of knowledge or purity in destruction cum subsidence of certain *karms*)

Kshina Moha (The monk of 12th *Gunasthana* whose all *charitra mohaniya karmas* and passions are destroyed permanently for ever)

Kshina and passion are destroyed permanently for ever)

Kula (Family, lineage)

## "L"

Labdhi (Attainment, psychic sense)

Lakshana (Differentia)

Laukantika Devas (Celestial saints, gods of 5th heaven)

Labhantaraya (Obstructive *karma* of gain, i.e., hindrance to the attainment of something)

Léshya (Thought complexion, degrees of passions & purity)

Linga (Sex, sign)

Lobha (Greed)

Loka (Universe)

Loka-akash (The universe-space)

Loka-mudhata (False beliefs regarding religious practices)

## "M"

Madhu (Honey)

Madhyaloka (Middle of terrestrial world)

Madya (Alcohol)

Madhyastha (Indifference)

Mahavrata (The five great vows of a monk)

Manahpariyaya jnana (Telepathy, direct knowledge of thought forms of others without the aid of mind or senses)

Mantra (Incantation, holy litany)

Manushya (Human being)

Manushya-Gati (Human state of existence)

Mati jnana (Sensory knowledge)

Marga (Path)

Maya (Deceitfulness)

Meru (Mount, sudarshan meru)

Mishra-bhava (Mixed state or disposition)

Mishra-Gunasthana (Mixed spiritual stage of right and wrong belief, 3rd *Gunasthana*)

Mithyadarshana (Wrong belief, misbelief, wrongfaith, synonym for *Mithyatva*)

Mithya-charitra (Wrong conduct)

Mithya-jnana (Wrong knowledge)

Mithyatva (Misbelief)

Mithyatva Gunasthana (The 1st spiritual stage of misbelief)

Moha (Delusion, infatuation)

Mohaniya karma (Deluding *karma*)

Moksha (Liberation, emancipation, salvation)

Moksha Marga (The path of liberation)

Muhurta (48 minutes' period)

Mukta (Liberated soul)

Mulguna (The eight basic restraints of a Jaina layman)

Muni (A monk)

Murta (Material, of matter form)

## "N"

Naraka (Infernal abode, hell)

Naya (Standpoint)

Nama-karma (Physique-making *karma*)

Namaskar-mantra (Salutation to (five) holy beings (souls))

Nama Nikshépa (Installation by name)

Narakas (Infernal beings)

Nidana (Diagnosis, seeking temporal gain from austerities, etc. good deeds)

Nidana-salya (The sting of desire for enjoyment)

Nigoda (The lowest form of life i.e., undeveloped one-sensed beings, e.g. moss, fungus, roots, etc.)

Nihkankshita (Freedom from anticipation)

Nihshankita (Freedom from doubt about 7 *tattvas*, true God, preceptor, scriptures, etc.)

Nimitta-karana (Instrumental cause, external agent)

Nimitta-naimittika (Cause and effect relationship)

Nikshépa (Installation)

Nirdésa (Description)

Nirgrantha (A monk without material possessions, unattached)



Nirjara (Dissociation of karmas)

Nirvana (Salvation, complete release from bondage)

Nirvichikitsa (Freedom from disgust)

Nishchaya Naya (The real point of view, realistic standpoint)

Nitya (Eternal)

Nokashayas (Quasi-passions)

## "O"

'Om' (A synonym for five holy souls, sacred sound formed by combining the first syllable of each word in the *namaskar-mantra*)

## "P"

Padartha (Substances, category, elements)

Palya, Palyopama (Many many years period, innumerable years, a measure of max. lifetime)

Papa (Vice, sin, inauspicious act, demerit)

Papa-bhava (Inauspicious dispositions)

Paramanu (An indivisible particle of matter, matter substance)

Para-dravya<sup>1</sup>/kshetra<sup>2</sup>/-kala<sup>3</sup>/-bhava<sup>4</sup> (The being or substance<sup>1</sup>, location or space<sup>2</sup>, time or state<sup>3</sup>, quality of disposition<sup>4</sup> respectively of other objects or substances)

Paramatma (The omniscient, the liberated soul)

Parameshthi (The five supreme souls — *Arhant, Siddha, Acharya, Upadhyaya & Sadhu*)

Parigraha (Possession)

Pariksha (Examination)

Parinama (Thought activity, disposition, change or modification)

Parivartana (Cycle of wanderings)

Parishaha (Afflictions)

Parishaha-jaya (Victory over the afflictions)

Paroksha (Indirect or dependent knowledge accomplished through senses, inference, etc.)

Parva (Holy days meant for specific religious observances)

Paryapta (Attained completion)

Paryapti (Completion or development)

Paryaya (mode, state, modification, condition, state of existence)

- Paryayarthika (Relating to modifications)  
Paryayarthika-Naya (Standpoint of mode)  
Parinamika-bhava (Inherent nature)  
Pichchhi (A peacock feather whiskbroom)  
Prabhavana (Propagation of the teachinga of Jina)  
Pradésa (Space point)  
Pradésa-bandha (Space bondage relating to quantity of *karmas* bonded)  
Prakriti-bandha (Type-bondage relating to quality of *karmas* bonded)  
Pramada Negligence or carelessness)  
Pramana (Valid or comprehensive knowledge)  
Pramatta-Samyata (The ascetic of the sixth spiritual stage)  
Pranayama (Yogic control of respiration)  
Prathamopashama Samyaktva (First type of subsidential right-belief)  
Prashama (Serene, tranquil)  
Pratikramana (Repentance with confession)  
Pratima (Householder's stages of renunciation)  
Pratyabhijnana (Recognition)  
Pratyaksha (Direct knowledge)  
Pratyakhyana (Renunciation of certain foods, indulgences or activities for a specified period)  
Pratyakhyanavarana/niya (The passions which hinder and disturb complete restraint)  
Pravachana (The scriptures, discourses on omniscient's preachings)  
Prana (Vitality or life principle)  
Prayaschitta (Expiation, repentance of transgressions)  
Prathivi (Earth)  
Prathivi-kayika (Earth bodies i.e. *jivas* having earth as their body)  
Pudgala (Matter substance, atoms)  
Puja (Worship)  
Punya (Merit, pious act, virtue, auspicious act or *karma*)  
Punya-bhava (Auspicious disposition)  
Puranas (Sacred texts dealing with the lives of *Tirthankaras* etc.)  
Purush-veda, Pumveda (The masculine sex inclination)  
Purusha (Soul, man)

Purushartha (Effort-making, right effort)

Purva (A group of fourteen Jaina canonical texts)

## "R"

Raga (Attachment, passion, desire)

Rajas (Endowed with pride passion, etc.)

Rajoharana (A whisk broom)

Rasa (Taste)

Rasana (Tongue)

Rasa-parityaga (Abandonment of stimulating or delicious food)

Rati (Pleasure in sensual indulgence)

Ratnatraya (The three jewels - right faith, right knowledge and right conduct)

Ratri-bhojana (Eating at night)

Raudra-dhyana (Cruel concentration, feeling pleasure in indulgence in sinful acts of injury, etc.)

Rijusutra-naya (The straight view point)

Ruksha (Dry, rough)

Rupi (Material object having touch, taste, odour, colour)

## "S"

Sabda-naya (The verbal viewpoint)

Salya-(Sting)

Sharira (Body)

Shauch (Freedom from greed)

Shraddha; Shraddhana (Belief, conviction)

Shravaka (Householder)

Shréni (Spiritual ladder)

Shruta (Scripture, scriptural knowledge)

Shurta-kevali (Omniscient in the scriptures)

Shubha (Good, auspicious)

Shukla-dhyana (Pure concentration or meditation free from attachment-aversion)

Shvetambara (White clad, a Jaina sect whose mendicants wear white garments)

Sachitta (With living matter, vegetables, etc.)

Sakashaya (With passion)

Sallekhana (Passionless end, ritual death by fasting, dieing with pure thought activity, a synonym of '*samadhi-marana*')

Samabhirudha-naya (Specific prevalent point of view)

Samanaska Samjni (Rational beings endowed with mind or thinking power)

Samavasarana (Holy assembly of the Jina)

Samaya (Unit of time, instant, moment, pure soul substance)

Samiti (Carefulness)

Samjvalana-Kshaya (Gleaming passion, perfect right conduct-preventing passion)

Samkhyata (Numerable)

Sammurchchhana (Spontaneous generation)

Samsara (Cycle of existence, mundane existence)

Samsari (Transmigrating beings)

Samsthana (Configuration)

Samudghata Expansion or emanation of the spatial units of the soul)

Samvara (Stoppage of influx "*asrava*")

Samvéga (Fear of transmigration)

Samyagdarshan, Samyaktva (Right belief, insight)

Samyagdrishti (True believer, enlightened self)

Samyak-charitra (Right conduct)

Samyak-jnana (Right knowledge)

Samyama Continenence, non-injury, restraint)

Samsaya (Doubt)

Saraga-charitra, Saraga-samyama (Self-control with attachment)

Sarvaghati karma (*Karma* which obscures totally the manifestation of soul's essential attributes)

Sarvaghati-Sparddhaka (*Karmic* matter which obscures wholly)

Sarvajana (The all knowing, the omniscient)

Sarvavadhi (The perfect clairvoyance)

Sat (Existence)

Satta (Inoperative state of existence of *karmas*)

Satya (truthfulness)

Sayoga Kevali (The omniscient with vibrating state of spatial units of soul)

Sadhu (A possessionless naked Jain monk of long-standing)

- Samayika (Attaining equanimity through self-contemplation)
- Samayika charitra (Conduct of equanimity)
- Sasadaña gunasthana (The second spiritual stage of downfall)
- Sata, Sada Vedaniya Karma (*Karmas* producing feelings of pleasure)
- Satvika (Endowed with mild-passion & good notions)
- Siddha (Liberated soul)
- Skandha (Molecule)
- Smriti (Recollection, remembrance)
- Snigdha (Smooth or sticky quality)
- Sparsha (Touch)
- Sparshana (Sense of touch)
- Sthapana Nikshépa (Representation of one thing by another)
- Sthavara jiva (Immobile one-sensed being)
- Sthitibandhapasarana (Duration of fresh bondage of *karmas* goes on reducing by one-one *Antarmuhurta*)
- Sthitibandha (Duration of *karmas*)
- Sthitikandak (Reduction in duration of previously bonded *karmas* by one-one *Antarmuhurta*)
- Striveda (Feminine inclination)
- Swadhyaya (Study of scriptures)
- Sukha (Bliss)
- Sukla-Leshya (White thought-complexion)
- Sutra (Aphorism, aphoristic mode of presentation)
- Svabhava (Own nature, intrinsic nature, pure manifestation of an attribute)
- Svabhava-sthita (Established in one's own nature)
- Sva-dravya-kshetra-kala-bhava (One's own substance, space (location), time (state) and quality (disposition))
- Syadvada (The doctrine of relative prediction; narrating something with respect to some particular viewpoint, law of relativity)
- Syat (In some respect; angle or viewpoint)

**"T"**

- Taijas-sharira (the luminous or electric body)
- Tamas (Endowed with anger passion, etc.)
- Tattva (Element, principle, reality)



Tattvartha (The 9 real elements with their qualities, regarded as objects of faith for a Jaina)

Tirtha (Ford, the path of Jaina-practice)

Tirtha-kshetra (A place where monks 'arhats' have attained 'moksha' - liberation)

Tirthankara (Ford-makers, the Lord of the three worlds, the omniscient spiritual teachers of Jainas)

Tirthankara-prakriti (Karmas that determine the body of a Tirthankara)

Tiryancha (Animals & plants, (floras & faunas) or sub-human beings)

Trasa Jiva (Mobile being, 2 to 5 sensed beings)

## "U"

Uchcha Gotra (High family status determining *karma*)

Udaya (Rise or operation - state of *karma*)

Udirana (Premature fruition of *karmas*)

Udumbara (Fig category fruits)

Udvelana (Regaining back status of *karmas*)

Utkarshana (Increase in duration & fruition of *karmas*)

Upabhoga (Enjoying some object repeatedly)

Upabhoga-antaraya (Hindrane to repeated enjoyments)

Upadana karana (Substantial cause)

Upadhyaya ( A true preceptor - monk)

Upagoohana (Protecting a fellow Jaina by ignoring his mistakes & weaknesses)

Upasaka (A Jain layman, a synonym for *shravaka*)

Upashama (Subsidence of *karmas*)

Upashama samyaktva (Subsidential right belief)

Upashanta moha (The 11th *Gunasthana* in which all *charitra mohaniya karmas* are rendered inoperative)

Upasarga (Calamity)

Upavasa (Fasting)

Upayoga (Active or attentive consciousness; applied or active knowledge)

Utpada (Origination)

Utsarpini (Ascending cycle of time, progressive half-cycle)

**"V"**

- Vaikriyika sharira (Transformable body)  
Vaimanikas (Heavenly gods)  
Vairagya (Detachment, renunciation)  
Vajra (Diamonds, adamantine)  
Vaiyavritti (Respectful service to the saints)  
Vanaspatikayika (Plant beings, vegetables)  
Veda (Sex, sign)  
Vedaka Samyaktva (A synonym for *kshayopashama samyaktva*)  
Vibhanga-jnana (Wrong clairvoyance)  
Vibhava (Defiled, impure, disposition)  
Vichara (Shifting attention or *upayoga* from one object or mode to another)  
Vigrahagati (Transit from one body to another)  
Vinaya Mithyatva (False belief of the type of paying respect or reverence indiscriminately to all true-untrue gods, preceptors & scriptures, etc.)  
Virodhi Himsa (Injury caused in facing an enemy)  
Virya (Energy, soul's power to know & see)  
Virya-antaraya karma (Energy obstructing *karma*)  
Vishuddhi (Purity)  
Vitaraga (Free from passion & attachment, etc., an epithet of an *Arhanta*)  
Vrata (Restraint, vow, oath)  
Vrata-Pratima (The second stage where a layman assumes the *Anuvratas* – small vows)  
Vratti-parisamkhyana (Limiting the extent of one's begging rounds)  
Vyantara/Vyantari (The peripatetic gods/goddesses)  
Vyavahara (Convention)  
Vyavahara-naya (Conventional standpoint)  
Vyutsarga (Renunciation of egoistic thoughts)

**"Y"**

- Yaksha (Demigod)  
Yathakhyata charitra (perfect conduct or conduct conforming to perfect purity)  
Yoga (Activity)  
Yojana (Measure of distance equal to 4 kosas of 2 miles each = 8 miles distance)  
Yoni (Nucleus)